

THE
METHOD OF
PHYSICK, CONTANING
THE CAUSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES
OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY,
FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making re-
medies and medicines, which our Physitions commonly
vse at this day, with the proportion, quantity,
and names of each medicine

By Philip Barrough.

The sixth Edition.



LONDON,

Imprinted by *Richard Field*, dwelling in great
Woodstreete. 1624.

10

THE
METHOD
OF
DRAWING
THE
CATHEDRAL
AND
CHURCH



1877
1877

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MAISTER, THE

Lord Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honourable priuie Councell.

P. B. wisheth all health, with long life, and increase of honour.



*THE chiefest thing (right Honorable and my singular good Lord) that emboldeneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any personage, is the affinity betweene the matter of the worke which they offer, and the mind of him to whom it is presented. And as the ancient comickall Poets were wont to pen such Enterludes as they thought would be plausibly heard of all the auditory: so our common writers do fashion and shape the subiect of which they in-
treat, according to the affection of him, whose patronage they require in countenancing their writings. This (I say) though it be practised of all writers now adaiies, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue followed: yet I haue swerued and digressed from so generall a custome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter so farre dissenting from your Honors disposition) so that as it may perhaps not without some colour be objected, that I might haue provided farre better (had I bene any way sufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politicke gouernment of our countrey, and of the weilding of a commonwealth: to the necessity of which calling, not Fortune the Queens of the old Philosophers, but*

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

God himselfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magistrate taketh vpon him his office unwillingly. But that obiection will soone be taken away, if we consider how foolish a thing it were to instruct him with his imaginarie precepts, whom (besides a great light of nature) most happie experience hath made a perfect and absolute gouernour. Plato that most graue and wise deemer of the state tyrannicall, was so many times conuicted of folly, how often he aduentured in the presence of Kings to discourse of the regiment of a Commonwealth. Dionysius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme crueltie, or good by his provident wisdom, which both he left alike to his successours to imitate) called that notable Phylosopher (whom I euen now named) into Sicilia of purpose to heare him, and with great patience listened to him as he disputed of mans felicitie, and admired him as he handled those morall vertues, which Socrates his maister was feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the Kings attention) when he had stolen into the discourse of Politie, Dionysius felt himselfe so moued, that he had exercised his tyrannie against him also, if Dion and Aristomanes had not reconcured him out of his iawes, and so rid him out of the land, by selling him to Polis the Lacedemonian Merchant. And this was the verdict that the wise King (when his furie was somewhat calmed) gaue of that most learned Philosopher for his wholesome counsell (as he thought) namely, that his discourses seemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: so much Experience disdaineth to be controlled by Art, and so impatient is he of institution; whose knowledge is acquired Vsu & Memoria (the two ancient parents of wisdom.) What a great argument of folly therefore shall he giue, that shall go about to lay a plot for your Honour, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernment, who haue so many yeares, in so troublesome a common wealth, and to the most wise and vertuous Princeesse in the world, bene retained as a most Honourable and graue Counsellour? I will not say as Zopyrus vnto his Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Cresus vnto his Cyrus; the one of which by policy aduised his King to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne unfortunate-

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

experience, directed him how to conuey any dangerous enterprize; all which serued their Princes to none other use, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glory by bloudie oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Xenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, who thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them with forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amity, the strögest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needs confesse, that these comparisons do faile in representing so much as I do conceiue. For, that I may not feare the suspition of flattery in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life, so gorgeously and stately set forth by the Historians of senerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage, two such notable actors; namely, so redoubted, so peerelesse, and so vertuous a Princeesse holding the Scepter? so graue, so wise, & so prouident a Counsellor sustaining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saued with your Honour) pursue your praises yet farther; but I know very well, that you (who with an unwearied affection do not cease continually to cōmit such vertuous deeds as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembered by another. And truly I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certaintie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of al good things; before whom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blameworthy, then shamelesly to assume vnto our selues what soeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? Namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, which is so impossible, in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie which feareth not to come vnder your learned censure. Which excellency of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answer, I purposed (as I thought) more politickly to assay your humanity; which indeed, graceth all the rest of your vertues: which (I thought) I might soone abuse, in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge; and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the commonwealth, in which you are alwayes busied, together with the inconuenient vse of the studie, hath kept your Honour from being acquainted

A 3

wish.

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

with. Which bold attempt of mine, your Wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemency encouraged me to enterprize it. For I do plainly confesse, that I haue not thought this booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne inability, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue farre more eloquent then this of ours, discern & know the secrets of Physicke, which I haue now in part reuealed, if the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, then that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate studie. And yet neuerthelesse, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affectatio of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefit my countrymen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke: and also (if I may without the suspect of vaine glorie seeme to deuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commodity vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Emperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnesse which I haue alwayes had (though of late it hath bene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of service vnto your Honor: I say, these causes meeting thus together, did especially induce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprize, offering to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidence as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite your Honors most fauourable Protection, that this booke of mine (unable of it selfe) may run vnder your patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venomous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the aduancement of his glorie, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen and protract your life beyond your fatall period, and gine you a will to liue, a desire still to beare up that burthen which her Maiestie hath laid vpon your shoulders; and with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,
PHILIP BARROUGH.
The



The Preface to the Reader.



When God had perfected that wonderfull worke of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had assigned to euery part thereof his speciall durie: namely to the water to harbour fishes, to the aire to vphold all feathered foules, to the earth to foster beasts, and to produce & bring forth good and wholsome herbes and trees: and ouer all these, as re- gent and gouernour, had appointed man, his last and no- blest creature: he demanded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered, Nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secrets of his labours, to talke and commun^e of them; with the which also, he, as workman of all, might be extolled and magnified: who partly moued by this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduance his glory; as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries: so now he gaue him a tongue able to vtter the sundry conceptions of the heart, whatsoever it ima- gined. This fable (proceeding I know not from what brain) is remembered of *Philo* the Iew in his Treatise of the world, which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath as it were kept to himselfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacity of man: so there is no meanes by which a man can approach nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the paine- full indagation of the secrets of nature, or any way whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industry atchieued, and to haue a care also that it may be faithfully commended to his posterity. And doubtlesse this was the consideration that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glittering shewes which his riches & kingdome profered him, applied his mind to the study of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discoursed not onely of birds & beasts, but of all herbes and trees, euen from the Cedar of Lebanon, to Hysope that groweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many Kings and noble personages, vowing to themselues without any light of their forefathers to go through the clondie darknesse of nature. And although they sometimes stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscurity, and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginnings of an Art, by setting downe certaine

THE PREFACE

precepts of the same; and after him *Osiri* the King of *Ægypt*, and *Zesofris* also King of the same countrey (though rudely) layed the foundation of Astronomy by demonstration of the course of the heauens, and of Physicke, by opening the nature of many herbes, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilm*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grieuous malady in *Ægypt*, and being not able by his owne experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preserued by the Priests of that countrey, who taught him the vertue of their water, whereas after in remembrance of this benefit he wrote this verse, rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniversa prouit hominum mala*: The sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Physicopher had neuer brought this newes out of *Ægypt*, either of their policie and gouernment of their countrey, or of their rare and exquisite knowledge in Astronomy, if he had not tasted of the benefit which the physicke of that time afforded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasie to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the sea-gulfe of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of *Pontus* shall be the first, who at one time vnderooke two mighty battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror: and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glory of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last overthrow. The which (as *Pliny* remembreth) was alike profitable to the commonwealth and to mans life: for in his Manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies for many infirmities of the same. *Enax* also the King of *Arabia* wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no King, either of *Æthiopia*, *Ægypt*, or *Arabia*, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Art of Physicke, or else by his liberality encouraged others to employ their time in the same? Which may make much (no doubt) to the credit of the Art, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselves, and haue thought themselves honoured by the profession of the same. And, as many arguments do induce me to beleue, besides the witnesse of Historians, that Physicke is the Art wherein many Kings haue travelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tied to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to *Elis*, *Diana* to *Ephesus*, *Apollo* to *Delos*, and so forth; *Aesculapius* the sonne of *Apollo* by the daughter of *Phlegias*, made a god for his cunning in Physicke, hath his temple and altars euery where, in *Corinth*, in *Lacedæmon*, in *Athens*, in *Thebes*, in *Epidaure*, in *Arcadia*, *Messenia*, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth) all which honors so done to him, were instituted (no doubt) by the Kings and rulers of those countries, who especially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reason, that he who inuēted an Art so generally available for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much
inferiour

TO THE READER.

inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his line, saving that the one was placed amongst the gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth: Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrey, onely by the accesse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderfull skill in Physicke? What familiaritie had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? And to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarrie vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages; as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Aegineta*, and others. For it will easily appeare of what credit this noble science of Physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolency and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldened onely by the credit of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudency, that they would haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Cyprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Art he could breathe life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially reigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedon, vseth these words: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke: it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man; and it was so fed with the applaus and approbation of his citizens, who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the City with a traine of gods after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vpon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the midst resembling *Iupiter*, wore a purple robe, and a crowne of gold vpon his head, and held in his hand a mighty Scepter. The opinion of this Science did so possesse the minds of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commodity of the whole countrey, and for the preservation of mankind: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be; whereof grew this excessive pride, which hath arrested as it were the minds of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visit euen the poorest, when their helpe is required. For seeing the life of the most miserable vassal is as deare in the sight of God as the life of the most renowned Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Gods hand, if he either hath proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place,

though

THE PREFACE

though (to speake the truth) the arrogancy of many of our Physitions might giue vs sufficient occasion, wishing them to leaue off to imitate the swelling insolency of *Menecrates* and the rest, and to tract rather in the steps of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer disdained to shrowd themselves vnder the simplest roo'e in their countrey, to do the poorest man good: and as they themselves said (besides the glory that they purchased by their courteous benignity) they added alwayes to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Art and knowledge, which might well stagger, if you respect the infinite variety of diseases, and the strange diuersities of mens dispositions. And truly if nothing else, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered especially by long experience, might be cause good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occasion to go to the diseased person. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetousnesse or pride, hath bene the onely cause, that euen from the beginning there haue bene reckoned so few good Physitions. For (exempt onely *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Anicen*, *Egineta*, *Aetius* and *Soranus*, though the number of common Physitions hath bene great) you shall not finde any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their science: nay farre from that which might challenge the first or first place. Which although some men will ascribe to the laborious difficultie & confused vastnesse of this Art especially; yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene, nor is, any such blocke or stay, which hath impeached so much their endeouours, as the defect of experience. And truly I cannot more fitly compare our Emperiques and practitioners, then to him that purposeth to be a sea-man and traueller, who though he studiously striueth to attaine to the perfectiō of his Art, though he carefully busieth himselfe about the cosmographicall maps, though he industriously peruseth the bookes of Navigation, nay (which is more) though he conferre diligently with very expert saylers: yet when he hath forsaken the quiet haue, and launched out into the rough seas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ship, when he shall behold so many horrible mountaines of water, the roing of so many huge waues, and the outraging surges of the disquieted monster; he will then confesse, that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the course of the seas; that his bookes were lame schoolemaisters, that the tales of his cōpanions were a great deale lesse then the things themselves: when he shall cast vp his eyes, and thinke that euery starre which he had hoped to haue vsed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and destruction: when he shall looke downe, and tremble at the rising of euery waue: when he shall turne him about, and with great feare seeke to eschue those rocks, which he had read were couched in that part of the sea: and to conclude, when he shall consider the hugenesse of the Ocean sea, and the smalnesse of his barke, he will thinke sure the least perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithstanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen so fareth it with our common Physitions, who while they containe themselves within the compasse of their little studie, where they do as it were *ē tabula pictos ediscere morbos*, where they perceiue their science redacted into a method, where they see *Galen* reaching his hand vnto them, to leade them through the whole body of Physicke, by whom they

TO THE READER.

they are taught the constitution of the body, the diuersitie of temperatures, the variety of diseases, the causes, signes, and symptomes of the same: they straight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becometh an Emperique. But after that, when they shall go into the commonwealth to practise, when they shall meet with diseases which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they shall view the marvellous and secret affections and properties of mens bodies, the sudden and momentanie changes of the same (which a man can scarcely follow with his mind,) when they shall perceiue that in respect of the strange temperature of the body, and the violent alteration of the same, they scarcely can aime at the disease, when they shall strike vpon so many rockes, besides their great paines and watchfull industrie: will it not (thinke ye) amaze them? will they not confesse then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Physicke, so that now it is the true and sincere accomplisher of the perfection of the same? Since therefore the case so standeth, that Art is weake without practise, and that (as *Galen* saith) experience is gotten *longo rerum usu*, let the Physition (if he preferre not lying fame and vile lucre before true and absolute knowledge) let him, I say, that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the poorest house vnfrequented. But to say the truth, nothing derogateth so much from the excelling in their science, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is especially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerse determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongst them, he sitteth still, and admireth himselfe, thinking then that he hath studied enough both for himselfe and his countrey, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongst the number of excellent Physitions, by that ignorant and vnadvised register. I haue spoken this by the way, and the interiecting of these few lines hath not made me to forget (good Reader) that before I discoursed of the glory of this Science, and how it hath bene accounted of in times past: the dignitie whereof, though it be something lessened and empaired, (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Physitions, or by the sinister opinion of the world, I will not now discusse:) yet if we will vprightly weigh with our selues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignitie of the thing it selfe. For truly, what can be more noble, then to preserue the body of man in a good estate, which of the Philosopher is termed, a little world, in respect of the variety of his seuerall functions? What can be more excellent, then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that best workmanship of God, and (which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning pilote to gouerne and rule it as a little vessell cast out into the great Ocean, subiect to I know not how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And seeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God more acceptable then the health of the body, how honorably must we thinke of the meanes by which it is continued, and restored if it be lost? *Pyrrhus* the King of Epire did sacrifice vnto no other god or goddesse, but only vnto Health, to whō he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum Sanitatis*. He contemned, or at the least neglected all oracles, which other Princes busily sought after, as predictions of the euents & successes of

THE PREFACE

of the battels which they attempted, or any other the like enterprise. He craved nothing at the hands of the gods, but onely the fruition of his health; thinking that industry and diligence meeting with the health of the body, were able to atchieue any thing, were it beset with neuer so many dangers. And in mine opinion, (as the Historian very grauely discourseth) men do foolishly erre, when they complaine of nature, for limiting the age of man within the compasse of so few yeares, as three or fourescore: when as truly, if the matter were well expended, we would confesse, *Industriam potius quam tempus deesse* (as he saith) and that there is no Art or science, be it neuer so difficult, but might be perfectly knowne within that short precinct, if the greater part of our life did not passe and vanish away in darknesse, (slouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature,) or if the course thereof were not interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is hastned on our parts by our inordinate and heedlesse liuing. The yong man flourishing as it were in the Aprill of his age, cockereth in himselfe a foolish imagination of his owne lustinesse, and reputeth it as a discredit vnto him to seeme to feare the approach of any disease, leauing the prouident gouernment of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reines vpon his affections, and exposeth himselfe to any inconuenience: either he weltereth in idlenesse, or is tyred with immoderate exercise, or (which is incident specially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnseasonable watchings, surfering banquets, and the vnlatiate executing of the follies of *Venus*, thinking indeed that there is nothing lesse agreeing vnto youth and adolescence, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholsome method of life: yea many of them are of this mind, that the time of their youth is infamously ouerslipped, when they do not rush into their voluptuous and inordinate demeanor, at what time the lustie prime of their age doth somewhat enable & support them. And if at any time they be ouertaken with any infirmity (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the science of Physicke, they leaue it to be worne away by the strength of their body; which indeed I confesse hideth many diseases, and for the time taketh away the sense of the, but neuer vtterly extinguisheth any. For although in the infancy of the infirmity, in respect of the weaknesse of it, it is easily depressed and ouermaistred by the valour of the body (which in youth is something puissant and forcible,) yet when age cometh on with his stealing steps, or else retchlesse life doth detract from the force of the one, & maketh way for the other to spread and gather power, the disease being as it were the suruiour, possesseth the whole body, and at the last procureth his vtter subuersion. And many times it hapneth, that a disease breaketh out in old age, the cause whereof perhaps was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs as it doth with them that are bitten with the little serpent of Arabia, which striketh a man, but so secretly that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the wound which sheweth it selfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the ancient Physitions had of the effect of Snow-water is of force to perswade this, who haue written, that if snow resolued into water be drunke of a yong child, it will as it were maintaine warre against naturall heate, and that with such continuance, as it will not shew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto
extreme

TO THE READER.

extreme old age. I do not altogether beleue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water may leade me to thinke that it is of a mighty operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men reposing too much trust in the strength of their bodies, and so being carelesse in gainstanding and resisting the beginnings of maladies (which their dissolute order of life hath begotten and ingendred) haue bene yoked by old age before the course of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it so to passe, that their bodies haue bene nothing else but storehouses & mansions of diseases. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being settled in a faire dwelling house by his land-lord, suffereth it to ruinate, and in the end to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: so they, when God hath bestowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or mansion houses, wherein the mind may dwell with pleasure and delight, do first by this euill demeanour, shake and discrease them, and then being altogether carelesse of repairing them, do suffer them to run to destruction, or else while they go about too late to vnderprop them declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin, feareth lest with euery puffe of wind it should be ouerturned) they quake at the least alteration of the bodie, and at euery little paine do expect a finall dissolution: then they will confesse vnto you, that while they rioted vnadvisedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they else but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception and preventing of diseases is very available, which carrieth a man throughout his race with pleasure and delight, euen so nothing cometh more neare vnto the goodnesse thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any disease) carefully to provide that the beginning thereof may be impeached: the which that thou mayest the better do, I haue (good reader) for thy benefit collected out of sundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of Physicks; & together with those deductions, I haue enterlaced experiments of mine owne, which by long vse and practise I haue obserued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curious in prescribing the sundrie curations and waies to helpe the diseases, then in explaining the nature of them: my reason was, because if my booke should come to the hands of the vnlearned, a little would suffice (the former being more necessarie.) Againe, I knew that the learned would not be contented or satisfied with it, though it had bene neuer so great: and yet I haue not omitted any necessarie signe, that the disease may appeare easily to any capable braine. I shall seeme boldly to haue aduentured the Edition of this labour, seeing that I shal runne into the babble of our countrey Physitions, who thinke their Art to be discredited, when it is published in a base tongue; and againe, are loath to haue the secrets of their science revealed to euery man. Indeed I know that vnder some colour they may object somewhat, but yet they may vnderstand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Physitions, both of our Englishmen and other countermen also, who published their practises in their mother tongue, and in other countries especially it is so rife and common, that in Italy and France you shall not finde any learned Physition that hath not written as much (nay rather more) in his owne countrey language, then in Latin: yea we haue many bookes in Physicke, that

THE PREFACE

haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commoditie of other Nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generally, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countreimen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profit their owne countrey, being willing that all men (as indeede it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in his owne Art (which is this) That then all Artes should be truly happie, when the professors of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwayes bene of this minde, that it behoueth euery man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to know so much as may serue to forestall the coming of many ordinary diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath already caught hold of the bodie: my reason is, both because euery man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declininges and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physition being not alwaies at their elbow) whereas in the beginning of their sicknesse, a little knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmitie. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted only of a few experimēts which passed from hand to hand, yong children, together with other Artes, did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the body, and learned also preseruatiues against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinary diseases, which (indeed) were but few, the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoolemaister to *Hercules*, when he had instructed him in the Art of wrastring, (which then was honoured especially) and in Musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenetrable, but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all the wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machaon* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Æsculapius*, in that they could cure themselues when they were at any time hurt of the enemy? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabrizius* the Romane, he that vanquished *Pyrrius*, and also *Marcus Curius*, and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnecessary, when there is no man which so farre swarueth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needful for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the prouing of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue already offended in exceeding the length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vnder- take a long iourney, stumbled euen in the very threshold of his doore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chusing rather to be carped at of the Rhetorician for vsing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended

TO THE READER.

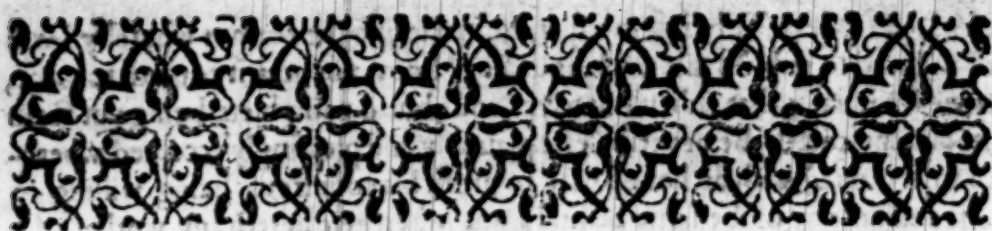
ded of the readers for being too sparing in vntering the reasons whereby I was first induced to publish this my labour. For I know not how it cometh to passe, yet we see it daily, that ridiculous toyes, and absurd pamphlets, being put forth without any colour, be neuertheless plausibly and pleasingly accepted: whereas a man moued with an honest care to profit his countrey, being willing to leaue a testimony of the same behind him, when he offereth any worke, if it hath not a delectable subiect, it behoueth him to shew many graue & substantiall reasons of his doings, or else they will not yeeld their hoped for benefit, which is to be benignely construed, and perused with humanity. So that if a man couet to haue his bookes fauourably accepted and read, he must behaue himselfe so in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* saith) did not fashion them according to the true line of equity, but set downe such as he thought the people would willingly obserue: euen so the iniquitie of the time hath brought to passe, that those bookes which are generally perused and read throughout, must not serue the time, but must satisfie the opinion of men. A man may easily discourse of this, but the fantasies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in disswading them. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not sought nor hunted after any vaine glory by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeouored by this meanes (being vnable any way else) to do some good to my countrey-men: which desire of mine shall sufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the hands of the learned, that if by chance my bookes come vnder their censure, they will either giue them their good word, or else suffer themselves to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily sung;

Cum tua non edas, carpi mea carmina Leli:

Carpere vel noli nostra, vel ede tua.

Though indeed this supplication of mine may rather more slyly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who thinke they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchase their owne credit, when they can, vnder some colour, maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their estimations, or the errors of other men the subiect of their praises. Those kindes of serpents (I say) which do nothing else but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduise them either to speake themselves, or (if their ignorance will not let them) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harvest of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whilst they themselves rest vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptance of these my labours; which expectation of mine if it be not deluded, I shall be further encouraged to consecrate the residue of my studies to thy commodity.

Philip Barrough.



OF WEIGHTS.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weights, which are generally vsed, and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantitie of them.

Forasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantity of weights, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them. For seeing the weights of some medicines be so iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantity thereof, he doth much hurt to the body, and many times putteth the life in iopardie: you must therefore diligently endeuour, and apply your minde to study and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full & perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weights, be these, as followeth.

1. Grana.
2. Scripuli.
3. Drachmæ.
4. Vnciz.
5. Quar.
6. Libræ.
7. Semis.
8. Manipuli.
9. Pugilli.
10. Ana.

hath this note,

G.
S.
D.
Dr.
Vnc.
gr.
lb.
S.
M.
P.
ana.

A Graine is a barley corne taken out of the middest of the eare.

A Scruple is twenty barley cornes.

Three Scruples containe a Drachme.

Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.

Quart, signifieth a quart of any thing.

Libra is a pound.

Semis, is the halfe of euery weight.

Manipulus, is a great handfull.

Pugillus, is a small handfull.

Ana, signifieth of euery one a like much.

THE



THE METHOD OF PHISICKE, CONTAINING THE CAUSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES of inward diseases in mans body, from the head to the foote.

The first Booke.

The first Chapter; of Headach.



ALEN the prince of Phisitions affirmeth, that there are onely three sundry paines in the head: whereof the one is called of the Greeks κεφαλαλγια, *Cephalalgia*, & of the Latins *Capitis dolor*; the barbarous sort of Phisitions call it *Soda*: in English it is called commonly the headach. The second kind is called of the Greekes κεφαλαια, and in Latine likewise it is called *Cephalaea*: in English it may be called a long continuing or inveterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks ημικρανια, *Hemicrania* also is the Latin name of it: in English it is called the Migraine. Of the two last kinds shall mention be made hereafter, for now we will intreate of the first kind, declaring only in this Chapter, what it is, and what be the generall causes thereof, and then in the chapters next following, shal the signes and cures of each cause be declared. Vnderstand therefore first, that *Cephalalgia* is nothing else but a laborious and painfull sente and feeling, newly begun in the whole head, through some great mutation thereof: this word newly, is added to make it differ from *Cephalaea*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added to make it differ frō *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one halfe of th^e head. Note also that by the head we meane so much as is couered with haire, wherein paine is ingendred, sometime without the scull, and sometime within; sometime in all the outward parts, and sometime in all the inward parts; sometime not in all, but in one part, as in the arteries onely, or the veines, or sinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it selfe: but these differences, as *Galen* testifieth, be very hard to know. But this may easily be knowne, whether the paine be within the scull or without it, if you consider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the scull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, and from the filmes, and other vessels that are about it: so that the paine will quickly

Differences of
paine in the
head three.

1

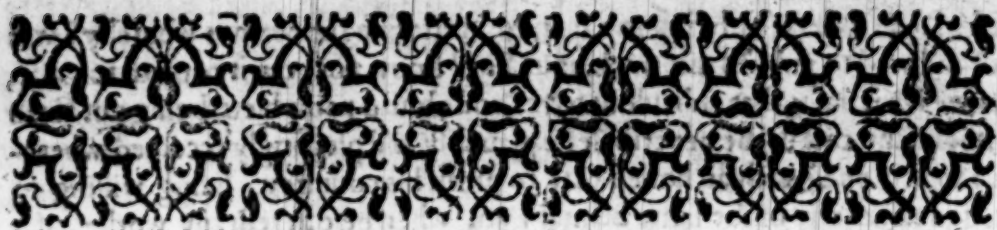
2

3

What Cepha-
lalgia or Soda
is.

The diuersitie
of places that
paine is in.

Whether the
headach be
within the scull
or without it.



OF WEIGHTS.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weights, which are generally vsed, and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantitie of them.

Forasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantity of weights, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them. For seeing the weights of some medicines be so iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chancerashly to erre in the true quantity thereof, he doth much hurt to the body, and many times putteth the life in iopardie: you must therefore diligently endeavour, and apply your minde to study and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full & perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weights, be these, as followeth.

1. Grana.	} hath this note,	G.
2. Scripuli.		℥.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciæ.		℥.
5. Quar.		℥.
6. Libræ.		℥.
7. Semis.		℥.
8. Manipuli.		℥.
9. Pugilli.		℥.
10. Ana.		ana.

A Graine is a barley corne taken out of the middest of the eare.

A Scruple is twenty barley cornes.

Three Scruples containe a Drachme.

Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.

Quart, signifieth a quart of any thing.

Libra is a pound.

Semis, is the halfe of enery weight.

Manipulus, is a great handfull.

Pugillus, is a small handfull.

Anā, signifieth of enery one a like much.



THE METHOD OF PHISICKE, CONTAINING THE CAUSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES of inward diseases in mans body, from the head to the foote.

The first Booke.

The first Chapter; of Headach.



GALEN the prince of Phisitions affirmeth, that there are onely three sundry paines in the head; whereof the one is called of the Greeks κεφαλαλγια, *Cephalalgia*, & of the Latins *Capitis dolor*; the barbarous sort of Phisitions call it *Soda*; in English it is called commonly the headach. The second kind is called of the Greekes κεφαλαια, and in Latine likewise it is called *Cephalaea*: in English it may be called a long continuing or inveterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks ημικρανια, *Hemicrania* also is the Latin name of it; in English it is called the Migraine. Of the two last kinds shall mention be made hereafter, for now we will intreate of the first kind, declaring only in this Chapter, what it is, and what be the generall causes thereof, and then in the chapters next following, shal the signes and cures of each cause be declared. Vnderstand therefore first, that *Cephalalgia* is nothing else but a laborious and painfull sente and feeling, newly begun in the whole head, through some great mutation thereof: this word newly, is added to make it differ from *Cephalaea*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added to make it differ frō *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one halfe of th^e head. Note also that by the head we meane so much as is couered with haire, wherein paine is ingendred, sometime without the skull, and sometime within; sometime in all the outward parts, and sometime in all the inward parts; sometime not in all, but in one part, as in the arteries onely, or the veines, or sinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it selfe: but these differences, as *Galen* testifieth, be very hard to know. But this may easily be knowne, whether the paine be within the skull or without it, if you consider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the skull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, and from the filmes, and other vessels that are about it: so that the paine will quickly

Differences of
paine in the
head three.

1

2

3

What Cepha-
lalgia or Soda
is.

The diuersitie
of places that
paine is in.

Whether the
headach be
within the skull
or without it.

*Causes of
headach gene-
rall.*

*Causes of
headach spe-
ciall.*

*Signes of each
cause of head-
ach generally.*

come from them to the roots of the eyes: but if the paine that is felt do not extend to the eye rootes, then is the ach without the scull. This paine of the head generally (as also all other paines) is caused of an vnequall distemper, coming with humours or without, especially when it is hote or cold; or it is caused by solution of parts coherent, or of both. But as for particular and speciall causes of headach there be very many. For sometime it cometh onely of a simple distemper without any humors, and sometime it cometh through the euill quality of humours, sometime it cometh through great abundance of humours, sometime through humours that stop the passage of the vapours and moisture in the head, sometime through windinesse engendred in some part of the head, being weake. And sometime headach is caused of some discale in the stomacke: sometime of an outward cause, as of heate of the Sunne, of great cold, of drunkenesse, or of some stripe or wound. Hereby it appeareth that the headach is engendred of seuen sundry causes, which are to be knowne by their proper signes, whereof we will speake more at large in the chapters following, for in this Chapter they shall be but briefly touched. Note therefore that the headach which is caused of a simple distemper without humours, is not easie to be knowne, except a man be well exercised in Physick, and by much and diligent looking on the grieve: but that paine of the head is most vehement, which is caused of a simple distemper being hote or cold. The headach that is caused of drinesse, is moderate. As for a moist distemper, alone it doth cause no headach, except it be ioyned with heate or cold, or with abundance of humours, or sharpnesse of them. If paine of the head doth come through abundance of humours, contained in one part of the head, or in two, or in all parts, the paine is more vehement that cometh of hote humours or of cold; that which cometh of dry things is more moderate, if there be no manifest heate or cold ioyned with them. As for moist things touching their qualitie, they do cause no paine at all, but with their quantitie they may fill the passages, & so cause paine. If abundance of all foure humours equally, or of bloud alone, do cause headach without obstruction and stopping of the passages, it maketh the head heauie and full as it were stretched out and swolne: but if the multitude of humours be with obstruction, it causeth moderate paine if the obstruction be but little, but if the obstruction be great, there shall be very great paine. Also if the multitude of humours haue a sharpe and biting quality, according to that qualitie the paine will be pricking and shooting. If with the heauinesse or stretching of the head, there be beating, and as it were a pulse, it betokeneth inflammation in the head: but if the stretching be present without heauinesse or pulse, it declareth abundance of windie spirits, and in this kind of headach there will be noise in the eares. Those that haue headach coming of an externall cause, as of heate of the Sunne, cold of the aire, drunkenesse, stripes, or of any hote saours, can easily tell themselves the cause thereof. Seeke for signes more particular in the Chapters next following.

CHAP. II.

Of headach caused of beate.

VNderstand, that by beate in this Chapter is meant a hote distemper without any kind of humour. It is engendred for the most part of the burning
heate

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Also it is sometime caused of immoderate mouing, or by hote bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiousnes, or last of all through hote diseases, or hote sauiours of outward things. The signes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you shall feele their head hote as soone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be; their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the sprinkling or anointing of cold things, and do feele great ease by them. As for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure of this kinde of headach, you must first provide that the aire and the chamber where the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by your diligence, as by strewing in the house flowers and branches of cold things (as Roses, Violets, Water-lilly-flowers, and Vine leaues, Bryer boughs, Willow, and such like.) Also it will coole the aire well to sprinkle cold water in the house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had to his sleepe, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do, he must altogether eschue long watching, and keepe himselfe quiet: he must not retaine his excrements, but auoide them by and by after sleepe if he can, or let nature be helped to expell the by a lenitiue clister, for their retention increaseth paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes. Let him eschue all perturbations of the minde, especially anger and fury. Let him haue but a little meate, of good digestion, and let it be cold in operation, as is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of Pisan, Lettuce, Endiue, Purslaine, flesh of Chickens, Hens or Pigeons, with veriuycce made of Grapes. Fishes are good that come out of stonie rivers, and that are tender. Also Almond milke, Pomegranates, Raisins, and ripe Peares may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it, if not, seeth a little Cinamon in it, or Coriander seed preparete, or mixe with the water, iuyce of soure Pomegranates, or syrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus Acetosus simplex*, or *Oxyfaccacharum*: or if they cannot abide that, you may giue them (small wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head caused of heate, is cured with such things as do coole without manifest restriction, especially if they be of thinne and piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to powre on the head good oyle of Roses, made of vnripe oyle, and if a litle vineger be added to it, it wil pierce the faster and the deeper. The places that you must poure or annoint it on, is the forepart of the head, where the seame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, and the seames haue pores on them: also you must vse it on the top of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples where the haire groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of Roses, is oyle of Cammomill to be vsed in like sort, especially in those bodies that we would not coole to much, as womens, eunuches, children, and other that haue soft flesh, and are white in colour. If there be neede of great cooling, you may adde to the oyle of Roses iuyce of Housleek, or Purslaine, or Knotgrasse, or of vnripe grapes, or Nightshade, or Sorrell, or *Psilium*, or such like. Vse not iuyce of Pop-

Signet.

Ayre.

Sleepe.

Meate.

Drinke.

Cura.

Oyle of Roses.

Oyle of Cam-
momill.

pie, or of Mandrake in this cause, for they do hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort: *R.* oyle of Roses, $\mathfrak{z} . i j$. Rose water, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. strong vinegar, $\mathfrak{z} \beta$. or iuyce of Housleeke, or Purslaine, or Lettuce, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. and so commix them. Or thus. *R.* distilled water of Housleeke, Lettuce, and Nightshade, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i j$. water of Cammomill, $\mathfrak{z} . j \beta$. vinegar, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. commix them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrow of the backe-bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in Sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humours and vapours that be lifted vp into the head. In like manner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of Quinces, Violets, Waterlillies, and Gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a Liniment made in this sort *R.* of the musilage of the seeds of Quinces, and great Mallowses, or of *Psilium*, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i i j$. iuyce of Purslaine $\mathfrak{z} . j \beta$. iuyce of Nightshade, $\mathfrak{z} \beta$ oyle of Roses, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. commix them, and make a Liniment: or by putting too Waxe and other medicines, make an ointment in this sort. *R.* *unguenti Populeon*, $\mathfrak{z} . j$ oyles of Violets and Roses, of each $\mathfrak{z} . i i j$. dry flowers of white Waterlillies, and of red Roses, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j$. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse Embrocations (that is, decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by little and little, or to let it drop downe:) they may be made of Roses, Violets, flowers of Waterlillies, willow leaues, Vine leaues, Purslaine, Barley, & such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the grieft, because they coole, not without hurt, and therefore *Opium*, iuyce of Poppy, & Mandragora are to be elchued. Iuyce of Nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very little of it at once, as we do vse in the Liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest striction and binding with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweete Pomgranates, Quinces and Medlars, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of slowre Pomgranates is good, because it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this grieft. Afterwards you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mitigate and digest. Make therefore an Embrocation after this sort: *R.* flowers of Roses & Violets, ana. $\mathfrak{M} \beta$. leaues of Willow, Cammomill, and Melilot, ana. $\mathfrak{M} . j$. seeds of Mallowses, $\mathfrak{z} . i i j$. Barley husked $\mathfrak{z} . j$ seeth these in two pound of water till the third part be consumed, and make an Embrocation. Or thus: *R.* Mallow leaues, Violets, Roses, ana. $\text{pug} . \beta$. the flowers of Waterlillies, $\mathfrak{z} . i i j$. Vine leaues, or the wreaths that they wind about things withall, Purslaine, or Housleeke, of each, $\mathfrak{M} . j$. Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i j$ seeth them as is aboue said, and make an Embroca, adding too a little vinegar, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discussive medicins, withdrawing the aforesaid repelling things: such be, *Aklia*, Dill, Sothernwood, Butter, Cammomill, Barley meale, Fenugreeke, Linseed, Lupines, &c. Of these and such like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or oyntments, as you list. For inward medicines (espe-

A Liniment.

Unguentum.
Embrocha.

Stupefacientia

Note.

Embrocha.

Alia.

LIBER I.

cially if the headach be caused of exercise, anger, or such like) minister Iulep of Violets or Roses, or their conserues, or *Manna Christi* or giue the sicke two or three houres before meate in the morning, \mathfrak{z} j β . of syrupe of infusion of Roses, or of syrupe of Waterlillies, with \mathfrak{z} ij. or iij. of water of Borage or Cychorie. It is good for the sicke to smell Rose water, mixed with a lule vineger: also it is good to snuffe it vp in the nose.

CHAP. III.

Of headach caused of cold.

BY cold, is meant in this Chapter, a cold distemper simply, without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as when the aire is very cold. especially when one tarieth in it long time bare headed; as also it may be caused by the sudden applying of any cold thing to the head. The signes of headach caused of cold, are contrary to those signes that are caused of hote distemper. For in this, though the paine be vehement, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, and the face and eyes do not looke red, nor their face is not drie and shrunke, but contrariwise full and pale, and their eyes are swolne and swart. Also they neither desire cold things, nor do feele ease by them. Concerning the diet of those that haue this kinde of headach, they must eschue cold aire, and abide altogether in hote ayre. They must sleepe moderately, but no longer then they were wont. They must vse moouing of the whole body, especially walking and riding. Let their bodies be soluble rather then costiuie, so that they may each day haue a siege either by nature or by art, as by a suppositarie or a clister. Let them eschue sadness, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them etchue all meates and drinckes that be cold in operation, as milke, fish, and such like. Let them eate reare egges, and flesh of Hennes, Chicken, Partrich, Pheasants, and such like. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne of substance, for that doth moderately extenuate and heate. For the same cause also hote baths are to be vsed; and generally for the cure hereof, you must vse things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you must diligently consider the naturall temperature of the braine, for it is such a thing as cannot suffer medicines vehement hote nor yet vehement cold. Therefore (as Galen affirmeth) if oyle of Rew be powred hote vpon the forepart of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be need of greater heating, you may put pepper or *Euphorbium* into the oyle; or you may mixe some oyle of Pepper or oyle of *Euphorbium* with the oyle of Rew, or in the stead of oyle of Rew, you may vse oyles of Lawrel, *Ireos*, Dill, or Cammomil, of Spikenard, *Serpillum*, Marioram, and such like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead also, and the nostrils, and the holes of the eares. Of the aforesaid medicines you may make an ointment after this sort: \mathcal{R} . oiles of *Ireos* and Rew, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . Marioram, Betony, Pepper, ana \mathfrak{z} j. of *Euphorbium*, gra v. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the nostrils: or make an ointment thus: \mathcal{R} . of the oyles of Rew, Cammomill, & *Nardinum*, ana \mathfrak{z} j. Hylope, Lauender, and flowers of Stachas, ana \mathfrak{z} β . Masticke and Frankensense, of each \mathfrak{z} j. Waxe a little, and make an ointment. You may sometime ad to it, if you wil, *Castoreum*, \mathfrak{z} j. Also Embrocations profit much, if they be made

Inward medicines.

Odours.

Causa.

Signa.

Vicius ratio.

Cura.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Embrocha.

Sacculus.

Pomum odo-
viferum.

of flowers of Melilot and Cammomill, Marioram, Origan, Betonie, Sage, Lau-
rell leaves, *Stachas*, and such like sodden in water. It is good for the sick to draw
vp the vapours of such decoctions by his nostrils. Also a quilt made in this sort
profiteth much. *Rx*. leaues of Laurell, *Serpillum*, and Marioram, ana. M. β . flowers
of Rosemarie, M. j. Rew, M. β . Cloues and *Stachas*, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. Peniroyall and Ca-
lamint, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . beate these to powder, and sew them in silke, or fine linnen
cloth, & make a quilt, which must be laid to the head warme, and first sprinkled
with vineger. It is good also to vse a pomander made in this sort: *Rx*. of *Storax*
calamita. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Cloues, Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Lauender, \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Gallia*
moschata, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of Musk and Amber, ana. gra. iij. powder them ann learce them,
and with water of Marioram and *Storax liquida* as much as shall suffice, make
pomanders.

CHAP. IIII.

Of headach caused by drinesse or moisture.

Cause.

Signa.

Pictus.

Curatio.

BY drinesse, is meant in this place a drie distemper of the quality alone, and
by moisture, a moist distemper of the bare quality. Neither of these qua-
lities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cause any headach at
all (as *Galen* teacheth in the 5. Chapter of his booke *de Symptomatum causis*.)
Therefore we do not make mention here of these distempers, as though head-
ach might be caused of them alone, but that the studious in Physick might haue
store of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drinesse, or moisture
with heat, or when cold mixed with drines or moisture causeth headach. Head-
ach through drinesse is caused through drinesse of the aire, or by drie medicines,
by hunger, exercise, lecherie, and perturbations of the minde. And headach of
moisture, is caused by moistnesse of the aire, or by moistening medicines, by
baths, hote waters, and other things that moisten ouermuch. Drinesse is knowne
by these signes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the nose;
if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before: these be
signes of headach of drinesse. Also in it the skinne of the head is drier when it
is felt, then it is wonted to be, and some drie diet hath bene vsed. But in this
kind, drie medicines do not ease the paine, but rather increace it. Moistnesse is
knowne by these signes; much filth cometh out of the nose, the eyes be puffed
vp and swolne, and the patient sleepeith much: but of this distemper alone there
dorb no headach ensue. Those that haue headach caused of drinesse, let them
remaine in a moist aire, and let them eate meates that do moisten, and that be
of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, Cocks stones, and the broth of them,
Phealants, Parrich, and such like things that do nourish much and moisten.
Let them drinke thione wine allayed with water: let them sleepe largely: let
them eschue motion of the body and exercise, and vse quietnesse and rest: let
them eschue carnall copulation, hunger, thirst, and all things that do drie:
let them vse baths of (sweete waters that are warme: let them be merrie, and
eschue all other perturbations of the minde. If headach be caused of moisture,
you must vse the contrarie diet to this that is before prescribed (that is, all such
things as do drie, which you may easily know by that which hath bene said
before.) For paine of the head caused of drinesse, you must annoint the former
seamo

seame of the head with oyle of sweet Almonds, or with oyle of Gourds, or with oyle of Violets and Cammomill mixed together. It is also good to drop some of these oyles into the nostrils. You may also mixe with the said oyles Goose grease, Hens grease, Calues grease, or fresh butter, after this sort: *R.* oyles of violets and Waterlillies, ana \mathfrak{z} .iij. Calues suet, Hens grease and fresh butter, ana \mathfrak{z} .ij. commixe them, and make a Liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore, Embrications profit not a litle, if they be made of Violets, Mallows and other herbes that haue vertue to moisten. Against headach caused of moisture, you must vse medicines cleane contrary to the aforementioned, which must differ according to the heat or cold which is ioyned to the moisture. You may find sufficient store of such remedies out of the former Chapters.

Linimentum.

CHAP. V.

Of headach caused of blood.

Hitherto we haue spoken of the cure of headach which cometh through alteration and ditterper of the bare qualitie; but now we will speake of that which is caused of fulnesse, and abundance of blood. We call plenitude in this place that which the Greekes call in their tongue *plethora*; it chanceth when all the foure humours be increased in their proportion, or when blood alone doth abound. This kind of headach is caused of all such things as do ingender great abundance of humors in the body, as meates and drinks of great nourishment being plentifully taken: as also the neglecting and omitting of exercises, baths, sweatings, & other naturall and artificiall vacuations, be causes of the said plenitude. The signes be these: the face and the eyes be ruddie, the veines are swolne, so that the least and smallest may easily be seene: the pulse is great & vehement, the vrine reddish and thick, the veines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauinesse. Concerning diet, let the sicke be in a cold and dry aire, let him eschue flesh, reare egges, and such things as nourish plentifully: let him vse Prisan made of barley, or Alica made of barley: let him vse cold herbes, as Endiue, Scarioll, Purslaine, Lettuce, and such like: let him eschue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a litle Cinamon or Barley hath bene sodden: let him vse meane exercise: let him be rubbed: let him also vse bathing often, but so that his body be first emptied, and the patient free from a feauer. Let his sleepe be meane: let him be merry and ioyfull: and let him abstaine from all perturbations of the minde. The cure must be begun with blood letting as soone as can be. You must open the vtermost veine, which in the arme is called *Humeralis* or *Cephalica*: it must be on the arme which is of that side that the griefe is most vehement. For this veine is so annexed to the head, that not onely by it you shall pull backe blood into a contrary part, but also you shall emptie out that blood by it, as *Hippocrates*, and after him *Galen*, and *Rhases* do teach. But if age or weaknesse do prohibite bloodletting, you must vse boxing: not to the head it selfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the shoulders and breast, to the intent to pull backe the blood. These being done, you must apply to the head medicines that be cold and astringent, whereof we haue made mention before sufficiently in the second Chapter, so that they neede not here to be repeated.

*What is meant
by plenitude.
πληθυει.
Causa.*

Signa.

Viciu ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Cucurbitae.

Ventosa.

Localia.

*Decoctum
purgans.*

Discrepantia.

Furthermore, the Physition must have special regard in this case, that the patient be kept soluble. Therefore if the patient be any thing costive, you may minister this decoction, or some such like: *Rx.* flowers of Buglosse, Borage, roses, and violets, ana. M. β . the foure great cold seeds husked, ana \mathfrak{z} . ij. Sebesten, damaske prouines, of each in number xij. great Raisins, Tamarinds, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. barks of Myrobalanes, *Citrinorum*, *Indorum*, *Chebulorum*, *Embllicorum*, *Bellivicorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Liquorice, \mathfrak{z} . j. Fumitory, Maidenhaire, ana. M. j. *Tamariscum*, Harts tongue, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Sene and Polipody, of each \mathfrak{z} . β . Agarick chosen, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . Ginger, \mathfrak{z} . β . Seeth all these in a sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it and presse it hard. Adde to that decoction Sugar sufficient to make it sweet, purifie it with the whites of egges, and make a potion, whercof the patient shall drinke each morning, \mathfrak{z} . iij. fasting. And if so be that the patients costiuenesse require a stronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the said decoction, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of fine Reubarbe beaten to powder, and Spikenard, \mathfrak{z} . β . or you may dissolue it in *Casia fistula*, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . newly drawne, or \mathfrak{z} . j. of Manna, or of Disphannicon. \mathfrak{z} . iij. For the same purpose it is good also to minister vnto the patient syrupe of Violets, and *Acetosus simplex*. After this you must apply such medicins to the head, as be able to disperse the remnant of the paine & disease, as be seeds of Mallowes, Fennegreke, Cammomil, and Melilot flowers. Also oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and such like, whercof the Physition may at his choise make Liniments, Ointments, or Emplaisters in maner aforesaid. Note here further that if much blood abound after you haue let blood of the *Cephalica*, you may also strike the veine in the forehead: as also for that purpose it is good to vse clisters sometime very strong, and you may vse frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull backe the humours. Moreouer gargarising and sneeing may be vsed in time conuenient, and boxing in the hinder part of the head, with scarification, at the discretion of the Physition, as occasion and time shall serue.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach caused of Choler.

Causa.

Signa.

Velus ratio.

Headach coming of cholericke humours, is caused of all such things as do heate and dry the whole body, and especially the head vnnaturally, that is, such things as do ingender choler, (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exercise, watching, abstinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as Garlick, Onions, and such like. The signes be these: the paine is like theirs that haue headach caused of burning heate of the Sunne, but they haue a more sharpe and pricking paine, their head is moderately hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitterness of the mouth, driness of the eyes, nose, and tongue. Moreouer this euill chanceth most of all to flourishing yeares, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouermuch businesse in hand, and such like. Let the patient abide in a cold and moist aire, which may be procured by art, as is taught before in the second Chapter, by sprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by strewing of flowers and branches that are cold and moist in operation. Let his whole diet be moist, let him eate moist meates that be of good iuyce; giue him Lettuce and Purslaine, & small fishes of fresh waters: Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a litle Cinamon bath

hath bene soddens: Let him altogether abstaine from wine: Let him be quiet, & use long sleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him; let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the mind. This cure must be begun with purging of the cholericke humour straightway, because choler is thin and moueable, and therefore will easily purge out. But if it chance that the cholericke humour doth rest quietly in some part of the body, and so doth ware hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgation you must minister such things as do quench and concoct the heate and burning of choler, that is, such things as do alter it. For digestion that we speake of now, is nothing else but an alteration of the humour that causeth the disease: therefore such medicines must be ministred each morning fasting before you do purge, vntil good concoction appeare in the vrine: for by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed and made milde, is made so obedient vnto nature, that it will loone without any grieve be drawne of the purging medicine to conuenient places that it should auoid by. You shall therefore for a preparatiue use this or such like medicine: *Rx.* Syrupe of Violets, \mathfrak{z} . j. Syrupe of Waterlillies, \mathfrak{z} . β . distilled waters of Endiue, Succorie and Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. commixe them, and let them be drunke in the morning fasting. For this purpose also you may minister Iulep of Roses & Violets, or *Syrupus Acetosus*, or the decoction of seeds of Cucumbers, Gourds Purslaine, Endiue: roots also of Endiue and Succorie, Roses, Violets, Waterlillies, Lettuce, Damaske proines, Sebesten, Iuiubes, and such like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infusion of Wormwood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* ministred alone, or a litle Scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you shall not do amisse to take of the purging decoction prescribed in the former Chapter, \mathfrak{z} . iij. and to dissolve therein \mathfrak{z} . iij. of *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Psillio*, & so minister it. It is good also to minister infusion of Reubarbe, made after this sort: *Rx.* fine Reubarbe, \mathfrak{z} . ij. Spikenard \mathfrak{z} . j. cut them small, and infuse them in distilled waters of Endiue, Doddir, and Buglosse, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. pure Ale, \mathfrak{z} . β . the space of twelue houres: then straine it hard, and put thereto of *Electuaries de succo Rosarum* and *Psillio*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . commixe them, and make a purging potion. Also you may use *Pilule aurea* and *Alephangina*, or pils of Reubarb, or of *Hiera simplex*, and such like, or else *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes solutius*. For them that are delicate you may use this Bole: *Rx.* of *Diagridium*, \mathfrak{z} . β . of Maces, Cinamon, and Masticke, ana. gr. ij. conferue of Violets and Waterlillies, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Sugar as much as sufficeth, and make a Bole. Further, it profiteth now and then to use clisters made in this or like sort: *Rx.* Mallowes, *Althaa*, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana. M. β . whole Barley \mathfrak{z} . j. the foure common small cold seeds, that is, Lettuce, Purcelaine, Endiue, and Scarioll, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Seeth all these in running water to the third part, straine them, take of that decoction \mathfrak{lb} . j. of the pulpe of *Cassia fistula*, \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Hierapicra*, \mathfrak{z} . β . of oile of Violets, \mathfrak{z} . ij. oile of Roses, \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Melrosarum*, \mathfrak{z} . j. of Salt, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . commixe all together, and make a clister. After purging of the cholericke humor, you must apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and strengthen the head, whereof you shall finde store in the second Chapter. If the sicke cannot sleepe, annoynt the forepart of the head with oyles of Water-

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabbari.

Bolum purgans.

Clister.

Localia.

Slopes.

lillies, and oile of Poppie, to them you may for a need adde a little *Opium*, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legs may be well vled in time conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach caused of fleame.

Causa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Decoctum ex-
tenuans pitui-
tam.

Purgatio.

Pilule.

Clyster.

Headach coming of fleame, is caused of all such things as ingender fleame in the head, as a cold and moist aire, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, raw herbes, fruit, idlenesse, and sleeping vpon a full stomacke, and such other like. The signes hereof be fulnesse and heauinesse of the head, whitenesse and moistnesse of the face. Moreover the sicke will easily fall asleepe, he is slow, his senses are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also the signes declared in the third chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sicke remaine in an aire that is hote and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the aire be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with Cinamon, Frankensence, Cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be roasted, and let him eate spices with it. For his drinke, let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane: to be short, let him vse such diet as is prescribed in the third Chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation and digestion of the flegmatick humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut and diuide humours: such be *Mel Rosarum*, *Oximel simplex* and *compositum*, and *Scilliticum*, syrupe of *Stechades*, distilled waters of *Hylope*, *Betonie*, *Marioram*, *Sage*, and such like; minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this sort: *Rx. of Oximel Scilliticum*, \mathfrak{z} .j. of syrupe of *Stechades*, \mathfrak{z} . β . of distilled waters of *Hylope*, *Parcely* and *Marioram*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrups & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister this or such like decoction: *Rx. of the roots of Fenell*, *Parcely* and *Asparagus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. rootes of *Piony*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. seeds of *Annise*, *Fenel Siler montanum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Stichados*, *Origan*, *Serpillum*, *Marioram*, *Calamint*, *Betonie*, *Sage*, ana. \mathfrak{m} . β . fine *Cinamon*, *Mace*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and adde Sugar sufficient to make it sweete, clarifie it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of *Hylope*, & *Oximel simplex*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. commixe them all together, and make a potion. When the humours are extenuate, and made thinne and prepared to be purged, then must such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleame, for the which cause let the sick haue these pilles ministred vnto him: *Rx. Pilularum cochiarum* \mathfrak{z} .j. β . *Pilularum e hiera composita*, \mathfrak{z} .j. *Pil. Alephanginarum* \mathfrak{z} . β . *Agarick* made into trochisks, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Myrobalanorum Chebulorum*, \mathfrak{z} .j. fine *Turbith*, \mathfrak{z} . β . *Stichados* & *Ginger*, ana. gr.v. *Masticke*, gr.vij. seeds of *Piony* in number iij. *Castorei* g. iij. with *Lauender* water make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged, not once onely, but twice or thrice, because the grosse and clammy humours will not straight follow a sudden purgation, but they must be drawne out by litle and litle with often purging. Also clysters are good, not onely because they emptie out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they pull backe such humours and vapours as do ascend to the head. For clysters therefore the decoction before prescribed is good if you take therof \mathfrak{z} .xij. & dissolve therein

therein *Benedicta laxativa*, ℥.ss. *Electuarij Indi maioris*, ℥.iij. *Diaphanicon*, ℥.ij. *Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. oiles of Laurell and Rew, ana. ℥.j. ss. *Sal gemma*, ℥.j. commix them together, and make a clister. After the whole bodie is purged, you must minister such medicins as can purge the head, as be gargarises made in this sort: *Rx*. long Pepper and Nutmegs, ana. ℥.ss. seed of Stauisacre and Pellitorie, ana. ℥.ij. Mustard seed, Origan, ana. ℥.j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chue it, or with Masticke or Hony make Trochiskes like Lupines, and let the sicke chew one of them almost halfe an houre. Also the head may be purged by the iuyce of Marioram, *Blitum*, coleworts & such like. You may also for this purpose minister gargarismes made of the distilled waters of Hysope, Betony, Origan, with *Hierapicra* and *Oximel compositum*, or in this sort: *Rx*. Pellitorie, long Pepper, ana. ℥.j. ss. seed of Stauisacre, ℥.ss. Marioram, Penroyall, Hysope, Origan, Betonie, ana. M. ss. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, straine it, and adde to the liquor *Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. ss. *Oximel scilliticum*, ℥.ss. commix all, and make a gargarise. Also medicins to prouoke sneesing, are good in this case. You may make them after this sort: *Rx*. Marioram, ℥.j. *Nigella*, ℥.ss. Cloues, white Pepper, Cubebs, ana. ℥.j. Nutmegs, Graines, *Castoreum*, *Heleborus albus*, ana. ℥.ss. beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke sneesing therewith. For them which are rich, you may ad Muske and Amber, ana. gr. ij. It profiteth also to hold hote and sweet odours to the nose of the patient, or a Pomander artificially made, such a one as we prescribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further, you may take *Nasalia* (as they call them) things to be put in the nose, sharpe at one end and great at the other, like a scepel, after this sort: *Rx*. Stauisacre, Pellitory and white Pepper, ana. ℥.ss. *Nigella*, Nutmegs, ana. ℥.ij. *Heleborus albus*, ℥.ss. powder them, and with Rosin & Waxe make Natales. After the purging of the head, you may vse ointments, embrocations, dry quilts, and such like other medicines to disperse the remnant of the humor remaining in the head, whereof there be examples sufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiously minister inwardly, Cubebs condite, or *Diambra*, *Diamoscha*, *Aromaticum rosaceum*, *Diacupinum*, *Dianthos*, *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Diacorum*, conserue of Marioram, Rosemary, Betony, with syrupe of *Stichados*. Or minister these Lozenges which are specially good: *Rx*. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, *Dianthos*, ana. ℥.j. Cubebs, Maces, of each, ℥.ss. wood of Aloes, Cloues, and Fenell seed, ana. ℥.ss. fine Cinnamon, ℥.ij. *Stichados*, ℥.ss. with Sugar molten in the distilled waters of Piony flowers and Lauender, make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach caused of flegmatick humors. But it so be that headach be caused of a melancholy humor, then you must prescribe such diet, and vse such cure as shall be declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madnesse: and therefore it should be superfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for the cure of headach coming of melancholy, vnto the 28. Chapter of this booke following.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach caused of windinesse.

IF headach be caused of windinesse, the diet vsed before was such as did ingender wind; besides, the nature of the body, & other circumstances were such as were apt to ingender winde. The signes be these, i. there be felt distention and

Gargarise.

Gargarisme.

Sternutamentum.

Nasalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach coming of melancholy.

Causa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.
Cura.

Clyster.

Localia.

stretching in the head without heauinesse and beating, and if there be a sound & noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windinesse in the head. The diet of the patient, must altogether be such as doth not ingender windinesse. For the cure, if the windinesse be not onely bred in the head, but doth ascend from some part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines as do repell and driue backe: such be vineger, Pomegranate rinds and flowers, Wormewood, Melilot, Mints, Plantaine, Walwort, *Bursa pastori*, Nutmegs, Purslaine, Houfleeke, Lawrell leaues, and such like: which being moderately vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsive things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be Fenugreeke, Linseed, Cammomil, yolkes of eggs, Saffron, Hens grease, Goose grease, &c. Last of all adde discussive medicines, as oyle of Dil and Rew, Barley meale, Lupines, Lilly roots, Nigella, &c. It is good therefore first of all to empty the belly with a strong clister, but that must be made of a decoction that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water Annise seeds & caraway seeds, Fenel seed, Comin, dry Figs, bran, and such like: herein you must dissolue *Benedicta laxativa* ℥. iij. or *Electuarium Nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphanicon*. ℥. iij. or *Diacatholicon*, or *Hierapicra*, ℥. vij. Such kind of clisters do not onely purge the intestines, and the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthen the affected member, that it do ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomacke, the liuer, the spleene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heate abound in the head together with the windinesse, then apply oyle of Roses, which is both repulsive, digestive and discussive, and adde to it vineger, which is both repulsive and discussive also, and doth extenuate besides. Also Rose water or iuyce of Purslaine, Knotgrasse or Nightshade may be vsed and applyed with a litle vineger. If there be cold in the head with the windinesse, then vse oyle of Cammomill or Dill, mixed with a litle vineger, or if the griefe increase, apply the iuyce of Rew with vineger and oyle mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the roote of flower-de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of Lawrell berries and Rew mixed with vineger, is good to be applyed. Likewise bitter Almonds beaten with vineger and oyle, and applyed to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the griefe doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse dry quilts, you may make them at the first of *Milium*, Roses, Willow leaues, Knotgrasse, Nightshade and Purslaine, and so apply them to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may adde to the aforesaid Marioram, *Serpillum*, Hysop, Rew, tender leeuces of Lawrell, *Cyperus*, and such like. It is good also to vse odours and smels, as *Castoreum*, Muske, Amber, and such like. To prouoke sneezing, and to minister inwardly to the sick is good either *Diacuminum* or *Dianisum*, ℥. j. or as much Triacle or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through infirmity of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not need to vse repulsive medicines, but rather concoctive and discussive medicines, such as are before declared. As for inward medicines, they auile or profit litle in this case.

CHAP. IX.

Of headach caused of the stomacke.

Hitherto we haue declared the causes, signes and cures of headach caused principally in it selfe; now it remaineth that we intreate of paine in the head which

which cometh by contest. And first of that headach which cometh through euill affection of the stomacke. And that is caused most commonly when some sharpe humour aboundeth in the stomacke, especially in the mouth of it, from whence the corrupt vapours arising do ascend to the head. It may be knowne by the gnawing and biting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the desire to vomit that the patient hath: especially if the mouth of the stomacke be affected. Moreover in this kind of headach, if the sicke fast, and suffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abstinence the malice of the humour increaseth. You must cure those that are thus grieved, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the stomacke, which raise vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you must with speed purge the noysome humours that are in the mouth of the stomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if so be the patient can easily vomit: if not, he must thrust his finger or a feather down his throate, & so prouoke the stomacke to vomit. Note that yellow or pale choler, because of his naturall lightnesse, doth readily ascend to the mouth of the stomacke: but the humours that be flegmaticke, or soure, or salt, do rather remaine in the middest of the stomacke, then in the mouth of it. It is best when such humours are in the bottom of the stomacke, for then they will easily auoid the stomacke, and passe into the guts. It is worst of all when noysome humours do cleaue so fast to the filmes and tunicles of the stomacke, and do so furre them, that they can scarcely be scoured out. Therefore if any humour do furre the tunicles of the stomacke, minister *Hierapicra*, which is a soueraigne medicine therefore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates, easie of digestion, and wholesome for the stomack. And for as much as lacke of good digestion, and weaknesse of the mouth of the stomacke, be the greatest causes of increase of noysome humours in the stomacke, it must be provided that good digestion be procured, and that the mouth of the stomacke may be strengthened by such medicines as be astringent, and haue vertue to strengthen, whereof you shall finde plentie hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were superfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter spoken of headach caused of the stomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, so vnderstand likewise if headach be caused of the disease of the liuer or spleene, or any other member: for the affects of those members being cured, the headach ceaseth.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Hierapicra.

Note.

CHAP. X.

Of headach caused by drunkennesse.

THe causes and signes of drunkennesse are euident enough, chiefly hote wines and strong drinks are causes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours; and that so much the more (as *Galen* said) if the braine be hote by nature: sometime also hote humours ascending to the head, do cause drunkennesse. The cure of drunkennesse generally consisteth in two points: that is, in euacuation and refrigeration. Therefore if the wine be yet vndigested, & do flow in the stomacke, cause him that hath the headach to vomit, by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digestion, you must vse medicines that do refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which ascend to the

Causa.

Curatio.

Warme water and a litle syr.

Acetose commixed, causeth vomit.

Preseruat.

Vicus ratio.

Dates.

Irius.

Nardinum.

head: as is oyle of Roses alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of Iuie, or Coleworts. Also the leaues of Coleworts steeped in warme water, and bound about the head, do naturally resist drunkennesse. Moreover the broth of Coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpose. To preserue one from drunkennesse (as *Aetius* saith) let him eate v. or viij. bitter Almonds fasting, or let him drinke Wormwood wine first of all. But to take away drunkennesse that is present, giue the decoction of Centory the lesse to drinke, or Harts horne, or the seed of Veruaine boyled in water. You must haue a speciall regard, and procure that the patient do sleepe and rest; which being done all day, at night bathe him in a bath of sweet water, & when thou hast washed him, let him eate meats of good iuyce, but not ouer-hote. Let therefore his food be Prisan broth, souppings made of *Alica*, bread dipped in water, reare eggs, and such like. For pot herbs Lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and Coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke, let him vse water onely, if he hath bene accustomed thereto, and can wel beare it, otherwise giue him small drinke, or a little small white wine. After his meate, giue him of a Pomgranate, or a Peare, or a Quince, or Raisins. To conclude, let all his diet be meats of good iuyce, pleasant to the stomacke, and that driue away vapours. Let him abstaine from Dates, for their propertie is to cause headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours ascending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and stuffed in the thin pores, and so do cause headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of Roses, and vse first in steed of it, oyle of Cammomill moderately warme. Afterward, apply oyle of Ireos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heate more, commixing with the oyle of Ireos, oyle of Nard, or *oleum costinum*, or other oyles and oyntments of that sort.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach caused by feauers.

Cause.

Cura.

IF headach do molest those that haue a Feauer, you must diligently examine and consider, whether the same began at the first beginning of the feauer, or whether it sprong the feauer increasing: for if the headach began not with the first fit of the feauer, but afterward while the feauer increased, and came nigh to the Crisis, then seeke not to remedie it, for it portendeth and foretellet that vomit or a decretorie fluxe of bloud at the nose will follow shortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of Predictions, and *Galen* in his third booke *de Crisibus*, and in his first booke *ad Glauconem*, cap. ultimo. If the headach began at the first with the feauer, it cometh of vapours or humours dispersed abroad through the greatnesse of the feauer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate it to the head, and partly also through weaknesse of the braine. Therefore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you must let him bloud after the first or second fit (if nothing prohibit it) especially in lustie bodies, and in such as abound with bloud. Also you must draw the humours a contrary way, & pull them back by sharpe clifters, such as shall be prescribed in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*, and by often binding and much frication in the neather parts. Moreover you may set cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You must apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell and driue backe

backe from it, and afterward you must vse discusse medicines: last of all, such things as do strengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vse oyle of Roses, and other such like as are rehearsed before in the 2. Chapter. Vse them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a little vineger; but in winter season, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouermuch watching do trouble the sicke, vse irrigations made of Poppie heads, Housleeke, and such like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke sleep, in this sort. *Rx.* flowers of Violets, Waterlillies, and Roses, ana M. j. hulled barley \mathfrak{z} . j. heads of Poppie, \mathfrak{z} β . Housleeke, M β . sceth all these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, and make an Embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of Henbane or Poppie, with oyle of Roses, a little vineger and crummes of bread; commize them, and apply them to the forepart of the head, and to the forehead. When the braine is sufficiently cooled, then apply those things which can heate the head againe, and so auoid and disperse the humors that remaine. And therefore you may vse oyles of Cammomill, Dill, or *Irees*, or decoctions of Cammomill, or *Althea*, or such like. And if the humour be grosse & tough, you may boile with the aforesaid things *Serpillum*, Peniroyall, Calamint, Mints, or such like. Last of all the head must be strengthened by oile of Roses, and such like, that is, Betony, Cammomill, Melilot, &c. The rest of the cure of headach caused through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be sought out in the treatise of Feauers.

CHAP. XII. *Of inneterate headach.*

C*ephalæa* both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long, and hard to cease, which vpon light occasions hath very sharpe and great fits, so that the patient can neither abide noise, nor loud speech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor saouours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but desireth for the greatnesse of the paine to sit or lye quiet in the darke, supposing that his head were stroken with a hammer. Also some of them do feelee those things that are about their head, as though they were brused or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This disease sometime doth continue painfull alwayes, sometime it hath fits and intermissions, either ordinate or inordinate. For in some there is intermission in the fits, as in the falling sicknesse, so that for a time they seeme to be perfectly whole. This disease doth vex women more then men, because of their long haire. In some of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained: but in some, onely the filme that couereth the scull is grieved. It is caused of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the sharpnesse of humours or vapours contained within or without the scull, and inflaming the head, or it is caused through weaknesse of the head. The paine that inuadeth the sicke with grauity and heauinesse, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours: if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpnes of humours or vapours: if it beate like the pulses, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt distension and bolning in the head without heauinesse or beating, it declareth

Note.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Reuulsio.

Localia.

Note.

Verbenas-
recta.

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflammation in the filmes of the head: and if there be heaviness with the distension, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt superficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the scull is grieved. But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that those that haue paine within the scull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, because that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning of the filmes of the braine. And it so be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned to the headach. They also are vexed with a feuer which haue headach caused by inflammation. As for diet to be vsed in this griefe, you may easily prescribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersitie of the causes thereof: and therefore I omit it here willingly, lest I should vse a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuersity of the cause. For if you find abundance of humours or vapours to be the cause, if it be ingendred of plenitude of the whole body, you must begin with euacuation of the whole body. And therefore you must let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the same side, if his strength will suffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours that do ascend, for that it is weake, then you must pull backe the matter vnto the whole body, and so remedie the part affected. Therefore you must vse very sharpe clisters, and bindings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts: and sometime also in this case you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that bloud do seeme still to abound, you may open a veine in the nostrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as shall be requisite. Shortly after you must purge the body with *Hierapicra*, or other things that are prescribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole bodie, you may safely come to purging of the head, and in the end vse medicines to strengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargarismes, and with medicines put into the nose, as iuyce of Leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or such like, which be rehearsed before in the seuenth Chapter. To the head it selfe you must first apply things that do repell and driue backe: such be, oyle made of vnripe Oliues, and oyle of Roses alone, or applyed with vineger, also oyle made of Poppy heads and of Iuie berries, and of greene Mints, and such like, whereof we haue spoken before. But note, if the humours that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme; but if the humours abounding be hote and cholericke, then apply those medicines cold. Afterward you must apply those medicines that do discusse and disperse humours, as be oyles of Cammomill and Dill, and such like before rehearsed; but if the humours abounding be thicke and tough, boyle *Serpillum*, or Peniroyall, or Calamint, or Mints in oyle, and thou shalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Besides, these things do strengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vsed vntill the cure be finished. Aboue all other things Veruaine doth disperse humours, and mightily corroborate the head, especially being greene. Also being drie, and boyled in Ale, rootes and all together, with *Serpillum*, it doth the like, if the head be annointed therewith. Moreover if you boile Veruaine alone in oyle, & do sprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it were

were caused of cold, and grosse and viscos humours, as Galen witnesseth, lib. 2. de Compos. medicam. secundum locos. Also for the same it profiteth much to vse oyle, wherein Soves, called in Latine *Millipede*, be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalaea* coming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof coming of other causes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migraine.

H*emicrania* is a painfull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right halfe or on the left, and is distinguished by the seame that runneth along in the scull, from the middle forehead to the hinder part of the head: this griefe in English is called the Migraine. This paine cometh often by fits, and in some the griefe is felt without the skull, in some within deepe in the braine, and in some other nigh to the temples in the muscles there. This paine is caused by ascending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the veines, or by the arteries, or by both. Sometime they onely proceed from the part contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thrust out their excrements and superfluities from thence, and sometime from the parts of the bodie beneath the head, which send vp corrupt vapours and humours from themselves to the braine. The signes whereby you should know whether vapours or humours do abound, and whether they be hote or cold, are to be gathered out of the former Chapters. As also to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the skull or without, reade the former Chap. of *Cephalaea*. Onely this I adde here, that if in this disease the filme that couereth the skul be affected, then is their paine so vehement, that they cannot suffer to be touched with ones hand: so that it seemeth the skin it selfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they should vse, & what they should eschue, may readily be gathered and prescribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersity of causes: but specially let the patient refraine from such things as do send abundance of sharpe vapours vp to the head, as be Garlicke, Onions, Mustard, Radish roots, and such like. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. And therefore when you will cure the Migraine, consider diligently first whether the patient needeth bloudletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude and abundance of bloud & humours, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the same side that the griefe is, but if the Migraine be caused of abundance of one humour, then purge that humour by conuenient medicines, which are prescribed in the former Chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to locall and outward medicines, and first cause the patient, either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is griued, and specially about the muscles of his temples, vntill it be red and hote; and this must be done before the fit of paine cometh. After the fit (as Galen teacheth in the end of his second booke *De Compos. medic. secundum locos*) you must apply medicines which of the old Physicians were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vsed for the Migraine: noting this alwayes, that if with the paine there were much heate felt, then you ought to apply such things as would somewhat coole. But

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

*Unguentum.**Oleum.**Note.**Pilule.*

if there were no euident heate felt, then vse those things that are very hote. But you must commixe with either of these somewhat that is restrictive, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect, *R.* of oiles of Dill and *Irees*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . of white Pepper, and *Serpillum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . \mathfrak{ss} . of *Castoreum*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . of *Euphorbium*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . of Waxe, q. \mathfrak{ss} . & make an ointment to be applyed vpon the halfe of the forehead, and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. *R.* Sweet oyle Oliue, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *Euphorbium*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . commixe them, and drop one drop into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lesse according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the Migraine engendred of hote vapours or humours. *Aetius* saith, that *Euphorbium* dissolued in vineger, and applyed to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine bid propertie helpe the Migraine. The same Author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applyed to the grieue, as also the flesh of Snayles bruised and applyed, doth profit much. The kernels of Peaches bruised and applied vpon the grieue (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith, that the dung of a Goate stamped and commixed with vineger squilliticke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceaseth the paine of the Migraine for euer. Also his counsell is, if there be sudden paine of the Migraine, take Frankensence, Mirrhe, and an egge; beate them together, and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the Migraine be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which were prescribed before in the cure of headach coming of heate or cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine Pils, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the Migraine. First if choler abound, *R.* powder of *Hiera simplex Galei*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . *pilularum Arabicarū*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ii} . trochiskes of *Myrabolanes citrini*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . \mathfrak{ss} . *Reubarbe*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *Spikenard*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . commixe them with syrupe of Violets, and reserue the composition. When need requireth minister \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} or \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{iiij} . siue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten dayes, or once in fiftene dayes at all times (Sommer excepted.) But if fleame abound make your Pils thus. *R.* of *Agaricke trochiscate*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{iiij} . *pilula Arabica*, and *Hiera simplex Gal.* ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . \mathfrak{ss} . floures of *Stachados*, and trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Chebulorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . with syrupe of *Stachados*, and *Oximel*; commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . or \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{iiij} . at each time in forme aforesaid. But if melancholy be cause of the Migraine, *R.* of the aforesaid *Pilula Arabica*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . of powder of *Senec* and *Epithimum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . \mathfrak{ss} . of *Hiera simplex Gal.* \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . \mathfrak{ss} . of trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Indorum*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{iiij} . with syrupe of *Fumitory* and *Balme water* make Pils. and when need requireth, minister them in forme aforesaid.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

That which the Latins call *Vertigo*, is a disease wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about. There is another disease somewhat like vnto this, which in Latine is called, *Tenebriosa Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth thinke that all that he seeth turneth about, and suddenly with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist and darknes. It is commonly of the Physitions called *Scotoma*. *Fuchsius* doth thinke that they erre greatly that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors, *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate moving of windy vapours and spirits contained in certaine parts of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distempered and euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. The braine it selfe is euill affected, when a grosse and rough humour is contained in it, from whence a vaporous and windy spirit, being resolved by weake heate, is moued inordinately about in the braine. The mouth of the stomack doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are carried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this disease, a darknes and mist appeareth before their eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chanceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, and therefore the patient many times falls downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele, or any such thing turne about. Also if he see whirlepoles in the water turne about: for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like thing, do also turne about in like sort, and so the moving of the humour and the spirits are troubled, vnequall, and inordinate. When this disease doth proceed of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine and heauinesse in the head. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by some other meanes, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomacke, then they feele before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the heartburne, and a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sicknesse, for that this doth neither take away the senses from the patient, nor causeth the crampe and writhing of the members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as *Galen* saith) is nigh to the falling sicknesse and the Apoplexie, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernicious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sicknesse and the Apoplexie. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloody and reddish, he is apt to fall into madnesse, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sicknesse. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becometh most vehement in Winter or in the beginning of the Spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sicknesse will follow: and many do vse to call it a little Epileptic. As concerning diet, let the patient remaine in an aire that is temperate, pure, bright, and cleare; and let him eschue grosse and cloudy aire. Let him eschue windes, specially South windes: let him also auoid the beames of the Sunne and the Moone: as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

Causa.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Vltima ratio.

as running waters or things that turne about, as wheels, & such like; or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of easie digestion, and such as engender no windines, as Partrich, Capon, Pheasant, Chicken, veale, scaly fishes, and such like, that be easie of digestion. And let him vse to eate but moderately of them: for satiety, as also long fasting, is not good for him. He must eschue all things that cause vapours to ascend into the head, as Onions, Garlicke, Leekes, and such like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very oide: small white wine may be permitted him. After meate it is good for him to vse some restrictive thing to stop the vapours that they ascend not to the head, and that specially if the stomacke be cause of this disease. Let his exercise be moderate, let him eschue sleepe of the day, neither let him sleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he sleepe, and let him not keepe his head too hote. In his exercises, let him not stirre his head much, and therefore it is good for him to vse frictions often, specially in the morning before he riseth: begin at the vpper parts, and end with the nether. He must refraine from perturbations and affections of the mind, specially from anger, feare, and sadnesse, as also from loud crying, and singing. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a stoole once in a day, you must helpe nature either by clister or suppositary. For the cure, if the fit be present you must reuiue the patient againe with sweet and odoriferous smels, and with frictions and such like. At which time also if need be, you must vse a suppositary or a clister. Afterward if the patient be strong, and no other impediment present, let him bloud on the *Cephalica* veine, whether it be the beginning of the disease or otherwise. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occasion. Therefore you must draw away the bloud at sundry times, vntill you haue sufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloudletting, first you must purge him with a sharpe clister, whereof you shall haue example afterward in the chap. of Apoplexy. Afterward minister a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require. But forget not first to vse a preparatiue. When the whole body is sufficiently purged, you must vse locall things to the head, and first apply cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. Afterward vse to minister gargarismes & sterputations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the nose iuyce of Chickweed, Beets or *Cyclaminus*. Also *Nitrum* beaten with *Nigella* and mixed with old oyle, purgeth well by the nostrils. Also odors made of the decoction of Maricrant, Hylope, and flowers of *Stachados*, a litle *Castoreu*, Muske, and vineger being added, is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, specially a naturall bath that is of Alum, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you must coole it often with oyle of Roses and vineger applied in clothes to it, specially on the forepart of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the disease do cease by these remedies, then vse no other. But if it continue still, you must cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, specially if the disease come of hote vapours ascending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but also of *Ætius* and *Paulus Aegineta*. How the arteries should be cut, you shall learne of the said *Aegineta* in his 6. booke and 4. Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that

Curatio.

Vena. sectio.

Localia.

some

some have not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous spirits do sometime ascend by deeper arteries into the braine, & partly for that a windy spirit may be engendred by an inequall distemper of the braine. And therefore if the disease be caused by any of these meanes before rehearsed, the patient shall feele small ease or none by cutting of the arteries; and therefore be diligent to enquire of the aforesaid causes before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cautery behind the eares, *R.* of Cantharides, their heads, wings and legs being cast away. *℞.* *℥.* *ss.* sharpe leaven, *℥.* *ss.* with vinegar and *Aqua vite*, commix them and apply them. If the *Vertigo* be caused by the content of the stomacke, that is, if humours contained in the mouth of the stomacke do send up vapours to the braine, and so cause the *Vertigo*, it must be cured by vomit, which you shall prouoke in this sort. *R.* of Dill a handfull, seed of Radish and Rapes, ana. *℥.* *ij.* of radish roots, *℥.* *ss.* boile them in sufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and put thereto *Oximet Scilliticum*, *℥.* *j.* *ss.* commix them and make a potion, and minister it bloud warme after meate immediatly: and if this suffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*, or with pills that be good for the stomacke, called *Stomachica* for that cause, or with the decoction of *Myrobalanes citrine*, or *Chebuls*, or with Manna, or sirupe of *Roses solutiue*, according to the diuersity of the humour abounding. Let the patient v/e commonly after meate to eat some restrictive thing that will close the mouth of the stomacke, and hinder the ascending of vapours vp to the head, as is *Diacoteneon sine speciebus*, and *Quinces*, or restrictive *Peares*, or such like. *Marcellus* saith, the iuyce of blacke Beets annointed vpon the temples helpeth the *Vertigo*. And if *Sothernwood* be boyled in wine, or in *Oximet*, and drunke warme, it is a most effectuell remedie to cure it perfectly.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Frensie.

Phrenitis in Greeke and in Latine, is a disease wherein the mind is hurt, and doth onely differ from madnesse, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feauer is ioyned with the Frensie, and therefore the Frensie may be called a contiouall madnesse and fury ioyned with a sharpe feauer. *Galen* saith that the Frensie is an inflammation of the braine, or of the filmes thereof. *Aetius* saith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feauer, causing raging and vexation of the mind. There be three kinds of Frensies (as *Galen* doth witnesse in his fourth booke *de locis affectu*, ap. 40.) according to the internall senses, which be three in number, that is, imagination, cogitation, and memory, which may seuerally be hurt. Two of those kinds be simple, and the third is compounded of those two. For some be freneticke which can iudge rightly of those things that they see, as touching common sense and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantasie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being freneticke, are not deceiued in cogitation and reason, but onely in imagination they erre. There be other some freneticke, which do erre both in sense and cogitation, that is, both in imagination and reason, and do therewith also lose their memorie. The Frensie is caused either of abundance of bloud, or of choler, occupying the braine or the

Cauterium.

Cure of the
Vertigo that
cometh of the
stomacke.
Vomitus.Three kinds of
frensies.

Cause.

Signa.

filmes thereof. And if the choler whereof the disease engendreth be burnt, then the Frensie is most vehement, and more peronious then any other. Those that be frensticke haue a continuall feuer, and be madde, for the most part they cannot sleepe. Sometime they haue trouble some sleepes, so that they rise vp, and leape, and cry out furiously: they babble words without order or sense; being asked a question, they answer not directly, or at the least rashly, and that with loud voice, especially if you speake gently to them. Their eyes be bloudshotten and bleared, they rub them often, sometime they are dry, and sometime full of sharp teares. Their tongue is rough, and bloud will often drop out of their nose. Moreover they pull mores and flockes from the bedding and clothes about them. Their pulses be small & weake, and somewhat hard and sinewy: they fetch their breath but seldome. Note that they which haue the Frensy caused of bloud, do laugh in their madnesse. But those that be frensticke through choler, do rage furiously, so that they cannot be ruled without bands, and such do vse to forget all things that they do or say, so that some of them, when they require the chamber pot, do forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they remember not to restore the vessell againe.

Prognostica.

As touching the prognostication of this disease. Galen and all other learned Physicians do confesse that it is most sharpe and most perillous, and indeed incurable and deadly, for the most part. Hippocrates saith in his 72. Aphorisme of his fourth booke, that vrine white and cleare in those that do rane, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the sicke be vied in this sort. If it be Winter, let him lye in a warme place, if it be Sommer, let his lodging be in a coole place; let the aire & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerse pictures in the place. And for that some be troubled with the light, and some with darknesse, it is best to try them in both, and to lay him in the light which is afraid of darknesse, and contrarily he that is offended at the light, let him be in a darke place. But if the sicke person do finde no difference in the places, then, if he be strong, let him haue light; if weake, keepe him in a darke place. Let his dearest friends come to him, and let them sometime speake gently and softly vnto him, and sometime rebuke him sharply. Let his meate at the first be Pisan broth, and husked Barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulsa*, that is, water and Hony sodden together, or in hony of Roses. Boile in his broths Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Mallowes, and such like, which haue vertue to coole and moisten. When the disease decreaseth, you may giue him scaly fishes, such as liue in gravelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him Pomegranates & Cherries. Let his drinke be water wherein a lile Cinamon or barley hath bene boiled, you may commixe with it stupe of Violets, or of Roses, or of water Lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but seldome, and litle at once. When signes of concoction appeare in the vrine, and the vehemency of the feuer is slaked, if then the sicke do lacke strength, you may giue him small ale. Moreover let the sicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is possible; if he be rich let his seruants hold him, if poore bind him; for inordinate mouing diminisheth strength. Also a bath of sweet water is good for him, if the body be drie and rimped, but he must vse it bloud warme: for so it cooleth and moisteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the driselle and ouermuch watching.

Vicius ratio.

watching but take heed you vse no bathing before the body be purged. Moreover, perturbations of the minde do hurt freneticke persons exceedingly, and therefore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choler. For the cure, if strength of the patient will suffer, let him bleed forthwith, for there is done so present a helpe. You must cut the most most veine of the arme called *Cephalica*, and if that appeare not, take the middle veine, and draw out as much blood as strength will suffer. But take heed you let him not bleed vntill he swoond, as many rashly do; for it is better to take lesse then you should do, the body being much weakned by vehement motion. You must take good heed, lest the sicke do priuily take away the band off his arme, to loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength do forbid bloudletting, then vse cupping with scarification, behind in the necke or on the backe bone, which be profitable, for that they draw backe the humours that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clysters are specially to be vsed made in this sort *Rx*. Mallow leaues, Violet leaues, Endiue, and Lettuce, ana. *M. j.* of Barly decorticate, *℥ j.* Sebesten, number 11. seeds of Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers, ana. *℥ iij.* seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it and take of the decoction, *℥ xij.* of *Cassia fistula* newly drawne, *℥ j.* *℞*. of mel *Rosarum*, *℥ j.* oile of Violets, *℥ iij.* of Salt, *℥ j.* *℞*. commixe them all & make a clyster. If you will haue it purge more strongly, put to it of *Hierapiera*, or *Eletharium de succo Rosarum*, *℥ ℞*. Binding of the extreme parts of the body profits much, to diuert the humors from the head. Also *Mathiolum* doth greatly commend *Staubium* with the conserues of Roses, and I my selfe haue proued it in this order to be most excellent, as followeth *Rx*. *g* 12 made in very fine powder, and put into claret wine, *℥ iij.* & let it stand houres 30. and euery 6. or 7. houre shake it, and at the 30. houres end, powre it from the powder, & let him drink it with a litle sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors from the head, as also to rub the feet with salt and vinegar and such like. You must sprinkle the head with oile of Roses, or vinegar of Roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed, cannot safely abide actuall cold nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of Nighshade, & of Plantaine, or the distilled waters of them, or such like herbs. If the euil be very vehement, moisten his face continually with oile of water wherein the tops of Poppy haue bene lodden. You may also vse odours to his nose of Roses, Violets water Lillies, and such like. Also annoint his nostrills within, & his forehead with the iuyce of the foresaid herbes: for you must endenour to astony and dull the braine (which burneth extremely) by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch, then you must apply such things as prouoke sleepe, as this ointment following or such like *Rx*. *Vnguentum*, *guentum populeum*. *℥ ij.* oile of Violets, *℥ iij.* seed of Henbane, and barked of Mandrake roots, ana. *℥ ℞* of *Opium*, *g* ij. of Saffron, *g* iij. Vineger a litle, white Wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment & annoint the temples therewith. Also this embrocation may be vsed bloud warme to the head *Rx*. *Embrocha*, *Embrocha*, *℞*. squares of Violets, red Roses and water Lillies, ana. *M. j.* Barly decorticate, *℥ j.* seeds of white Poppy, *℥ ij.* seeds of Lettuce, *℥ iij.* seeth them in sufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, & make an embrocation. You shall make the decoction of more force

Curatio.
Vena sectio.

Clyster.

A purging
possum.

Localia.

Vnguentum.

Embrocha.

if you adde leaues of Henbane, Nightshade, Poppy heads, Mandrake apples, or roots, and a little vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, Poppy heads, or Mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drinke water wherein Poppy or Henbane seed hath bin sodden, or some somnoriferous compound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *Philomeli*, or such like; in ministring whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemencie of the fit, but in the declining thereof. Beside, note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines, as well inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease by ouermuch cooling you may turne the Frensie into a Lethargie, whereby you may cause him to sleep so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleepe: for in such as be weak (as *Trallianus* saith) somnoriferous potions do no small hurt, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is asswaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day, you must apply discutient medicines which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease. And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, flowers of Gammomill, Dill, Melilior, marsh Mallowes, and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining) do apply to the head Hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the lungs of a Weather hote. But take good heed that no such thing be applied in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemency thereof, for so you should increase the inflammation & the feauer, & make the sicke in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *Serpillum*, that is, wilde Thyme, or Sauory. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Cassoreum*, for that it is of subtile substance, & will worke his force through the skull. When the trenticke person is recovered, let him eschue drunkenness, idleness, variety and corruption of meats, & specially the burning heate of the Sun. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the Frensie, but also a remedie against immoderate watching, & raving in any sort ingendred by feuers, when the patient is so vexed by them (although they come by consent, & be but accidents of the feuers) that it is necessary to remedie them, lest the braine in time be thereby affected.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Lethargus in Greeke & in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the Frensie; for it causeth sluggishnes and an inexpugnable desire of sleeping: some call this disease in Latin *veternus*. They that be takē with this disease, do forget all things whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in Greeke is forgetfulness, and *Arges* is slothfull or dul, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dul obliuion, and therefore may be called in Latin *Oblivio iners*. It is caused of fleame, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleepe. The fleame doth putrefie in the braine, and thereby causeth a feauer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke de *Methodo medendi*). Also they haue alwaies a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, & sticketh seldome, and is watery, that is, it beatech as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome and weakly, they are continually sluggish and sleepey, and can scarcely by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime
open

Discutientia.

signa.
apptis.
Causa.

Signa.

open their eyes if you cry loud to them, and shut them againe forthwith: they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Oftentimes being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessel, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquid: but contrariwise many are costine. Their vrine is like beasts vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweate all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth lie be light and warme. Let his meats be such as do extenuate, cut and drie, and let them be seasoned with *Apium*, Annise, Comin, Pepper, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. Let the sicke cate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and Chickens, Partrich, Thrush, and such like. For pot-herbes let him vse *Asparagus*, Fenell, Parcely, and such like. Also giue him broth made with Barley or Oatmeale, or *Alica* with *Oxymel* or Peniroyall. Let his drinke be *Hydromel*, that is, water and honey sodden together, Meade, or watery thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme parts for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else do let) it is good forthwith to let bloud. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much bloud as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let bloud, then must the bowels be scoured with sharp clifters, whereof you shall finde examples in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of *Hysope* in honey and water, or with *Thyme*, *Peniroyall*, *mel Rosarum*, or *Oxymel* commixed with syrupe of *Borage*, or infusion of *Roses*, & waters of *Hysope*, *Betony*, *Marioram*, and *Borage*. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell steame, whereof you shall find examples in the next Chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *Oxyrhodinum*, that is, vineger of *Roses*, and that in the beginning, for the humor is to be repelled & driven back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also it is good to vse frictions with *Pellitory Pepper*, salt, & vineger, and bindings of the extreme parts. Moreover, apply to the nostrils odours which will awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, *Tarte*, *Galbanum*, *Sulphur*, *Harts horne*, *Sothernwood*, or *Goats horne* burnt a litle and holden to the nostrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boile *Thyme*, *Peniroyall*, and *Origan* in vineger, and hold that decoction to the nose of the sicke, that the fume ascending to the braine, may cut and diuide the tough humours. Also anoint the palat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicines, as with *Mustard* & *Hony*, *Mithridatū*, *Theriaca*, powder of *Pellitory*. And you must endeauour to pluck out the steame that sticketh there with your finger: sometime also you may prouoke sneeking with *Castoreum*, or *Pepper*, or *Eleborus*, and if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shauethe head, and apply to it bags of salt, or *Miliū*, or such like. Or make this decoction following & let it run on high vpon the forefront of the head. R^x. wild *Thyme*, *Hysope*, and *Sauory*, with a litle *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile and vineger, and vse it. Moreover, it profiteth to apply a *Sinapismus*, made of *Figges* and *Mustard seed* bearen together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part

Vicius ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

Castoreum.

of the head cupping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioyne of the neck, partly easily, & partly with scarification. Also the head must be anointed with *Castoreum*. And (as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunke with *Oxymel* an houre before the fit, is exceeding good for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life & health. You may minister ʒj. thereof with ʒj. of *Oxymel*, or with too much white wine astringent, or with *aqua Mulsa*. Besides you must often prouoke nature to expell excrements with Clusters, and such things as prouoke vrine. You must anoint the share with oyle of Rew wherein a little *Castoreum* is mixed you must giue him to drinke such things as do extenuate and cut grosse and clammy humours, as be decoctions of *Apium*, Fennell, Maidenhaire, and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow downe such potions often, and therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the Lethargy it continueth long. If strength do permit, you may minister *Hiera ex Colocynthide*, and prouoke him to sweate with the medicines aforesaid. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke, or in a litter is profitable, and bathing is exceeding good at that time: but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any means. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heate of the bath, at the least let him be washed at home in a vessel of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bath with sharpe Sope, as with wine lies burnt, with Mustard seed, Pellitory, Pepper, Laurell berries, quicke Lime, adding double as much *Nitrum*.

CHAP. XVII.

*Of Memory lost.**Cause.*

Memory *deperdita*, the losse of memorie chanceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused of the Lethargie and other soporiferous diseases. It cometh to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulness: which when it chanceth, then a cold distemper is the cause that the memorie is perished or grievously hurt. This coldnesse hath sometimes moistnesse ioyned with it, and sometime drinesse: sometime any one of the former distempers may cause this disease alone: therefore the Physitian must diligently discern the causes. The causes of this disease be either externall or internall: if they be internall, either abundance of fleame or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humours abounding, then must it needs come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed, and so turned into oblivion, or if medicines were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour, with study, and watching, or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but a little cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory, then the affe is called *Fatuitas* or *Stultitia*, that is, foolishnes or doolishnes, and both these do come of one disposition: but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if onely a dry distemper occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euill, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sicke. If onely a moist distemper be cause of it, then they are heavy & inclined to sleepe, & their sleepes be long and troublesome. If cold be

Signa.

be ioyned with moisture, it engendreth the Lethargy and *Carnus*, whereof we will intreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue lost their memory you must obserue their sleepes, whether they be ouer sleepey, or in a meane, or sleepe not at all: for so shall you find what distemper doth most abound. Besides you must marke whether they auoide any thing at the nose, or whether any thing distill from the head by their mouth, or whether those parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewise coniecture the distemper abounding. And if sicame be cause of the euill, you shall perceiue it not onely by immoderate sleepe, and abundance of excrements descending from the braine (as is aforesaid) but also by the disposition of the sicke, by his age, and his complexion, by the time of the yeare, the region, the state of the aire, and the diet that he vsed before. For all those or the most part of them encline to cold & moisture. Likewise if melancholy abounding be cause of the disease, you shall know it, for that the sicke is not sleepey at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all from the braine: besides, the state of his body and all other circumstances about rehearsed encline to cold and drinesse. His diet must be diuerse according to the diuersity of the causes. But whatsoever the cause be, let the aire that the sicke remaineth in, be inclining to heate, and let his lodging be light: let not his windowes be North nor South, for the one cooleth, and the other filleth the head. Let him eschue much sleepe, specially in the day time, & vpon a full stomacke. But note if the disease be caused of a cold and moist distemper, then the whole order of his diet must be hote and dry. But if the cause be cold and dry, then must the diet be altogether such as wil heate & moisten. As touching the cure, if losse of memory be caused by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations, or by (wounding often, and so ouermuch drinesse do hurt the memory, then minister no medicins, but onely restore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborate, & strength renewed, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requisite for such a diet, you shall find it in the Chapter of the feauer he-like. If the memory be lost by extreme age, then physicke will nothing auaille: but onely they must content themselves with diet conuenient. But if the memorie faile suddenly, the other members of the body being safe, then the falling sicknes is to be feared, or the palsey, or the Apoplexy. And therefore in such a case you must provide diligently by all meanes, that no such thing chace as is to be feared. You may prevent those diseases by the same remedies that you wold vse in the cure of the being present. And if the memory faile by meanes of other diseases, as through the Lethargy or Pestilence, then medicins for cure thereof are to be vsed. The whole scope of curing the disease, if it come onely of a cold distemper of the braine, consisteth in heating. You must therefore minister medicins that haue vertue to heare as well inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you must annoint the head with warme oile, & that in Sommer. In winter annoint it with oile of *Ireos* comixed with sharpe vineger, & sometime boile wild Thyme, & Calamint, & such like in the oile, & so vse it. Some do adde to it Pepper, and Laurell berries. Also *Castoreum* is profitable being comixed with oile and annointed vpon the hinder part of the head. Also this ointment is very good. R. of *Oleum de lateribus*, and oile of *Castoreum*, ana \mathfrak{z} . ss. rootes of *Acorus* and *Valerian*, \mathfrak{z} . j. Pellitory and Rew, of each \mathfrak{z} . j. ss. with.

*Vicinus ratio.**Curatio.**Unguentum.*

Sacculus.

Waxe sufficient make an ointment, & annoint the hinder part of the head therewith being shaven, & apply this quilt vpon it: *Rx.* flowers of Rosemarie, Balme, & Lauender, ana. M. *ss.* flowers of Elder, M. j. *Stachas*, *℥. iij.* Nutmegs, wood of *Aloes*, and Maces, ana. *℥. j.* powder them, and stich them in silke, and make a quilt. You may make many suchlike medicines by examples in other Chapters. You may minister inwardly conserues of the flowers of Betony, Rosemary, Lauender, Spikenard & Balme, adding to the Pepper, Cloues, Cinamon, & suchlike odoraments. If memory be lost by cold and moistnes ioyned together, minister *Hierapicra*, which wil purge out nothing that is good, but only that which is noysome. Afterwards let him vse gargarises, sternutations, and whatsoever doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a *Sinapismus* may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be caused of sleame abounding, then you must first prepare and concoct that humour with *mel Rosarum*, *Oximal*, sirupe of infusion of Roses, with decoction of Betony, Mariora, Hysope, Thime, & suchlike: after the administration whereof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of Myrobalanes *Chebulorum*, and Agaricke trochiscate, to the which you may adde the sirupe of infusion of Roses, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaphenicon*. And if the matter through his grossefne will not sufficiently purge at once, then you must prepare it againe, & after purge it with pills, *Arabice*, *Aurea*, or *Aggregatiue*, commixing some of them with Agaricke trochiscate, and so make pills with hony of Roles, or sirupe of *Stachados*. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutations. After purging it is good to minister vnto the *Castoreu* or shauing of iuory, *℥. j.* with *aqua muls*a, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *Diabra*, *Diamoschia dulce*, or *Mithridatu*, or *Theriaca*, with *aqua muls*a or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations, & powre them down from on high vpon the head being shaven. specially night to the seame, where the bone is loosest or thinnest. You may make your embrocation thus: *Rx.* Hysope, *Serpillu*, & Thime, ana. M. *ss.* Betony, Marioram, & flowers of Cammomill, ana. pug. *ss.* flowers of *Stachados*, *℥. iij.* make a decoction, and adde thereto of *Castoreu*, *℥. j.* of vineger, *℥. j.* & make an embrocation. It is good also to annoint the first & second spondill in the necke, and hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oyles of Nutmegs, of *Castoreum*, of Pepper or *Oleum costinum*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt, made in this sort. *Rx.* Hysope, Marioram, & flowers of *Stachados*, ana. *℥. j.* *Castoreum*, Nutmegs, Spikenard, Maces, ana. *℥. j.* the barke of Frankinsence, Masticke, and wood of *Aloes*, ana. *℥. j.* red Roses dried the weight of all: beate them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill cease not by this meanes, then last of all vse a *Sinapismus*. If memory be lost by abundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of Borage and Fumitory mixed together, adding sirupe of infusion of Roses, and waters of Betony, Hops, and Balme, and suchlike. Afterward minister this potion following. *Rx.* *Myrobalanorum Indorum*, *℥. iij.* Sene, & *Epithimum*, ana. *℥. ij.* flowers of Hops, Fumitory, & Borage, ana. *℥. ij.* *ss.* make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it, dissolue therein of fine Manna, *℥. ij.* of *Diacatholicon*, *℥. vij.* or *Diasene*, *℥. ss.* & make a potion. As touching outward medicines, let them rather incline to moisture then drinesse. As by adding to the ointments before prescribed oiles

Embrocha.

Sacculus.

Decoctio.

oyles of Cammomill, Dil, & sweet Almonds. Likewise in making embrocations & quilts, you may withdraw such medicines as dry, & adde moist things in their stead. Hereby a circumspect Physician may not onely haue a reasonable method to cure each kind of obliuion, but also to remedie any dulnesse or weaknesse of the memorie. For that it cometh of the same causes that memory lost doth come, although they be not so vehement where the memorie is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

Carus in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin, is a disease in which both sense & moving is altogether taken away, and yet their breathing remaineth safe. The *Arabians* call this disease *Subeth*. This disease differeth from the Lethargie, for that they that haue the Lethargy will answer to a question demanded, and do not lye altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe sleepe, and if they be stirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will say nothing, nor once open their eyes. Besides as *Paulus Aegineta* noteth, a vehement feauer doth vse to go before *Carus*, & in the Lethargy it followeth rather. Also *Carus* vseth to succeed other symptomes and accidents. For it cometh often in the fits of feauers and in the falling sicknesse, and in pressing of the braine, as well when the braine pan is crushed together, as also if the filmes that couer the foremost ventricle of the braine be thrust downe. But the Lethargy hath a certaine peculiar consistence of himselfe. Also *Carus* doth differ from the Apoplexy, for that in it the breathing is very straight, so that the sicke can with much ado scarce breathe at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witnesseth in his fourth booke *de locis affectis*) hath his breath at libertie. *Carus* is caused of a cold, grosse, and viscus slegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may easily know the signes by that which hath bene rehearsed before. For in this disease they are altogether in a dead sleepe, and their eyes alwayes shut. As for the diet, & the cure of those which haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs that haue the Lethargy, whereof we spake before (in the 16. Chapt.) saying that in this disease you must vse things that be of great force to extenuate, cut and diuide the grosse humours. Also you must apply Emplaisters, and other medicines to the stomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, because it is stuffed with sicame which doth coole it and moisten it: whereof you shall find examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or Taking.

Catoche or *Catalepsis* in Greeke, in Latine may be called *Occupatio*, *Detentio*, & *Deprehensio*. The new writers in Phisicke do call it *Congelatio*; in English it may be called Congelation or Taking. It is a sudden detention and taking both of mind and body, both sense and moving being lost, the sicke remaining in the same figure of body wherein he was taken, whether he sit, or lie, or stand, or whether his eyes be open or shut. This disease is a meane betweene the Lethargy and the Frensy, for it cometh of a melancholy humour for the most part, as shall be declared afterward. Therefore in respect of coldnesse it agreeth with the Lethargie, and in respect of drinessse with the Frensy. Here-

Cause.

Signa.

Pictus.

Curatio.

upon it cometh that they which haue this disease, are neither like the freneticke altogether, nor like them that haue the Lethargy. This disease is caused sometime of abundance of blood flowing to the head and replenishing it. But for the most part (as *Aetius* witnesseth) it is caused of a cold and dry melancholike humour, troubling the hinder part of the head and braine. This disease innadeth a man suddenly, and taketh away speech and sense from him; he heareth nothing, he answereth nothing, his breath is scarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulse is small and weake, and very thicke. His egestion and urine are detained, or else they come forth in small quantity: and that is not in respect of driness, for the sicke sometime doth abound with much moisture, but for lacke of sense. Their face is sometime red, and that is when the euill is engendred of blood; and sometime it is swart, and that is when melancholy causeth the disease. Moreover the eyes in this disease remaine immoueable, as though they were frozen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* saith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer shut, but in this disease they sometime remaine open. The diet in this euill must be diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. Let his food be Pisan broth, and such like. Let his drinke be *aqua Malsa* well boyled, or Barley water, or small Ale; for seeing they fume not into the head, they do much good. It is hurtfull for them to drinke water, for it causeth windiness, swelleth the spleene, and quencheth not thirst. As concerning the cure, if the face of the sicke be ruddy, and blood seeme to abound, if strength permit and yeares, let him forthwith bleed on the outwardmost veine of the arme, and let him bleed according to his strength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply those things that coole. For that purpose you may boile the shelles of Poppy heads in oyle, and annoint the head therewith. But in other that haue their face swart, and so haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you must first cleanse the guts with clisters, made of flowers of Borage, Buglosse, Fumitory, Time, *Epithimum*, rootes of Polypody, leaues of Sene, adding to it oyles of Cammommill, and Dill, and *Casia*, *Diacatholicon*, *Diasena*, or *confectio Hamech*, in conuenient quantity. Whereof you shall finde examples afterward in the Chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not soluble by this meanes, then it is not amisse to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Eleborus niger*. The head must be annointed with oyle wherein wilde Time is sodden, or with oile of Lillies or Dill, or such like, and that you must do chiefly when the head seemeth cold. Moreover if his urine appeare grosse and thicke, you must giue him to drinke the decoction of Dill, *Apium*, Calamint, and such like as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth also to annoint all their whole body with oyle of Dill, specially in Winter. Also they that haue trembling with this disease, may haue ʒ. j. of *Cassereum* commixed with *aqua malsa*, and powred into their mouth. The rest that concerne the cure of this disease may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the Frensie and Lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of Melancholy following.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead sleepe.

Coma in Greeke, *Sopor*, or *gravis & profundus somnus* in Latine. It may be called in English dead sleepe. It is a disease wherein the sicke cannot awake

not

not keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, & is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kinds hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken, and that is called simply *Coma* or *Sopor*, or elle *Coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eyes, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference betweene these two kindes. The sleeping *Coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer-
 much moistening of the braine, as it chanceth to many drunken persons. Also in feauers, onely hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour parts, and moistening the braine, do cause this euill. Moreouer sometime onely cold occupying the forepart of the braine is cause of this euill. Sometime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnesse ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *Coma*, that is, the watching drowsinesse, is caused of fleame mixed with choler, and for the most part it cometh for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open their eye liddes. The party that is vexed with the soporiferous and sleepey *Coma*, doth sleepe with his neather iaw open, and as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching *Coma*, speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole bodie out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the Frensie, and partly such as in the Lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, according to the diuersity of the euill. For in the soporiferous and sleepey *Coma*, you must
 vse those remedies that are prescribed in the Chapters of *Carus*, and the Lethargy: and to speake briefly, after the whole body is purged, if the euill be caused of moistnesse, then you must apply such things as will drie the braine, made with sharpe yiniger, and *Roses*, and *Cammomili* commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nostrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of *Dill*, and *Cammomill* warmed; and if the cold be great, you may sometime boile in oile, *Peniroyall* & *Dill*, and vse it. But if the euill be caused of cold and moisture ioyned together, then must it be cured as the Lethargy. If it come of weakenesse and lacke of strength, then you may vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kinds of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *Coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines, partly as the Frensie, and partly as the Lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleame abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the Lethargy: but if contrariwise choler do abound, then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the Frensie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexy.

A *Peplexia* in Greeke and Latin, is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth suddenly lose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and mouing through out the whole body, coming suddenly with let and hurt of all

Causa.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Curatio.

voluntary functions. If this stopping of the braine come in one halfe of the body onely, then it is called *Paralysis* in Greeke, in English the Palsey, whereof we will speake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is caused of a flegmaticke humour that is cold, grosse, and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour, overmuch crudities and chiefly drunkenesse doth engender. Also it is caused by a fall or a blow which shaketh and bruieth the braine, and causeth humours to flow thither. Also very cold aire which doth thicken and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth sometime cause this disease: it may also be caused of a grosse melancholy humour. Concerning signes, there goeth before this disease a full and sharpe paine of the head, and a swelling of the veines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eyes, also cold of the extreme parts without cause, panting of the whole body, slownesse to moue, and gnawing of the teeth while they sleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, blacke, like rust and canker in mettall, and hath a residence like meale. They that fall into this disease, do lacke sense altogether, they lye as they were asleepe with their eyes shut, and do snort. The vehemency and greatnesse of this disease may be discerned by the impediments that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from natural order, it betokeneth the vehemency of the disease, and that it is a great and strong Apoplexy. But when there is a little impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but little hurt in the braine, and so you may account it a small and weake Apoplexy. The worst and strongest Apoplexy is, wherein the breathing is so diminished that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almost as euill, wherein the breath stoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This disease for the most part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmaticke complexion, and which do vse such a diet as increaseth fleame. But if to be it innade any yong person, and that in Sommer season, it is most perillous. This disease is vncurable, or at the least is seldome cured. And therefore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24. Apher. of his second booke: It is impossible (saith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexy, and not easie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth speedy death. Beside, if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the most part it departeth leaving the Palsey behind it, either in the whole body, or in some part thereof. Often also it corrupteth the memory, whereupon we may conclude that remedies are not to be vsed against a strong Apoplexy, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the signes aforesaid, although there be small hope to remedie it, yet (as *Galen* testifieth) conuenient remedies being ministred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in some. Those therefore whose cure is not altogether desperate, if there be signes of plenitude & fulnes, & strength permit also, must be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veines. But you must foretell the peril, for bloudletting doth either kill them, or deliuer the: so that if after bloudletting (saith *Aetius*) both mouing and sense come not vnto him againe, there is no more hope. You must not draw away much bloud at once, but rather at sundry times, and you must haue regard to his pulse, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Beside, you must prouoke him to the stoole with sharpe clisters, in this sort: Rj Sage, Origan, Betony, ana. M. j. Calamint,

Calamint, Hysope and Peniroyall, ana. M. ss. seeds of Fennel, *Seselin*, and Ammi, *Clister acru.*
 ana. ℥. iij. Centory the lesse, M. j. roots of Polipody, ℥. vj. fine Agaticke, ℥. iij.
 Pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℥. ij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, untill halfe
 be consumed: then take of that decoction, ℥. xv. of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta*
laxativa, ana. ℥. ss. of *Electuarium Nidum*, ℥. iij. of *Diaphænicon*, ℥. ij. of mel *Rosa-*
rum clarified, ℥. j. of oiles of Laurell, Kew, and *Castoreum*, ana. ℥. j. of salt
 gemme, ℥. j. ss. commixe the all, and make a clister. Also the vse of suppositaries
 in this disease is very commendable, made of *Coloquintida*, Agaricke, blacke
 Hellebore, and such like, after this sort. R^o. of Hony boiled to an height, ℥. ij. of
Coloquintida, Agarick, and Hellebore, ana. ℥. ij. sal gemme ℥. j. beate them into
 powder, commixe them with the Hony, and make suppositaries, vj. fingers long,
 and hang a threed in them, that you may draw them out when you list. You
 may also put into the suppositaries *Hierapicra*, or Pils *Cochia*. Afterward annoint
 the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wild Thime,
 Calamint, Dill and such like haue first bene boiled. Also the extreme parts must
 be bound strongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the roote of
 Floure de luce: many cupping glasses must be fastened to the shoulders: the
 head must be shaued, and annointed with oiles of Cammomill, Dil and Rew, or
 with oile wherein the aforesaid herbes haue bene boiled. You must apply to
 the nostrils such things as by their odour can stirre and raise vp the sicke, as be,
Opoponax, *Castoreum*, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*. Also you may vse medicines to
 prouoke needling, made of white Hellebore, *Castoreum* and such other, rehearsed
 in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vse embrocations, made of
 Cammomill, Melilot, Sage, Peniroyall, Marioram, Origan, Calamint, Sauory,
 and Hysope, boiled in equall portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to
 vse dry medicines to the head, as be *Sinapismi*, made after this sort, R^o. *Olei costi-*
ni, ℥. j. oiles of *Castoreum* and *Euphorbium*, ana. ℥. iij. Mustard seed, ℥. ij. *Castore-*
um ℥. j. *Sagapenum*, ℥. j. *Euphorbium*, ℥. j. Vineger, ℥. ij. with sufficient quan-
 tity of Waxe, make an Emplaister. Also you must open their mouth by force,
 and put into it your finger, or a feather dipped in oile of *Ireos*, to prouoke vomit,
 and so cause the grosse humours that be in the mouth to be cast out. Also their
 fundament must be annointed with such medicines as dissolve windinesse, as
 be Rew, Comin, *Nitrum*, and Hony. When the euill is asswaged, you must
 giue him meate of easie digestion, for the most part mixed with hony. If his
 speech come not yet againe, so that his strength permit, you must fasten cup-
 ping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. And in like sort
 vnder the short ribs, if you may. Afterward let the sicke be caried in a wagon or
 horssitter. Let his drinke be *Mulsa*, or *Oximel*. Let him drinke no wine. After 21.
 dayes be past the sicke may enter a bath, but as touching medicines requisite
 for the rest of the cure, you shal find them abundantly in the Chapter following.
 And this may suffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if so be it be curable.

Sinapismi.

Vomitum.

Vicus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palsey.

Paralysis in Greeke, *Resolutio* in Latine: in English the Palsey. It is a disease
 wherein the one halfe of the body, either the right side or the left, doth lose

Why in the
Palsey some-
time sense a-
lone, sometime
mouing alone,
and sometime
both together
perish.

both sense and mouing. Also sometime the Palsey chanceth in one member onely, as for example, in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the Palsey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παρεσληψια: and therefore the word *Paralysis* is a more general name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the Palsey, sometime sense onely is lost, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both sense and mouing: it is specially called resolution of the sinewes or Palsey, when mouing is lost. Why sometime feeling is lost onely, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together, *Galen* declareth at large in his first book *de symptomatum causis*, cap. 4. & therefore it need not be here rehearsed: notwithstanding it shall not be amisse to answer briefly to that question. First note, that aswell the faculty of mouing as of sense floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the sinewes to the instruments of motion and sense; and therefore it must needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or stopped by any cause that it cannot descend to the instruments of mouing or sense, that they should lose mouing or sense according as the sinewes be affected. And therefore in those members that participate two kinds of sinewes as the eyes and the tongue do, the former question is easie to be soluted, for that they haue one kind of sinewes for motion, and another kind for sense & so the one may be hurt and the other safe; or they may be both hurt, and so both sense and motion perish. But in members that haue but one kind of sinew, the question is more obscure to answer. In such members therefore, if (the skin being taken away) the muscle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the sinewes be much stopped, then hath it lost both sense and mouing; for it is vnpossible that the sense of a muscle should be lost, and the motion remaine still. The reason is, for that lesse of the animall faculty is requisite for feeling then for mouing, so that there may come sufficient quantity of that faculty to a muscle to cause feeling in it, and yet not enough to cause it to moue also: and therefore a naked muscle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kinde of sinew, cannot moue and lacke sense; but either it hath sense and lacketh mouing, and then his hurt is but litle, or it hath lost both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the sinew is altogether stopped. But where there is a member that hath sinewes placed in the muscles to cause mouing, and other sinewes spread in the skin to cause feeling, (for the sinewes that are disperied in the muscles do not send out branches to the skin as some suppose) I say it may come to passe in that member, that sometime it may lose feeling alone, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muscle may lose his sense of feeling, the sinew being affected which is disperied in it, and yet the sinew that runneth in the muscle may be safe, and therefore the muscle may moue. But if the sinew which is spread in the muscle be affected, and the sinew that cometh to the skin remaine safe, that member cannot moue, and yet it hath sense and feeling left: and that cometh to passe because the sinew of the one is hurt, and the other hath his sinew safe: although they spring both from one place, yet they are diuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the sinewes be affected, as well that that cometh to the muscle, as that which cometh to the skin,

skin, then both sense of feeling and moving also perish and are lost and that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both spring, is affected & hurt. You may discern that, when you know exactly the common originall and spring of every sinew, in considering diligently whether the braine it selfe be affected, or the backe bone, at the head of it, or in any of his spondils besides. This is to be knowne by the Anatomy of sinewes, and therefore it beho- ueth to be well exercised therein, for in the Palley there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerse places. If the braine it selfe be affected: I meane not the whole braine, for then is the Apoplexy engendred: but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you shall know it, for that the Palley or resolution will be aswell on the right or left side of the face, as on the right or left side of the body. But if the face be safe, and one halfe of the body be deprived of sense and moving, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and first spondils of the backe bone; but the one halfe onely of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the side taken with the Palley. But if all the inferiour members, (the face onely excepted) be resolved and paralyticke, then is the backe bone affected in the same place, euen in the beginning and vpper end of it: and then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chance one onely part to be resolved and taken with the Palley, you must search from whence the sinewes come that be contained in it, which you may easily finde, if you be well exercised in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected about where his first beginning is, but lower among the spondils, then if the affect and hurt be great, all the inferiour parts beneath those spon- dils affected, be resolved and taken with the Palley: but if the hurt be but little, and the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferiour parts of the one side be resolved. Therefore you must first learne by Anatomy to find the place af- fected, hauing foreknowledge from what part of the backe bone the members resolved haue their sinewes. The Palley and resolution of members is engen- dred of abundance of grosse and clammy humours, which stop the sinewes and hinder the animall faculty that it cannot come frō the fountaine to the mēbers. It may also be caused of immoderate cold in snow or vehement frost. Also it may be caused by an inflammation, or a *Scirrus* (which is a hard swelling with- out sense) chancing in the backe bone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinewy parts, whereby the sinewes are crushed and pressed, & so stopped that the animall facultie cannot passe. As also the sinewes may be crushed together by some externall cause, as by binding with a cord, or such like meanes, & so cause resolution: also whe there is luxatiō or fracture in any of the spondils of the back, or in other ioynts or bones, there may follow resolution by means of cōpression and crushing together of sinewes. Also resolution or Palley may be caused by meanes of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular sinew. There need not many signes to know this dis- ease by: for any may iudge easily that part or member to haue the Palley which is destitute of moving. To know of what cause it proceedeth, you may partly learne by the relatiō of the sick, & partly by the signes rehearsed before in the 7 Chaprer, fol. 10. where headach caused of fleame is intreated of. The Palley is no acute and sharp disease, but of long continuance, & for the most part curable. *Prognostica.*

*To know if the
braine be af-
fected.*

*To know if the
marrow of the
back cause the
Palley.*

*Of members
particularly
taken with the
Palley.*

Cause.

*Vitæ ratio.**Hippocras.**Curatio.
Vena sectio.**Clyster.*

It chaunceth for the most part in old folke, and in the Winter time. The Palsie that cometh by a sinew separate and cut asunder, is (as *Agrieta* saith) incurable, and so is that which cometh by ouerthwart incisions of the backe, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paralyticke do waxe lesse, or change his colour it is hard to be cured, or rather not curable. For it declareth those parts not onely to be destitute of the animall faculty, but also of the naturall, and after a sort of the vitall also. Their diet must be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the sicke therefore remaine in an aire that is hote and dry, and in the first three dayes he may vse altogether abstinence, or let him content himselfe with *aqua mulsæ*, or a litle Prisan broth. Afterwards giue him meates of good iuyce, light of digestion, and let them be roasted: let him eate chiefly birds of the mountaines, and Partrich, reare eggs, Almonds, and Pine nuts. For pot-herbs let him vse Fenell, Parcely, Hysope, Marioram, Sage, and Savory. Let him eschue fish, fruite, and all things that be cold and moist. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to sustaine as much thirst as he can possibly. Let him drinke *Mulsæ*, wherein Sage or Cinamon hath bene boiled, or let him vse to drinke that which the barbarous Physitions at this day call Hippocras, made after this sort, *R.* of chosen Cinamon, \mathfrak{z} . ij. of Ginger, \mathfrak{z} . β . of long Pepper, Graines, and Galengale, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. of Cardamomes, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of Nutmegs, and Cloues, and Mace, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. boile them all in three quarts of running water, vntill a pint and a halfe be consumed: then straine it hard, and with halfe a pound of Sugar make it pleasant to drinke. He may drinke no wine at all vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept so long time from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the disease, and let it be thinne and allayed. Mouing and exercise, if he can vse them, are very good for him. Let him eschue sleepe in the day. Let his night sleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and shie perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, state of body, time of the yeare, and such like permit, it is good to begin with blond letting, specially if there be signes of plenitude. But you must draw away bloud moderately, lest the body be cooled ouermuch, and you must let bloud on the whole and sound side. Then a few daies after bloudletting you may cleanse the intestines with clysters made thus, *R.* of Mallowes, Holyhockes, Mercury, Cammomill, Sage and Betony, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. of *Stechas*, \mathfrak{z} . β . of Rew, and Calamint, ana. \mathfrak{M} . β . of seeds of Fennell, and Ammeos, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. boile these in sufficient water vntill the third part be consumed, then take of that decoction \mathfrak{H} . j. of *Benedicta laxativa*, \mathfrak{z} . β . of *Electuarium Nidum* \mathfrak{z} . iij. of hony of Roses, \mathfrak{z} . β . of oiles of Laurell, Ireos, and Rew, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of Salt genuine. \mathfrak{z} . j. commixe them together and make a clyster. Afterward minister vnto him decoctions and sirupes which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors and make them apt to be purged, whereof you shall find examples before in the 7. Chapter. The humours being thus prepared, minister medicines which do purge steame, beginning with gentle ones, and proceeding by litle and litle to stronger. Besides those purgations which are rehearsed in the seuenth Chap. aforesaid, you may vse *Pilule Assaferet, Arabica, ferida*, with the which you must alwayes commixe Agaricke. Neither doth it suffice to purge the patient once, but you must do it so often, letting 4. or 5. daies passe betweene each purging. The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to giue

giue vnto him *Theriaca*, or *Mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you must vse sternutations, gargarismes, odoraments, and such other like as are rehearsed in the 7. Chap. and that specially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you must rather minister such medicines as may corroborate and strengthen it, in this sort, *R.* of *Diambra*, *Plirisarcoticon*, and *Diameschu dulce*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of powder of Swallowes prepared, \mathfrak{z} . β . of Coriander seeds prepared, \mathfrak{z} . j. of Sugar Rolet, \mathfrak{z} . iij. with Sugar dissolued in Rose water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a litle of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth also in this disease to take \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Castoreum*, or of *Opoponax*, or *Sagapenum*, in *aqua mulsa*. Also *Diatrisn pipercon* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you must annoint the head with hote medicines, as with *Castoreu*, Mints, Laurell berries, oile of *Ireos* boiled with a litle vinegar, and such like. Therefore if coldnesse of the weather do not let it, you may shau the head, and annoint it all ouer the forehead. If the marrow of the back be affected at the vpper end, then after the former purgation you must in the nape of the neck, where the marrow of the back springeth forth of the brain, v. e. oiles, & ointments which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse, but you must begin with the weakest, as with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Spike, Lillies, *Ireos*, Nard, Nutmegs, S. Iohns wort, & earth wormes, wherewith you must annoint the nape of the neck, & the resolued side, specially the halfe of the ridge bone: and you must wrap the paralyticke members in warme linnē clothes, or in a fox skin, to keepe them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of Sage, Marioram, Cammomill, S. Iohns wort, *Stachas*, and Rosemary. Afterward you may proceed to stronger medicines, as be oiles *Costium*, *Vulpinum*, oiles of Rew, and Bayes, oiles of *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile stones, called *Oleum è lateribus*, or *Oleum Philosophorum*. To these you may adde these ointments, *Vnguentum Aregon*, *Vnguentum Agrippa*, & *Vnguentum Martiaton*: and hote simples may be added also if you will, as be Betony, Sage, Rosemary, Galingale, Cowslips, Rew, Calamint, Pellitory, Pepper, *Castoreum* & *Euphorbium*. Of these you may make an ointment after this sort, *R.* of *Vng. Aregon*, & *Martiaton*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Vnguentum Agrippa*, \mathfrak{z} . β . of oiles *Costium* and *Vulpinum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of oile of earthwormes, \mathfrak{z} . β . of oile of *Castor*, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of powders of Betony, Pepper, Sage, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Castoreum*, & *Euphorbium*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of Galingale, or roots of *Acorus*, \mathfrak{z} . ij. with Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus, *R.* of *Oleum Costium*, \mathfrak{z} . ij of oile of Pepper, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . oile of *Euphorbium*, \mathfrak{z} . ij. of *aqua vite*, \mathfrak{z} . ij β of iuyce of Sage, and Cowslips, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of Galingale, \mathfrak{z} . iij. of *Stachas* & Rosemary, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij of Pellitory and Pepper, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Euphorbium*. \mathfrak{z} β bruse them and boile them vntill the *aqua vite* and iuyces be consumed, then straine out the oiles, and put to the Waxe, and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote also after this maner, *R.* of Bay berries, Pellitory, and Pepper, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij of Galingale, \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Stachas*, Betony, and Elder, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of Mustard seed & *Nigella*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Euphorbium* & *Castoreum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Oleum Costium*, \mathfrak{z} . j. β of oile of Pepper, \mathfrak{z} . j. of oile of *Euphorbium*, \mathfrak{z} . iij. with Waxe & Resin sufficient make a Cerote. Also you may make a quilt thus, *R.* Hylope, Marioram, S. Iohns wort, Sage, Rew, and Bay leaues, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Spike, Masticke, *Castoreum* and *Stachas*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Clopes, Maces, Nutmegs, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . red

Capitis purgatio.

Lozenges.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus.

*Fomentum.**Balneum.**Gestatio.**Palsy coming
of cold.**Cure of Palsy
coming of
other causes.*

Rose leaves dried, M.℞ beate them all to powder, and make a quilt with them. Also a fomentation may conveniently be made thus: R. Sage, Rosemary, S. Johns wort, Cowslip, Hyssop, Marjoram, Betony, Peniroyall and Calamint, of each M.℞ boile them in white wine, and adde to the decoction of *Castoreum*, ʒij. of flowers of *Stachas*, and Lavender, ana. ʒ.ij.℞. wherewith you may often bath the members affected before you vse the aforesaid ointments or quilt. Moreover you may let cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud and heate, and spirits; and if the members themselves cannot aptly haue cupping glasses applyed to them, apply the at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the aforesaid ointments and cerotes: so that the members affected be first rubbed & chafed. If the disease relent not by all these meanes, (as *Aetius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or cauterization by fire where the originall of the affect is. Last of all, an hote house or dry bath will profit much, or, if they may conveniently come to them, natural baths which spring from brimstone, Alum and Salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badenia*, *Ferina*, *Cellences*, and others in England at Bath. But it is good for them before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horssitter. And this may suffice for the cure of the Palsy occupying one whole side. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely some other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you must searck that part of the backe that is affected, and apply such remedies to it as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, and there apply the former medicines or their like. Yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected. If the Palsy be caused of extreme cold without humours abounding in the body, then the place affected being found out, and the medicines before rehearsed being applyed vpon it, you shall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the braine, nor the member that is paralyticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Bloud-letting, purging and all other euacuations may be omitted, onely vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the Palsy be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrhus* of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bloud being remoued, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the ridge of other bones being out of ioynt or broken, do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if Palsy ensue a wound or vicer in the head, or backe, or in any particular sinew, it will be cured by their cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Palsy in one member.

Although any expert man may easily gather out of the former Chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet lest those that haue lesse skill should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greek *Spasmus Cynicus*, and in Latin *Convulsio canina*, or of some

Tortura

Curatio.

Torturatio. The cure of this is like the cure of the Palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter, be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease, you must let the patient blood in the veine vnder the tongue, and fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, and giue them *Masticatoria* made after this forme: *R.* seeds of Stauiacre, Masticke, the roote of Pellitory, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. Hyssope, Origan, ana \mathfrak{z} .j. \mathfrak{ss} . of Mustard seed, \mathfrak{z} .ij. powder the & commixe them with Turpentine & ware, and make Trochiskes to chew. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the grieve of the patient, that is, to the sinewes that be sprong, you must apply the medicines that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good *R.* *Olibanum*, Masticke, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *ligni Aloes*, \mathfrak{z} .j. Cloues, Galingale, Cinamon, Zedoary, Nutmegs, Cubebs, ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. Mirrhe, Aloes, *Labdanum*, *Sarcocolla*, *Castoreum* \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . Bay berries, Pine nuttes, ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. Ireos, *Aristolochia rotunda*, *Dictamnus*, *Consolida maioris*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. Gum *Elemni*, *Opoponacis*, Beniome, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. the iuyce of *Camepites*, and the iuyce of Cowslips, ana. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. Turpentine, \mathfrak{z} .j. powder all that is to be powdred, and put all in a limbecke of glasse, and distill it with a soft fire: and that which cometh first will be like water, which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keep also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drinke of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine: this is very excellent good. But you must note in this place, that the necke is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the Palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoria*, and collutions of Mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke, and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and liniments. Also the Physitian may apply cerotes and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the Palsey, sometime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patients his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, oyles of Rew, Nard, Spike, or oile in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringium*, Rew, Comin, or Dill, or such like. All are very good: & you may well commixe with the Butter, *Castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opopanax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things in the bladder by the yard with a ciring. First therefore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine by a fine pipe made of siluer for this purpose, called *Cathetera*. Afterward take those medicines that are rehearsed a litle before, and powre them into the bladder with a ciring; this will do marvellous much good. Also medicines prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be very good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therefore. The palsey of the yard doth let and hinder the flowing of the vrine, and sperme, and carnall copulation, therefore you must vse the same remedies which are rehearsed for the palsy in the bladder: but priuately you must apply to the loines & the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat: & ye must vse those remedies that haue power to erect the yard.

Note.
Palsey of the
tongue.

Palsey of the
bladder.

Palsey of the
yard.

And *Castoreum* may effectually be ministred, as wel for this as for all other Pal-
seyes: the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinckes that be coole. By these
examples you may easily find how to cure other members that be paralyticke.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Falling sicknesse.

*Morbus comi-
tialis.*

I
Cause.

2

3

Signa.

Victus ratio.

*Cure of in-
fants.*

E*Pilepsia* in Greeke (as *Galen* saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching
of all the parts of the whole body, not continually, but that which chan-
ceth at sundrie times with hurt of the mind and sense. It is so called because it
attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, and also of the mind. The La-
tines call this disease, *Morbus Comitialis*. There be three differences in this sick-
nesse or disease. The first is caused when this sicknesse cometh onely of disease
in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammy fleame, or sharpe choler
doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill
cometh of a grosse humour, then the disease cometh suddenly, and it is soone
gone againe. Secondly it is caused through an euill affect in the mouth of the
stomacke, that is, when the braine labourerth to drive away the vapours and
humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sicknesse is
caused, when as the patient feelerth a thing like vnto a cold aire, coming from
some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chanceth very seldome.
There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the body and minde, sadnesse,
forgetfulnessse, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulnesse
in it, specially in anger, palenesse of the face, inordinate mouing of the tongue,
and many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, and
they are plucked vp together, they snort, and sometime they cry out; many do
tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is coming
at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. *Galen* saith, that if it ta-
keth any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it till he die. The perfume
or smoke of *Bitumen* or *lapis Gagatu*, or of Goats horne, will declare and shew
thé that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he Goat eaten, or the sauer of
the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease
to vse in their diet things that will attenuate, cut and diuide. Therefore let the
aire wherein the sicke remaineth be hote and dry, specially if the euill be caused
of fleame. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he
must auoid all kind of pulses, fish, and wine, especially if it be old and thicke.
Let his drinke be *Mulsa*. or thin ale; the eating of Capers doth margellously
profit. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other
members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lecherie: let him sleepe mea-
surably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must
abstaine from Garlick, Onions, Mustard, and such like humous things. He must
eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease, you need not
much to studie for remedies, for with a moderate diet oftentimes the disease
endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant and the nurse.
Therefore if the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce,
and let her vse exercise before meate: let her eschue carnall copulation, and let
her vse for her diet things that be hote and dry, that thereby the milke may be
hotter

hotter and thinner. Anoint the head of the infant continually with oile of Dill and *Ireos*, putting to them the powder of Cypresse, *Ireos*, Maidenhaire, Marjoram, and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hote or cold. Also giue the child clarified hony to like. Also this *Ecligma* is praised of many, *Rx* fine white Sugar, \mathfrak{z} .ij. oile of sweet Almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, and giue it to the child to licke. Also it is good to commixe with it misle of the oke, and Unicorns horne. Also hang about the childs necke roote of Piony being greene, for it helpeth maruelously. Moreover they that fall into this disease after they be past childs age, you must anoint and make straight those members which are writhed and plucked out of order in them. Afterward you must open the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, and with a fetter dipped in oile of *Ireos*, prouoke vomit to bring out fleame. Also it is good to quicken the senses with odoraments: also *Peucedanum*, or dog Fennell, Rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *Silplinum*. The matter continuing very sharply, put into their mouth *Castoreum*, or *Laserpitium* with *Oximel*. Also when they are raised, you must cast in sharpe clisters. They that begin to recover (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other convenient medicine: and this is the cure of a new and sharpe Epilepsie, therefore now we will treat how to helpe that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or very small ale, and that in the beginning of the cure, vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let bloud in the veine of the hamme, or the ring finger, and then three or foure dayes after you must comfort the bodie: and it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of Wormwood, of Hylope, of *Stachados*, *Oximel scilliticum*, decoction of Hylope, rootes of Piony, and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations, that is, with *Pilula Cochis*, *Pilula de Agarico*, and such as purge fleame. Also I iudge *Stubium* to be of great force in this kind, being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chapter, fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humours of the head. And also I haue knowne this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *Oleum de lateribus*: with it anoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, and bast vpon it cotton wooll, and let the patient weare it day and night, .vj. dayes. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot. and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth cold; then take the other and do likewise; do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his bodie as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euery morning and euening let him take these things: the first day, of the powder of the skull of a man burned, one dramme at once, and the next day of the misle of the oke, made in powder, \mathfrak{z} .j. and the third day the powder of Piony roots, \mathfrak{z} .j. and after those three dayes, take these powders each day, till the patient be healed, which will be in fortie dayes. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then seeke medicines to purge it in the Chapter of *Melancholia*, howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke Hellebore, and beate it into fine powder, and to minister one dram at once with *Mulsa*, and a litle Pepper to it: also you may make Pils thereof, and giue them. And when the sicke is purged

*Ecligma.**Cure of yong folkes.**Cure of Epilepsie in old folkes.**A purging portion of stubium.*

Hiera Galeni.

enough, bring him to a bath; the third day fasten cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many daies after comfort the body, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that fasten cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *Mulsa*, adding to it bitter Almonds brayed, or *Serpillum*, or Calamints, or Mints, or Rew, and do that three dayes. Then shau the head, and anoint it with iuyce of *Peucedanum*, infused in vineger, in which *Serpillum*, or *Ireos* hath bene sodden. Then againe the body being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*: after those things be done, minister ster-nutaments, *Masticatoria*, and such things as do purge by the nose; then afterward if you thinke good minister a clister. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and Emplaiters, which haue vertue to dissolue and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerse places.

CHAP. XXV.

*Of the Crampe.**Spasmos.*

1

2

3

*Causa.**Vitijs ratio.**Cure of fulnes.**Bloudletting.**Clyster.*

S*Pasmos* in Greeke, in Latine *Conuulsio*, in English the Crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawne and pluckt vp against ones will. There be of it three kinds of differences. The first is called in Greeke *τρίτος*, in Latine *Distentio*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immouable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora*. In this disease the head and the necke be drawne downe to the breast. The third is called in Latine *Tensio ad posteriora*. In this disease the head is drawne downe backward to the backe & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease you must note that *Hippocrates* appointeth but onely two, that is, fulnesse & emptinesse of the sinewes in the body, and sometime it cometh with biting or stinging of some venomous beast. If the Crampe doth take one that is haile, or by and by as soone as the disease cometh, or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnesse; but when the conuulsion cometh after many sweats, vomits, watchings or drinesse, then it is caused of emptinesse. The diet of them that haue conuulsion which cometh of fulnesse, must be hot and dry; but in them which haue the conuulsion caused of emptinesse, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppings and fat broths, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickly be dispersed into all parts of the bodie, vnlesse a seauer be present: for then iuyce of *Prisan* is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleepe. Let them eschue exercises and all things that may emptie the bodie: to be short, let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the seauer Hecticke. The cure of Cramp caused of fulnesse, must straight begin with letting of bloud, if nothing do prohibite it. It is meet to take away much bloud, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by litle and litle; you must let blond on the middle veine of the arme. If after bloudletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clister. That part which is drawne must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, and the place must be chafed with oiles of Rew, or *Ireos*, or some other such like, or it must be couered with wooll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it a broad

broad bladder filled with oyle. And if the conuulsion cometh of fleame, then the fleame must first be extenuate and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by minister a purgation to purge fleame. Also apply cupping glasses with scarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legs haue the Crampe, apply it to the Hanches, and to the latter knittings of the shoulders. Moreover the head must be purged with Masticatories, Gargarismes, and such like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therefore euery day twice or thrice let him descend into water of Brimstone or Alum, or salt water, but let him not tarrie in them, lest strength faile him: or if there cannot be vsing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vse an hore house, or dry bath, or water in which are sodden Laurell leaues, Sothernwood. Peniroyall, Wormwood, Rew, Sage, S. Iohns wort, Marioram, and Betony, and the places that are drawne ought to be couered with skins of Wolues or Foxes: also apply the ointments which are rehearsed in the cure of the Palsey of the vsing of cold things, but minister often hore medicines, such as be *Theriaca* and *Mithridatum*, and such as be hore. But the surest and best of all other is the infusion of *Castoreum* ministred the quantity of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it, but also the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreover the conuulsion which cometh of emptinesse and drinesse, is such an euill disease, as it is almost vncurable. Those which are so drawne, you must nourish with hore oile of *Hydreum*. Also it is good to bring him to a bath, and soft frictions with oile are good, and all their whole cure must alwayes be like the cure of He sticks. If the conuulsion chanceth by the stroke of some venomous beast, in the beginning of the cure you must labour to draw out the poyson; which you may do by making the wound wider, and by scarifying the place round about, setting vpon it cupping glasses: also you may annoint it with Lecke seed brayed with Salt, or Garlike, or Onions, and after the fall of the scurfe, you shall keepe the wound xl or lx. dayes from a scarre: to the which if it make much hast, you shall open the sore againe with ashes of vine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with Horehound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Also nourish the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Also *Theriaca* infused in oile of Roses, and layed to the wound is good, because it doth draw out and purge the poyson from the bottome. Therefore they erre much which say, that *Theriaca* being outwardly applied, doth diue the poyson inwards.

The crampe coming of fleame.
Capiti purgatio.

Balneum.

The crampe coming of emptinesse and drinesse.
Cura veneni.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

E*Phialtes* in Greeke, in Latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a disease, whereas one thinketh himselfe in the night to be oppressed with a great weight, & beleaueth that something cometh vpon him, and the patient thinketh himselfe strangled in this disease. It is called in English the Mare. This vice is caused of excessive of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the stomacke, from whence do ascend vapors grosse and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties of the braine to be disperfed by the sinewes. They that haue this disease can scarce moue, being astonied, and feeling in sleepe imagination of strangling, and as it were the holding of some thing that doth violently innade them. In

Causa.

this the voice is suppressed: Some haue such vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth oppresse them. At the last with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driven away, and the passage of the spirit being opened, the sicke is by and by raised. It is good to remedie this euill at the first: for if it continue, it induceth and sheweth before some grievous disease, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling sicknesse, or madnesse. Let their diet be thinne, and such as will not engender windinesse. Let him vse no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but Ale. Let him eschue sleeping in the day, and let him not go to bed by and by after meate: and to be short, let his whole diet be such as is described and set downe for the falling sicknesse. For the cure, if the whole bodie be full, you must begin with bloodletting, and you must cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if ill iuyce be gathered in the body for lacke of perfect digestion, then purge the body by purgations: and if fleame abound, you may first minister preparatiues to extenuate the fleame, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you must apply outward medicines, whereof you may find examples before. Blacke seeds of Piony doth chiefly helpe them: you may giue them fifteene seeds braied with water. And nourish the head with oyle of Dill made hot: and couer the head with a cap when they go to bed. Minister within the body those things which strengthen the head, as *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamoschu dulcis*, *Diamber*, *Dianthon*, *Plirisarcoticon*, and such other like.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Madnesse.

M*ania* in Greeke is a disease which the Latines call *Insania* and *furor*: that is, madnesse and furiousnesse. They that haue this disease be wood & vnruely like wild beasts. It differeth from the *Frensie*, because in that there is a feauer, but *Mania* cometh without a feauer. It is caused of much blood flowing vp to the braine: sometime the blood is temperate, & sometime onely the abundance of it doth hurt: sometime of sharpe & cholericke humours, or of a hot distemper of the braine. There goeth before madnesse debilitie of the head, tickling of the eares, & shinnings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and strange things approach the mind, and heavinesse with trembling of the head. If time proceed, there is raised in them a rauinous appetite, & a readinesse to bodily lust, the eyes waxe hollow, and they neither winke nor becken. But madnesse caused of blood onely, there followeth continuall laughing: there cometh before the sight (as the sicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choler is mixed with blood, then the pricking and feruent mouing of the braine maketh them irefull, mouing, angry, and bold. But if the choler waxe grosse, & doth pricke and pull the braine and his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde and furious, and therefore they are the worst to cure. Let their diet be thin soups liquide, making a good stomacke without fulnes, & such things as do engender no blood, & you must forbid them altogether drinking of wine. Where this disease is caused of abundance of blood, you must begin the cure with letting of blood: it is good to cut the vttermost veine of the arme, or if that do not appeare, then cut the middle veine. In women cut the veine on the ankles, for that prouoketh menstruis: you must draw out so much blood as strength will

will suffer. Therefore in letting of blood you must continually feele the pulses. Moreover, after the letting of blood, nourish the head with oiles of Roses, and vinegar, or iuyce of *Polygonis*, or *oleum Melinum*, *unguentum infrigidans Galeni*. Then apply moist wool wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After blood letting, at night prouoke sleepe: for if after bloodletting watching do still continue, the sicke will appeare to be more outrageous. Therefore minister boldly with iuyce of *Pulsan Diacodion*, or mingle it with water: for so sleepe is plentifully enticed. And two dayes after minister Trochiskes *de hestear* with *Diacodion*. Also oile of Violets with womans milke is good. Likewise an Embrocation made of dry Violets, water Lillies, Willow leaues, and Roses, leaues of Lettuce, seed of Poppy, and such like, and other medicines rehearsed in the next Chap. Furthermore the bellie must be made soluble with conuenient food, with clisters. These things being done, if there be need you must draw blood out of the midst of the forehead: set horse Leeches round about the head, and specially the forepart of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnesse caused of choler mixed with blood, you must minister purgations of *Hierapicra*, and other medicines that will purge choler. The iuyce of *Elleborus niger* doth marvellous much profit in this grieve, so that you minister but ten or twelue graines at once. But if they dote, and refuse to drinke a purging medicine, then, that you may the easilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meates, or with fat Figs or Dates. Also the onely roote of wild Fennell helpeth them, and the seed drunke with water. The sicknesse declining, bring the sicke into a bath, and apply discussive medicines to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him seeke in the Chapter following *de Melancholia*.

Externa medicina.

Embrocha.

Cure of it coming of choler mixed with blood.

Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Melancholy.

Melancholic is an alienation of the mind, troubling reason, and waxing foolish, so that one is almost beside himselfe. It cometh without a feauer, and is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is caused three kind of wayes: for sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy blood being in al the veines of the whole body, which also hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the blood which is in the braine is altered, and the blood in all the rest of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two wayes: for either it is deriued from other places, & ascendeth vpthither, or else it is engendred in the braine itselfe. Also sometime it is engendred through inflammation, & euill affect about the stomacke & sides: and therefore there be three diuersities of melancholioulnesse, according to the three kinds of causes. The most common signes be fearefulnesse, sadnesse, hatred, and also they that be melancholious haue strange imaginations: for some thinke themselves brute beasts, & do counterfeite their voice & noise: some thinke themselves vessels of earth, or earthen pots, & therefore they withdraw themselves fro them that they meete, lest they should knocke together. Moreover they desire death, and do very often behight and determine to kill themselves: and some teare that they should be killed. Many of them do alwayes laugh, and ma-

Causa.

3

nie to weep; some thinke themselves inspired with the holy Ghost, and do prophecy vpon things to come. But these be the peculiar signes of them that haue melancholiousnesse caused through content of the whole body: for in them the state of the body is slender, blacke, rough, and altogether melancholious, caused naturally, or through certaine thoughts, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or suppression of menstruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* caused of vice in the sides. they haue rawnesse, & much windinesse, sharpe belkings, burnings, and grievousnesse of the sides. Also the sides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with inflammation, specially about the beginning of the disease. Also there is costiuenesse of the wombe, litle sleepe, troublous and naughtie dreames, swimming of the head, and found in the eares. Let his diet be such as doth not ingender melancholy. Therefore let them tarrie in an aire hote and moist, and let them vse meates of good iuyce, that be moist and temperate, and let their bread be well baked and wrought: let their flesh be Capons, Hennes, Partridges, or Felants, stonie fishes, and such like. Let the sicke vse wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eschue wine that is thicke and blacke: let their exercises be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleasant and Greene, or vse sayling on water. Also a bath of sweete water, with a moist diet, let the sicke vse often as one of his remedies: sleepe is wonderfull good for them, as also moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare muscalle instruments and singing. But when the whole bodie aboundeth with melancholicke blood, it is best to begin the cure with letting of blood, & you must cut the liuer vein on the arme. But when the melancholicke blood occupieth only the braine, the sicke needeth no bloodletting, vnlesse there be very much blood; and therefore let the sicke vse often bathings, and moist diet of good iuyce, which is without windinesse, & let them vse delectations of the minde, and let them be cured by these without any strong remedies. But if the disease hath endured long, it requireth sundrie medicines that be strong. Therefore whether the melancholiousnesse be caused through vice of the whole bodie (as is said, the blood being first drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you must minister medicines that will purge downward. And a few dayes after purging and bloodletting, let the sicke drinke daily in the morning this decoction. *R.* flowers of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, ana. *M. j.* great Raisins the stones picked out. *℥. j.* Harts tongue, *M. j.* Fumitory, *M. ℥.* Barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, ana. *℥. iij.* roots of Fennell, Parcely, Liquorice, ana. *℥. j.* Thyme, *Epithimum*, ana. *℥. ℥.* seeth all these in three pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the whites of egges, and adde thereto sirupe of Fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. *℥. ij.* and make a potion. After that sort at these dayes they minister sirupe of Violets, and Buglosse, putting to them the water of Harts tongue, Hops, Endiue and Borage. But seeing it appeareth that the stomacke cannot beare very much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid herbes, commixed with sirupes after this sort: *R.* Sirupe of Borage, *℥. j.* Sirupe of *Epithimum*, *℥. ℥.* decoction of Harts tongue, Fumitory, and Endiue, *℥. iij.* commixe them and make a potion. After this purge the body with *confectio Hamech* and *Diasena*,

Victus ratio.

Balneum.

Vena sectio.
Cure if it come
of melancholy
blood.

Purgatio.
Decoctum
preparans.

Potio.

Diafena, Pilula Inda, Pilula à lapide Armenio, and such like. Also it is good to use this purging decoction, *Rx* flowers of Borage, Violets, Roses, ana. M. j. Raisins the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*, ana. ℥. j. *Myrabalanis citrina*, *Indos*, *emblicos*, *belliricos*, ana. ℥. ℞. leanes of Sene, Polipody, ana. ℥. vij. Prunes damascene x. seeth them in a iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweet with Sugar, the minister, ℥. iij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein, ℥. ij. of *Diafena*. Also the infusion of *Epithimū* is maruellously good, being made thus: *Rx* *Epithimū*, ℥. ℞. infuse it 24. houres in ℥. iij. of whay made of Goats milke, then straine it, and wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leanes of Sene is good, which may be thus made, *Rx* leanes of Sene, ℥. ij. Prunes Damascene in numero, xij. bray them, and infuse them in whay of Goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, and let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to use this powder, *Rx* *Epithimū*, ℥. ℞. *lapis Armenius*, Agaricke, ana. ℥. ij. Scammony prepare. ℥. j. Cloues 20. beate them all into powder, and minister euery weeke, ℥. j. or ℥. j. ℞. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheefe: for that is better which is separated from the milke by some decoction, and let them use it vntill the belly begin to be soluble; you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few dayes after the purgation to use clisters, and let them be such as this is, *Rx* Fumitory, Hops, Thime, ana. M. j. *Epithimū*, M. ℞. Sene, Polipody, ana. ℥. vj. *Cartami*, ℥. ℞. seeds of Annise, Fennel, *Ammeos*, Comin, ana. ℥. ij. seeth all in water vntill the thirde part. Take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℥. j. *Cassia fistularis* newly drawn, ℥. j. *Diafena*, ℥. ℞. oiles of Violets, & Cammomil, ana. ℥. ℞. common Salt, ℥. j. ℞. commixe them all and make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of Emeroids or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which will driue away the heauinesse of the minde, restore strength, & ingender gladnesse, as is, conserues of Borage, Endiue, Violets, Roses, *Anthos*, *latificans Galeni*, *Dianthon*, and such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweet water. Also you must apply strong *Embrocha* to moiste the head, as this, *Rx* Mallowes, *Althea*, Violets, ana. M. j. ℞. Cammomil, *Stachados*, ana. M. j. flowers of water Lillies, M. ℞. seeds of Lettuce. ℥. j. seeds of Scarioll, ℥. j. ℞. boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinkle the head being shauen with the iuyce of that decoction. After that sort it is good to use vnctions of oiles of Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Last of all, the sicke must labour that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the griefe be caused through diseases in the sides, they must continually use to drinke decoction of Peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of Centory. Afterwards also, minister continually decoction of Wormwood: for it is profitable to the stomacke, and it letteth ingendring of wind in the bellie, and it doth not assuage the belly extremely, but prouoke vrine, causing good digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedie. Also you must minister those things that prouoke vrine, as Annise, *Daucus*, *Asarum*, *Smirinum*, the seed and roote of wild Fennell, and Germaner: let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it

*Decoctio pur-
gans Melan-
cholicam.*

*Dilutum Epi-
thimi.*

*Puluis purge-
torius.*

Clyster.

Embrocha.

*Cure if it come
of diseases in
the sides.
Absinthij de-
coctum.*

Diuretica.

Fomenta.

Cataplasmata

Concurbitule.

Vomitus.

is good that the Physition looke to the cure of the sides. Therefore nourish them with decoction of Rew, Dil, Wormwood, Peniroyall, seed of *Agnus castus*, Laurell berries, Sauory, Mugwort, and such like. These do ease paine and drive away inflammation, especially if they be sodden in oile and applied to the grieve like a plaister. Against windines in the stomacke with pricking, nourish the stomacke with Comia, Peniroyall, & vinegar sodden together, and make Emplaisters of Annise seeds, *Apium*, Comin, *Smirinum*, and such like, sodden in oile, & suffer the plaister to lye still a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaister is taken away couer the sides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs skin, the place being first annointed with *oleum Nardinum*. Also you must apply cupping glasses lightly without scarification. To those with whom this disease hath tarried long, purging by vomits is a present remedie. But you may not vse strong vomits, for they be malicious to the stomacke, and cause grieve in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hote water commixed with *Oximel*. But if the sicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a fether or their finger into the mouth. Also the onely vomit made with *Elleborus albus* is good for them, being made after this sort, *R. Elleborus albus*, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. cut it in small peeces, and put them in a great Radish roote, and after three dayes take out the *Elleborus*, and then stampe and wring out the iuyce of the Radish; take of that iuyce $\mathfrak{z} . vj$. hot water, $\mathfrak{z} . iiii$. *Oximel*, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. commixe them, & minister it all at once to the sicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good, *R. Stibium*, x . or xij . graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure Spoonfulls of Muscadell, or Malmesey, and let it stand two dayes; and let it be shaken three times on the day, and when you will minister it powre it out softly, leauing the powder stil in the bottome of the glasse, and giue but the very wine, which is an excellent thing for this grieve. There be diuerse other which I will omit till time more conuenient.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and shaking.

Cause.

Signa.

Vicius ratio.

T*remor* in Latine, in English trembling or shaking, it is a disease which is accompanied with two sundry mouings. One is, while the member is constrained through heauinesse & grieve to creepe downward. The other is, while the member is caried vpwrd from his naturall course and faculty. This euill is caused altogether through weakenesse of the sinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it cometh of other causes, that is, of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or season, specially in fevers. Moreouer the abundance of a cold, grosse & clammy humor, and much vsing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are causes thereof. There need no signes to know neither the euill, nor the causes of it, because it may be knowne partly by sight, and partly by the patients words, and the state of the body. Let the diet be so ordained that it may be cleane contrarie to the causes of the disease, and let his meate be such as will easily be distributed, first broths, then birds that flie, and tender fishes. Against abundance of grosse and clammy humours, it is good to vse those things which haue power to diuide, extenuate, and cut: but he must wholly eschue all things which do hurt the sinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He must drinke wine allayed

Curatio.

allayed with water, or Hydromel, or Ale. For the cure they which do tremble or shake through some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, you'll they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke Hydromel with the decoction of Sage and Betonic. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humours, then minister the cure which is ascribed for the Palsey, and the Crampe, coming of fulnesse, (letting of blood onely excepted.) You must annoint the outward parts of the body with oyles that will heate, and couer it with soft wooll: then fasten cupping glasses without scarification from the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the skin, and so thereby humours may the easier be discussed and driuen away. Also it is good for the sick to drinke daily five graines of Pepper with ʒ. j. of Mulsā. There be moreover certaine other simple medicines, which being taken do helpe trembling, that is, Castoreum, root of Althea, decoction of Egrimony, and the braine of a Hare. But what need many words? for the medicins and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the Palsey, are to be vied as remedies against this disease.

Cucurbitulae.

Simplices medicine.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Eyes.

I Thought good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subiect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities which by experience I have found incident vnto it: and the multiplicite of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessitie of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath (as it were) packed and bestowed an infinite variety of maruels in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed and distributed into his parts, and according to the dignitie of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a great volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceiue aright of it, and an excellent Orator might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to pry into all other things, and to find out the nature and order of them, hath bin vnable to vnfold his owne wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it; or in curing them when they haue layed hold of it. For mine owne part, I will not promise any absolute worke, but as learned Physitions haue thought of it, (and as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so will I frame and fashion my Treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole, and hard, as the ball of a toote, or as the scowred new bason full of cleare water, set in the well of the head to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantastick cell by a finew that is called *Nervus opticus*, with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without. And very fitly is the place where the eye is set called the *Well of the head*, for the abundance of waterie humours and teares which often dissolue out thereof, sometime of sorow & heauinesse of the heart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of waterie hu-

moirs caused of frigidity and coldnesse: and thus haue the Physitions described the eye. It shall not be vnnescessarie also to distribute it into his parts, and therefore (as *Iohannicus* saith) the eye hath seuen coates, which they call *tunica*, foure colours, and three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunicles, by sundry Anathomists hath bene euicted, making but onely sixe: yea, and some there be, that (swaruing from the most receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their owne, as they thinke by reason, excluding all those ouer curious diuisions, (namely *Iris*, *Cornea*, *Aranea*, *Vnea*, and the residue,) and imagine but onely two coates, the one whereof they name *Saluatrica*, because it saueth and keepeth the humours: and the other they terme *Discolorata*, that is, hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it selfe there is no colour, but that which is caused of the Christalline humor, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye seemeth of no colour: if it lye deepe within, it deferreth three visible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they say) the diuerse placing of this chrystalline humor begetteth the varietie of colours in sundry eyes, which gaue our Anathomists matter to deuise their distributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (indeed) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge in so intricate a cause, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the causers of the diuersitie of the colours, though our blind Anathomists do impugne it in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me rather to cure the maladie of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this little *Preludium* will not seeme altogether vnnescessarie.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Cataract.

Foure kinds of
Cataracts cu-
rable.

1

2

3

4

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curd, ingendred of the humours in the eye, distempered betwixt the tunicles, and set before the sight of the eye and the Christalline humor. Of these manner of Cataracts there be seuen diuerse species or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable. The first kind of the curable Cataract is light, very bright, like white chalke, or as alabaster well polished: and it is caused by a stroke in the eye, either with a sticke or a stone, or any other outward violence. The second kind is somewhat white, and much like vnto a celestiall colour, and this proceedeth from the stomach, and is commonly caused of vnwholsome meates, and vnkind nourishment, whereof a grosse fumositie resolueth, and ascendeth vp into the braine, and from thence falleth downe into the eyes. The third kind is also whitish, but it turneth into the colour of ashes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migraine, or such like diseases; and it is caused sometime of great sorow and heauinesse, whereof cometh immoderate weeping; and sometime of much cold, and much watching, and such other like. The fourth species is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of excessiue meate and drinke indigest, and also of great labour, and sometime of the humour melancholic. These are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be growne and confirmed: and the signe or token of their full perfection is, when the patient seeth nothing, vntill it be the brightnesse of the Sonne by day light, or the light

light of the Moone by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these manner of Cataracts, haue assayed to cure them with purgations, powders and plaisters, but they haue bene deceiued. For neither inward medicin: nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioine to them *ars acuarium*, the art of the needle; which because it is vnknowne to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this Treatise. Nevertheless, before you vse the needle, it is requisite that the braine should be purged with *pilula Hierosolymitanae*, which you shall make thus: *R*: Turbith, \mathfrak{z} .j. Aloes hepaticke, \mathfrak{z} .ss. Maces, Quibibes, Masticke, and Saffron, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. beate them to powder all together, and confect them with the iuyce of Roles, and make pills thereof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased partie is fasting, about nine of the clocke, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, and plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him hold his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient: for the tractabilite of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eye lid, and with your other hand put in the needle made therefore, on the side farthest off fro the nose: and subtilly thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes your fingers to and fro, till you touch the corrupt water (which is the Cataract) with the point of the needle; and then begin by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, and there keepe it with the point of your needle the space of three minutes of an houre, & then remoue your needle calily from it. And if it happen that it rise vp againe, bring it backe the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath toyched the Cataract, you do not writh it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place before named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needie about till it haue gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. This done, cause him to shut his eye, and apply thereto a plaister of staxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to lye in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night, without any other stirring of it. Prouided that he lye in a very dark place; and let his diet be thinne, as reere egges, and white bread. And if he be yong and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his body be weake, let him drinke wine well lymphate or small Ale: for truly much nourishment would prejudice the cure, by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is very hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. The ninth day being passed, let him rise and wash his eye well with faire cold water, and he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen as he did before, although some of the Cataracts be faier healed then the other, as namely the second and the fourth kinds: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer reconereth his clearenesse of sight againe, because it is greatly brused and troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his old perfection, yet it abideth not long therein, vnlesse it be continued as well by good diet, as also by this electuarie, which is called *Diachylon salarimitanum*, which is thus confected. *R*: Cloues, \mathfrak{z} .ij. Nutmegs of India,

and Saffron, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. and of good *Cassereum*, ʒ. j. Let all these be beaten into powder and seared, and conſect that powder with clarified honie, and let the patient receiue of this Eleſuary in the morning faſting the quantity of a Cheſtnut, or Walnut, and at evening to bedwards as much. And let him vie digeſtine nourishing meates, which ingender good bloud; but let him beware of bieſt and Goateſſeſh, and Bees, and raw Onions, for they are oftentimes vſed to ripen the Cataract, which muſt be done before you ſtrive with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hote wines, in the which let him infuſe Sage and Rew. Let him alſo abſtaine from the company of women, neither let him frequent common baths; for every ſtrong ſtume hurteth him greatly. The aforeſaid Eleſtuary of *Diabolibanum* is good to dry teares: it auaieth alſo againſt all manner of paine of the Migraine which proceedeth of ſicame. After this ſort are all the curable Cataracts healed, (I meane) by the needle, which muſt be made of gold, ſiluer, or of cleane Spaniſh latten: for iron and ſteele are very brittle and frangible. And if the Cataract ſhould proue hard in drawing downe, the point may eaſily breake, which if it ſhould abide in the eye, it would in time conſume the eye through abundance of teares and greatneſſe of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataracts incurable.

THe firſt kinde of Cataracts incurable, the Phyſitions call *Gutta ſerena*, and the ſigne of the knowing thereof is this; when the pupill of the eye is blacke and cleare, as though it had no ſpot, and the eyes are alwayes moving, and the eye-lids do tremble as they were full of quickſiluer. This kind of Cataract is cauſed of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therefore they that haue the are for the moſt part borne blind, and therefore they beſtow their labour in vaine that aſſay to cure them; for the nerues optike be oppilate and mortified, ſo that no medicines can preuaile, although many that haue this kind do ſee the light of the Sunne, and the ſtature of a man eue to their liues end. We call it *Gutta ſerena*, becauſe it is engendred of a water that falleth fro the braine, of the which truly one litle drop corrupteth and diſſolueth all the humors of the eyes, and ſtopperth the hollow nerues and ſinewes, ſo that the viſible ſpirits may no more paſſe thorough them. The ſecond Cataract incurable, is that which appeareth in the eye of a greene colour, like water ſtanding in moiſt places, not much moued nor removed; this is the moſt dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldneſſe of the braine, and by great buffering and beating about the head, by great faſting, and ſuch other like. The third incurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eye is dilated and ſpread ſo farre, that no circle may be ſcene within the tunicles of the eyes, & the eye ſeemeth al blacke, or elſe all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts incurable diſtinguiſhed and knowne: which wil forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diſſenſes which chance to the eyes, by blond, choler, ſicame, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOW after the deſcription of Cataracts, and the number of them, which be curable, and which be not, and the curing and knowledge of the curable, and

and the causes of the vncurable, I will speake of other maladies of the eyes caused and occasioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleame, choler, and melancholy. But first I will treat of bloud, through the abundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a rednesse in the eyes, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this disease maketh the haire of the eye-lids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire: & if this maladie be not cured within one year, it will make the eye-lids to turne vp, and make the patient blear-eyed. But before it cometh to that extremitie, it may be cured by this Colliry, which they call *Collirium Ierosolymitanum*, which is made in this wise: *Rx.* Turty of Alexandria, \mathfrak{z} .j. & beate it into small powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine (that is) a quart, and put thereto, \mathfrak{z} .j. of dry Roses, and boile it with a loking fire till the wine be halfe wasted, & then cleanse it through a linnen cloth to keepe it in a viol glasse, and morning and euening put some of it into the eye: and if it be taken betimes, the patient shall be cured within a weeke or two at the most. Neuerthelesse before you apply this Colliry, it shall be good (if the patient be yong) to let him bloud on the veine that is in the midst of the forehead: or, if he be aged, to purge the braine with these pills: *Rx.* of the best Aloes, red Sanders, *Esula*, and Rewbarbe, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Turbith, *Cataputia minor*, and Agarrick, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. confect them with the iuyce of Mugwort, and minister to the patient according to his strength. And truly these pills are not onely good for the itch of the eyes, but also for all maner of itch or scab, of what humour soeuer it be caused. There be other diseases also of the eye engendred of bloud, as the Ophthalmie and Pannicles: and these kinds of infirmities are tied to the season of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of August, and so forth to the end of September, and the rather then, because they proceed of the eating of variety of fruites. The Ophthalmie is thus described. An Ophthalmie is a corrupt bloud ingendred of hote humours, and commonly it standeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blacknesse of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate sorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which causeth the eyes to swell, and make them to bolne, that from that time forth the patient may take no rest nor sleepe: for it euer seemeth to him that his eyes are full of grauell, or of thornes, or of smoke. In this kind of infirmite it is good to vse this powder, which many (in respect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Pulus benedictus*, which is thus made: *Rx.* white Sarcocoll, and beate it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eye with it, and let him lye with it wide open till the powder be consumed: and in the meane time make a plaister of flaxen herds, and wash it well in cold water, which when you haue drained out with your hand, lay it on the patient his eye, which he shall still keepe open, and it will procure him to take his rest very well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeouored to cure this infirmite with many impertinent medicines, haue added sorrow to sorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and so made it vncurable, which by the foresaid powder might easily haue bene healed. And note, that there be some, which by the occasion of the Ophthalmie, are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous and misty: which proceedeth of euill keeping or because they eate contrary meates. Now if such happen, the braine must be purged with these

pils: R. Polipody, *Esule*, *Myrobalani Citrini*, and Rewbarbe, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ Masticke, Quibibes, Saffrou, Spikenard, *Nux India*, Cynamon, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ coniect them with Milke or iuyce of Quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation minister morning and euening of the Electuarie of *Diaolibanum solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Puluis Nabetus*, the making wherof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done onely in the morning and euening; put in his eye the powder called *Puluis Alexandrinus* as before, and this do till the patient hath recouered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtfull meats.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Causa.

There be foure
kinds of Pan-
nicles.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

THE Pannicles haue the same cause that the Opthalmy hath, that is to say, superfluity of bloud. Sometime they are ingendred of euill keeping, and sometimes by great paines in the head, as the Migrim, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples, and so into the browes, maketh the veines to beate, by which painful beating the eyes are troubled. There be foure kinds of Pannicles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatrice there groweth a litle pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in Latine *Millium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the likenesse of a spot or freckle of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it wete a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, and no blacknesse, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appeareth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues nor powders, nor Colliries, nor Electuaries, nor yet with cauteries; for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this preecious ointment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit: R. forty tender crops of the Bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of Rew, powder of Alabaster, $\mathfrak{lb}.j.$ powder of Fenel seed, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ oile of Roses, $\mathfrak{lb}.j.$ all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white Wine, and to all these put $\mathfrak{z}.iiij.$ of dry flowers of Cammomil, and of Waxe $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire, till the Wine be consumed, so farre forth that it seemeth to fry in, and then put thereto the whites of sixe Eggs, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth; with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead, downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of Pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which I will expresse, though it be impertinent to this discourse. It is very good against a greene wound, for it both purgeth and cleanseth it. It is good against the tooth-ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrixe, if it be beaten like an Electuary. It is good for them also who are molested in excessse, if their stomack be annointed & their feet, together with their hands. It auaieth against the Migrime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therewith vpon the temples, as before. The second pannicle must be cured at the very beginning: for if it be incarnate and hardned vpon

vpōn the tunicle, it may not by any subteltie be remoued (the tunicle saued,) and therefore it is not safe to aduenture to cūse it, when by continuance of time it hath vnited it selfe with the saluatrice. But at the first you shall cure it thus: first make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery (as shall be shewed afterward when I speake of Cauteries:) for fire dissolueth & consumeth the pannicle, & so keepeth it from vniring & incarnating with the tunicle. & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized, put into the eye some of the powder called *Pulus Nabetus*, which I will teach afterward; & while he lieth with this powder in his eye, take foure crabs, & rost them vnder the embers very well, and then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, and lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, and bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and so renew this plaister morning and euening till you haue absolued your cure. Like as bloud begetteth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: so likewise many maladies are ingendred of fleame, but the most notable are foure: the first is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer eyelids are so softened and mollified, that within there grow haire, which pricke the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs bristles: which haire, though many bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and so for a time eased them, yet afterward (the haire being hardened with plucking out) do gall them farre worse then before, and so in the end the patient being destitute of any other aide, loseth his sight, (the haire fretting and consuming the substance of his eye.) But indeed the best way which as yet experience hath found out to cure that maladie, is this: Take two needles of the length of the little finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and bind them well together at both the ends, then with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with these needles take off the leather where these haire grow, that the patient may shut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fall away, together with the leather which was betweene them: which done, you shall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it selfe: but if any Pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reason of the vehemencie of the paine, it shall be cured by *Pulus Nabetus* put into the eye twise a day, til such time as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of Sugar Candy of *Alexandria*, which powder is very auailable against many sicknesses of the eye. The second infirmity which happeneth to the eye by fleame, is when the eyes appeare troubled and full of veines, so closed with a Pannicle, that the patient cannot well see nor discern any thing, and this sickness is called *Pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: first cause his head to be shauen, & then cauterize him with a round cautery in the soft of the head, and with a long cautery in his temples, which so done, put into his eyes the powder of Candie once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full sight, and twise in the moneth purge him with the pills called *Pillule Ierosolymitane*, and at his going to bed let him receiue of the Electuary called *Diabolibanum solarimitanum* till he be whole. The third infirmity caused by fleame, is when the eye appeareth carnous or fleshie, the which carnositie (if it be waxen hard by the space of a yeare or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning, cauteries (in that maner that I prescribed them

Maladies coming of fleame.

1.

2.

3.

before) will heale it, so that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnosity with a sharpe razor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice; which when you haue done, fill the eye full of powder of Candy, and then cause the patient to shut his eye, and then lay to it a plaister of flaxe & the white of an ege, & change the plaister twile on the day xv. daies: and after xv. daies make this plaister: *Rx.* a handful of *Carduus Benedictus*, stampe it well, & mingle it with half the white of an Ege, and so make a plaister with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twile on the day, and after three dayes leaue all plaisters, and let the patient lye with his eye open, and euery day in the morning put into his eye the powder called *Puluis benedictus*, and at euening the powder of Candy, till he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abstaine frō Eccles, Onions, Beets, and all such meates. The fourth maladie caused of fleame, is when the eye appeareth all bolne, and alwaies sheadeth teares, so that the patient may not open his eyes by reason of the heauinesse of the eye-lids, for there is a fatnes on the vpper eye-lid which troubleth the eye very much; and this disease is called the scab of the eye, and it proceedeth from superabundance of salt fleame: the cure of it is this: you shall first purge the stomack and braine of the patient with this receipt: *Rx.* Turbith, of the best Aloes and Rewbarbe ana. \mathfrak{z} j. then take of the iuyce of the roote of Walwort. \mathfrak{ss} j. and the aforelaide things being beaten and dissolued in the said iuyce, let it stand all night, and in the morning cleanse it, and let the patient take thereof a good quantitie, and the next day subtilly with your Razor pare away the aforelaide fatnesse, euen from the one lachrimall to the other: which done, lay on a plaister of herds and the white of an egge nine dayes after (euery day changing the plaister twile,) and then let the patient lye with his eye open, and put into it of the Colliry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third Pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnesse with Sugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eased. There is an Electuarie very available against these teares, which is thus made: *Rx.* *Olibanum*, *Castoreum*, Nutmegs, *Nux India*, Cloues, Quibibes, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. leaues of Laurell, Spikenard, Saffron, and *Cardamomum*, an. \mathfrak{z} ij. seeds of Dill, Smallage, Basilicon, Alsander, Annise, Fennell, foure seeds of Henbane, white Poppy, Musk, and Campher, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. all these must be beaten together to powder, sauing the *Olibanum*, which must be boiled with clarified Hony till it be molten, and then powre it into a faire large wooden platter together with the powder before made, and incorporate them together by often stirring, and let it abide in the platter still: and when you will minister it, giue as much as a Chestnut at the patients going to bed. It destroyeth the teares together with the fleame, it warmeth the braine, it driueth away the paine of the Migraine, it openeth the eyes, relieueth the eye-lids, and clarifieth the sight. It is good for them that haue the gout and the Palsey, and for them that haue an impediment in their speech.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the maladies in the Eye proceeding of choler.

TWO kinds of griefes are incident to the eyes by choler, the first whereof is that which is caused by abundance of choler in the stomacke, from whence ariseth

aristeth a corrupt fumositie into the braine, which annoyeth the braine, & troubleth the visible spirits, so that the party thus affected, shall imagine an object planted betweene him and the light in maner of a darke shadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this maladie, for it hath no euident marke, either in the eye or without the eye, but the cause of it abideth in the stomacke, which must be taken away by an Electuarie mitigatiue, & preparatiue, which will asswage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and sinewes, whereby the visible spirits may haue free passage. you shall make it thus: *Rx.* Rewbarbe, *Esule minoris*, red Sanders, *Mirobalani citrini*, ana \mathfrak{z} .iij. the roots of Fennell, Spinage, Baneci, Paisly, *Apij*, *Sicacelle*, Simory, and Maidenhaire, ana. M.j. Polipody of the Oake, \mathfrak{z} .ij. boile all these roots in faire water till half the water be wasted, and then cleanse it, and take the aforesaid spices well beaten and put them into the aforesaid licour with two pounds of good Sugar, and make thereof a sirupe laxatiue. But you shall boile it but litle the second time, for the spices will loone lose their vertue, and then cleanse it againe the second time, and let the patient take of this twise in the weeke. The second infirmity arising of choleris, when there appeareth before the tunicle, as it were a thin cloud in a cleare aire, and this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth only to those that be cholericke. For the cure you shall take a Saphire, and breake it in a mortar, and keepe the powder in a vessell of gold, and once in the day put this powder into the patients eye, and he shall be whole in short time. The same effect hath the gall of a Hare dried, and beaten into powder, and so put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye caused of melancholy.

OF the humour of melancholy be engendred in sundry folks many & diuers sicknesses, by reason of the oppilation of the spirits visible, which cometh by the distemperature of the braine which is disquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In these diseases therefore it seemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aire, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or foure faces, when he beholdeth but one: but these infirmities happen most commonly to aged persons which are melancholick, superfluity of melancholy dimming their eye sight. There must not therefore any medicines be put into the eye of the patient, but make this Electuary mitigatiue & apparatiue, which will open the oppilations of the nerues which did before foreclose the way to the visible spirits. The Electuarie is thus confected. *Rx.* the iuyce of Liquorice, Eyebright, *Sileris montani*, ana \mathfrak{ss} . the seeds of Rew, Basilicon, Nettles that come from beyond the seas, or Cecilian, or Fenel, of Alisander, of *Apium*, of Caraway seed, ana \mathfrak{z} .ij. Mastick, Cloues, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Quibibes, *Gummi*, Almonds, *Cerache pomi gummosi*, *Araguntan*, & saffron, ana \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} kernels of quince apples, \mathfrak{z} .j. all these must be beaten together into small powder well searced, and then you must confect them with good Sugar, & make an Electuary of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening till it be healed. It auaileth also against that dimnesse of the eyes which cometh by thought, and of much heauinesse, & maketh them to see more clearly, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *Clarificatiuū oculorum*. There is also another infirmity which cometh of melan-

choly, and that is when the paine suddenly ascendeth into the eyes, and grieveth so extremely, that it seemeth to the patient that his eyes would start out: they appeare also most commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of malady, do lose their sight altogether, though there be some which do see, notwithstanding but very weakely. But the seasonable applying of remedies, preuenteth either discommodity. After this sort then you shall encounter with this euill. You shall first purge the stomacke and the braine with these pills: *Rx.* Aloes, *Mirobalani Citrini*, Turbith, Sanders, Citrine and Rewbarbe, ana. *℥.℞.* Scammony, Mirrhe, Saffron, *Balsamum*, Mastick, *Lignum Aloes*, *Olibanum*, white Agarick, *Nux India*, iuyce of Liquorice, seed of *Apium*, Lettuce, Succory, Basilicon, ana. *℥.j.* Beate all these to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of Roses, and make pills of them, and giue the patient after his powder. The stomack and the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaister: *Rx.* foure Apples or Crabs, and rost them vnder the embers till they be soft, then core them, and pare them, and bruse them well in a mortar; and to foure of them put halfe the white of an Egge, and so bray them together till they be well incorporate, and so lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you shall find that it will do much good; for it both asswageth the swelling, lesseneth the paine, refresheth the sight, and with all these fixeth also the eye in his place. There is another infirmity also which proceedeth by the abundance of melancholy, and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, sometime it breedeth in the corner of the eye to the care-ward, and so spreadeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & resisted betime: sometime it also happeneth that another vngle ariseth in the other corner, & if they meet, it maketh the cure more vncertaine; yet by heedfull skill and discretion, it may be healed by the hand. Take therefore a twich of siluer, and therewith lift vp subtilly the vngle from the tunicle, proceeding to the lachrimall where it grew, and there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten dayes together, removing it twice on the day, and at the end of ten dayes wash his eye with hote water, and put into it *Puluis Nabetus* before named, till the eye be sufficiently cleared. Let him abstaine from such meates as do feed melancholy. It happeneth also sometime that the superfluous abundance of melancholy seated in the brain, begetteth a drinesse in the eye-lids, which afterward turneth to itching and burning. But this disease is cured by letting the patient blood on the middle veine in the forehead, and after with vsing this Colliry: *Rx.* forty tender crops of the Bramble, and stampe them small, then put them in a new earthen vessell together with a quart of good white Wine, and so boile them till halfe be consumed, and then cleante it and preserue it in a glasse to your vse, and twice in the day put some of it into your patients eye till it be whole. Of the like superfluity of melancholy groweth sometime a corrupt humour without the eye vpon the lid, the which bolneth all the one side of the face with extreme paine, but with no offence to the sight of the eye. The signes of this disease are these: it maketh the eye-lid hard and red, and keepeth the eye so shut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you shall take fine floure of old wheate, and yolkes of eggs, ana. *℥.j.* of Saffron, *℥.j.* and stampe them well together with womans milke till it be as an ointment: then make a plaister of it, and apply it so, that none enter

Signa.

Curatio.

ter into the eye. You may also vse this: *R.* a Lilly root and Crabs, and roſt them in the embers til they be ſoft, then taking away the core and the pils of the crabs ſtampe them both of like quantity with the whites of eggs, and ſo vse it. On the ſtep of the wound where the ſore was, lay this ointment, that it may draw the fleſh together, ſo that no ſcarre do appeare: *R.* Aloes, Hens greaſe, oile of bitter Almonds, and white Wax, and incorporate them together into an ointment, & apply it. It is very good in all the diſeaſes of the eyes to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *unguentum Alabaſtrum* before named, for it aſwageth the paine, and helpeth the other medicines in their operation. It happeneth many times in this infirmity, that the patient his eye lids, for want of provident ſkil do reuerſe, which is a great blemiſh. In this caſe you muſt ſubtilly with the Razour diuide the eye lid from the wound, and part them with a litle role made of fine linnen cloth, dipped in the white of an egge, which you ſhall lay betwixt the lid and the ſore xv. dayes together, changing it daily, and then make the ointment of Hens greaſe and white Wax, and lay of it vpon the role, and it will conſume the wound, ſo that there ſhall appeare no cicatrice. The like cure you ſhall vse when the reuerſement of the eye-lids is cauſed of ſuperfluity of bloud. Of the melancholicke humour there is alſo ingendred in many men a ſickneſs which groweth betweene the noſe and the eye, and it appeareth like a peece of a lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwayes filth. This ſore is called *Fulgopus*. For the cure of it, you ſhal only take a twich, and liſt the ſore vp ſubtilly, and with the point of a Razour cut vp the ſore by the roote, and cauterize it with an hot iron, and vse the ointment before rehearſed, which they call *Unguentum ſubtile*, that is, Hens greaſe and white Wax, and annoint the place with it till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diſeaſes happening to the Eye by outward cauſes, as by blowes with ſtickes, ſtaues, or ſtones.

THe onely thing generally that you ſhall vse when the eye is ſmitten, is the white of an egge & flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three eſpecial properties: The firſt is to aſwage the paine: The ſecond to purifie & cleare the ſight: The third is to let and keepe away all ſuperfluous humours, which otherwiſe would fall into the eye. You ſhall remoue it foure times in the day, and twiſe in the night, by the ſpace of fifteene daies together, annointing in the meane time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alabaſter, which as I told you before, was an adiutant and aide to all medicines. Now after the fifteene daies be expired, if you ſhall perceiue the tunicle ſaluatrice to be hurt and broken, you ſhall then take xij. ſtreines of the new laid egges of white hens, and put them in a mortar, labouring them with a peſtil till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and ſo reſerue it in a glaſſe, and twiſe in the day and once in the night put a litle of it in the eye, and it will knit together, and make ſound againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this maner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue ſeemed dangerous, and vncurable to the ignorant beholder. But ſometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there

will grow a Cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saved by this forenamed prescript, and the Cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and to be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of Waxc and Comin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and Wormwood: but both those and all such like hore ointments are passing euill, because they consume and waste the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of waterie eyes and of corrupt humours like teares, which the Physitions call *fistules*, to discern betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluente of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out of the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellows, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iron, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter, which indeed they haue done, but they haue destroyed the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a razour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelid and the nose, so directly that the lid be not touched, and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, and into the same put in the graine of a Fitch, binding it on with a litle pillow of linnen, and so let it lye till the next day: then remouing the Fitch, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a litle of some powder corrasieue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen berds, and the white of an egge (the patient alwayes shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane Swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised: and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a sponge, as much as a Fitch, in the hole which the powder made, & it will purge the drinelle of the wound: & when you shal perceiue it thoroughly dried, leaue the sponge, and bind nothing to it else but faire dry lint of linnen til the patient be whole. Now concerning the teares, they issue out of the eyelids both the vpper and the neather: but there is difference betweene the causes of their issuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eyelid, come from the heart, by reason of sorrow, dread, or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the vpper eye-lid, proceed from the braine, by reason of corruption and abundance of humours, and their course ceaseth not vnlesse the matter be purged with Electuaries and Cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the diseases which come by skipping in of stoner,
or chips by chance into the Eyes.*

THese diseases happen specially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights, and Smithes: for if any chiue, chip, or dust skip into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle Saluatrice, and then can you not cure the eye but by remouing and drawing the said chiue, which
you

you shall do with your needle, diuiding it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happen that there be any pit in the place where it lay, by reason that it abode long therein, then put into the eye the streines of eggs, ordered as I declared before, twice in the day, and once in the night; and vpon the eye lay a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, & within three dayes it will heale the partie diseased. And after this sort you shall also remoue the haw in the eye. But you shall in drawing out the haw, bind two needles fast together at the top, and so take the haw betweene the two points, & so easily rolling the needles, bring it away. Sometime it happeneth that the eye is stong with a bee or waspe, or some other venomous thing, or blasted with an infected aire: and if any of these happen, the eye is much disquieted and grieved, so that the patient may take no rest, and it beloneth vp that he may not see. The onely cure for such and the like accidents is this, as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handful of *Carduus benedictus*, stampe it small, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therewith make a plaister laying it on flaxen herds, binding it hard to the eye, where it shall lye till it be dried, and then apply another: and so consequently vie it till your patient be thoroughly whole. These qualities this herbe hath: it asswageth swelling, and easeth the paine, destroyeth the venime, and putteth away bloud from the eyes. This is also a present remedie for the eyes that are bloudshed, when they burne as though there were grauell in them. And thus much for the especiall discourses of sundrie diseases which do most commonly bend to that liue member, the eye, together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

PAINE in the eares is caused in some through cold taken in iourneying by cold winds. Also sometime it is caused of cold bathes and medicinable water. Also it chanceth to many through hote distemper. Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by stretching out of the parts that be inflamed engendreth paine, euen so a windie vapour, or a humour grosse and clammie, for lacke of passage causeth paine. Also humours that be biting, and like whay and matter, do cause paine in the eares. Paine in the eares caused of cold, is soone knowne by the patients words, & because there is continuall great paine without heauinesse, or distension, or burning. The paine which is caused of hote distemper is knowne, in that there is felt paine and heate without heauinesse or bolning. But if heauinesse, distension, and beating heate and paine be felt in the head, then the paine in the eare is caused of inflammation. Onely distension without heauinesse declareth a windie vapour which cannot find passage out. If there be heauinesse in the head and the hearing the paine is caused of grosse and clammie humors. If the paine be caused onely of cold, it will soone be cured by hote remedies, that is, with oyle of Rew, Laurell, Nard, Dill, Lillies, of *Euphorbium*, and Spike. Also if you seeth Rew, or common oile of Pepper, or *Cassia*, it is a good remedie. Also oile wherein Garlick is sodden, or an Onion, dropped into the eares, is marvellous good. There are some that do cut out the core of a great Onion, then they fill it with oile, & they heate it meanly in hote embers, and powre it into the eares, when it is strongly strained. Also a very litle

Causes

Signa

Cure of cold.

Of water.

Of heate.

Vena sectio.

Sapa.

Euphorbium commixed with much old oyle, is much commended of *Galen*. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinal water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually powre in oyle that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, & againe powre in more. The white of an egge mitigateth the paine very much. Also womans milke. Also goose greafe profiteth much: likewise foxes greafe. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of an hot distemper, then oyle of Roses is marvellous good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare: and vineger and oyle of Roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of Nightshade: or this, R^x. oyle of Roses, ℥.ij. iuyce of Nightshade, ℥.ij. vineger of Roses, ℥.j. ℞. commixe them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscus humours, you must vse medicines which do diuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and cleanse without erosion, as is, *Iris Illirica*, all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter Almonds, the roote of *Nitidifolia*, Centorie the lesse, *Polium* and Cinamon. Also oyle of Almonds, and other which do purge, cleanse, wipe, and vntop the passages without grieue. Therefore of those you may make medicines and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of Leekes dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of Leekes mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica* veine that is on the same side: and with clisters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *Oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose greafe, or hennes greafe, with oyle of Roses. But if the inflammation be vehement, then to cease paine, drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good, R^x. iuyce of Sene-greene, ℥.ij. oyle of Roses, ℥.j. vineger, ℥.j. ℞. commixe them all, and drop it into the fore eare. Apply those things outwardly which cease paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be very vehement, it is necessarie to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily; and it is no small danger, lest that the sinew by which the vertue of hearing is dispersed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a litle *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantitie, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicines ought to be tempered (being first finely beaten) must be *Sapa*: for it doth cease paine much more then sweete wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be some that commixe *Opium* with oyle of Roses, or Violets, after this sort; R^x. of *Opium*, ℥.j. oyle of Roses and Violets, ana. ℥.j. ℞. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolued in womans milke, and dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But when the paine waxeth old, and turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall drop into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of Linseed onely, with oyle of Roses or Cammomill mixed with it.

CHAP. XL.

Of sound and noise in the eares.

Noise and tinkling in the eare, for the most part, is engendred of a windie *Cause.*
vapour, or of grosse and clammy humours. Also many times it is caused
through an exquisite tardinesse of the sense of hearing. It is also caused by
weakenesse of the members: when it chanceth in the recovering of a disease,
some humour is taken into the sinewes of the eares. Also it is caused of outward
things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chance through out-
ward causes, it is soone knowne by the patients words. Now because the noise *Signa.*
cometh by litle and litle, or at one time, or suddenly on a heape, that is also
conuenient to know the disease by. For if the sounding do come, and then rest
for a certaine space, it is euident that a windie vapour is shut in and cannot get
out, and so causeth sounding, and specially when the sicke hath eaten windie
meates. But if such sound in the eares do not come suddenly, but by litle and
litle, and there is felt withall a heauinesse and weight: then it delareth the euill
to be caused of grosse and viscus humours. For the cure, if the sound in the
eares be caused of grosse and viscus humours, or of vapours, in the beginning
purge the head with *Pilule Cochie* and such like. But first minister before them
portions and medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and diuide. Then you
must vse masticatories and sternutaments. Moreouer you must drop into the
eares oyle of bitter Almonds, or oyle in which *Castoreum* is brayed. Also let the
eare be inclined to the vapour of the water wherein *Stachas*, Wormwood, Mar-
ioram, Mints and Origan haue bene sodden. Iuyce of Rew sodden in the rynd
of a Pomgranate is maruellous good. Also *Sacculi* made of Betonic, *Stachados*, *Sacculi.*
Cammomill, Marioram, and other things a litle before rehearsed are very good,
if they be applied to the eare warme. If the sound in the eare be caused through
sharpnesse of the sense of hearing, which is knowne, if when the patient is hun-
grie it increaseth, and when he is full the noise is lesse; then you must vse those
things which do astonie the senses: but you must take good heed thereof, and
therefore begin with the easiest, and if need be proceed afterward to stronger.
Oyle of Roses is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. *Ga-*
~~len~~ in this case praiseth the iuyce of *Mandragora* and Poppie. But if noise in the
eares chance in feauers, there need no remedie for it; for commonly it goeth
away straight. But if it remaine after a disease or a paine in the head, then you
must nourish the eares with decoction of Wormwood, powring in vineger and
oyle of Roses, or iuyce of Radish with oyle of Roses, or the best *Aloes* tempered
with *Mulsa*. And if this helpe not, vse blacke Hellebore brayed with vineger.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Deafnesse and slow hearing.

The eare is so afflicted, that it causeth not onely dulnesse of hearing, but also
deafnesse, that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafnesse beginneth
at ones birth, and sometime it chanceth after we be borne; which doth chance,
either through cholericke humours flying vppward, or through crude and grosse *Cause.*
humours stopping the hearing. If deafnesse come of cholericke humours, spe-
cially after feuers, then it is wont with sudden incursions to runne to the braine. *Signa.*

If of cholerick
humours.

If of grosse
humours.

Vicinus ratio.

Cause.

Signa.

Vicinus ratio.

Curatio.

Also the face and all the state of the body will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humours, there is heaviness of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humours. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are incurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deafe, yet if it haue long continued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholerick humors flying abroad, is soone driven away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be ingendred of crude and grosse humors, this dull hearing is cured by bloodletting, or only by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilule Cochie*, and other such like. But minister before *Oxymel*, and other medicines that haue power to diuide grosse and clammy humours. The whole body being purged, you must draw steame out of the head by Masticatories, Sternutaments, and *Errhina*. Furthermore, they must be dried, and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it selfe, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that diuide and cut grosse and viscus humors, whereof there be many declared in the Chapter against sound in the eares. But priuately iuyce of Rew with Hony, or *Castoreum* with oyle of Dill is good. Also you must vse fomentes, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reed, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot Wormwood, Mints, Marjoram, Origan, *Stachys*, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that cometh from thence may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good: *R.* oile of *Castoreum*, \mathfrak{z} . β . Cumin seed, \mathfrak{z} . ij . powder of *Castoreum*, \mathfrak{z} . j . and put in the oile, and wind it vp in wet papers, and put it vnder the hote embers, and when it is roasted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapor of Vineger taken with a reed, as is taught before, is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether thin, & meates of light digestion.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Impositumes breeding in the Eares.

Parotides in Greek, be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hote blood, which is either mixed with choler, or steame, or melancholy. And sometime it is caused of humors compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the body by sickness, and especially by feuers. Parotides which are caused through fulnesse and plentie of hote blood, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholericke blood, they seeme much like *Erisipelas*, and they vex the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is caused of melancholy blood, they be not red, nor they vex not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be ingendred of flegmatick blood, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a manner as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting of blood: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore, we vse not in Parotides (as we do in other inflammations) to apply in the beginning things that repress, but contrariwise things that do draw. And if they be

be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually foment. To mitigate the pain, you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and ceassing paine, meet to ripe and digest, as is, decoctions made of Wheate or Barley, or the meale of Linseed, with *Mulsa* or Fennugreeke, or *Aitha*, or Cammomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with Butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also Swines grease with butter melted with a litle Waxe put to it, that it may be a soft cerote, may be well applied. But in them that be meeke, that is, in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not such plenty of humors that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with foment of brine, and plaisters and medicines altogether discussive, as is *Diaetylon*. If the *Parotides* cannot be dissolved, you must use medicines to ripen and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheate meale with the decoction of figs & oile. Also the medicine that is made of meale and floure and leuen. When the *Parotides* be riped, either cut the skinne with a knite that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with Garlick and such like; or to proue how to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, removing it twice daily, and nourishing it untill the paine be somewhat released, and the more part of the matter dissolved. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is Calues suet, Goates suet, the marrow of a Hart, *Bdekium*, *Syrax*, *Ammoniacum*, and such other like.

Cure of them
that be meeke.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

Ozene in Greeke, be vlcers in the nose that be dead and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauer. Through sharp and rotten humours which flow to the nostrils, fisthiae is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nostrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nostrils. You shall adde strength to the head after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine and bind, as is oile of Roses, Alum, vnripe gals, willow leaves, vineger, and such like: this must be continually laid & annointed on the head nine daies. Whe with those things the head, is made strong, then go about to cure the nostrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsive and discussive. Therefore those things that repell and driue back, be things sharp and sowre, which also are reckoned with restrictiue things. Discussive things must be hot and dry of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozene* you must drop in the iuice of Calamint, or blow in the powder thereof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nostrils. A while after minister Sternutaments to bring them to scurfs, which will fall off in three or 4. daies. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease & butter, &

Cause.

Curatio.

Sternutamentum.

Unguentum.

oile of Roses. The vlcers in the nostrils may be annointed with iuice of a Pomgranate boyled in a brazen vessel vnto the half, or a whole Pomgranate sodden in sweet Wine brayed, and dropped in. Also this is good: *Rx.* dry Alume, *℥.j.℥.* Mirrhe, *℥.j.* the rind of a Pomgranate, Sumach, salt Gemme, Saffron, Frankensence, ana. *℥.℥.* beate them, and blow into the nose of the powder. If that after the vlcers there remaine paine, vse this ointment: *Rx.* oile of Roses, Mirtels, ana. *℥.j.* burnt Lead, Litarge, ana. *℥.ij.* Ceruse, Bolearmeny, *Balaustium*, ana. *℥.j.* white Wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, & annoint the place.

CHAP. XLIIII.

*Of bleeding at the nose.**Cause.**Externa.**Interna.**Signa.**Vicius ratio.**Potus.**Curatio.**Vena sectio.**Cucurbitule.**Epithema.*

Flux of blood at the nose, is caused partly outwardly, and partly inwardly. Outward causes be falling from a high place, a stripe, vehement exercise, and tarying in the Sunne. Inward causes is plenty of blood, or thinnesse of the same. You may know if it come through plenty of blood by heauy pain in the head, much blood in the face, and rednesse of the eyes. Let the diet be thicke, and such that it may coole and make thicke the blood. Therefore let the aire be cold, and the meate of good iuyce and easie to digest. If the blood be very hot, let the sicke eat Lettuce, Endiue, Peares, Quinces, Chickens roasted, or boiled with Veriuyce. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of Cinamon, by which throughout my booke I meane water in which a litle Cinamon is sodden, lest water through his coldnes might hurt a weake stomacke. Let the patient speake litle, and let him eschue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Also it is good to haue the lower parts of the head highest. For the cure, you must take heed that in bleeding at the nose, the lower parts lie highest, and the head downward. The cure must be begun with those remedies which turne the blood to other parts of the body. First therefore if the body be full, and age will suffer it, and if the sicke be not resolved, you must cut the veine on the arme, right against the flowing of blood at the nose. When you haue drawne out a litle, then let it alone an houre, then draw out some againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patients strength will suffer it. Moreover, friction and rubbing of the inferiour parts, as the armes, hands, thighs, share and feet, is very profitable: and it is maruellously good to put the feet into warme water, euer rubbing them vp and downe. Also strong binding of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull backe. Also great cupping glasses fastened to the sides, do retaine blood breaking out at the nose. If the blood flow from the right nostrill, fasten the cupping glasse vpon the liuer; if at the left nostrill, vpon the spleene. If the blood come from both the nostrills, fasten cupping glasses to both places. Also fasten them to the shoulders with scarification. Those being done, minister both within the body and without, things which coole and restraîne. Outwardly apply to the forehead an *Epithema* of iuyce of Plantaine, Lettuce, Sorrell, Shepheards purse, Knorgrasse, or make it with the waters of them distilled. A linnen cloth wet in cold vinegar is marvellous good, being applyed to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Also nourish the forehead with sponges of cold water. Also it is good to vse this *Epithema*, applied to the forehead and the liuer: *Rx.* water of Roses

Roses, Nightshade, Sorrell, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . iij .$ powders of *Diatrisen santalen*, *Diarrhodon* *Alind Epithe-*
Abbati, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ Bolcarmenie, luory burnt, *Lapuhematites*, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ commixe *ma.*
 them all, and make an *Epithema*. Also you must put into the nose medicines to
 stop bloud, for the which this is very good: \mathfrak{R} Frankensence, $\mathfrak{z} . ij .$ Aloes, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ *An excellent*
 powder them, and mixe herewith the white of an egge, vntill it be as thicke as *medicine to*
 Hony, then commixe the soft haire of a Hare with it. and apply it to the nose. *stop bloud.*
 Also you may writhe a linnen cloth (dipped therein) in the nostrils. Also Mints
 brayed and put into the nostrils, is thought to be exceeding good. Also a
 sponge wet in strong and sharpe vinegar, may be put into the nose that blee-
 deth. Also this medicine is good \mathfrak{R} Eg-shels, $\mathfrak{z} . ij .$ vnripe Gals, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ being bray- *Optima medi-*
 ed, put them in a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vinegar, & put it into the *cina.*
 nostrils. Also it is good to stop the eares strongly with linnen and waxe, and
 to hold in the mouth cold raide water. Also iuyce of the leaues of Nettle, ha-
 uing linnen dipt into it, and put into the nose, stoppeth bleeding at the nose.
 Also iuyce of Horsetaile, or the leaues brayed & applied are good. The flesh of
 Snails brayed with vinegar, or with their shels burnt and brayed are good, be-
 ing applied to the forehead & nose with vinegar. But aboue al, the bloud which
 cometh out of the patients nose is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot, and
 then beaten; take of it $\mathfrak{z} . iij .$ Bolcarmeniacke, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ Champhore $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ with the
 whire of an egge and a litle vinegar, make it thicke like hony, and lay it to the
 forehead, and put it into the nose. Necessit requiring, it is lawfull to put too
 two graines or three of *Opium*. Asses dung dried and made into powder is won-
 derfully good; and also hogs dung hath the like propertie. Within the body
 minister those things which do coole and restraine, as be sirupes of Roses, Sor-
 rell and *Nymphaea*, Trochisks of *Terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and such like me-
 dicines. Moreouer, if in the meane season any bloud flow into the belly or other
 places of the body, if it be much and plenteous you must auoid it by medicines
 which will dissolue and bring forth the cloddy matter.

CHAP. XLV.

Of distillation, rheume, and hoarcesse.

Catarros in Greeke is called *Distillatio* in Latine, and in English Rheume. It *Distillatio.*
 is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Grauedo.*
Grauedo is when the humour falleth into the nose, and causeth the pose. *Raucedo.*
Raucedo is when the humour chanceth to distill to the sharpe arterie. The cause of *Cause.*
 flowing of the humour is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a *Cold.*
 cold temper, which chanceth specially to them which go suddenly about in
 the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and stuffed, the *Heate.*
 coldnesse of humours which be in the braine wringing hard, like as a sponge
 dipped in water is wroong with ones hand: it causeth the flowing of humours
 to the lower parts. So oftentimes heate going about in the head, dissoluing
 the humours in the braine, ingendreth distillation. Moreouer, all things that
 replete the head without measure, do cause flowing of humours into the infe-
 riour parts: also wine immoderately drunke, and hote baths, raw meate re- *Repletion of*
 maining in the stomacke, and vaporous things in the head. The signes if the *the head.*
 fluxe of humours come of heate, are these, the head is hote, and a sharpe and *Signa.*

*Calor.**Victus ratio.**Curatio.**Vene sectio.**Humor frigidus.**Sacculi.**To stop distillation.*

thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose as by the mouth : also the face and the nose is red, and for the most part there followeth a Feaver. Contrariwise, they that haue the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched forth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Eshmoides*, are shut vp, so that the voice cannot passe downward by the nostrils. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humour distilleth out of the nose. Let him eschue aire that is very hote or very cold, especially from a bath, and from South and North winds, and all things that can bind or dissolue humors in the braine. Let him vse meats of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plentie of vapours to the braine, as be Onions, Garlick, Mustard seed, Radish, and very hote odoraments. Moreouer they which haue the distillation, must eate lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *Aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon, or Barley: let him eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure, when the head is vexed with a hot distemper, you must vse those remedies which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedie of the head is to sprinkle and powre vpon the head plentie of hote water: that is able to driue out the hote vapors ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme baths of sweet water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them in Sommer to be annointed with oile of Roses. If a cold distemper vexe the head, it must be annointed with hote and thinne oiles, as oiles of *Ireos*, Rew, and such like. Oyle of *Ireos* is not onely vsed as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applyed, which are spoken of in the Chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humor distill from the head together with a Feauer, and if there be fulnesse of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine: but if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may draw the humours that do abound in the head downward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *Pilule auree*, *Alephangine*, *Azarum*, and such like. Also you must turne the humours from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastening of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heate of choler, as is sirupe of Violets, *Nympha*, of Poppy, & their conferues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the Chapter of headach may be applied. Also a plaister of *Terra lemnia* or *Bolearmoniake*, and iuyce of Plantain, made and laid vpon the head being shaven is good. If it be a cold humour which distilleth, you shall emptie with those things which purge steame: for which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with *Masticatories*, *Gargarismes*, and such like. Moreouer, apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus: R. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, Betony, Origan, ana. M. ss. Cinamon, Cloues, ana ʒ. j. Maces, ʒ. i. ss. Nutmegs, ʒ. ij. *Gallie Moschata*, ʒ. j. powder them all, and put them in filke, and make a *Sacculus*, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is very good also to annoint the head with hot oiles, as are the oiles of *Ireos*, Dill and Rew. All things do stop distillation, which haue vertue to dry, especially *Nigella* parched, and Cumin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and

and knit, is a present remedie, if the patient do smell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffumens, as is this: *R.* Frankensence, Masticke ana. *℥.j.* wood of Aloes, *℥.j.* Cinamon, Cloues, ana. *℥.ij.* *Galla moschata*, *℥.j.* Laurel leaues, yellow Sanders, ana. *℥.j.* Musk, Amber, ana. *gr. j.* being brayed, commix them with *Storax liquida*, as much as sufficeth, and make trochisks: wherof put one vpon coales: *R.* Sage, Marioram, Rosemary, ana. *℥.j.* Maces, Cloues, Cinamon, ana. *℥.ij.* wood of Aloes, *℥.j.* Frankensence, *℥.j.* Beate them all, and commixe them, and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coales. As for hoarsenesse, it is cured almost with the same medicines that the cough is.

CHAP. XLVI.
Of paine in the teeth.

TOothach (as *Galen* saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall, is the most cruel & grieuous of them all. It is caused somtime of hote or cold distemper. Also many times through flowing of humors out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they engender like griefe in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleshy parts. Paine in the teeth is somtime without inflammation of the gums, sometime in the sinew wherein the roots be planted. If the paine come through distemper of the bare qualitie, it will not be grieuous. Hot distemper is knowne by the temper of the whole body, because that likewise is hot. Also the face is red, and the diet vsed before was hot. Cold is knowne by the contrary iudgements. If the paine be caused of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth, but also in other parts which it passeth by. An hot humor ingendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not, and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold. Also eschue all sharpe, sower, and viscus things. Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth: labour diligently to purifie the teeth. The meats must be good of iuyce, & easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to wash the teeth with warme wine. Let the checks be annointed outward with warme oyles, of Cammomill, Rew, Treos, & such like. Also to wash the mouth, seeth in vinegar, Origā, Calamint, Hyssope, Peniroyal, Sauory, the root of Veruain, & such like. If the teeth do ake thorough heate, you must seeth in vinegar Purslaine, Pellitory, Singreene the lesse, & licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you must vse the seeds of Lettuce, Endiue, and Poppy sodden in vinegar. Without you must annoint against the grief with cold oiles, as of Roses, Water-lillies, & such like. Moreover if the paine be caused through flowing of humors, if age, time of the yeare, & other things will suffer it, & if the body be also ful of bloud, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine or *media* on the same side that the grief is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders. If one onely corrupt humor doth abound, the vse conuenient medicins to purge that humor. For the same purpose clisters are very good. The whole body being emptied, you must minister those medicins that do repressle & stop, as iuice of Plantaine, Roles, Purslaine, both the endiues: either take the decoction of the aforesaid things, or their waters distilled and mixed with a litle vinegar. It is only good to wash the aking with hot sharp

Cause.

Signa.

Vicius ratio.

Curatio.

If it come of heate.

If of flowing of humours.

If it come of
cold.

vineger, with varipe Gals: or this, R^x the roote of Henbane. \mathfrak{z} . j. Pellitory. \mathfrak{z} . β . Stauesacre \mathfrak{z} . ij. Galingale. \mathfrak{z} . β . Camphore. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Alume. \mathfrak{z} . j. Hony \mathfrak{z} . ij. let all be brused, and boile all in vineger \mathfrak{lb} j. Rose water. \mathfrak{z} . vj. wash the teeth with this each morning; it will preserue the teeth, & keepe the from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, then vse specially this medicine: R^x Pepper, Pellitory, Melilot, ana \mathfrak{z} j Stauesacre \mathfrak{z} . β . bruse the, and put the powder into a linnen cloth, & lay it on the aking teeth, & keepe it there a quarter of an houre, and it will cease the paine. Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is very good.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of teeth that be blacke and loose.

Cause.

Curatio.

Dentifricum
optimum.

Loose teeth.

Collutio cym.

Dentifricium.

SOMETIME the teeth be swart and blacke throughout their substance, not vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humours the teeth be loose, sometime through a stripe or fall, sometime through flowing of moistnesse, which looseth the sinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth loose; or else gnawing and weaknesse of the gummes in the which the teeth are set, causeth them to be loose. The cure of vicious humours must be begun with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be swart or rustie, you must dinide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *Triticum*, Frankensence, Mints, Gals, Masticke, Mirrhe, *Nigella*, & such like. Among many other this is very good. R^x *Nigella*, Mirrhe, Frankensence, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Masticke, white Pepper, ana \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Psstolochia*. \mathfrak{z} . j. roch Alume. \mathfrak{z} . j. beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therewith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine, and annoint them therewith. The corrupt humours being consumed, vse Dentifrices which haue vertue to scoure and drie, as is this, R^x *Nitrum*, roch Alume, Harts horne burnt, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Mirrhe. \mathfrak{z} . j. the roote of *Ireos Illirica*, Frankensence, drie Mints, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . common Salt burnt, *Psstolochia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Pumish, *Tessarum sepie*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β Pepper, Pellitory, drie Peniroyall, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . beat them, and searce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth daily. For teeth that be loose you may apply such medicines as restraine and strengthen loose gummes, and fasten the. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of reⁿ restrictive things do profit, as is this. R^x red Roses, Mints, Plantaine ana. \mathfrak{M} . β . the barks of Cipresse nuts \mathfrak{z} . j. seeds of Mirtels, Sumach ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Pomgranate rinds, Gals, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Acatia* \mathfrak{z} . ij. seeth them all in red restrictive wine, & with that often wash the mouth. The mouth being washed, it is lawfull to vse this *Dentifricium*. R^x Gals the rinds of sweet Pomegranates, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Balaustium*, Sumach, Mirrhe, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. red Roses, *Sanguis draconis*, *Caliculorum glandium*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Frankensence, Harts horne burnt, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β powder all, and searce them, and rub the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good. R^x *Balaustium*, Nutmegs, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. roch Alume. \mathfrak{z} . j. β powder them, and mixe the with Hony \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . and incorporate the well together: and wth this annoint the teeth twise or thrise in the day.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Ulcers in the mouth.

ap^{te}.

THE vlcers which are bred in the vpper part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heate, in Greeke are called *Aphthe*, and of the barbarous sort

sort *Acrola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and these be most perilous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infants and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the child cannot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to them that be of perfect age, aswell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humours to the mouth, as also through sharpnesse of those things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are easie, because they be knowne by sight and feeling. If you touch it, the places will seeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is swelling. They which be red, do shew bloud to haue the maisterie: yellownesse signifieth bitter choler: whitenesse, fleame: blacknesse, melancholie. They which chance to children may easily be cured by those things that do meanelly restraime. And you must giue them chiefly in their meats some Quinces, and other sharpe things, as Peares, and Mespilers, viz. Medlers, or open arles. Sometime also you must commixe with their meate some Lettuce, Endiue and Purslaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuyce of Purslaine, Lettuce, and Nightshade, the powder of Alum, and wash the mouth with a fine cloth or with a Sering; and if the child can take no meate, then the nurse must vie the same kinde of diet. Also the decoction of Galles, *Balanstium*, Sanders, Sumach, *Acatia* and such like, commixed with *Rob de ribes*, or *Diamoron*, applyed as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age, onely the nature of the body is to be considered, whether it be soft, or moist, or hard, or drie. For in hard and strong bodies you must minister strong medicins. In weake and soft bodies, gentle medicins. For the diet therefore in such ages, they must eschue all things that be sharpe & salt, and that ingender corrupt iuyce. For the cure, in fulnesse of the body, if nothing do let it, first cut the *Cephalica* veine, & the those veines vnder the tongue. If the body be full of ill iuyce, you must minister a purgation against the corrupt humours. The bodie being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to restraime and stop. Moderate remedies against vlcers be these; *Sumach*, *Roses*, *Balanstium* dissolue in wine or *Mulsa*. But if the exulcerations begin to putrefie, this decoction is very profitable, R. Fellard, leaues of Sage, Hysope, Rew, Peniroyall, Cammomil, Woodbind, Knotgrasse, *Bursapasteris*, Brier leaues, ana. M. ℞. wash them cleane, and boile them all in ℥.ij. ℞ of good Ale or Beere, and put therein three or foure spoonesfull of Hony, Alum. ℥.ij. let it seeth to the consumption of halfe, then straine it, & wash the mouth therewith foure or fve times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *Unguentum Aegyptiacum*, mixt with *Mel rosarum*, or such like.

Signa.

Curatio infantium.

Cure of them that be of perfect age.

Vicius ratio. Curatio.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a stinking month.

THERE is a grievous and stinking sauour of the mouth caused for the most part through putrifaction of the gummes or teeth, or through meate sticking still in the teeth. Many times it cometh through hote distemper of the skinne of the mouth: sometime also through corrupt and rotten humours sticking in the mouth of the stomacke. It chanceth also many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If stinking of the mouth chance through putrifaction either of the gummes, or teeth,

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Collutio oris.

For sweete
breath.

Vomitum.

teeth, or of meate sticking in the teeth: it is soone knowne either by sight, or by the patients tale. If it be caused of a hote distemper of the mouth, then heate is felt in the mouth, and thirst troubleth him. If through vice of the stomacke, then the breath of the mouth is more grievous and stinking before meate then after meate. Vlcérations of the lungs are knowne by extenuation of the bodie, and by coughing. In the diet the patient must auoid all things that do readily ingender corruption in the mouth or stomacke, as is milk, fish, almost all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and such like. Let the meats therefore which they vse be of good iuyce, and easie to digest: but they must vse meats rather rost then sodden. In the end of dinner & supper they may eate Peares, Quinces, and such like, especially, if the stinking saour come frō the mouth of the stomacke. Let them eschue sleeping by and by after meate. If stinch of the mouth come through corruption of the gummies or teeth, if there be fulnesse of the bodie, first draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, & then fasten cupping glasses to the necke; but if the body be full of euill iuyce, purge the humor that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The bodie being purged, vse outward medicines, specially collutions and washings, which in this case seeme to be marvellous good, as this is, *Rx*. Red roses. Plantain, Knotgrasse, ana. *M. j* *℞*. Gals, Pomegranat floures, Cipres nuts, ana. *℥. ij*. rinds of Pomegranats, *℥. ℞*. Roch alum. *℥. j*. seeth these in iust quantitie of water to the third part, & in the iuyce of the decoction being strained, comix *Mel rosarum*, *Diacarion*. ana. *℥. ℞*. *Diamoron*. *℥. ij*. commixe them all and make a collution, with the which wash the gums and the teeth euery morning & euening. Also oftē washing with water mixed with vineger in the morning, and by and by after meate, is good. If the stinke in the mouth be without exulceration, minister the roote of *Ireos* steeped in old odoriferous wine, and wash the teeth often withall. Also it is good to hold it in the mouth. Also Minte steeped in pure wine minister to wash the teeth. Also it is very good to chew Pellitorie, *Tamariscus* & Rew. Likewise collution of vineger squillitike, or decoction of Sage, or onely wine. Also decoction of Mints in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often washed with it. This causeth sweet breath, and maketh the teeth white. *Rx* white salt, Pumises, Origan, ana. *℥. ij*. roote of *Ireos*, *℥. j*. floures of Squinace. *℥. ℞*. beate them all, & commix the, and rub the teeth therewith. If stinke of the mouth come of a hote distemper, cure it with contrary medicines: but if it come of a corrupt humour in the mouth of the stomack, it is healed by those things which do purge that humor. Those things which be contained in the mouth of the stomacke may well be brought out by a vomit. How ye shall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, minister medicines which do strengthen the stomacke, as is, *Aromaticum rosaceum*, Diamber, Hydromalum, & such like medicines, which be good in all causes, as be Cloues, Masticke, Mace, wood of *Albes*, Cinamon, Roses, all the Saunders, Nutmegs, *Quibibes*, *Ireos*, and other of the like sort.

These suffice. And how many euils soeuer there be of the head, whose cure is not expressly named by me in this booke, yet you may finde out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.



The second Booke.

CHAP. I.

Against the inflammation of the Columella.



HERE chanceth in the throate many dangerous inflammations (as Hippocrates writeth in his *Prognosticus*) and first of this Columella appeareth a certai fleshy peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one do gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be seene. In old time it was called *Gurgulis*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often

Gurgulis.

Signa.

Velus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Cucurbitula.

vered with inflammations, which is caused through bloud and other humours which descend out of the head. The disease may be known by sight; and there chanceth in it difficulty in swallowing, paine, swelling, rednesse of the Columella, & seauer. The diet in a maner, must be such as is ordained in other inflammations, & specially, quietnesse, rest, silence, & hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at supper. For the cure, if there be fulnesse of the bodie, you must begin with bloudletting, and first you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, & afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Also the bellie must be purged by clisters, so that by that meanes, not onely the bellie may be soluble, but also that flowing of humours to the grieffe, may be taken away. Also for the same purpose you may fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders, neither must we let passe the remedies which are good to repress and stop fluxe of humours. For as they do in all other diseases caused of the fluxe of humours, so in this behalfe, for their first remedie, they stop the fluxe of humours. Therefore such remedies must be of a restrictive nature & facultie. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, minister things which restraine moderately, as those be which be called soure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it sharpe things, for both be restrictive; but soure be weake, and sharpe things strong, as Galen doth say in his fourth booke of the vertues of simple medicines, cap. 6. and 7. Therefore vie collutions made of those things: as if they should be moderate, seeth Dates sometime in water alone, and sometime with a litle hony put to them: Likewise make decoctions of Roses, Vine buds, Brambles, Cipresse, the first buds of Pomegranate flowers, *Siligna*, roots of Mulberie, soure Apple, and *Sorbus*. Those be stronger then these, which be made of the decoction of Mirtles, and their berries. Also of sharpe Quinces, & yong buds of Oake, or the mast of Oak: also of Medlars, & a fruit called *Cornus*: the best collutions are made of Gale *Sumach*, *Acacia*, & the floures of both the Pomegranats, and their shels. Among

Gargarismus. compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, *Rx* the distilled waters of Roies, *M*antaine, Sorrell, *Prunella*, *Solani* ana \mathfrak{z} ij. *Diamoron*, *succi medicati* *Cribes*, ana \mathfrak{z} β *Succi medicati* *Exiochanta*. \mathfrak{z} ij. β vinegar, wherein *Samach* is steeped. \mathfrak{z} j. iuyce of *Pomegranates*. \mathfrak{z} β commixe them together, and with it wash the mouth. Another of the same vertue. *Rx* red Roies, Brambles, ana *M* j. *Pomegranate* floures & the shels, Gals, mait of Oake, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. *Sumach*, *Hycociscidia*, *Acatia*, ana \mathfrak{z} ij. leeds of Sorrel and Quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. seeth them in $\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{f}$ j of well water, yntill halfe remaine; the decoction being strained, put to it of *Diamoron* \mathfrak{z} j. *succi medicati* *Cribes*, *Diacarion*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. β vinegar \mathfrak{z} vj. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. You must vse these medicines in the beginning of the disease, and especially when the griefe hath not the greatest cause: nor when the bodie of the sicke is much stopped with humours, nor when the aggrieved place is weake through the nature of the impostume. But if it chance so (as it doth often in the beginning, and often somewhat after) that is, the third day, you must commixe some of the discussiue medicines, as is, *Linefeed*, *Fenugreek*, *Mallows*, roots of *Ireos*, and *Hony*. Moreouer, of what sort soeuer the medicines be, minister them warme, for those that labour of inflammation, may suffer no cold. After the vigour of it you may safely minister discussiues, vntill the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you must minister mollifying medicines: that is, *Linefeed*, *Fenugreece*, *Mallows*, *Althea*, *Tragacanthum*, & such like: of the which you may make gargarismes. After that vse discussiues, as is, *Hyslope*, *Figs*, *Licorice* decoct together. If it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, and doth not breake alone by collusions of *Mulsa* and *Oxymel scilliticum*, then open it with some instrument. After the breaking and bursting out of the matter let him vse medicines cleansing, absteriue, and glutinatiue, especially the iuyce of *Eupatorie*, and such like.

CHAP. II.

Of a loose *Columella*.

Gargarismus. Oftentimes it chanceth that a loose *Columella* doth hang ypon the roots of the tongue and iawes. Of some it is called the *Vnula*. Wheretore in the beginning you must vse such kind of cure as the inflammation therof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head must be purged by medicines spoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you must make collutions and gargarismes of such things as do restraints and drie: after this sort *Rx* red Roies, Sorrell, *Eupatory*, ana. *M* j. *Gallacum*. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Alume*. \mathfrak{z} j. *Mirrhe*, *Frankensense*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . *Flax seed*. \mathfrak{z} β . seeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction strained, of good *Hony*, \mathfrak{z} β . and make a gargarisme. Also powders do profit, being blowne in with an instrument for the purpose: as this is, *Rx* dry Roies, Galls, roch *Alume*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. β . *Pepper*, *Ginger*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . *Mirrhe*. \mathfrak{z} j. powder it, and searce it, and put it vp as before. Also take greene Nuts, and drie them, and Date stones burned sufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, and vse them as the other. Also vnripe Galls, *Bolearmoniacke*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. do likewise. If the *Columella* must needs be cut, it is good to empty the belly first, lest the sicke be strangled. When the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, lest the bloud run inward. And afterward wash his

his mouth with the decoction of Sumach, *Atatia*, Gales, putting to it Rose-water and Vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsils.

TONSILLAE be inflammations of those things which lie betweene the mouth and the throate; some do call them *Amigdale* (that is) Almonds. Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hote and moist. They are most vexed with this euill, which haue abundance of bloud: and children & infants which do sucke, through drawing of the milke. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, & through much greedie deuouring of meats, especially if they be eager and sharpe. They that be so afflicted haue difficultie in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a little Cinnamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feauer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as it is in other inflammations. Let his meate be soupings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you must beware in the beginning, that you put no Hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in peril of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme on the same side. And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositarie, and by annointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be somewhat ceased. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministered warme. Outwardly it is best to nourish it with Sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of Barly meale, seeds of flaxe, Fenugreece, & such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse, it is good to put Hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnesse which is in it do increase fluxe. Also at this time hote gargarismes do profit. Outwardly you must put about the necke, soft wooll dipped in oyle: and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammations be increased, and biting & gnawing come thereby, you must vse gentler, as is, iuyce of Pisan: also gargarise warme Milke. When the inflammation and paine ceaseth, annoint with the aforesaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the parts of the tonsils which are swelled, may be thrust, whereby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to do, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therefore if by that meanes any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministering gentle gargarismes without any annointing. If that by ministering the remedies aforesaid, the grieve be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening. When you looke for suppuration and rotting, you must helpe that it may quickly come to passe: therefore then you must minister

*Causa.**Signa.**Vitæ ratio.**Curatio.**Vena sectio.**Signes of sup.**puration.*

hoter gargarismes, as is, *Aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Figs, Hyssope, and seed of *Althea*. Outwardly lay plaisters of Barley meale and Fenugreeke, with decoction of Figs, *Althea* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminish, and the swelling and inflammation will be made softer, so that it will give place to the finger: then you must minister sharpe collutions, that they may breake the botch. In meates he must take great gobbets of bread steeped in water, and likewise his meate must be eaten by lumps: for vehement rolling of it vp and downe about the tonsils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with some fine instrument for the purpose. And after it is broken, let the sicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better run out. And let him gargarise *Aqua mulsa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of Lentils & Roses. And with these you must tarrie vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Ulcers of the tonsils.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

THERE beginne malignant vlcers of the tonsils, sometime with a flaxe of them going before: sometime they are caused of an accustomed inflammation being augmented. They chance often to children, and also to them of perfect age, especially to those which do abound with vicious humours. They chance to children after the *Apthis* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto scurfes which are burnt with iron. Also there chanceth to the sicke drinesse in swallowing, and often choking, especially when rednesse is vnder the chin. If gnawing and sharpnesse of humours hath gone before, there followeth putrefaction. You must proceed in the cure speedily: and if he be of perfect age, and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maids, whom at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menstruis, the disease doth often infect, then in them you must cut the *Saphena* veine, letting bloud but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the heart faile, lest after it vertue be destroyed by ouermuch fluxe of menstruis. Furthermore the belly must be emptied by clisters, suppositaries, and by annointing of the tuell. And you must labour by all meanes to turne the humor from the agrieved place: for the which purpose fasten cupping glasses nigh to the loynes, and vse to bind the extremities, as the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vse gargarismes, declared before in the Chapter of *Columella*, and in the Chapter following. After the beginning of the sickness, minister *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Mulsa*, then also decoction of *Ireos*, and other things rehearsed in the abovesaid places. We must take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonsils with our finger, not so much as to touch it softly. For the vnskillfull, to whom with great error men do seeke in doubtful matters, they do annoy it vehemently, also they do thrust the aggrieved place, and pull away the scab or roue, which they ought not to do before they see the roue lifted vp, and scarce cleauing to the sore. For if we intend to pull away the scabbe, whiles it sticketh fast, the vlceration will pierce more deepe, and inflammations will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venimous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blow in drie remedies, and to annoint

noine liquid things with a feather. Dogs dung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better if the dog be fed onely with bones two dayes before: it helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vntuorinesse being ministred in meates. Also the ashes of Swallowes burnt, and the ashes of Centory *minor* burnt, with hony mixed, is good. After the irritations and chafings made by medicines, you must appease it with decoction of liquorice, and with a Gargarisme, which is made of Masticke, Mirthe, *Tragacanthum*, *Gargarisme*, *Amylum*, and Saffron, ministring also while the vicer feedeth, milke mixed with *Terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in cleansing and purging the vlcers. Many infants do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled, because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward fomentes, and emplasters, with taking heed lest he do coole it. For the cure will prosper if the matter that is holden within can be drawne outward. Therefore alwayes after the taking of the plaister away, couer the parts that be about the chione, by laying vpon it soft wooll, sprinkled with *Oleum Nardinum*. To conclude, when the scurfs are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedy following: R. flowers of red Roses, ʒ. iij. Saffron, ʒ. j. *Balaustia*, ʒ. ʒ. Mirthe, ʒ. j. Pine nuts made cleane, ʒ. ij. *Amyli*, ʒ. j. Sumach, Roch ailum, ana. ʒ. j. Beate them, commize them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day.

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancy.

A Ngina in Latin, Squinancie in English, but in Greek *Synanche*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of Squinancies; one is, when the iawes be inflamed, (by the iawes I meane the place where the ends of the weland and the *trachea arteria* do agree.) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed, yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the parts about the throate be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head and the necke be loosened to the former part of the necke, whereby the place appeareth hollow, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancy is caused through abundance of hote blood, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehearsed. It is knowne by these signes: the breath is drawne very hardly, and not without the necke be holden right: and there is difficulty in swallowing. Also in some, a feauer, rednesse of the face and necke. There chanceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yawneeth with open mouth and draweth breath. Therefore in the beginning euery Squinancy requireth a hasty and speedy remedy. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take away the blood by little and little, at many times, and not all at once, for the blood being taken away all together on heapes, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking cometh vpon him. And moreover also by the refrigeration and fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable peril. Take heed also.

Gen. 4.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vene humerorum sectio.

*Venarum lin-
gue sectio.
Clyster.*

Cucurbitule.

*Auersio humo-
rum.*

Gargarismus.

Cataplasmata

that there be litle deduction of the veine, for thereof cometh much failing of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, lest the blood be as it were strained, and the grosser part remaineth within still, which is the cause of this disease. It is profitable to them to haue the blood drawne out againe the next day, vnlesse the swelling of the disease let it, or faintnes of the heart. If the sicke be a woman, cut the veine on the ankles, specially if the menstruis be stopped; and the blood must be drawne out moderately. If by these she be but litle eased, then it is good to cut those veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the first or second day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloodletting, the belly must be emptied with a sharpe clyster, such as is described in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*. After vniuersal euacuations, you must fasten on cupping glasses: and if there be swelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chin, it is good to fasten cupping glasses to the swelling, and with scarification to draw out much blood: also to strew salt vpon the scarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no swelling outward, you must fasten a cupping glasse behind in the necke, neare to the shutting of the first ioynt; and you must vse it with constant attraction, pulling away the glasse often. Also the humours must be turned away, lest they flow to the place which is aggriued and inflamed. For the which purpose you must bath the feet with hote water. Also bind and rub the hands and feet strongly. The necke must be couered with wooll that is moist, or that is dipped in warme oile: also by and by (at the beginning) you must vse gargarises, which do neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet only discusse. For those which do altogether repell and driue back, they bring perill of choking, by thrusting humours to the lungs. Those which be only discussive, they draw more then is meet, by reason of their heate. Therefore when the beginning is with much inflammation, you must minister those things which do restraine gently, as is decoction of Roses, Lintels, & Dates, or else restrictive gargarismes, declared before in the Chap. *de Columelle inflammatione*, commixing some discussive medicins with it. Of that sort are Roses, or Sumach sodden with *Aqua malsa*, and decoction of Sebesten. When the disease is at his strength, and standeth, you must vse those things which haue discussive vertue onely in them, as is decoction of Fenugreeke, Figs Raisins, Licorice; or stronger things, as the root of *Ireos*, Hysope, *Nigella*, Sothernwood with *Oximel*. Therefore it shall be lawfull at this time to vse a gargarisme made thus: *R.* of Licorice scraped, \mathfrak{z} .j. Raisins \mathfrak{z} .ss. dry figs in number six, Fenugreek, \mathfrak{z} .ij. Hysope, Sothernwood, ana. M. ss. seeth them in one pound of Wel water, til half be consumed, then put into the licour of that decoction being strained, of *Mel rosarum*, \mathfrak{z} .j. ss. *Oximel simplex*, \mathfrak{z} .j. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. Also dogs dung, such as is found amongst herbs, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely searced, and mixed with Hony, is a most excellent medicine, being ministred like a *Lobeth*, that they may swallow it very softly. Likewise the ashes of Swallowes burnt is very effectuell being so mixed with Hony. Moreover, to the necke without you must apply those plaisters, in them which be vexed with inflammation, which can concoct & discusse, as is this *R.* the meale of Linseed, Fenugreeke, and Barley, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. seeds of *Althea* \mathfrak{z} .iij. Mallowes, flowers of Cammell and Melilot, ana. M. j. seeth them in water vntill they waxe soft, then stampe them

them in a mortar and make a soft plaister, or put to it oiles of Cammommill and Lillies, ana ℥.j. ss. and being boiled againe, make an emplaster. Neither shall it be voprofitable if the necke be annointed with oiles of Cammommill, Dill, and Lillies, or fomented with decoction of Penugreeke, Melilot and Cammommill. They which are vexed with the Squinancy, let them yle three daies *Aqua malsa* *Potus.* for their drinke: afterward iuyce of Ptilan it selle or with some sweete potion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, discusse, nourish and to coole. When the inflammation is somewhat flaked, and the sicke beginneth to swallow better, giue to him the yolks of ree egges, and soppings made of *Alica*. To conclude, the eating of the sicke and his meates must be according to his strength, therefore he must eschue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe must especially be eschued, as well in the Squinancy as in all other inflammations. For in sleepe (as *Hippocrates* saith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the grieved place doth increafe more.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Cough.

There be diuers causes of the cough. For as *Galen* saith, lib. 1. cap. 2. de sympto. *Causa.*
causis, cold distemper of the instruments of breathing causeth the cough. 1.
 Also a humour distilling from the head to the *Trachea arteria*, and sharpnesse 2.
 onely of the vpper skinne of *trachea arteria* going about within, doth prouoke 3.
 the cough. Also wormes troubling the stomach, and raising vp some quality, sending it to the iawes, doth cause the cough. Moreover, a humour contained in 4.
 the lungs and the breast, is the cause of inflammation in the lungs, disease in the 5.
 sides, consumption, and the cough. Those which be outward signes, and may *Signa.* 6.
 cause the cough, be smoke, dust, and whatsoever doth exasperate the *trachea arteria*. The signes of coughing caused onely through cold distemper of the instruments of respiration and breathing, are, that those that be so afflicted, they spit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor constraining, but it is so smal, that not only it may be suppressed by holding the breath, but also vnieste it be very great, it may be healed: because through stopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold do waxe hote. Moreover they which are vexed with this kind of cough, are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, because the cold thereby is increased, and made more strong: therefore if they breathe and fetch their wind easily, and be also in a warme house, they cough litle or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirsty: they are grieved with cold things, and are best with hote things: the coughs which chance with tickling of the parts on either side of the palate, they do openly shew a flowing humour, coming from the head to *trachea arteria*, and to the lungs, which you may well know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do spit out nothing, it declareth it to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulsion of breath, it is caried no further by reason of his thinnesse, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet *Viciu ratio.*
 is diuers, according to the diuersity of causes: for if the cough be caused of cold distemper, occupying the instruments of breathing, you must eschue aire, wind, and also cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be caused through hu-

Cure of the
cough caused
of cold distem-
per.

Cure of the
cough caused
of thinne and
sharpe humors

Ecligma.

Cure of the
cough caused
of grosse and
viscous hu-
mours.
Decoctio.

Purgatio.

Infusio Aga-
rici.

Ecligma.

Unguentum.

mounts distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the chapter of Distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the cough, must etchne salt things, sharpe things, and whadoeuer would exasperate the *trachea arteria*. The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therefore let the neck be wrapped about with warme wooll, and let him breathe seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuersant in a hote house, and let them breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hote ointments, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies and Dill. If a humour that is thin and sharpe flowing out of the head to the *trachea arteria* and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shall be healed specially by meates of good iuyce, and by medicines which do coole, thicken, temper and stop sharpnesse and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of Violets, of *Nymphaea*, of Poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, *Pilula Bechica*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good. *R.* *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} vi. iuyce of Licorice, \mathfrak{z} ij. *Pilula Bechica*, \mathfrak{z} j. *Storax calamita*, \mathfrak{z} ss. Mirrhe, dry Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. *Tragacantha*, Pine nuts, \mathfrak{z} ss. sirupe of Violets, as much as shal suffice to commixe them and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of Distillations. But if a grievous & viscous humor be cause of the cough, we shal cure it by those things which do diuide & extenuate. Therefore then we must minister to the sicke sirupe of Licorice, Hysope, Horehound, Calamint, & such like, or else this decoction. *R.* roots of *Ireos*, Parsly, Licorice, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. roots of *Ella Campana*, \mathfrak{z} ss. dry figs in number seuen, of Raisins, the stones picked out, \mathfrak{z} j. seeds of Nettle, Anise, and Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. Hysope, Maidenhaire, Scabios, of iust quantity, till the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuyce of that decoction put sirupe of Hisope and Horehound, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij ss. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the body with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammy humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of Agaricke is very good which is made after this sort: *R.* of elect Agarick, \mathfrak{z} ij. Ginger, \mathfrak{z} j. salt Gemme. \mathfrak{z} iij. beate them and infuse them one night in \mathfrak{z} ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of Wormwood, & Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. in the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium Indi maioris*, \mathfrak{z} ij. ss. *Oxymel scilliticum*, \mathfrak{z} ss. & make a potion. The body being purged, let him haue a loch sometime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort: *R.* *Loch e pino*, *loch sani & experti*, *loch e scilla*, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. *Diatreos Salomonis*, \mathfrak{z} j. powder of *Diapenidion cu speciebus*, \mathfrak{z} j. powder of the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. ss. iuyce of Licorice, \mathfrak{z} j. ss. sirupe of Horehound, as much as shal suffice to commixe them. Moreouer, the breast must be annointed outwardly with hot oiles, of Lillies, *Ireos*, & sweet Almonds, putting to them greafe and other things, after this sort: *R.* oiles of Lillies and sweet Almonds, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. of Hens greafe, \mathfrak{z} j. ss. fresh butter, \mathfrak{z} ij. the muscelage of Fenugreke, and roote of *Althea*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. *Storax*, \mathfrak{z} ss. powder of the roots of *Enula* and *Ireos*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. Saffron, \mathfrak{z} i. white Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The residue that is requisite for the cure of the cough, are

are to be sought in the Chapter of Distillation,

CHAP. VII.

Of the Asthma.

THIS *Asthma* is caused when as grosse and clammy humors be gotten in a. *Causa.*
 abundantly into the gristles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be some
 swelling in it, like vnto a botch. Also they do breath difficultly, whereby the
Trachea arteria is repleate and filled with distillations. These euils are easie to *Signa.*
 be knowne asunder. For distillation doth also chance in haile folke by and by
 through as manifest a cause, in a manner, altogether without a feauer, hauing
 the tokens of distillation following it. If there be swelling of the Lungs like a
 botch, there must needs follow a feauer, and so within few dayes alter, the in-
 flammation being rotted, the matter of it is cast out with the cough. If there be
 a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, such do not feele any great griefe,
 neither are they much troubled with difficultie of breathing but they are much
 troubled when they eate or drinke, because they cannot swallow but with great
 griefe. Those which be properly Asthmaticke, or Orthopnicks, they haue no
 feauer at all, and there chanceth to them heauinesse of sense, and they do not
 spit out matter with their spittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and drie: *Videtur ratio.*
 therefore he must eschue aire cold and moist. He must eate the flesh of Par-
 triches, Birds of the mountaines, Hens, Capons, and such like. He must eschue
 fishes, fruite, pulse, and all other things that can engender grosse and clammy
 humours. Let him vse often Hysope, Parsely, and Fennell. Vniuersally, let
 him drinke a small quantity at once which hath a botch risen: but much drinke
 must be vsed of those whole gristles and flappes of the lungs are stopped with
 grosse and clammy humours, which are not easie to be cast out with the spittle
 because of their thicknesse, and therefore they neede much moistening, that
 it may come out the easier. He must vse exercise before meate, but not so-
 dainely by and by, because many by this meanes are dead. Frictions and rub-
 bings of the breast do profite. Perturbations of the mind, especially wrath
 and lamentation, are to be eschued. But for the cure of the aforesaid euils ge-
 nerally, you must labour that the abundance of that humour, which engen-
 dreth these euils, may be abolished and consumed. But for the cure of these *Curatio.*
 euils particularly, if the euils be engendred of grosse and clammie humours,
 you must cure it by extenuating and cleansing medicines. If it come of swel-
 ling like a botch, you must cure it by extenuating and drying medicines. A-
 gainst grosse and viscous humours, those medicines be good which do extenu- *Note.*
 and scoure without vehement heate; for grosse and viscous humours do
 waxe tough and clammie as well with vehement heate as they do with
 cold, so that afterward they can scarce be deuied and pluckt away. Therefore
Oxymell squilliticum, or *Squilla* roasted and brayed with Hony, is especially to be
 ministred vnto them. Also sirupes of Liquorice, Horehound, and Hysope. Also
 the decoction rehearsed in the last Chapter before, is good for purging. If neces-
 sity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine,
 and draw out as much bloud as strength will suffer. But if the bodie be not full,
 (the humour being preparete to purging by the premisses) you must minister

Clyster.

Pignuentum.

Rubefacientia

Cure of Abscessus.

Causa.

often stronger medicines, which may drive out the grosse and clammy humors. Therefore pills of Agaricke, and *Pilula Cochiae*, also *Diaturbith* with Rewbarbe *Antidotum Indi*, and *Diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of Agaricke described before in the last Chapter. Also the belly must be washed with strong clysters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of Radish and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first booke, of Melancholiousnesse. But in the meane season, while purgations be ministred, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and extenuate humors contained in the breast by little and little: and he must take *Aristolochia rotunda*, the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, Nettle leed, *Hyslope*, *Nigella*, *Calamint*, and such like, wherewith you may make decoctions or Loches. For which purpose also those *Ecligmata* which are rehearsed in the Chapter of the Cough, are good. Also *Trochisci Eechici albi* be most excellent. Outwardly you must lay to the breast plaisters made of Figs, Barley meale, or rather meale of Fitches, hauing Rosin, Honey, and Waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast, of *Ireos*, Dill, Rew, and such like, as is this: R. oiles of Dill and Rew, ana. ʒ. ss. the grease of Hens & Ducks, ana. ʒ. ij. the roots of *Ireos*, *Enula*, & *Dracontij maioris*, ana. ʒ. j. seed of flaxe, ʒ. ij. Storax, ʒ. ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. But the breast must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and draw out matter and waterie humours, as those be which are named *Rubefacientia*. For this purpose the breast must be rubbed with Nettles, brayed or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inveterate euill, and where all medicines are ministred in vaine, we must flie to burnings, as *Astius* reacheth in *lib. 8. cap. 57.* how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and dry, (as it is said before) you must note that it is cured with Aromatick things, because they do extenuate, drie, and heate. Therefore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes compounded of the e things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Antidotum e moscha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Pleurisie.

PLEVRISIE, to speake exquisitely and properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is called *Lateralis dotor*. Neither is it rashly added, to speake exquisitely and properly: for through many torments, and through meats grosse and flegmaticke, there do engender humours that be cold, erude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which oftentimes do place themselues by and by in the void place of the breast, or in the Lungs it selte, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ little from the cure of *Asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The Pleurisie which is an inflammation of the vpper skin which

which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hote bloud, flowing naturally to the aforesaid vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle be red and bloudy, it signifieth bloud to haue dominion: if it be yellow and subpale, choler hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleame ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choler to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two dayes the sicke must be content with the iuyce of Ptisan for his meate. Afterward make him Almond milke with the decoction of Ptisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a Chicken or Cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschue all things that be sharpe and restrictive. Let his drinke be water wherein Cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschue cold water as a pernicious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieved. Let him auoid wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the mind. In the beginning of the cure, the Physitian must diligently consider, whether the body of the sicke be grieved with abundance of humours, or not: so that he must know at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the body be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the Pleurisie and inflammation, the paine must be mitigated and discolled with fomentes and medicines that do heate. But if the body do abound with euill humours, or be full of bloud, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heate, for they moue fluxe of humours to the aggrieved place: for the place to the which things that do heate are laid, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore then you must not vse hote fomentes which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the body must be emptied by bloud letting, and you must cut the inner veine of the arme, which they call the Liuer veine, or the Spleene veine, on the arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For bloudletting on the same side, doth not onely draw bloud away from the aggrieved part, but also it purgeth it quickly, which is greatly requisite in the Pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After bloudletting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrements of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie clister. *R.* Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercurie, Spinage, of both the garden Endiues, ana. M. j. whole Barley, ℥. j. Seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℥. j. *Cassa fistula* newly drawne, ℥. j. β of the oyles of Cammomill and Violets, ana, ℥. j. β fresh Butter, ℥. β . common Salt, ℥. j. and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the bodie is emptied, you must apply outwardly fomentes that do heate and mitigate paine, such as *Sacculi* be, which are made of the floures of Cammomill, Dill, Meliot, *Tapsus barbatus*, seed of Flaxe, Fenugreek, *Milium* and Bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbs aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuices. Also you may wel apply a great soft Sponge being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, & applied to the griefe warme. You must couer the fomentes with clothes, lest their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an Apple, take out the core of it, &

Signa.

Viciatio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clister.

Sacculi.

Emplastrum.

Cucurbitule.

Fnguentum.

fill the hole with *Olibanum*, and roſt it till it be ſoft: then take off the ſkinne of the Apple, and mixe the ſoft of the Apple and the *Olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, and ſwallow it all at once, which doth remoue the paine very much. This plaſter alſo is good for this purpoſe: R^r floures of Cammomil, *Tapsus barbatus*, & Dill, ana. M. ſ. Linſeed, Fenugreeke, ana. ʒ. iij. Annife ſeed, ʒ. j. Barley meale. M. ſ. bray them, & put the in water, till they be as thicke as Hony: after put to oyles of Dill and Cammomil, ana. ʒ. j. boyle the againe, and adde to it the yolkes of two Eggs, of Saffron, ʒ. j. and make an emplaiſter. After the ſeuenh day, if the paine doth continue ſtill after one ſort, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the ſide, and ſcarifie the ſkinne: for a manifeſt commodity doth enſue to them that haue the Pleuriſie, by applying of cupping glaſſes. The cuts of the ſcarified places muſt be ſtrewed with Salt, if the patient can abide it; if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oyle and ſprinkled with Salt. The next day after the ſcarifying is done, it is good to faſten on a cupping glaſſe againe, that the matterly bloud may be drawne out of the little wounds. This ſecond extraction is better then the firſt: for at the ſecond time the bloud is not drawne away, but the matter. Alſo the Ppiſitian may not neglect to miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as are good to make the ſleame come vp eaſily, as is, *Diapenidion*, *Diatragacanthos*, conferues of Violets, *Trochiſci pectorales*, putting to them other Loches rehearſed before in the chap. of the Cough. Outwardly you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to diſcuſſe, as is, Fenugreek, Dill, Melilot, Hyſope, and ſuch like. And if there do appeare tokē that it wil rot, and turne into matter, you muſt further it with this or the like ointment: R^r oyles of Cammomill, of ſweet Almonds, and of Lillies, ana. ʒ. iij. Butter without Salt, Hens g^rcaſe, ana. ʒ. ij. the muſcilage of Fenugreeke, Linſeed, and the rootes of *Althaa*, ana. ʒ. j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you muſt miniſter thoſe things that do cleaſe and purifie matter and filth, as is, *Aqua mellis*, or decoction of Barley, or Sugar roſet. The filth being cleaſed, you may miniſter glutinative medicines, which ſhall be ſufficiently declared in the Chapter of the Priſicke afterward.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

Cause.

Signa.

Peripneumoniz is an inflammation of the lungs with a ſharp feuer. This diſeaſe for the moſt part is cauſed of ſtrong diſtillations falling to the lungs, or elſe of the Squinancie, or the *Aſthma*, or the Pleuriſie, or of other diſeaſes. Alſo ſometime onely inflammation is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. They which haue this euill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vpon the heart doth bring choaking, they haue a ſharpe and burning feuer, and alſo fulneſſe and ſtretching out of the breſt without paine. But if the ſkinnes which be ioyned all the length of the breſt within be inflammed, then they feele paine at the breſt. All the face, and the aggriued place looke red, the noſe is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples do beate, the eyes do ſwell, the tongue is drie, the appetite is loſt, the breath is hote, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a drie cough, it is frothy and cholericke, or bloody and red, which be the worſt tokens. If the ſicke ſhall die, he ſhall warch much, and haue

haue fearfull short sleepes, the hands and feete shall be cold, the nailes shall be crooked and swart, and he shall die the fourth or the seventh day at the furthest. But if the sicke shall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing forth of many cholerick and frothy humors: and sometime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy, is driuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sicke is deliuered from all the grieve by and by. And if it do flow into the Lungs, and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Ptisicke. For their diet you must minister to them souplings made of the iuyce of Ptisan, mixed with Hony, Origan, or Hysope. They haue more need of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the Pleurisie. Also *Alica* or *Aqua mulsa* is good for them. Let them drinke little, for moistnes hurteth the Lungs. You may minister for preserving of strength (specially if choking constraineth you) *mulsa* alone, and with Pine nuts, or *mulsa* wherein Hysope is sodden, the powder of dry *Ireos* to *aqua mulsa* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia*, must in a manner be the same which the Pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recouer. For the cure, you must eschue letting of blood in such as haue fallen to this euill out of other diseases, especially if they haue bene long in this case, or if they were let blood before. You must mollifie the bellie with clisters, if he be collicue, or apply cupping glasses to the breast and sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *Peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, then let him blood, if strength and other things will suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme; and if strength will suffer it draw blood on both the armes, and first but a little, in no case vntill his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the bloudletting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloudletting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the whole breast, and the sides, and you must get out as much blood as strength in them will suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharpe clisters, made of the decoctions of Hysope, *Ireos* and Rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Sal gemme*, and other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the Lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those Ecligmaes, ointments, and emplaisters, which are declared before in the Chapter against the Pleurisie, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vetruie in extenuating. Therefore you must minister *loch e scylla*, *loch e pulmane vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of *Ireos* and *Enula*. And you must make a cerote of oile of Rew & *Nardinum*, putting to it the marrow of an Hart, of *Ireos*, Hysope, and Horehound beaten very fine, and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breast and the sides.

Viciu ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of blood.

Spitting of blood is caused many times of an outward manifest cause, as of falling from an high place, or stroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehement striking, or leaping, or if any heauie things haue fallen vpon the breast,

Interna.

Signa.

Victu ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

or else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as Hippocrates witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of blood may be caused through heate. Also sometime spitting of blood is caused of inward and secret causes, as fullnesse and abundance of naughtie blood, gnawing asunder the veines, and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing asunder of those veines, is caused of sharpe humors, either falling from the head to the Lungs, or else engendred in the Lungs it selfe. Moreover the blood that is spit out, sometime cometh from the breast and the Lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth, or gummes, or the iawes, or from the stomack, unto the which doth fall blood out of the veines and members adioyning, that is to say, from the Liuer and the Spleene. The outward causes are knowne thus: if the spitting of blood be caused of abundance of blood, then the blood cometh out gushing all at once, and after it is out, the sicke is better & lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hote baths, & had dwelt in a hote region, vsing hote diet in a hote season. If spitting of blood be caused through gnawing and eating asunder of the veines, then the blood is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by little and little with the cough; and they are alwaies worse. Also if the blood which is spitted, be frothy and palish, and cometh forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the blood cometh out of the Lungs. If flegmaticke blood be spitted out with easie coughings and reaching, then the blood cometh from the *Trachea arteria*. If blood be spitted forth being black and clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the aggriued place, then it is a token that it cometh from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheate called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuyces of Pomgranates or Peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doves, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuyce of soure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse Quinces, Peares, restrictive Apples, Medlars and Mulberies, and such like reheated before in the Chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke red wine, or in stead of it, water wherein Steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the blood come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictive things applied cold to the palate of the mouth by collutions and gargarises, do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seek in the beginning of the second booke, the first Chap. But if there do flow much blood from the head, then you must let him blood on some veine. Those which spit blood through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them blood on some veine, vntill a sharpe humour doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clyster, and emptie the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes and the legs very much with a medicine that will heate and extenuate, and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shau the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry and discusse, as is that which is made of the dung of wild doves, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no farthing. After.

Afterward couer them meanly, and nourish them with soure supplings. When they go to sleepe, minister to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole body (the head onely being excepted) being rubbed, keepe him in quier, and againe at night minister to him *Theriaca*. And if through these the distillation be not stopped, then the third day in the morning minister a little honey sodden, and rub all the body, and suffer him to rest. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, minister againe much hony, and lay to his head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, fasten a cupping glasse to the hinder part of the head. Last of all, minister those things which are able to purge the humours that are flowne into the Lungs. But if it be a very sharpe humour which distilleth out of the head, you must beware of bloudletting, & you must rather vse purgations, and you must vse the nourishments and remedies hereafter declared, and also before in the Chapter against distillations. They which do spit bloud coming from the Lungs, by reason of breaking of some veines in it, or by bursting open of their heads, those you must first of all charge, that they do not breathe much and make a noise, and that they speake but little, and in a manner not at all. Let them sit in open aire, hauing a stedfast bed, and of a good height. For such you may by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you must draw bloud twise or thrise a little at once, for such haue no need of much bloudletting. Also for the same purpose, that is to say, that the bloud may be drawne another way, you must rub the extremities, and vse to binde them hard with broad linnen clothes. These so done, you must minister to him a drinke made of vinegar and water infused and warmed, and let him drinke it, so that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the flesh, it may (being thereby dissolved) be cast out; neither doth any thing let, but that you may minister this potion twise or thrise in three houres. After those you may minister both within the body and without, medicines that be restrictiue, and haue power to stop the pores. For things taken outwardly, it profiteth to eate Purslaine, albeit that the iuyce drunken is of more effect; the iuyce of Knotgrasse, sharpe Grapes, decoction of Sumach, Gals, the shels of Acornes, the root of Bramble, *Balaustia*, seed of Sorrell, the rootes of Horsetaile, and such like, which are declared in the Chapter against bleeding of the nose. But these are better, & of more effect then the aforesaid thngs, that is to say, *Terra lemnia* beaten into very fine powder, and ministred with the iuyce Pomgranates, or of Knotgrasse, or *Lapis hematitus*, at once. ℞. in the like iuyce. Among compounds you must vse this *loboch*. ℞. of old cōserues of Roses, of *Robderibes*, ana. ʒ. j. of *Diatragacathum frigidum*, & *Diacotoneon simplex*, ana ʒ. β. of the powders of Corall, *Lapis hematitus* and *terra lemnia*, ana. ℥. ij. Bole armoniack. ʒ. j. Dragons bloud, ʒ. β. Pomgranat floures, ʒ. j. Frankenence, the root of *Consolida maior*, ana. ʒ. j. β. si-rupe of Mirtles, as much as is sufficient to commixethem, & make an *Ecligma*. Afterward you must sprinkle the breast outwardly with restrictiue wine, and the oyles of Roses, Quinces & Mirtles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (especially being Sommer) and the spitting thereof coming without a cough, and the sicke not being weake, but strong and fleshy; then you may take vinegar for wine, & apply it to with sponges. It is good to put to the aforesaid oiles, Bole armoniacke, *Terra lemnia*, Corall, and such like, and to make an ointment

Cucurbitula.

Cure of spitting of bloud from the lungs.

Potion.

Emplastica.

Ecligma.

Note.

Cure of spit-
ting of blood
caused of
sharp humors.Cure of vom-
iting blood.

thereof with Waxe. Also apply thereunto a soft plaister made of Dates, *Acatia*, the roote of *Consolida maior*, the barks of Pomgranats, and the meale of Lentils. Also a cerote made of the meat of Pomgranats, Frankensence, red Corall, *Balaustia*, Bolcarmoniack, *Terra lemmia*, and such like, is of good effect. But you must specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels it may grow together again before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growne together, there is but little hope of the conglutination of the wound: for it keepeth it stretched out many dayes, and you must wash away as well the matter, as the waterie blood out of the vicer, after that the inflammation is gone. But here the Reader must be admonished, that he take heed that he do not apply outwardly against that place where the blood runneth out, neither restrictive things, nor cold things without restriction, vnlesse the matter be first turned another way, and drawne from that place: for else it would driue the blood inward, and stop the veines full that be within. Therefore first alwaies you must draw the blood to the contrary part, and after that apply restrictive things outwardly. Those which spit blood through erosion & gnawing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them which haue vertue to purge sharpe humours distilling into the Lungs, such as be spoken of before in the Chapter of distillation. After that, minister those things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humours, and so haue vertue to stop the distillation, as is sirupe of Violets, Roses, Mirtles, Hydromel, *Diacodoniorum*, and such like. For the same purpose sometime minister sirupes of Poppy, and other somniferous medicines. The distillation being ceased, you must restore the gnawne parts with meates of good iuyce, & with medicines that do ingender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit blood must vse the same diet and cure which is before rehearsed, that is, if the blood flow from the Liuer, cut the veine on the arme: but if the blood be caried from the Splene into the belly, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the little finger and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictive meates & drinckes, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts that shed blood. And for blood congealed in the stomacke like an hillocke, let him drinke creame, and especially of a Hart, or let it be auoided with Sassy mixed with vinegar or with *Aloes*. Those which spit blood from the palate of their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictive things, and apply to the forehead, and to the head those things which are applied vnto the nose when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the fluxe of blood is stopped, then the strength must be cherished and restored againe: and specially he must beware of the often vsing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, and of Venus.

CHAP. XI.

Of spitting of matter.

Causa.

E*mpyema* in Greeke, signifieth a mattery spitting: In Latine it is called *Suppuratio*. It is caused when an impostume or borch (being in the vpper skinne which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or else in some other vpper skinne of the

the-breſt) is broken all at once, & ſlicd & powred into the emptie place of the breſt, which is betweene the Lungs and the vpper ſkin that girdeth in the ribs. It is cauſed ſometime through burſting out of bloud (an vicer not being brought to his ſcar, and perfect ſhutting vp.) Alſo ſometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts, failling thither, which is wont often to change into the Squinancy. The ſignes be theſe, heauineſſe is felt in the bottome of the breſt, a ſtrong cough and a drie without paine, and alſo ſometime with moiſtneſſe, whereby they ſeeme to be ealed. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers, faint, inordinate, and hard to be iudged. When the impoſtume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehement with quaking: and they are troubled in their ſpeech. Being broken, there appeareth ſomewhat to flow into the breſts bottome, according to the often changing of their lying, and ſpecially when they change lying from one ſide to another, then ſurely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certaine noiſe of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Alſo the matter that cometh out is ſometimes cleare, ſometimes thicke and dreggy. Some impoſtumes do burſt out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the breſt, and theſe be moſt perillous. Some impoſtumes do flow out downeward vnto the panch, and the bowels, and alſo the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feauer Heſticke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Thoſe that be vexed with this diſeaſe of ſpitting of matter, let them remaine in a drie aire, let them vſe meares of good iuice, eaſie to digeſt, brothes of cockes, the fleſh of hens, chickens, birds of mountaines. Alſo vſe decoctions and broths of cicers, with herbes (as is) Hyſope, and Parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa*, and thin white wine. For the cure in this diſeaſe, except diligent ſpeed be made by and by, the gathering together of matter cauſeth the Puſticke, the Lungs drawing vlcera-
tion. Therefore firſt you muſt helpe the concoction of the impoſtume with ſo-
ments, by ſponges or bladders, with cataplaſmes or emplaſters, made of the
meales of Barley, Fenugreeke, & Linſeed, of Figs, Doves dung, Mallowes, *Al-
thaa*, and a litle Roſin. Alſo you muſt apply to it Cerots made of butter, *Ireos*,
Laurel berries, Rew, & other things which can ripe & diſſolue the impoſtume,
whereof thou ſhalt finde many in the Chapter of *Aſhma* before: and if the euill
be not diſſolued, you muſt apply to it things that will breake the botch. The
breakeing of the botch is procured by lying vpon the whole ſide, eating of ſalt
meats, & theſe pills giuen vnto him when he intendeth to ſleep. R. of the pow-
der of *Hierapicra Galeni*, \mathfrak{z} j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*. \mathfrak{z} j. with the iuyce of
Wormwood as much as is ſufficient to commixe them, and make pills, wherof
let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it ſhall come to paſſe,
that the ſicke ſhall couet to ſpit often, and ſo by ouermuch ſpitting the impo-
ſtume may breake. The rupture being made, you muſt take diligent heed whi-
ther the matter runneth, and you muſt helpe his auoiding: for if it creepe into
the belly, you muſt miniſter moſt of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder,
you muſt miniſter moſt thoſe things which prouoke vrine. If the matter come
out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be miniſtered then ptiſan, mixed
with good hony. Alſo abſterſiue & ſcouring things do profite, which are partly
declared in the Chapter againſt the Pleuriſie, and part of them ſhall be ſpoken

Signa.

Vlceraſatio.

Curatio.

of in the next Chapter. But you may commodiously commixe with their meat, those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flow. As for the purging and driuing out of the matter, *Aqua malsa* decoct with *Ireos* and much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoctiō of *Hysope*, *Ireos*, *Horehound* and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the Chapter of *Asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease, shall be spoken of in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptiſicke.

Cause.

Signa.

Looke Hippo-
crates in his
Aphorisme 5.
the 14. and the
13. & the 11.
The causes
why the cure
is hard.
Videtur ratio.

P T I S I S, in Greeke, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the Lungs till there followeth spitting of blood withall. It is caused for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour flowing from the head into the Lungs. Also it is caused through the blood and matter that remaineth after the bursting out of it in them that haue the *Pleurisie*, the *Peripneumonia*, or *Empiema*. They which labor of this disease, are known by wasting of the whole body and the flesh. Also the nostrils be sharpe, their temples be flidden downe, their eyes be hollow, and their shoulders sticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer *Hecticke*, they breath difficultly, their cheekes waxe swart, their nailes do crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the bellie is troubled, and thirst doth vex them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they do spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauour. As for the vlcers of the Lungs, they are yerie hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and cleansed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & so the euill returneth, as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the Lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreouer the strength of medicines cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the Liuer. Neuerthelesse although the causes before rehearsed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you must prescribe to those that be ptiſicke, a conuenient diet, after this sort. Let them dwell in a dry aire, temperate between heat & coldnes; let their meate be *Pisān*, *Almond* milke, reare eggs, flesh of the birds of mountaines, of *Partrich*, of *Pheasants*, of *Owls*, of blacke birds, of *Hens*, of *Capons*, of *Calues*, of sucking *Kiddes*. Also scaly fishes in stony waters, *Crabs* of the fresh riuer. But among all meates, milke is best for them that be ptiſicke, specially womans milke, after that *Asses* milke, and *Goats* milke, which would be sucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hote. But you must beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and specially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the stomacke. But if they be very much feuerous, specially of a rotten seauer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruits, it is good to eat *Raisins*, sweet *Almonds*, *Pine nuttes*, *Figs*, *Dates*, *Pistax*. Let them eschue exercises and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke easily before meate, and after meate they must altogether rest; let them vse to sleepe on

on nights meanly: let them eschue wrath and sadnesse, vnmeasurable watching, hunger, thirst, lecherie, hot houses, and whatsoeuer may emptie the body. Let his drinke be but small and thin: or if his feuer be vehement, let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whose making is declared in the first booke, in the Chapter against the Palsey. If the euill be caused through the flowing of a sharpe humor out of the head, you must begin the cure by remouing of the distillation, which we haue taught before in his proper Chapter. Therefore now we will shew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured. And first for the cure thereof we must minister those things which haue an abstersiue and scouring vertue, and that which will cause that the matter may easily be brought vpward: for the which purpose *Hydromel* is specially good, & also decoction of Barley with Sugar and hony, also decoction of *Ireos*, Figs, Maidenhaire, Hysope, Horebound and Licorice. If there come a feuer, you may comix with the aforesaid things, the foure great cold seeds. Outwardly you must apply emplasters, and cataplasmes, made of Linseed, Fenugreke, and such like declared in the last Chapter *de Empiimate*. Also for the same purpose you may leeke many remedies in the Chap. against the *Asthma*. The lungs being cleansed and purged from matter, you must minister those medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vicer. For this purpose conferue of Roses is commended almost of all Phisitons, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but also to cleanse and scoure: but the newer it is, the more it scoureth: and the older it is, the more it glutineth. Also these are marvellous good, Bole armoniack, Dragons bloud, Amber, Corall, Purslaine seed, and such like which haue vertue to scoure and ioine together. Also these things are good, *Loch de pulmone vulpis*, *loch de pino*, conferues of *Consolida maior*, & Maidenhaire. Therefore of these you must make this compound medicine: *R*. conferues of *Consolida maior*, & of Maidenhaire, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . conferues of Roses, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *Loch de pulmone vulpis* \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *Loch de pino*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . powder of *Diatragacanthu frigidu*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . Bole armoniack, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *S*. sirupe of Poppy as much as will suffice to commix it, and make a loch. Also this powder daily ministred causeth much ease: *R*. of the seeds of white Poppy, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . gumme Arabicke, *Amylum*, and gum Tragacant, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *S*. seeds of Cucumbers, Citrons, Gourds, Melons, Quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . burnt luory, iuice of Licorice, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . *Penidies*, as much in weight as all the rest, & make a powder, of the which minister daily euery morning, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . with sirupe of Poppy or Roses. At that time also that the vicer is closed, you must annoint the brest without, with oyle of Quinces, Mirtilles or Roses, adding thereto sometime Sumach, *Hipocischidu*, Pomgranat rinds, *Aratia*, Galles, and such like. In the end the body being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore it with a conuenient diet, vsing all those meats which be of good iuyce, easie to digest, and nourish much, at which time also you may minister this medicine. *R*. of the pulpe of a Capon, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . cockes stones, Pine nuts, Pistax, sweete Almonds, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . of the powder of the *Antidoti de gimmi*, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . powder of *Diarrhodon abbatu*, *Dianthon*, & *Aromaticum rosatum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . white Sanders and Cinnamon, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . Maces, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . white Sugar of the finest. \mathfrak{H} . \mathfrak{j} . dissolue the Sugar in water of Buglosse, and Roses, and make lozenges, or an electuary, of the which minister euery day.

Curatio.

Ecligma.

Puluis.

Morsu's refe-
storij.

Of panting of the heart.

P*Alpitatia & tremor cordis* in Latine, is in English panting and trembling of the heart; it is a corrupt motion of the heart, or a stretching out of it against nature. The new sort of Phisicians do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused of all such things as do trouble and affect the heart aboue nature, as is, euery distemper, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the heart, or else swelling contrary to nature, and such like. The diseale is easily knowne by the words of the patient, who doth easily fee the beating and panting; and also you may know it by the pulse. For in a hote distemper there cometh a feuer, & the pulse is swift and great; in a cold distemper the contrary. If plenty of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the heart do cause beating thereof, then the pulse is soft and feeble. The diet must be ordained diuersly according to the diuersitie of causes: for in a hote distemper of the heart, the aire ought to be meanelly cold, but in a cold distemper it ought to be meanelly warme. But vniuersally whatsoeuer the cause be, you must eschue any thing that doth trouble or resolue the vitall spirits, as be ouermuch heat, anger, hunger, watching, lecherie, vnmeasurable cold, meat of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humour contained in the vpper skin that goeth about the heart do ingender panting of the heart, let their whole diet be extenuatiue: let their drinke in a hote distemper be thinne and small, or a iulep of Violets or Roses, or decoction of Buglosse. In a cold distemper they may drinke pure wine, or other strong drinke. Those that be vexed with beating of the heart caused of hote distemper, they must haue remedy by cold medicines, which can correct the hot distemper, and adde strength to the heart: as these be among simples, Roses, Violets, floures of water Lillies, Sanders, Corall, Champhire, and such like. Among compounds be these, *Diamargariton frigidū*, *Diarrhodon abbatu*, conserues of Roses, of Violets, of Buglosse, & their plants, iuices & sirupes. Therefore of the aforesaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges, as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaisters, specially Epithemes, *Sacculi*, and other like, whatsoeuer is able to alter the hote distemper of the liuer. And first among ointments, this is good: *Rx.* the oyles of Roses, Violets, and *Nimphaea*, ana *℥.ij.* of red Corall, red Sanders, and red Roses, ana *℥.j.* Camphire, *gr.ij.* white Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the hart and the backe bone. Among Epithemes let this especially be laid to the hart: *Rx.* the waters of Roses, Sorrell, and Buglosse, ana *℥.ij.* water of Balme, *℥.j.* powder of the cordial medicine, *℥.j.* red Sanders, red Corall, ana *℥.℥.* Purslane, *gr.ij.* Saffron *gr.ij.* commixe all together and make an Epitheme. Also among the sorts of dry bags this is best. *Rx.* floures of Buglosse, Violets, red Roses, ana *M.℥.* all the Sanders, of each *℥.j.* red Corall and white, of each *℥.j.* of Pearls, *℥.j.* being first powdred, put them in silke, and make a *Sacculus*. But those that be aggriued with a cold distemper of the heart, to such among simple medicines, these be profitable (that is) Amber, Musk, Saffron, wood of Aloes, *Storax*, Cloues, Maces, Zedoary, Balme, and such like: among compounds these are good: the electuary *Plurifarcoticon*,
Diamber,

Diamber, Dianthes, Aromatitum rosarum, and such like, of the which may be made kinds of medicines, like as we did against hote distemper of the heart. For ointments may be made after this sort: *R.* the oiles of Lillies, of Spike, and of Saffron, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. β . *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. wood of Aloes, \mathfrak{z} β . Maces, \mathfrak{z} j. Saffron, gr. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you may make this Epitheme thus: *R.* waters of Balme, Mariora Buglosse, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. powders of the electuaries *Diamber & Diamoscha*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. Amber, gr. j. of the best wine. \mathfrak{z} j. commixe them together, and make an Epitheme. An example of *Sacculus* is thus, *R.* floures of Balme, and Buglosse, ana. M j. β . chosen Cinamon, Cloues, Maces, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. wood of Aloes, \mathfrak{z} j. barke of the Citrine Apple, \mathfrak{z} j. β . Saffron, \mathfrak{z} j. Amber, gr. j. Bray all together, and make a *Sacculus* of silke to lay to the heart. And if there be panting of the heart ingendred through some humor contained in the vpper skin that compasseth the heart, it must be cured (as *Galen* witnesseth) with that which will extenuate, and by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therefore you must cut the inner veine in the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one must minister and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicines that haue vertue to extenuate and strengthen the heart, by applying of ointments, and Epithemes, and *Sacculi*. and such like. Of the which things to make priuate examples, we thinke it in vaine, seeing it is easie to any man, by examples now declared here and in other places, to make medicines for this purpose of whatsoever sort he will.

*Vnguentum.**Epithema.**Sacculus.**Cure of panting of the heart caused of an humor.*

CHAP. XIII.

Of Swounding.

Sincope is a swift failing of the strength (as *Galen* saith:) it is caused through much excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through vomeasurable emptying of the belly. or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often washings. Also through abundant sweats, and all other immoderate vacuations: also of feare, dread, and such like perturbations of the minde. Moreover through abounding of crude and raw humors, through great inflammation, or through vicious and thicke humors, or else by taking breath in a stinking aire. The *Sincope* is knowne by these tokens, the pulse is rare and obscure, the extreme parts, as the hands and feete be cold, sweate about the face, the taking away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palley of the whole body. Moreover of these there cometh desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the body. And moreover there chanceth sometime with the swounding of the heart, a vice (that is) when the heart is vehemently distempered. Also sometime it chanceth to the stomacke, (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing, be in it: that kind of *Sincope* is called *Stomachica*. They which fall in a swound through plentie of raw humors contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of greater bignesse then it should naturally be: also their colour changeth whiter then it waa wont to be: and to conclud, their body is like to them that haue the Drop-sie. Also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker, like lead, but the pulse.

*Causa.**Signa.**Sincope cordis.**Sincope stomachica.*

Cure of swoon-
ding through
vnmearurable
emptying.

Stoppers of
great sweats.

Cure of swoon-
ding caused of
paine.

ses of the sinewes be least of all other, moreover they be obscure and vnequall. Those which are vexed with (wounding through abundance of sharpe humors, they feele continually pulling, twitching, and gnawing in the month of the stomacke. They which through thin vices (which do swiftly exhale & flie vp) do suffer swooning, in them their face appeareth by & by as though it were dead: their nose is sharpe, their eyes be hollow, and such like. The other causes of *Syncope* are knowne by the talke of them that stand by, without any great businesse. It is easie to know that the cure must be diuerse according to the diuersitie of the causes. If swooning do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through any other vnmearurable or sudden emptying, you must sprinkle their face with cold things, or with Rose water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this case. The extreme parts of the body must be bound vehemently with bands, and must be rubbed a litle with sharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you must rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Also cupping glasses are to be fastened lightly, diuersely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the bloud, bursteth out. Moreover the mouth must be opened, by putting in your finger, or a wedge, or some other thing: but the passage of hearing, and of the nose-thrill would be thrust together, that the aire that is breathed in, might stirre and comfort the spirits. Also it is good by and by for to comfort the spirits with sundrie odoraments: for as *Hippocrates* saith in his booke *de Alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the strength againe sooner then odours. Therefore it is good to apply to the nose of the sicke, chickens roasted & parted asunder in the midst. Also Roses, Violets, Quinces, Citrons, and such like be good. You must minister to him wine that is thinne, and allaid. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chamber be very full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherewith they be couered be soft; & strew the floore with leaues of Mirtles, Vines, Okes, Briars, & Roses themselves, and sprinkle it with water. In vnmearurable sweats annoint the sweating parts with oyle of Mirtles, Roses and Quinces: but specially the necke, the breast, the places vnder the arme holes, and the share. For this purpose also it is good to annoint with *Amylum*, and powders of Frankensence, mixed with the white of an egge, & other restrictive medicines. Also you must hold to his nose diuerse odoraments, as Roses, Sanders, Quinces, floures of water Lillies, & Camphir: but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If swooning be caused through paine, you must diligently enquire the cause: for if it come of an outward cause, the ceassing of y^e paine cureth the swooning. But if the paine proceed of no outward cause, you must find out some inward cause which causeth paine. If fulnesse with retching and stretching out do cause the paine, by and by, if strength will suffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nighest to the aggriued part; but if strength be feeble, then you must only pull it backe, or you must drie it vpward, or downeward, or both waies, or vse frictions. But whereas the paine is caused of vicious humours, you must rather purge it. If both the foresaid causes come together, then you must vse euacuations both waies: but bloudletting must first be vsed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be fastened, & do sticke fast in some onely place, you

you must begin your cure with dissolving and discursive medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be sought in their owne proper Chapters, and especially in the Chapter against the Cholicke. Those which do swoone through great sorrow, feare, & other perturbations of the minde, they are fully cured by vsing of their contraries. Neither let passe to minister vnto them that do swoone for great sorow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may comfort the spirits. They which be troubled with swooning through plenty of crude humors, they may neither suffer letting of blood nor purging. Therefore you must cure such by frictions. And you must by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, and you must rub the legs first from the vpper part and so downeward with linnen clothes, not very soft, but somewhat sharpe: afterward likewise the armes from the shoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries & veins be sufficiently heat, and that you doubt that some wearines will come to the senses through ouermuch rubbing, you must vse oyle solutive and loosing, as is oyle of Dill, and Cammomill: and you must beware especially of the restrictive things. And when you haue annointed the parts of the bodie, and rubbed them well, then you must come to the backe. & that you must likewise first rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you must go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & so againe to the backe, and so you must do all, and that in a bright chamber without moisture, whole aire must be temperate. Moreouer *Mulsa*, wherein Hysope is sodden is most meet for them: and you must beware that you minister to them, neither meate nor broths, nor water, nor to suffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *Mulsa* the three first dayes, and to rub him by course continually, granting him onely but time to sleepe, which must be in a meane. But if the pulse be very small and feeble, or also besides that, wonderfully vnequal, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you must do as is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulse be indifferently strong and great, and be not cut off, nor thrust together, then you must consider the state of the belly, & if it auoid not ordure sufficiently of it selfe, you may boldly poure in somewhat beneath. For it chan- ceth after the taking of *Aqua mulsa*, that the superfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which lieth with the midriff vnder the backe, by that thing they are well cast out. And if a heape of superfluities do violently prouoke the belly a- boue reason, first you must seeth your *Mulsa* more higher, for so it doth make the bellie lesse soluble, and it now isher more. After this, if the superfluities do descend more largely, the belly may not be stopped so, but you must mini- ster for *Aqua mulsa*, the iuice of Psilam. And if they continue still to flow, nourish him with souping of *Alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulses in the meane season: for sometime they are changed to imbecility, or vnequal pesse, or smalnesse. At which time it is good to minister bread infused in wine, & that, if neither the bellie nor the Liuer be troubled with an impostume, for if they be vexed with it (the body being stuffed with crude & raw iuices) the sicke is despe- rate of all health. Therefore in such a case of the sick, thou shewest thy self with- out blame, if thou say before that he will die, and vse no better medicines. But if there be at any time found abundance of clammye humors, by & by minister

Cure of swoon-
ing by affec-
tion of the
mind.

Cure of swoon-
ing through
abundance of
crude humors.

Phlegmon.

Cure of swoon-
ding now pre-
sent.

Cure of syncope
caused of thin
humours.

Cure of swoon-
ding through
inflammation.

Cure of swoon-
ding through
humours in the
stomacke.

Oximel in Reed of *Mulsa*. Therefore if it be Sommer, and the sicke vsed to cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold; but if it be Winter, minister it hote. Also these things are very euill for them, as well bathings, as also the open aire, as often as it is ouer hote or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be presently vexed with swoounding, where the belly and the liuer be without impossu-
mation, thou shalt minister a little bread, and that with some wine, because it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the bodiet and thou shalt come straight to frictions and rubbings, & thou shalt do according to the order before prescribed. But if it be Sommer, or the region naturally hote and burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hote, thou shalt allay the wine with cold water: but if there be no such thing, with hote. But the drinke that shall be giuen in the second and third time, thou shalt minister it altogether hote. For in the whole cure, where we vse frictions: heate is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to those which have swoounding caused of choler which troubleth the mouth of the stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to minister to all that haue *Syncope*, wine that is hote by nature, yellowish in colour, thinne in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, and not to tarry in the stomacke. They that are vexed with swoounding through vice of thinne humours, those you must emptie by little & little, and continually, because they cannot suffer much emptying at once: those also must we nourish by little and little, and often: the outward part of the skinne must be thickned: and you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictive. Also you must annoint them with restrictive medicines and ointments, and you must giue them meates that do not readily disperse and flow. Therefore giue neither *Aqua mulsa*, nor *Ptisan*, but bread and souplings of *Alica*, and soure fruits, which will not easily be corrupted. You shall also giue sometime to them Egges, specially their yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of Cockes which be nourished with Milke. Also Swines braine, but let it either be diligently roasted, or well sodden in water with Leeks, or Dill. To conclud, you must labour by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thicke, to thicken the skin, and to stop the exhalations. Waterie wine is necessarie to them after meate in the beginning of sicknesse. And if all follow your minde, you may also after other things giue him nourishment by flesh, especially after the fourth day (the iuyces coming now to concoction.) If swoounding come through vehement inflammation, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feete must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane from meate and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *Syncope* through vicious humours gnawing the mouth of the stomacke, they must be cured by prouoking of vomite: or if that take no place to moue the belly, do other things which be expounded in the Chapter of paine in the stomacke. They that begiune to swoound in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, and you must not moisten the with much powring in of water. They that be already in a swoond, they must be cased out very quickly, and the rest of the body must be covered

red with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a sponge dipped in cold water, or sprinkle it with Rose water. Also the face, the stomacke and feet must be rubbed. Also the mouth must be opened by putting in of quilles or ones finger. And you must go about by all meanes, that the humours that cause the swooning, may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull of their haire, and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

CHAP. XV.
Of lacke of milke.

THe want of milke, doth chance through drie distemper of the paps, or of *Cause* the whole body. Also through small quantitie of good blood, or because the child is so weake, that he cannot sucke well of the paps: for looke, the more that he draweth out by sucking of them, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens whereby the diuersitie of causes are knowne, are euident enough by things before spoken, but yet I will rehearse them againe. A drie distemper is *Signa.* knowne by the disposition of the whole body, and by leanness and drienesse of the body, and paps, and such like. Small quantitie of good blood, is knowne by the ill state of the body and by the euill colour of it: also by vnmeasurable euacuations out of the body before, that is to say, by menstruis, by fluxes, by extreme exercises, by hunger, and such like. For the cure of lacking of milke *Cure of lacke of milke in a dry distemper* which is caused of a drie distemper, we will teach nothing in this place, because it may easily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and shall also be declared after ward in the chap. against the feuer Hectick. Therefore here we will only treat of the cure of lacke of milke, caused of the litle quantity *Litle blood.* of good blood. In this cure, first you must behold the blood, for either there is lesse then there ought to be, or it is worse then it should be. Therefore when there is lesse then there should be, a diet must be assigned with moist and heate *Victus ratio.* meanly: for whatsoever doth heate more then is conuenient, or else doth drie or coole, those partly by corrupting the blood that remaineth, and partly by diminishing of it, do forbid the milke to come. Therefore it is good to giue them pure bread, Milke, Veale, Chickens, Partriches, Birds, reere eggs, fishes scaly and stony, Raisins, sweet Almonds, Lettuce, Buglosse, Balme, Gourds, & such like. They must drinke wine that is thinne and waterie: they must eschue immoderate exercises, anger, sorrow, and all things that may diminish the blood. But if the blood be worse, (as it be cholericke) first purging of the cholerick humours is requisite, and then vse the diet before prescribed: but if it be flegmaticke blood, it requireth medicines that do heate in the first or second degree, but they may not drie vp, for such by heating of the flegmaticke humors do turne them into blood: but among such (which are not onely medicines, but also nourishments) the strongest be, Rockat, Fennell, Dill, Parsly, and those things Greene, before they be dried; for being dried, they do heate and drie more then they ought to do. And those things which do drie, they make the humor which feedeth the blood the more grosse, and more small in quantitie. The blood ought to be meanly hote, and not grosse, that the milke may be ingendred thereof. Moreover, those things that do meanly heate and haue

no great drinesse ioyned with it, they haue vertue to engender milke: among which beside those which are spoken of before, is *Sesamum* boiled in wine. Also fresh butter, the weigr of one ounce drunke with wine. Also sweet Almonds, *Pistax*, Pine nuts beaten, and eaten with butter. Also this thing is specially praised, *Rx*. Rice, ten times washed and dried again, and beat it to powder, then seeth it in good milke vpon burning coales: while it doth seeth, put too as much white Sugar as is sufficient, and make a pottage. It is made the better, if you ad to it sweet Almonds, *Pistax*, Pine nuts, Barley meale, Cicers, and such like: but you must labor also, that by gentle rubbing of the breast, and by hote medicines which haue an attractiue vertue, the milk may be drawne & enticed to the paps.

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Posca is vine-
ger and water
mixed toge-
ther and wine
and water.

Emplastrum.

Ceratum.

IT chanceth sometime that through abundance of milke, the paps are so filled and swollen, and so stretched out with it, that they are scarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is caused through abundance of good blood. The euill is knowne by sight and feeling. You must helpe this by and by, for else it is to be feared lest the paps be taken with inflammation. Therefore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vse those things which do lightly repressle and drine backe, lest that the blood be thrust into the lungs by a certaine violence. For this purpose it is good to apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, and to bind it with bands to the paps, or apply Dates brayed with bread and *Posca*. Also it is good to apply an Emplaister made of oile of Roses, of Sanders, Corianders, *Psillium*, Purslaine, Beane meale, Lintels iuyce of Plantaine, and of Vineger, after this sort: *Rx*. of Beane meale and of Lintels, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. seed of Purslaine. \mathfrak{z} . j. seed of Flaxe and *Althea*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . of Plantaine, *M. j.* seed of Coriander, \mathfrak{z} . ij. boile them altogether in water vntill it come to the thicknesse of Hony, after that, put to it oile of Roses, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . boile them againe, and adde thereto the yolkes of two egges, and make an Emplaister: or make a Cerate after this sort. *Rx*. of the oile of Roses and Mirtels, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . the meales of Beanes and Lintels, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of Mints and Rew, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . with Waxe and Venice Turpentine as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the paps. Also wilde Rapes do profit maruellously, being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, the leaues of *Cherua* annointed with the iuyce of greene Parsly, is very profitable. Moreouer, the stone *Pyrites* powdred, and applyed with oile of Roses and Vineger, doth shew a maruellous effect against abundance of milk. And let their whole diet be such, that thereby but little blood may be engendred. Therefore hunger in this euill about all other things is maruellous good.

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

Cause.

MAny times the milke curdeth in the paps, and turneth into the forme of cheefe curds. It is caused through abundance of milke (that is) when it is kept long time together on heapes in the paps, and is not sucked out. It is caused also of a hote distemper, when that through ouermuch heate the thinne part

part of the milke is digested and dissolved, and the rest groweth together, and turneth into curds. Also the like may chance of cold, which may cause milke to curde and congeale as well as other licours. Also sometime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammy enough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curds. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is knowne by and by, *Signa.* both by touching and by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerse, *Vicinus ratio.* according to the diuersitie of causes. For in a hote distemper of the paps, let the diet decline to cold things; but in a cold distemper, contrariwise to hote things. If this euill come through grosseesse of the milke, she must vse altogether an extenuating diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet *Curatio.* curded in the paps, in them that be of lawfull age, and being skillfull women, let it be easily sucked out by little and little. Let the paps be outwardly annointed with the iuyce of greene Parsley, Mints, Fenugreeke, and other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a Hare beaten with water, if it be annointed, is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of the milke. Also Lintels sodden in Brine, is marvellous good, if the paps be washed with the decoction, and annointed with the Lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke and *Althea* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heate doth cause the milke to curde in the paps, then annoint them with the iuyce of Purslaine and garden Nightrshade. Also apply oile of Roses with Vineger. Also Mous-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *Cimolia*, annointed with Vineger, or with water and oile of Roses, doth good. Moreouer Lintels sodden in Vineger, and applyed as is aforesaid, is good against cold distemper of the paps. Vse decoctions of Cammomill, Fenell, Dill, Linseed, and Fenugreeke, and therewith soment the paps. Also annoint them with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with Vineger annointed, but you may put to it Mints or Parsley, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good: *Rx* of Hony, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . of *Storax calamita*, \mathfrak{z} iij. of Oxes gall, \mathfrak{z} ij of oile of Cammomill, \mathfrak{z} . ij. Mirrhe and Frankinsence, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. \mathfrak{ss} . commixe them together, and make an Emplaster to lay on the paps.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the inflammation of the Paps.

IT is caused sometime (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hote bloud *Cause.* flowing to the paps. Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to suppuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne a-sunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chanceth onely to such. For the cure *Curatio.* in the first cause, you must see bloud drawne from the inward veine of the *Vena sctio.* arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vlesse the minestrus be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ankle. After this you must come to restrictive medicines, which may not be strong, lest that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the bodie: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therefore for that pur-

Emplastrum.

pose it is very good to take oile of Roses, with the iuice or water of Nightshade, Vineger, and the decoction of Cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the paps. Also an emplaster made of Barley meale, Line-seed, Sanders, Boile armoniack, Grease, and oile of Roses is good. And if the Phistion doth see that the percussive medicines do not much good, he must straight proceed to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply Dates brayed with bread and *Posca*. Also apply crums of bread with Mirrhe, Saffron, and Mintz, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the Chapter of Impostumes in the breasts, hereafter.

THE III. BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of weaknesse of the stomach.

Cause.

WEAKNES of the stomacke is sometime caused through distemper of the effectrix and working qualitie, without any flowing of humours. For, as *Galen* saith in *lib. 3. de simp. causis*, cap. 10 all vehement distemper doth overthrow & cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humour being contained in the bosome and large space of the stomacke,

Signa.

which hath power and vertue either to heate or coole, to moisten or drie, or two of those qualities mixed together: sometime it is caused of an humour stuffed and drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomacke. Vehement thirst, abhorring of meate, and vsauorie belkings, do betoken distemper onely of a hote quality. Contrariwise, little thirst, vnmeasurable appetite, and soure belkings, betoken distemper of a cold quality. And to be shorr, if the stomacke be griued with hot or cold distemper, it changeth the meates that be eaten into the nature of the distemper, so that the meates may be perceined to be changed into the sauour of roasting or sowerfulnesse, without the commixing of any humour. Moreover, if the distemper be hote, you shall see the patient by and by eased with taking of medicines, or meates or drinckes that be cold. But if the distemper be cold, the patient feeleth ease in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moist distemper, the patient feeleth no thirst, or very little; he hath abundance of spittle, and doth desire moist meates. In a drie distemper there is driness of the tongue, extenuation of the body, little spittle, and vehement thirst. Moreover, vomiting and desire thereto, heavinesse of the stomacke, and belking, specially after meate, betokeneth abundance of naughtie and corrupt humours. And if yellow cho-
ler do abound, there followeth bitternesse of the mouth, vomiting vp of cho-
ler, thirst, belkings, with sauour rosted, and gnawing of the stomacke: but
if

if fl eame do abound, it doth cause no gnawing in the stomacke, vlesse it be salt steame: there are present lowre belkings, no thirst, and stretching out of the stomacke. If melancholy abound, it causeth sadnesse and feare, stinking belkings, and spittings, and saour of ffish, sleepe with fits of strange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calves of the legs. Every distemper is corrected and amended by his contrary. Therefore you must coole a hote distemper, and heate a cold distemper; also moisten a dry, and dry a moist distemper: likewise must you do in compound distempers, either heate and dry, or heate and moisten; or else coole and moisten, or coole and drie. Those that be vexed with hot distemper of the stomacke, are cured with a cooling diet, but specially if they take cold things with vinegar. Therefore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *Posca*. For flesh, let them vse Chickens, Partrich, vcale sodden with vinegar or veruoyce. For pot herbs, Lettuce or Purslaine are very good. Also apples and sharpe peares. The sicke must drinke small Ale or Beere, if he haue bene vsed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of Cinamon, or wine that is thin and waterie. You must apply and lay vpon the stomacke outwardly such medicines as do meanelly restraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold distemper of the stomacke, must be healed with the contraries to the aforesaid things, as with the decoction of Annise seede, Rew, and Parsley seede. Let the meates which they eate be condite and dressed with Cinamon, *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Pepper, and such like odoraments. Also giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *Diacalaminthes*, and *Theriaca*. Anoint the stomacke outwardly with those ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vse to drinke wine that is old and somewhat astringent. A moist distemper is helped with meates that do dry, without any strong heate or coldnesse. Moreouer, vsing of lesse drinke then he is accustomed to do. A drie distemper must be cured as the feuer Hecticke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth booke. But if some humor hauing power to heate or coole, do cause weaknesse of the stomacke, you must make and consider diligently whether that humor do swim in the bosome and largenesse of the stomacke, or whether it be stuffed in the filmes and cotes of the stomack. If the humor be contained, in the bosome of the stomacke, and be a cholericke humour, it must be purged straight by vomite: warme water or thione *malsa* drunke, doth cause an easie vomit. It wil be better if you do minister before it things that do moisten, as is the broth of Prisan, or else the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be stuffed in the filmes of the stomack, purge him with *hierapicra*: for as *Galē* saith there can no better medicine be found against vicious humours, being stuffed in the filmes of the stomacke. The humor being purged, let them vse the same diet that they do which are vexed with a hote distemper, as is taught before. Minister within the body conserues which haue vertue to coole and moisten. Also minister electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the stomack things that do coole and meanelly restraine, as is oile of Roses, oile of Quinces, putting to Sanders, Balaustie, Corall and Purslaine; but yet vse things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the distemper. For overmuch vse of cold things doth not onely not profit, but also oftentimes causeth an incurable disease, because of the great heate that is requisite for concoction

Curatio.

Cure of hote distemper.

Posca is a sauce made with vinegar and water.

Cold distemper

Moist distemper.

A drie distemper.

Cure of weaknes of the stomacke caused of an humour. Choler.

Vicious ratio.

Flame.

Diet.

Scutum sto-
machi.

Aliud.

Medicines
which streng-
then and heat
the stomacke.

and digestion. If humours being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the breadth of the stomach, he must vse *Oxime* wherein hath bin sodden medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is Hysope, the root of *Ireos*, Origan, Sauory & Horehound. But if the flegmatick humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomach, then first you must minister those things which do cut and diuide clammy humors and grosse fleame, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleame, looke before in the first Booke, chap. 12. Also *Hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humors. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate; & let him vse Eleuaries that do beat, as *Diatrion piperis*, *Diagalanges*, *Diacinamomū*, *Diamber*, Ginger condite, *Diacarum*, and such like. Apply outwardly to the stomach such things as do heate, as is oile of *Nardinum*, oile of Mints, oile of wormwood, & oile of Mastick, & other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also Cerotes are commended, which the Physicians comenly call *Scutum Stomachale*, such as is this: R. cholen Cinamon, Cloues, long Pepper, ana. ʒ. j. *Gallie Moschate*, Maces, ana. ʒ. ʒ. *Calamus aromaticus*, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. wood of Aloes, ʒ. j. sowne Mints ʒ. ij. Masticke, *Laudanum*, ana. ʒ. ij. oiles of Masticke and Nard, ana. ʒ. ʒ. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as will suffice: make a Cerote to lay vpon the stomach, & couer it with purple silke: or vse this medicine: R. Mastick beaten to powder. ʒ. j. ʒ. then strew it vpon leather being cut like a buckler, & poure vpon it *Oleum Nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and strew vpon it cholen Cinamon, Nutmegs, & Cloues ana. ʒ. j. beaten into powder, and apply it to the stomach. To be short, these and other things which do strengthen & heat the stomach are to be applied, as is mints, wormwood, frankinsence, Mastick, Cinamon, Galingale, Ginger, Mace, wood of Aloes, *Calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our seuenth booke of making medicines, of which one may make diuers kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

CHAP. II.

Of yelking and vomiting.

Causa Nausea

Disposition to vomit (called *Nausea*) which is a naughty & wicked motion of the expulsive vertue of the stomach, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold: which humor either swimmeth in the concauitie and hollownesse of the stomach, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleauing like birdlime, and can scarce be drawne away: or the humor being more watry, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach like water in a sponge. And such humors are oftentimes ingendred through distemper of the stomach, as wel hot as cold: sometimes such humors do flow from the whole body, as from other parts (being first euill affected) into the stomach, as it were the excrements; so from the liuer and the spleene, or the head, or from the whole body. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue by the signes declared in the last Chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *Nausea*, that is, disposition to vomit, then for the most part vomiting followeth, and the stomach corrupting the meates, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, & changeth it into his nature; but if a tough humor be drowned in the

Signa.

cotes

cotes of the stomach, it causeth disposition to vomit, but yet such a disposition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and straine himselfe as though he could vomit: but if the humour be watery and wheyish, then it causeth vomiting, not onely before meate, but also after meate, and especially if that humour swimme in the breadth of the stomach: for if it be stuffed and cleaue to the top of the stomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate: but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the stomach) be euill affected, the sicke himselfe doth first feeble the griefe of the member that is diseased: for either he feeleth heate, or cold, or heauinesse nigh about the place that is diseased, or else he cannot suffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales and pusses in the skin, and also by the vrine you may discern it. For the cure, you must diligently consider which griefe it is, whether it be a disease caused onely of the stomach, or of the whole body, or of some other member. For if humours do flow into the stomach from some other member, or from the whole body, you must first take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diseased, but yet you may not neglect the stomach altogether: for vlesse the whole bodie be first purged of vicious humours, he labourerth in vaine that goeth about to resist the flowing of humours into some other place. So also be that doth cure the member that is first diseased, he cutteth off (as it were) the fountaine of all flowings into the stomach. If you will know how those members are to be cured that do send excrements into the stomach, you must learne that in their proper Chapters before or after. But if humours be engendred in the stomach causing disposition to vomit, you must marke whether those humours be thinne, cholericke and wheyish, and be contained in the hollownesse of the stomach: for then you must giue him very thinne iuyce of Pusan or hote water, and the sicke must prouoke vomite with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throat. But if the humours be stuffed within vpon the top of the stomach, you must minister one dramme of Aloes to drinke being dissolued in water. For against hote humours that be in the stomach, Aloes is the best medicine, so that often it hath healed euill stomachs in one day. After the humours be purged, and other medicines ministered, which do stop or make temperate the sharpnesse of choler, then you must cure the hote distemper of the stomach as is taught in the last Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, grosse and rough humours, which do swimme in the breadth of the stomach, you must cure them after that sort that is taught of vs in the former Chapter, and then you must get away the cold distemper of the stomach, as is before taught. Now for vomiting, you must note, that in the beginning it ought not to be stopped, if the sicke be the better for it, according to Hippocrates saying: In vomiting which cometh by it selfe, if such things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be suffered: but if not, then contrariwise it is euill. Therefore you may not stop that vomite which is decretorie, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the stomach, or when humours be engendred in the stomach through distemper. But then you must rather helpe the motion of the expulsive vertue in a

*Curatio Nau-
sea.*

Of vomiting.

1. Apb. 2.

Cure of im-
moderate vo-
miting.

hote cause, by ministering hote water with oiles of Violets to drink: but in a cold cause, minister Oximel and other things before rehearsed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, and do begin to weaken the strength of the sick, then you must go about to stop and reſtraine it. Therefore firſt let the ſicke lie vpward in a convenient houſe, and contrary to the diſeaſe; that is, let the houſe be cold, if the diſeaſe be hote: and contrariwiſe let it be hote if the diſeaſe be cold: let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, and let then be felt with warme hands, and alſo bind them ſtrongly with bands, alſo put the ſeete and hands in luke warme water. Alſo hold odoraments of good ſauour to the noſe for to ſmell, as Roſes, Quinces, Peniroyall, Mints, Fennell, Spikenard. Annoint the ſtomacke outwardly with oyles of Woormwood and Roſes. Emplaſters made of Dates, Quinces, and Woormwood be good. Alſo Cerotes made of them and ſuch like, as Mints, Darnell meale, Frankincenſe, Maſticke, be good being laid vpon the ſtomacke. Alſo you muſt ſtampe well Dates that haue bene ſteeped in old wine, afterward you muſt put to it Maſticke and Frankincenſe, each of them finely powdred by it ſelle afore, and then bray them together. To this place alſo you muſt call the remedies that are ſpoken of hereafter, partly in the Chapter of *Cholera*, & partly in the Chapter of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the ſtomacke, you muſt faſten a cupping glaſſe to the mouth of the ſtomacke with great flame, vntill the place waxe red, and you muſt giue the patient meate while the glaſſe hangeth on ſtill.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirſt.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

Pillſes to hold
vnder the tong

Thirſt, as Galen witneſſeth in *lib. I. de ſimpl. med. facultate*, cap. 30 is cauſed two manner of waies partly through want of moiſture, and partly through abundance of heate. The ſtomacke is heat many and ſundry waies, that is, either through hote diſtemper of the bare quality ſimple or compound, or through hote and cholericke humours engendred in the ſtomach, or elſe flowing to it. Alſo through abundant drinking of old wine. The ſtomach is dried either through the drie diſtemper that is in it, or through ſalt humours, or drinking of ſalt water. Alſo oftentimes it is dried through conſent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuers Heſtick. The diuerſitie of cauſes may eaſily be knowne by the patients words, and by thoſe ſignes which we haue ſpoken of in the ſecond Chapter next before. The cauſes being knowne, you muſt remedie each of them according to their cauſe diuerſly. Therefore you muſt remedie thirſt coming of heate, by miniſtring things that do coole. Alſo both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or waterie wine being drunken, are good. Alſo Cucumber ſeed chewed, or if it be hulled and beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly againſt thirſt engendred through heate of the ſtomach. Likewiſe Lettuce ſeed chewed and drunke profiteth. Alſo Purſlaine ſeed hkewiſe. The beſt thing to quench thirſt is this, *Rx.* of the ſeeds of ſowne Cucumbers huſked, \mathfrak{z} .j. *Diatragacantha* \mathfrak{z} . β . Gumme tragacanth beaten to powder, and ſearced \mathfrak{z} .ij. beate the ſeeds, and put thoſe powders to the whites of eggs being raw, and beating them all together. make pills. and drie them in the ſhadow. Of theſe pills, miniſter one at once to be holden vnder the tongue, that it may diſſolue by litle and litle, and ſo be ſwallowed. They that haue had burning
and

and heate in the stomack long time, the iuyce of the sweet roote being drunke, doth helpe them, and also the roote it selfe with water and the iuyce of Purslaine. But those which are vexed with thirst caused of heate and drinesse, as it chanceth in all burning and very drie feuers, and to those which labour in sommer, or in great heate, such are best healed with *Oxycratum*, that is, a drink made with vinegar and water sodden together. For vinegar doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (besides the coolenesse that it hath) is moistest of any thing for nothing (as *Galen* saith in the place before rehearsed) is moister then water. Also the thirst which is engendred in feuers, may be mitigated in sprinkling the head with the coldest oiles, as oile of Roses being sprinkled aloft on the forepart of the head. Also the best remedie for drinesse is sleepe, where heate and moisture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of Dropsie in which plenty of salt humours be heaped in the stomacke and belly, or in those which haue their stomacke stuffed with salt steame, then vinegar is the best remedie. It is also good for them to soupe the iuyce of Quinces or Peares, or veriuycce with water. If humours cholericke or salt swimming in the stomacke, or drowned and stuffed in it, do prouoke thirst, then you must minister medicines which can purge out those humours. Afterward you must vse medicines which do restraine and comfort the stomacke and strengthen it: examples whereof you must seeke before. They which thirst through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water, and other things rehearsed in lib. 1. cap. 14.

CHAP. IIII.

Of paine in the stomacke.

PAine of the stomacke is caused when nauhty, venomous, and gnawing humours be kept in the stomacke, whereby it chanceth that through intollerable gnawing they cause swowning, which they call *Stomachica*. This disease is knowne by continuall pricking and gnawing of the mouth of the stomacke. In this euill you must giue him meates that do coole, & which may bring strength to the stomacke, as is, Lettuce and Purslaine taken with vinegar. Also Pomegranates, and Oranges, Peares, sharpe Grapes, and such like. Also bread being steeped in very cold water is good. Also let his other meates be such as will easily digest, and yet not easie to corrupt, as be, Chickens Partrich, birds of mountaines, and such like sodden with veriuice. Also fishes bred among stones, sodden with vinegar, Limons, and the sharpe iuyce of Cytrons. Likewise let the sicke drinke water wherein hath bene sodden a little Cinamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you must prouoke vomit by the remedies aforesaid. Then after that also he must purge downward, by taking *Hierapicra*. Which things being done, you must vse remedies to strengthen the stomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the second Chapter, and in other places also.

Doloris stomachi causa.
Signa.
Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. V.

Of inflammation of the stomacke.

INflammation of the stomacke is caused no otherwise then the inflammation of other parts of the bodie: that is to say, through the flowing together of

Causa.

*Signa.**Vitum ratio.**Curatio.**Ceratum.**Emplastrum.*

abundance of hote blood. Signes hereof is exceeding great paine continually, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applyed to it. Moreover, there is swelling and burning, which you may feele. Also a fever, heaviness, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) must be thinne, small and exquisite. Therefore he must vse iuyce of Prisan, and he must abstaine from flesh and wine, and from other hote meates. Let the sicke drinke water wherein hath bene sodden a little Cinamon, or iuyce of foure Pomegranates, or of some other fruit that is cold and restrigent. Let him sleep little, and let him not talke much. Let him eschue sadnesse as much as he can, and let him remaine in an aire meanly cold. You must begin the cure with letting of blood, if there be fulnesse of the whole bodie, and strength of the sicke. You must cut the inward veine of the arme, and you must draw blood according to the strength of the patient. After this you must apply outwardly those things that do repress and restraine, specially vpon the place where the paine and swelling do most appeare: for the stomack (specially the mouth of it) hath euer need of the commixing of those things that do restraine, but most of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore those which do attempt the cure with loosening remedies onely, without the commixing of those things that do strengthen the stomacke, they cause perill of death; therefore alwaies whether it be an oile that the inflamed member be nourished withall, or a soft plaister laid vpon that member, you must commixe some restrigent thing with them. Therefore for this purpose it is good to apply to it oile wherein Wormwood or Quinces hath bene sodden, commixed together with Mastick. Also the iuyce of Quinces or Pears, putting to it red Roses, Barley meale, Sanders, Bole armoniack, & such like. Also you may vse this Cerot: *Rx.* Barly meale, \mathfrak{z} . β . white Sanders and Red Roses, ana \mathfrak{z} ij. Bole armoniak, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . Aloes, Mastick, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. Wormwood, Nutmegs, *Balaustie*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . oiles of Masticke and Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . with waxe and Turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote to lay vpon the stomacke. But if there be need of great restriction (as it chanceth then when the stomacke is so weaketh that it cannot hold and retaine meate) you may commix with the said things veriuice or iuyce of Wormwood, or *Hypocischides*, and *Sumach*, and such like. All these things (if the inflammation be vehement) must be applied to the grieve cold. And if the belly do send forth nothing, you must prouoke it with easie clisters. Nor he worketh not vnwisely, that doth minister \mathfrak{z} . β . of *Cassia fistula* dissolued in Endiue water, after that the burning heate is somewhat abated. Also at that time you may commixe with the restrictive medicines, which you apply outwardly, many things that do discusse & dissolue, as is Fenugreek meale, flowers of Cammomil, and *Althea*, and Lineseed. You must neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time when there floweth no more to the grieve, and that cannot be driuen backe which is contained in the diseased member) you must not I say at that time, neither vse onely loosening medicines, or onely dissoluing medicines, but alwayes you must commixe with them restrictive things, which haue power to preserue and keepe the strength of the stomacke: therfore at that time you must vse this emplaister: *Rx.* the meale of Lineseed and Fenugreeke, ana. \mathfrak{z} β seeds of Dill, \mathfrak{z} ij. flowers of Cammomill and Melilot, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Wormwood, *Balaustie*, red Roses, ana.

ana. ℥.ij. *Hypocistidii*, ℥.ij. oiles of Cammomill, Lillies, Roses, Masticke, ana. ℥.β. Hens greafe, and Goose greafe, ana. ℥.ij. commix them all together, and make an emplaister: but before it be applyed, it is not in vaine to annoint the stomach with this ointment: R. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Quinces, ana. *℥.ij.* *Pygmaeum*. ℥.ij. powder of the roote of *Althaea*, wormewood, Lineseed, ana. ℥.j. wax sufficient, and make an ointment.

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

ABhorring of meate, or losing of appetite, doth chance either through loss of the sense of sucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as Galen witnesseth, *lib. 1. de Symp. causis cap. 7.* or because there is no sucking out, or because the body is not emptied. Also sometime it chanceth through some hote distemper, specially of the stomach, which distemper doth dissolve the hard and sound members by losing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moist members it stretcheth out vnmesurably by shedding. Sometime it is caused through abundance of vicious humours contained in the stomach, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowels: also through ouermuch blood letting. Also the sicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, also in inflammations of the stomach, the liner and the matrice, and for many other causes which need not to be rehearsed here. The signes which betoken an hote distemper, are rehearsed before in the first Chapter. Those which abhorre meate through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the stomach, and with appetite to vomit, & with thirst. Those that haue humours that be rotten, they haue sometime a feauer, But those which haue loathing of meate through grosse and clammy humors, they neither feele gnawing of the stomach nor thirst. But commonly to all there cometh disposition to vomit. If loathing of meate doth come about the beginning of the disease, or about the vigour and strength of it, while the patients strength may yet suffer, it causeth no perill, for the sicke neede but litle nourishment. But if losse of appetite do come in the declination of the whole disease, or in long weaknesse, or in lacke of strength, or of vnmeasurable purging, it is not without perill and danger. This euill is increased of age. For children are vnluckily troubled with this disease, that is to say, such as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nourishment. Therefore if children haue this disease, great excesse aboue nature is signified by it. For cure of this disease, if the losse of appetite be caused through weaknesse of the stomach, you must marke what distemper doth weaken the strength, and you must cure it by contraries of that distemper, as is before taught. If the presence of vicious humors do cause loathing of meate, if those humors be thinne and gnawing, you must first beginne before any other thing be ministred, to purge the humours contained in the stomach by vomite. And if the patient doth vomite vn easily, minister vnto him souplings, and other nourishments which do moisten, that they may driue those humours downe into the belly, and driue them out beneath, or purge the wombe with *Hierapicra*. Then we

*Causa.**Signa.**Curatio.*

must bring the body to a good temper with such things as be meete for that purpose. Those that do abhorre meate through grosse and clammye humours, you shall cure them by extenuating and cutting the humours, as well with *Oxymel*, as also with those medicines that are made of this and other lawces, as with *Capers*, *Oliues*, *Mustard seed*, and such like declared in the first Chapter. If loathing of meate happen through inflammation, or stopping any other part of the bodie, then you must go about the curing of that member or part. And you must go about to prouoke appetite againe only by odoraments, either by odour and smelling of wine infused, or decoction of *Quinces* or *Peares*. Also you shall go about the same thing with soft annointings with oiles, as oiles of *Roses*, *Masticke*, and such like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the body. Also inteffions to be applyed to the loines and share. Also let meates be prepared of diuerse and sundry kinds, and after the daintiest fashion, that besides their sweetnesse they may entice and prouoke their appetite: first of the best kind of corne, and such as doth nourish much, as is *Alica* washed with the decoction of *Dates* and *Damascene prunes*, reere egges, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no strong sauour: swines teete much consumed in seething: for if he onely taste such meates, they nourish the body sufficiently. Whatsoever you minister, ought to be of such sort that it may easily be deuoured and swallowed. For those things that require much chewing, do cause vnpleasantnesse, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the stomacke besides the ointments, emplasters made of *Dates*, *Quinces*, *Wormewood*, and such like. Also *Cerotes* made of the same things: examples whereof you must seeke before.

Alica is made of wheat steeped in water, beaten and dried in the Sunne, and then broken grossely.

CHAP. VII.

Of a doglike appetite.

A Doglike appetite is contrarie to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meate, and when they cannot retrain their appetite, they deuoure in meate without measure: then they being beaue with the multitude of meate, and their stomack not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting: hen afterward they fill themselves with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogs. It is caused through cold distemper of the stomacke, or through vicious and sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomacke. For cold vicious humours do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meate. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole body, which doth follow either the violence of heate, or the weaknesse of the vertue retentive. Cold distemper of the stomacke is knowne by euill digestion, windinesse, rumbling, and many egestions or seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by sowre belkings, and much egestion, and very thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarelieth the skin, then the egestions sent out by the belly, be lesse in quantitie then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions the drier. But if that dissipation come through

Cause.

Signa.

through weaknesse of the retentive vertue, which cannot master the meates. then there is much deiection and casting out of those things that are eaten. For the cure, cold distemper must be healed as is taught in the first Chapter of *Curatio*. this booke. If doglike and vnmeasurable appetite be caused of sharpe humors *Cure if it be of sharpe humors.* stuffed in the mouth of the stomacke, and as it were water soked into a sponge, you must minister in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni*. For this doth not onely heate, but also it doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the stomacke, humors that be stuffed in it, and it causeth them to auoid downward: and yet it addeth strength to the stomacke, that afterward it will not easily receiue any hurtfull humour. Therefore that is the best remedie for vicious humours stuffed in the stomacke, to bring them forth. It is ministered the weight of ℥.iiij. with wine infused with warme water. If a child doth labour of this disease, which cannot drinke the medicine for bitternesse, make ℥.j. or ij. of it in pilles, and annoint it outwardly with honey, and let them swallow them downe. Seeing that for the most part, this euill chanceth of sharpe and soure steame, you must vse such meates and medicines as haue power to cut, deuide, scoure, and heate, as be, Garlicke, Leekes, Time, Sauory, Origan, Peniroyall, and such like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being *visum ratio.* purged in the beginning, you must let them vse this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor well leauened, with the which also you must mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, Annise seed, Caraway seed, Commin, Parsley, and such like. Let his meates be fat and oylie. Also soupings are good that do destroy appetite, as be pottage made with much hony, and much oyle, or Goosegrease, Hens grease, or Swines grease. Let his pot-herbes be Mallowes. Also giue him the braines and fatteest partes of birds, and of fishes likewise, and those things that do altogether destroy appetite, and cause fulnesse, and that do nourish but little, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plentie of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and such wine that doth heate greatly, as those do that be yellow in colour, thin in substance, sweete in smelling, and without restriction. For this doth heate the stomach, and destroy sharpnesse of humours, so that often such wine with oylie and fat meates, sufficeth for the perfect cure. As *Hippocrates* saith, Drinking of wine easeth hunger: and you must giue wine as well to them that be fasting as to them also which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet athirst. But you must giue it to them that be fasting, hote, or warme at the least. He must abstaine from all soure and restrictive meates and drinkes, but specially from fruite. Let their banquetting meates be *Pistacium*, Almonds, Pine nuttes, and Oliues with honey. Minister also vnto them milke, as well alone, as also with wine called *Passum*, or with honey: so that neuerthelesse you must take heed that you giue it not to those that are wont to haue it waxe lowre in their stomach, for to those it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digested, it doth not onely stop the appetite, but it softneth the belly being stopped, and stops his fluxes. Also you must make potions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, Marchpanes and Rice sodden with milke. Also he must wash now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you must vse as long as the sicke is diseased, and till he be cleane whole. If the doglike appetite come

2. Aph. 21.

*Cure if it come
of immoderate
diffipation.*

through unmeasurable scattering abroad, opening and diffipation, then in such a discale it is good to thicken the skin, and make it grosser with oyle made with varipe Oliues, or oiles of Roses, or of Mirtles, or any other wherein any restrictive thing hath bene sodden with a soft fire. Let the sicke remaine in an aire that is cold and perspirable. Let him eschue hote aire and hote bathes. Also let him eschue wine, and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that do heate. Let his drinke be cold water or decoction of Cinamon. Put the sicke in a cold bath if nothing do let it, as slenderesse and leanness of the body, or the coldnesse of some member of the body, as the breast or some other. You must giue vnto them meates that be stable, durable, and hard to corrupt, as be Periwinkles, and all kind of shell fish, if they be sodden with water twice changed. Also Swines flesh being in full strength, and specially the belly. Also fat Beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do swimme in the stomach, and be hard to be digested and distributed. For there be some that haue this discale, which by reason of a sharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, do digest and consume Beefe and other things hard of digestion, with lesse labour then fishes of stony places, and such like things which be easie of digestion. Of egges those are good for them which be sodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without hony. Also Rice sodden with butter, and vneleuened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, and so much you must abate of the grosse meates that you are wont to giue, and you must minish the restrictive things also that you lay without. For sometime the vehemency of the appetite being abated, when the body is filled with crude & grosse humors, it turneth into some other worse discale. Among restrictive medicines besides those things which are afore said, you must vse this ointment: *Rx.* oiles of Mirtles, and Quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ss. oile of Roses, \mathfrak{z} .j. iuyce of Plantaine, \mathfrak{z} .ij. red Sanders, Masticke, *Bistorta*, red Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. Bole armoniacke, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Hipocistidos*, *Acatia*, *sanguis Draconis*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment.

*Pugnentum
adstringens.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

*Bulimoc.
Cause.*

Signa.

Curatio.

Bulimoc in Greeke, is nothing else but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is caused through coldnesse of the stomacke, and for want and weaknesse of strength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iournies, specially when there is snow, causeth this discale. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure. For afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldnesse of the extreme parts, and want of spirit and breath. You must apply remedies for this discale by and by, because there be that in desert places, or in bathes, being suddenly taken with this discale, do perish for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you must comfort them with Vineger, or Peniroyall, giuen them to smell vnto, or earth whatsoever it be, sprinkled with Vineger, or Apples, or Peares, or such other like fruite which is next hand. Also new bread holden to the nose doth helpe, and cheefe of good saueur. Also Porke roasted or sodden, and vniuersally all that doth nourish much: but especially

cially that which hath sauer of roasted meate, and is well seasoned, and hath a sufficient sauer. For by such odours & sauers, they that haue this disease are for the most part refreshed, seeing there is nothing (as we said before in the second booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refresh and renew the strength sooner then odours. Moreover you must bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you must put the tippes of their hands and feete in very hote water, and you must raise them and stirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as also by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is somewhat come againe to himselfe, you shall minister vnto him bread infused in wine, or some such thing, which doth restore strength very quickly, as be, reare egges, Alica with wine. The next remedie they must looke for by meate, which if they cannot take when it is offered them, you must put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to swallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raised quickly. For this purpose are good also the Antidotes which are compounded of diuers sweet odours, as is, *Aromaticum Rosarum*, *Diamber*, *Dianthon*, *Diamoschi*, *Alipta moschata*, and such other like. And if this disease chance to come in feauers (which is seldome scene) or if it do rush in suddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may minister meate without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and strength of the feuer, the sicke must be refreshed by the odoraments aforesaid, and specially by those things which haue come in them, as is *Polenta* wet with water, or hote bread that sendeth forth a burning sauer. Also you must vse frictions and rubbings of the extreme parts, and apply plaisters made of Dates or Quinces sodden in wine: and this must you do vntill the declining of the fit, that you may safely giue him meate. And if the sicke be neuer the better through these things, you must venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. Therefore minister iuice of Ptsan, or one morsell or other wet in wine that is white and thin: for they being refreshed, and as it were suddenly called backe, do afterward come to the declining of the fit. We must eschue altogether in them that haue this disease, long delay from meate and hunger: for you shall giue him euery houre very little meate, for it taketh away great famine and the fainting, whereby the sicke is eased. And that it is lawfull to nourish and giue meate to the sicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *lib. 10 method. cap. 3.*

*Polenta is best
ly steeped in
water one
night, then
fried, and then
ground.*

CHAP. IX.

Of euill digestion.

RAwnesse of the stomacke or ill digestion is, when as the meate is not altogether changed. The causes of it are, distemper in the stomacke, inflammations, hardnesse, impostumes, and such other like. Sometime the meates remaine raw and vndigested, although the stomacke be not diseased, either through immoderate deuouring of meates and drinckes at one time, or through the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themselues, or through eating of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them, or through some vicious superfluitie growing, or through short sleeping, as *Galen* saith, *Libro tertio de symptomatum causis, capite primo.* The diuersitie of causes be

Cause.

Signa.

knowne partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him, and partly by certaine tokens. By the tale of the sicke, and of them that be about him, you may know whether meates and drinckes haue bene taken immoderately, or out of due season, or inordinately. Also you may know of them the shortnes of sleeping you may know if the meates themselves were of euill qualities by his belkings and fauours like things roasted and burned. For in them that be hote and cholericke, the belking or corruptions fauour like meate roasted or burned but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the corruptions are lowre or sharpe. Likewise you must iudge of excrements that be flegmaticke and cold, they cause lowre corruptions: but those that be hote and mixed with bitter choler, do cause fauour like burned meate. Likewise iudge of the stomacke being any otherwise euill at ease: for if the disease be cold, it causeth sharpe and lowre permutations: but if it be hote, it causeth a burning fauour. When perfect cruditie and rawnesse is engendred without corruption, in such sort that the meates do remaine altogether euen as they were eaten, by this you may know that the stomacke is overcome, either through great quantitie of meate, or through vehement cold taken in an hote thirst. Therefore if you would not haue this cruditie, and euill digestion, you must beware of all the aforesaid things, that is, that you neither offend in the quantitie, nor qualitie, nor order, nor due season of the taking of your meate, and that you eate those things onely, which you are able to digest, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you must especially take diligence heed to the measure and quantitie of your meate, and you must refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your strength is able to suffer. Also you must beware of euill order, that is, that you do not first eate Quinces or Pomgranates, or some such like things, and afterward to eate pot herbs out of oile or sauce made with salted fish, or other things which do soften the belly. Also you must eschue eating out of due season, that is, that you do not eate before some moderate exercise, or before yesterdaies meate be well descended and also not before your accustomed houre. Also you must eschue all things that be hard by nature to digest, as is flesh that is hard by nature, as is Beeffe and Harts flesh: also eschue all old flesh. Also you must beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in salt, and stale kept. Amongst pot hearbes, those that be very hote or very cold, or also those that ingender wind, be hurtfull. Eschue fishes that are hard, and dried by long keeping. Also abstaine from meates that be corrupt, or that do stinke, or smell ill fauouredly. Refraine from sweete fruite, or that which doth ingender windinesse, or that which is corrupt. Also eschue iunkats which be hard of digestion. Also you must eschue meates that be strange and vnaccustomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vse to commixe in their tarts and fine cakes; but you must eate your meate in due time, not greedily, nor in gobbets, nor swallow it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and disturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and causeth each peece to swim from other. After meate eaten, you must eschue vnequall and troublous motions. Also eschue heate and cold, for those things do stop the digestion of meate. But calefaction and chafing of the sides, and rubbing

Victu ratio.

rubbing of the feete, do helpe digestion. And if there be heauinesse about the stomach, so that through it a certaine painefulnesse be spread throughout the whole body, then lay your hand being stretched forth, vpon the mouth of the stomach, or apply to it a fleshie infant; for as *Galen* saith, it is much better, and more naturall, then the heate which is procured by fomentis. For which cause some do lay little whelpes while they rest vpon their stomach, which doth increase the abundance of heate that digesteth the meate. Also you must procure sleepe in the night equall and without disturbance. For this, you must procure to lie straight, and let your head be bolstered vp high, & in your lying you must incline towards the left side. And if you cannot sleepe, you must lie without turning or stirring of your bodie, and keepe it still in one forme of lying; for often stirrings and tossings do disturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie, and the bowels likewise. The cure must be diuerse, according to the diuersitie of the causes: for hote distemper of the stomach requirith one kind of curing, and cold distemper requirith another. Also inflammation of the stomach requirith another kind of cure, and hardnesse or impostumations another kind; and all those cures you shall seeke out in the proper Chapters: for here it sufficeth to say thus much. When there cometh an vnpleasant belking, declaring manifestly that there is corruption of meates without prolonging you must prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you must constraîne all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the stomach, they cause tormenting, and wrestling, and heauinesse of the head: and sometimes they send forth choler vward and downeward, or they cause fluxe of the wombe, or seauers. Therefore such as cannot digest but hardly, we must accustome them long time before, that they may vomite easily, for that is best in many perils. And if any be hard to vomite by nature, & be ill disposed to drinke cold things, in any case it is not inconuenient to giue him a cup of pure cold water to drinke: for the stomach being strengthened, it soone thrusteth out those things that sticke in it, and sendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the sicke be kept in quiet and rest, and vse rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his sides, vntill the rumbling and windinesse breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come forth with a gentler qualitie. And then it is good to rise vp, that first the bellie may send out the corrupt things by siege, and afterward let the sicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, because of the troubled vapours which be ascended into the head through corruption. After this he must apply his mind to daily businesse without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the bellie must be prouoked to auoide those things that remaine yet. Afterward you must bid him rest, and you must powre vpon and nourish the feete with warme water: and the face being washed with pure cold water, let him rest in his bed, and procure him to sleepe by all meanes. After which let him vse a little walking, and then a bath. After bathing let him take meate moderately, and that which the bodie is able to digest. But yet you may not ouerpasse medicines that do helpe digestion, as is, Pepper, especially long Pepper, which doth only helpe digestion. But if you haue it not at that present, you may vse white Pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke Pepper. Also for the same, *Diacotoneon*.

Curatio.

Vomitue.

Long Pepper
helpeth dige-
stion.

is good, and *Diospoliticum*. Also there be other things to be applyed, as well inwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomach, which are rehearsed in the former Chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do pierce quickly, as is, Caraway seeds, Fennell seeds, *Apium*, Leuage seed, Parsley seed, *Ammos*, Pepper, Ginger, and such like) must be given two houres before meate: but after meate you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therefore let them be vsed most before meate, after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse in the stomach.

Causa.

THe stomach is windie through the windines that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomach, or else through meates dissolved into vapors through want and debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth caule no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor dissolue meate. Vehement heate for the most part (ouercoming those things that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that no vapours can engender thereof, vlesse it be easie to turne into windines of the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and cloudy: and also it is but litle, and endureth but a litle while, so that at one belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the meates, if it be but of litle force and strength (that is, doth somewhat dissolue them, but not altogether consume them) thereof must needs engender windines, as *Galen* teacheth, *lib. 3. de sympt. caus. cap. 7.* They that are thus diseased haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomach: also sometime swelling, and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomach, and of the stomach it selfe: also emptie belkings do come, sometimes lightning a litle, and a stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downward. Also this euill sometimes is all ouer the breast, and sometime behinde, about the backebone and backe, and rusheth among the ioynts, and often it occupieth both places. Besides these things there is vehement paine in drawing of breath, because of the pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downward, and by windinesse breaking out either by belking or by the belly. Also rumbling & noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomach be caused of flegmaticke meates, you must minister an extenuating diet, and such medicines as do diuide and purge fleame, which we taught in the first Chapter of this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weakenesse of heate, he must vse meates easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eate but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meate, you must minister wine that is pure and vnmixed; but yet he must echue much drinke as a deadly enemy. Also let him echue fruit, and eating of moist oiles. Also let him vse hore baths in great vessels, for, those do mitigate, soften, and dissolue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleepe: and when sleepe cometh it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously. And as for medicines, let them

Signa.

Curatio.

them vs this decoction: *Rx.* Calamint, Mints, wilde Mints, Cammiomill, *Decoction.*
 Oregan, Peniroyall, ana. *M. j.* Wormwood. *M. ss.* seeds of Annise, *Apium*, Comin,
Daucus, Parsley, Fennell, ana. *℥. iij.* seeds of Nettles, Carawayes, ana. *℥. ij.* of the
 roote of Enula Campana, *℥. ij.* seeth these in a iust quantitie of water, till the
 third part be consumed: then straine them, & put too sufficient Sugar to make
 the ioyce of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor, or sirupe of Cala-
 mint, *℥. iij.* and make a potion, whereof let the sicke drinke euery day in the
 morning, *℥. iij.* Or let him vs this powder. *Rx.* the powders of *Dianysum*, *Tritura.*
cuminum, *Diacalamintus*, ana. *℥. ij.* seeds of Annise, *Daucus*, and Fennell, ana.
℥. j. Quibibes, Cloues, ana. *℥. ij.* Ginger, *℥.* Pepper, *℥. j.* Sugar, *℔ ss.* commixe
 them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but a little
 before, must first vomite. Also you must minister suppositaries made of things
 that entice windinesse, after this sort *Rx.* Hony sodden, *℥. ij.* seeds of Rew, Co-
 min, and Fennell, ana. *℥. j.* seeds of Carawayes and Annise, ana. *℥. ss.* Salt, *℥. ij.*
 commixe them together and make suppositaries. If the wombe be very co- *Glandes,*
 stue, you must cast in a clister made thus. *Rx.* of the decoction aboue taught, *Clister.*
℔ j. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, *℥. vij.* oiles of Wormwood, Rew and Dill, ana. *℥. j.*
 Goose grease and Hennes grease without Salt, ana. *℥. ij.* *ss.* common Salt, *℥. j.*
 commixe all together, and make a clister. In this disease you must annoint the
 stomach outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a little bunch of Wooll,
 and wet it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the stomach. And
 vpon the bunch of Wooll being wound vp together, strew Comin beaten, or
 seed of *Apium* or Dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it plaisters made of
 Linseed, Barley meale, Darnell meale, Comin, Dill seed, or *Apium*, or Fen- *Ceratum.*
 nell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or apply this Cerate.
Rx. oiles of Rew, Dill, Nard, and Lawrell, ana. *℥. j.* meale of Linseed, and Fe-
 nugreeke, ana. *℥. j.* *ss.* seedes of *Apium*, Carawayes, and *Nigella Romana*, ana.
℥. j. Laurell berries, and Centorie, ana. *℥. j.* *ss.* Gumme ammoniacke, and *Opo-*
ponax, ana. *℥. ij.* Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Also a
 great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell euery where, being applyed
 with great flame, is a remedy in this disease. Also *Cassoreum* drunke with *Posea*,
 and applyed outwardly with oile of Dill, is good.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

YElking is a motion of the stomach, and it is as it were a crampe of the sto-
 mach raised of the expulsive vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euill
 and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse *Cause.*
 or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through *6. Aphor. 13.*
 the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a
 gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted, causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the
 mouth of the stomach, and corruption of the food, causeth yelking, which cau-
 seth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in
 feuers, specially when the stomach or some other bowell is inflamed. The out-
 ward causes are easily knowne by the telling of the sicke and them that be a-
 bout him. Fulnesse is knowne by heauinesse, & emptinesse of those things that *Signa.*

Cure of yel-
king of cold.

Cure of yel-
king of fulnes.

Auersion.

6. Aphor. 13.

Cure of hicket
caused of emp-
tinesse.

Cure of yel-
king through
mordacitie.

Pilula de cy-
noglossa.

went before. You may know if the meate be corrupt, by the burnt sauer of it but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking, and pulling. Therefore when yelking is engendred of coldnesse, you must lay vpon the stomach, wooll dipped in the oile wherein hath bene sodden, Rew, Comin, & wormwood. Also oile of Masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children, warme linnen clothes being applied to, do help often. They that be of full age, minister to them wine to drinke, or *Apium* sodden in *Aqua Malsa*, or Comin beaten, or *Asarum*, or Penitoyall, each of these by himselfe or else mixed with other. Also squillitike vinegar is good to soupe. Also giue them, ʒ.i. of *Castoreum* with *Posca*, as well against yelking caused of cold, as also if it be caused through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomach with old oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreouer, holding of the breath which doth increate heate, is a present remedie for them that do yelke through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best remedie. If there be grosse humours, they must be extenuate and cut with *Oximele scilliticum*, and Calamint, and Horehound their decoction, and such like before rehearsed. Afterward you must apply those things which may draw the abundance of humors a contrary way, and turne them cleane aside. For which purpose those things are good which do purge downward, and specially clisters, bindings and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glasses with much flame, fastned to the breast, to the stomach, and to the backe. Also these things are good for them, long and quicke walking, bearings about, and chiefly riding. Also it is good for them to sneeze, as *Hippocrates* saith. For when the yelking is caused of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Also handsome calling loud, with much clamor, & with holding of the breath, is good for them. Moreouer, the stomach must be strengthened by medicines ministred as well inwardly as outwardly: Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, Emplaisters, and Cerates before taught. Yelking that is caused of emptinesse, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient food, and by those things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly spoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Hecticke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke & the backe with moistening oile, as is, oiles of Violets, & of sweet Almonds. But if yelking be caused of gnawing things, first we find that vomiting is a sufficient remedie for it: then also stupefaction of feeling, and such things as do alter the gnawing. The senses be astonied and stupefact by cooling things, for which purpose you must minister *Philonium*, or pilles of Hounds tong, which do profit maruellously in this disease; you must vse them thus. You must make of one dram, fixe pilles, whereof let the sicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which do stop, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be these, iuyce of Endiue drunke, Cucumber seed husked and beaten, being drunke, Lettuce seede likewise taken. Also iuyce of Purslaine drunke, and Purslaine it selfe taken in meate. Also Sebesten decoction taken in drinke, but specially about all, Asses milke is good. Or if you haue not that, Cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the same purpose minister conserues of Roses, or of Violets, or of water Lillies,

Diat.

Diarrhodon, Diarrion santalon, Iulep of Violets, of Nimphes, that is, water Lillies, and such like. These Trochiskes do stop, extenuate, and dry vp: R. Passillus. Costus, Saffron, Spikenard, greene Roses, Masticke, ana. ʒ. ss. Asarum, Aloesia- na: ʒ. ij. Opium ʒ. j. with iuyce of Psyllium, make Trochiskes, of the which giue ʒ. ss. or ʒ. j. Note that Opium, and the Roses, and the iuyce of Psyllium be of a cold operation: the Spikenard doth dissolve, dissolve, and corroborate: the Asarum doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the Aloes do purge out the vicious humours, and drive them out beneath at the siege: the Saffron dig- gesteth and strengtheneth the parts, for by his temperament of heate he causeth digestion, and by his restrictive vertue which he hath, he addeth strength. The Costus doth efficiently heate, and moderately restraine, which you may per- ceue by his tast. Galen commendeth this medicine very much. Lib. 8. de. Comp. Med. secundum locos, cap. 3.

CHAP. XII.

Of Choler.

Cholera in Latin, is an immoderate perturbation of the stomach, caused by vomite both upward and downward. The barbarous sort call this disease *Cholerica passio*: they that haue this disease be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It is caused throug much crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, and ill digestion which many times engendreth of great wickednesse of the meates, and some- time through abundance of vicious humours also. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, be very manifest: for they auoyd both upward and downe- ward: also there followeth thirst and twear, and short pulse, and drawing vp, and stretching out of the muscles of the hands and feet, and specially of the calfe or the legges. Therefore seeing this euill is most sharpe, and doth cause verie grievous swoynings, if they endure long, you must do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Physician, if he see this disease to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to stop that which is sent forth: for seeing they be vnprofi- table and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therefore if the patient haue di- position to vomite, and be troubled with yndigested meates remaining in the stomach, you must giue him warme water, and then he must vomite by his fin- ger or a feather put into his mouth. But you must not prouoke vomite by mi- nistring of *Aqua malsa*, nor with water mixed with oile: because these things do increaseth. Buxes, and cause mordacitie and writhings: also you must helpe the matter that purgeth downward: for a strange poyson (as it were) being within, doth gnaw the stomach and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole body: you must minister vnto him the easiest purging medicines, as is, *Aloes, Cassia fistularis*, decoction of *Mirbalanes*, and such like. After that the superfluous things be brought forth then he must rest, and it is good to neu- rish the sides with oiles of Masticke, or Nard, or Wormewood, and to cause sleepe. You must comix some time with the aforesaid other things which can strengthen the stomach, which be aforesaid, and with them you must make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction and di- gestion, viz baths of sweet water, and meates of good iuyce, among which is

Scutum sto-
machi.

A cyathe is
℥.j.℔.

Constriction
of vomites.

Against con-
traction in
the muscles.

broth of chickens with verinice, the flesh of small birds of the mountains, rene
egges, and such like. In drinke let him vie iuice of Pomegranates, or sirupe of
Roses, or water wherein burning Steele hath bene quenched three or foure
times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath caused slenderesse, and
leanesse throughout the body, and specially if the belly or stomach do rest af-
ter the removing from his place, and that the pulse be lesse, and thicker, then
you must bind the extreme and vitermost parts with bands, & you must make
them fast by much oile. Also apply to the stomach Cataplasmes and Emplai-
sters made of restrictive and strengthening things, as those be which are made
of Dates, *Hypocistidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, *Bolearmoniacke*, *Frankinsence*, *Ba-*
laustie, *Roses*, and fruit of *Mirtles*. Also it is an effectuous remedie, if a lin-
nen cloth wet in the iuice of Crabbes be laid vpon the stomach, or this Ce-
rate R^e. of the oile of *Roses*, *Mirtles*, & *Quinces*, an. ℥.j. *Mastick*, *Frankinsence*,
Acatia, ana. ℥.ij. *Hypocistidos*. ℥.j. ℔. *Sanders white and red*, ana. ℥.j. *Balaustie*,
Dragons blood, ana. ℥.℔. *Bolearmoniacke*, ℥.j. *Waxe and Rosin* as much
as is sufficient, make a Cerate to lay vpon the stomach couered with silke. In
drinking giue him the measure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to soupe off, that
is, ℥.j. ℔ but you must beware that it be not ouer cold, for that being giuen, sud-
denly is vomited vp againe; and sometime with his stupor and coldnesse, it
hurteth very extremely the naturall heate, or it causeth inflammation of the
stomach, or of some of the bowels. And you may sometime drop into the wa-
ter a little of the iuice of sharpe *Pomegranats*, or of *Roses*, or of the decoction
of vine branches. And if those things that be voided forth be very sharpe, and
that thirst and burning do trouble the patient, then minister *Cucumber seed*,
with three *Cyathes* of water. Also you may make it commodiously with *Amy-*
lum. Then also minister *Endiue* or *Lettuce*, or both sodden in *Posca*. After-
ward procure sleepe and rest by all meanes. But if the fluxe will not be stop-
ped, and the pulse decay betweene this and that, and that cold and wet do
take him, and also sometimes yelking, you must come to wine that is meane-
ly restrictive, which is not very strong, but yet sweet and not odoriferous; and
put into it, warme if it may be, or else cold, crummes of bread, or *Alica*, and
so by little and little at sundry times let them soupe it vp. But yet they must e-
chue much quantitie of wine: and by all meanes you must go about to bring
them to sleepe, by strewing the pauement of the house with *Roses*, *Vine leaues*,
Brier, and such like afore taught. Also apply odoraments to the nose, as *Roses*,
Quinces, and such like: also annoint soporiferous and sleepy ointments about
the temples and forehead. If he go to the stoole still, cast in by a clister *Amy-*
lum with decoction of *Poppy heads*, for it doth both restraine and coole, and
cause sleepe. To stop vomits, it is good to eate and deuoure the iuice of *Med-*
lars, *Quinces*, *Pomegranates*, and *Peares*. If with these remedies and others
that be taught before in the second Chapter of this Booke, the sick cannot keep
and brooke his meate, you must apply without vpon the stomach a very great
cupping glasse lightly. Against the contraction and drawing vp of the muscles
you must wind about the muscles, linnen clothes soaked in warme oile, and ap-
ply moist Cerates and ointments wherein is put some *Castoreum* and oile of
Ireos. You shall find examples enough of these in the Chapter of the Palsey be-
fore

fore in the first Booke. When the disease decreaseth, you must refresh and restore the patient againe with good meates, as Chickens, Doves, Hennes, Partridge, wood Culver, and Owls, or black-birds, and such like.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Diarrhea.

Diarrhea in Latin, is a copious and great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weaknesse of the instruments that belong and do serue to digestion, also through abundance of nourishment & meat that is moist and viscus, and through corruption of the same meate. Moreover, gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from above to the belly, & also weaknesse of the retentive vertue. The signes whereby the causes are knowne are *Causa.* very manifest. For if this fluxe *Diarrhea* be caused through the weaknesse of the instruments that serue for digestion, as is the stomach, the bowels, the liuer, and the spleene, you must seeke the signes of these out of their owne Chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meats & drinks, you may know it partly by the patients tale, & partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing & heate: also the patient feelth bitternesse of the mouth, thirst, thinne state of the body, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrary to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions will appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moist. If the fluxe be engendred through fulnesse of the whole body, or if it be indicatorie, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen li. de plenitudine & crisi bus*. And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weakenesse of the instruments, the distemper which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is *Curatio.* taught in the first Chapter of this Booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be caused *Note.* through other causes, and that nature doth labour to drine out of the bodie superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that they can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer, and watch til nature hath bestowed all her care and charge: or else also it is good to helpe natures motion; but for to go about to strue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humors which are stopped, being caried vpward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or lethargie, or impostumation behind the eares, not without danger. Therefore in the beginning you may not stop the fluxe which floweth profitably for the health of the body, but after that the fluxe hath endured long, not onely carrying forth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the body, & consuming the strength, then you must labour to stop it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applyed outwardly vpon the belly. Therefore if there come forth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straightwayes: for the cholericke matter that is gathered toge-

Cure of Diar-
rhea of choler.

ther, and heaped in the stomach, and in the bowell called *Intestum*, if it be with-
holden and kept there still, it hurteth greatly: for it both overturneth the sto-
mach, and causeth inflammations of the bowels; it kindleth thirst, and restor-
eth feauers, and causeth the evils aforesaid, and generally causeth a worse
disease. Therefore if there be abundance of cholericke humours in the bodie,
nature must be expelled with easie purging medicines, as is infusion of Rew-
barbe, *Cassia fistularis*, the barks of *Mirobalanes citrine*, or *Manna*. After that
giue Cowes milke, or Goats milke warme, being new milked, or seeth it at the
fire, and stirre it continually, till it be consumed vnto the third part: which you
may do by quenching of red hote iron, or Steele gads in the milke often, but
while it doth seeth you must take the scum or foame off it: for surely you can
finde no quicker remedy against fluxes of choler. And because the milke that
is eaten of one that hath a feauer, is wont to turne into a burning sauer, or al-
so sharpe or sower, and so causeth more hurt then good: therefore if the pa-
tient hath a feauer together with the fluxe, you shall eschue ministring of
milke to him dressed after that sort. But you must powre the fourth part of wa-
ter to the milke, and seeth it vntill it be halfe consumed, and then minister it vn-
to him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you must cast in cli-
sters made of the decoction of Barley, with Sugar Roset, oile of Roses, yolkes
of Egges, and such like. At the length, when the colericke humours be voided
out, you must minister inwardly such medicins as do restraints and strengthen,
as be, conserues of Roses, *Diacotoneon* without spices, *Diatrion Santalon*, Tro-
chiskes of *Spodium*, *Hydromalon*, and such like. And what kind of medicins they
must be that ought to be applied outwardly, we will shew you a little hereafter.
Also the fundament must be fomented and nourished with a decoction made
of some restrictive things. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be engendred through flegma-
ticke humours that be grosse and tough, or through corruption of them, then
you must beginne your cure, as you did before, with easie purging. Therefore
then you must minister the infusion of *Agaricke* with *Mirobalanes emblici*, or
some such like medicine, which is able to bring forth the aforesaid humours.
Also clisters are good, specially if there be abundance of clammye humours
heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of Centorie, and
oile of Rew, and such like. Minister within the belly *Diacotoneon* with spices,
greene Ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and drie. Al-
so apply outwardly those things which do adde strength. If the fluxe *Diarrhea*
be caused through the weakenesse of the vertue retentive, you must minister
and apply those medicines which are applied against other vnmeasurable
fluxes of the wombe. Therefore apply irrigations and sprinklings of oile *Om-
phacino*, or oile of Roses, or oile of the blossoms of Apples, with some sower or
sharpe wine: but oile of Mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement
restriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bo-
dies be strong, you may seeth in that irrigation, Galles, Pomegranate rinds, and
Balaustia. If the fluxe endure still, apply Cataplasmes, Emplaisters, and Cerates,
made of restrictive & drying things, wherof we wil make mention in the next
Chapter. Also this Cerate is effectuous to be made. Take seuen Mulberries, or
Blacke berries which be sower & whitish for lacke of ripenesse, bray them well
and

Cure of Diar-
rhea of fleg-
maticke hu-
mours.

Cure of Diar-
rhea of the
weakenesse of
the vertue re-
tentive.

and adde to it oile of Roses $\mathfrak{z}ij$. Waxe \mathfrak{z} . and make a Cense. After the voiding of superfluous and hurtfull humors, these things heale the fluxe of the wombe, being ministred in drinke, that is, Compo. decoction of Maidenhaire, the roote of white Thorne, likewise one \mathfrak{z} . weight of the seed of *Apium* ministred: for it prouoketh vrine, & turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Also vripe Mulberies being yet soure, if they be dried many dayes in the Sun and so kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth they restraine and stop the wombe maruellously. Also they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vse *Sumach*, which sometime is lodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being vripe and sharpe, do bind the belly more, if they be dried as is aforesaid, and ministred in drinke. Among compound medicines these are marvellous good, that is, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, of *Terra lemnia*, *Diacotoneon*, *Dattrion*, *Santalum*, *Triacle*: and this compound made in Lozenges, is good: *R*. the powder of *Diacotoneon*, *Santalum*, *Diarrhodon*, *abbatis*, ana $\mathfrak{z}ij$. red Coral, chosen Frankincence, red Rose, ana \mathfrak{z} . *Spodium* \mathfrak{z} . leeds of Soreh *Sumach*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}j$. *Balaustie*, *Acacia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . *Matricke* \mathfrak{z} . *Bolearmonniacke* \mathfrak{z} . fine white sugar, \mathfrak{lb} . \mathfrak{ss} dissolve it in the distilled waters of Plantaine and Roses, and make Lozenges. Also this Loch is good. *R*. of old conserues of Roses, of *Diacotoneon* with spices, *Rob de ribes*, *Rob de Barberies*, ana \mathfrak{z} . *Hydromel*, $\mathfrak{z}ij$. *Diamoron*, $\mathfrak{z}v$. with powder of *Dattrion*, *Santalum*, $\mathfrak{z}ij$. red Coral, $\mathfrak{z}j$. *Spodium*, *Balaustie*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . *Bolearmonniacke* $\mathfrak{z}j$. sirupe of Mirtilles as much as shall suffice, & make a Loch. Moreover you shall euer haue this water ready made: *R*. *Sumach*, one quarter, raine water, $\mathfrak{lb}ij$. in which steepe the *Sumach* a day and a night, then boile them, and straine the *Sumach* well and strongly. and in that water seeth Rice, or milke, or other meates, or at least way, p. viii. one portion of this water to them. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be caused through flowing of humors from some other member of the body, you must seeke the cure out of their proper Chapters. As for example, if the humors flow from the head into the stomacke, you must returne to those things which are spoken of before in the Chapters against distillation or rheume, and so do likewise with other parts of the bodie.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe *Lienteria*.

LIENTERIA in Greeke, is a certaine lightnes, or smoothnes of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a scarre without on the skin of the body. In this disease the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it slide away before it be changed and perfectly digested, euen in the same forme and likeness that it was eaten. Therefore in Latin it may well be called *leuitas* or *leuor intestinalium*, and in English, lightnes or smoothnesse of the bowels. It is caused oftentimes through a grieuous fluxe *Dysenteria* by name going before, which causeth deepe exulceration of the bowels: then scarres that be hard closing together and smooth do follow: which scarres by reason of the hard closing, will not suffer the meates to be distributed about the bodie, because the mouthes of the veins which are wont to draw nourishment from the bowels to themselves, are now stopped. And because of the smoothnesse (as is aforesaid) the bowels suffer

suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weaknesse and debility of the vertue that should keepe and hold the meates in the stomach. For this vertue being weake and sickly, the food or meates be neither digested nor distributed, but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing changed (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it engendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime when dropic water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therefore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth tast or feele no meate, and it causeth euill state or plight of the body. Therefore there chan- ceth to the patient continuall seiges, crude and raw, in colour pale or whitish, vnequell, and very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Also he feeleth a burning which spreadeth all ouer the sides, loathing of meate fol- lowing it. It a good and friendly signe in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them sharpe and lowre belkings; for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide some while in the stomach vntill it beginne to be changed. When this disease chanceth, it is easie to perceiue, that you must refresh and recreate the vertues retentive and digestive, as well of the stomach as of the bowels, by all meanes; and that may chiefly be done by ministring of conueni- ent meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to restore and refresh strengih. Ther- fore the flesh of birds of mountaines is good: also Chickens roasted, in whole bellies also must be put *Sumach* or *Masticke*, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the next Chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be little in quantity, and easie of digestion. And if his seiges be sharpe & cholericke, make him meate with *Rice* and *Alica*, and such like, with the which seeth some restri- ctive things, as *Pears*, *Quinces*, *Medlars*, and such other like. Also milke sod- den is good for them; but if their seige be *stegmaticke*, you must minister vnto them contrarie meats. Also commixe somewhat that is pleasant and accepta- ble to the stomach, as is *Anise seed*, *Comin*, or *Daucus*. In cholericke seiges let their drinke be Ale: but in *stegmaticke* let it be wine that is old & hote. And generally let him drinke but little, for much drinke is not onely in the fluxe *Li- enteria*, but also in all other fluxes of the wombe, most hurtfull. For curing of this disease, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weaknesse of the ver- tue of the stomach, you must turne to the Chapter of weaknes of the stomach, and there seeke the cure. But to be short, you must minister both within and without to the body, those things that do restraine, and that do strengthen as well the stomach as also the bowels. Therefore minister sirups of *Wormwood*, and *Mints*, and other electuaries which do strengthen the stomach. And you must apply those things outwardly, which be rehearsed before in the Chapter of *Diarrhea*, & shal be taught in the next Chapter following. But this medicin is specially good. R. oiles of *Masticke*, *Wormwood*, *Mints*, and *Mirtles*, ana. ʒ ij. powders of *Cinamon* chosen, *Cloues*, and *Galingale*, ana. ʒ ij. *Balaustia* and red *Roses*, ana. ʒ ss. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment: or vie this Cerate: R. oiles of *Masticke*, *Wormwood*, & of *Quinces*, ana. ʒ j. oile of *Mints* ʒ ss. *Calamus aromaticus*, *Cloues*, *Frankincence*, an. ʒ j. wood of *Aloes*. ʒ ss. red *Roses*, white *Sanders* and red, ana. ʒ ss. *Masticke*, *Comin*, ana. ʒ j. *Hypocistides*, *Acacia*, *Sumach*, ana. ʒ j. ʒ ss. *Gallia Moschata*, ʒ j. with Waxe and Turpentine

Signa.

6. Aphor. I.

Victus ratio.

Cure of Lien-
teria of weak-
nes of the ver-
tue of the sto-
macke.

Unguentum.

Ceratum.

as much as is sufficient, make a Gerate. Moreover, to those that you con- If *Lienteria*
 sider have a scarre, the eating of sharpe things is profitable; for it causeth a be caused of a
 certaine refriuation and rubbing open againe of the scarre: also it reuiueth a- scarre.
 gaine the naturall heate, and doth somewhat refresh the digestiue vertue. Ther-
 fore in this case (as *Galen* witnesseth in cap. 95. *Artis Medica*) they be good
 which do scoure and wipe away sufficiently, and restraîne a little: therefore al-
 wayes commixe scouring things with restrictiue medicines. In all other causes
 of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you must vse the same kind of cure which you do vse to
 them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhea* or *Dysenteria*.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe *Dysenteria*.

DYSENTERIA is Greek, properly is nothing else but an exulceratiō of
 the bowels. The Latines call this disease *Tormina*, because through it the bo-
 wels are tormented & fretted very much with paine. We said before, properly, *Foure kinds of*
 because the Greeks reckon foure kinds of bloody *Dysenteria*, as witnesseth *Ga- Dysenteria.*
len, lib 3. de *Symptomatum causis*. The first is, when blood is sent forth by cir- 1
 cuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise
 of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is, when watery blood, 2
 like vnto the water wherein bloody flesh being new killed, hath bene washed
 and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weakenesse of the liuer. The 3
 third is, when there is sent forth an humour more shining and blacker then
 that which is naturall, being commixt of blood and melancholy. And of these 4
 we do not speak here, but we speak only of the fourth kind, in the which many
 times by little and little, and betweene whiles sometimes is cast out pure blood;
 also sometimes clodded blood, or shauing of the bowels commeth out with
 pure blood. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinkled with drops of
 blood. This fourth kind, as it is said, is caused through exulceration of the bo- *Causa.*
 wels, which sometimes chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and
 moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughtie medicines, as is,
 Scammony, and such like. Also through eating of fruite, through cruditie and
 rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe and soure meates, or through sharpe &
 gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in
 the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenasmus* sometime, and sometime
 by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fattie, by reason of
 the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted. But when the super-
 ficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it,
 then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloudie. And when
 the exulceration hath pierced deeper, then also is sent forth filthinesse, hauing
 as it were little peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stop-
 ped, it eateth and feedeth in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth
 forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to runne from dead bodies. When *Signes of ex-*
 the small guts are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauell, the ex- *ulceration of*
 crements are cholericke, hauing the colour of a lecke; and altogether garni- *the small*
 shed with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient *bowels,*
 feelth griefe and frettings, and gnawing, and loosing, so that the sicke is not

Signes of ex-
ulceration of
the great bo-
wels.

Diet.

Lenticule.

Potus.

Curatio.

farre from fainting and falling of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst, and be feaverous, and the ordure cometh forth crude and raw, and the bowels cal-
led *Jejunum* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it do chance, the ex-
cessions do appeare more crude and raw, having blacke bloud wrapped with it
vehemently, and yellow choler, and much thirst, and also disposition to vo-
mite do trouble the sicke. And sometime they vomke and abhorre meats. Also
there remaineth vehement paine about the navill, and sometime also malign-
nant fevers do engender. And they that are so diseased, be waxen ill coloured,
and do sweate out even till fainting and falling of heart. Their strength doth
quickly faile hem, and they be not farre from death. But if the ulceration be
engendred in the great bowels, then the ordure that cometh forth is pure,
and much, and heaped together, and cometh out with windinesse, and frothi-
nesse sometime. Also fatnesse is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth about
as *Galen* sheweth largely in lib. 6. *De male affectis toris*. For it helpeth greatly
to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the upper and
small bowels, you must go about the cure by medicines given in at the mouth:
but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more convenient to throw in
clisters. The beginning of the cure of them that have the fluxe *Dysenteria*,
from whence soever the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet and rest, and lit-
tle meate. Therefore if the feaver do not let it, let him eate milke new milked,
while it is yet warme: or in stead of it, minister milke sodden as we taught be-
fore in the Chapter of *Diarrhea*. For this first cleareth and purgeth downe-
ward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, and last of all
it stoppeth & bindeth the womb. But you must give him moreover wet bread
after the taking of the milke. Also pottage prepared of milke, hath both the na-
ture of medicine, and also giveth good nourishment, as is, Rice with milke,
Amylum and eggs mixed with milke. Also soups or pottage made of *Lentils*,
and *Milium*, *Sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meats
of dry bread, powring to it *Pasta*, or iuice of Dates, or Quinces, or of Peares, or
of *Sumach*. Also minister *Orbits* wel roasted with Plantaine, or sodden with Quin-
ces brayed: the using of oiles is not necessary nor needfull, but you shall mini-
ster, to taste vpon, Endive both wild and tame sodden, and Plantaine, and Cole-
worts twice sodden. Give him also the yolks of eggs roasted. Flesh is not good to
be given to them that have the fluxe *Dysenteria*, because they be of a stronger
nourishment, and do strive against digestion: but yet you must give it to them
that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specia-
lly chuse birds, as is, Partridge, & wood Culvers, & birds of mountains. Among
four footed beasts, Goats flesh and Hares flesh are good: but you must forbid
him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other four footed beasts. From
the beginning let him use for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from
houses covered with leade: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be
whole engendreth the *Dysenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you
must use running water, wherein burning Steele hath bene quenched. But if
the stomach be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, give him wine, also,
let it be restraining, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that
have the *Dysenteria*. For this cure you must use such remedies as do restraîne,
stop,

stop, drie vp, and prouoke vrine, & that do carry the fluxe some other way. Restrictiue things be these; Sorell seed, *Sumach*, *Gauls*, *Pomegranate rinds* dried, *Brier root*, *Laudanum*, *Acatia*, *Hypocischis*, *Balaustium*, *Willow leaues*, *Comfery rootes*, leaues and seed. *Rheum Ponticum* if it may be gotten, roote of *Althea*, *Horsetaile*, *Corall*, *Masticke*, *Hares creame*, *Dragons bloud*, the barke of *Frankinsence*, *Terra lemnia*, roote of *Verbascus*, *Plantaine seed*, white *Daisies*, a kind of *Mallows* called *Alcea*, *Oxiz*, *Sanicula*, *Ophyrus*, *Ophioglossum*, *Knotgrasse*, *Shepherds purse*, *Walwort*, *Pedelin*, *Numularia*, *Dragons the male*, *sharpe Mulberries*, kernels of *Grapes*, the barke of *Maces*, & such like. These things do stop and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and sharpnesse of humors, as is *Amylum*, *Gum tragacanth*, tallow of *Goates*, *Kids*, *Swine*, *Geese* and *Hens*. These do drie vp, *Hares creame*, *Harts horne burnt*, the shels of *Crabs* of running water, and *Sage* Things to prouoke vrine, you shall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you must minister clisters first, such as haue power to coure and cleanse, as is this: R. of the decoction of whole *Barley*, lb. j. *Mel rosarum* strained, ℥ j. *Sugar roset*, ℥ ss. yolks of eggs in number two, oile of *Roses*, ℥. iij. commixe all together, and make a clister. Absterision and cleansing being first done, cast in those things that do glutinate and ioine together, as is this: R. red *Roses*, *Plantaine*, leaues of *Comfery*, *Knotgrasse*, *Primroses*, ana. M. ss. *Balaustia*, ℥ j. *Rice burned*, ℥ j. roote of *Comfery* ℥ ss. feete all together in water wherein Steele hath bene quenched, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction, ℥ xij. iuice of *Plantaine*, ℥. ij. *Acatia*, *Hypocischidis*, ana. ℥. ij. *Bole armoniacke*, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℥. j. *Goates tallow*, ℥ j. oiles of *Roses*, *Mirtles*, *Quinces*, ana. ℥. j. commixe all together, and make a clister. Sometimes it doth not onely require things to stop the vehemencie of the paine, but also medicines that be stupefactiue. Therefore then it is good to vse this clister R. of *Goats milke*, or of *Cowes milke*, lb. j. fresh *Butter*, ℥ j. *Goates grease*, ℥ ss. *Gum tragacanth*, ℥. j. yolks of eggs in number iij. pils of *Hounds tong*, ℥. j. oile of *Roses*, ℥. iij. commixe all together, and make a clister. If there be need of more vehement stupefaction, you must augment the weight of the pils, or else you must adde to the foresaid weight of pils three or foure graines of *Opium*, or more or lesse, according to the vehemencie of the paine and the state of the body. If the exulceration be in the small and thin bowels, then it rather requirerh medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therefore the decoction of restrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it sirupe of *Roses*, and *Mirtles*, and so minister it: and also other medicines which are taught in the Chapter of *Diarrhea*, are good. Also you may conueniently minister this potion. R. of the decoction of the roote of *Comfery*, or of some other restrictiue thing, ℥. iij. sirupe of *Roses*, ℥ j. sirupe of *Mirtles*, ℥ ss. powder of the *Trochisks* of *Spedium*, *Plantaine seed*, *Bole armoniacke*, ana. ℥. ij. Commixe all together, and make a potion. Besides those things that are rehearsed in the chapters of *Diarrhea* and *Lienteria*, you must apply outwardly vpon the belly this *Cerate*. R. of the oiles of *Masticke*, *Roses*, *Mirtles* and *Quinces* ana. ℥. j. meale of *Barley* and *Fenugreeke*, ana. ℥. j. of red *Roses*, *Plantaine*, ana. ℥. j. *Balaustie*, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℥ ss. *Bole armoniack*, ℥. j. *Hypocischidis*, *Acatia*, *Masticke*,

Obtundentia.

Resiccantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.

Clister adstringens.

Clister glutinans.

Clister dolo-rem leniens.

Patio.

Optimum Co-

ana. ℥.ij. with Ware and Rosin, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. By the examples aforesaid you may make many other remedies, which we overpasse here.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Tenasmus.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

*Tenasmus of cold.**Tenasmus of cholericke humours.**Clister abstergens.**Tenasmus of flegmaticke humours.**Tenasmus of inflammation. Clyster.*

TENASMUS, is a continuall desire to go to the stoole or siege, which the patient cannot deferre nor eschue, and yet he auoydeth nothing, except it be a little blood, or filthy matter like sneuill. It is caused oftentimes through outward cold, or through humours sharpe and cholericke, or of salt fleame, or impostumation, or of inflammation ingendred in the straight gut. Also many times the stopping of hard dung in the blind gut may cause *Tenasmus*. The Physician may easily know if it be caused of outward cold, by the tale of the sicke, because either he hath sitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath tarried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoydeth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile, his egestion is matter & corruption, and he feeleth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation causeth swelling of the right bowell, & grievous paine together with a feuer: abundance of dung causeth feeling of grievous distention, and stretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers, according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if the *Tenasmus* be caused of cold, you must minister pure and vnmixed wine hote, and you must sprinkle, foment and nourish the shere and the parts about the priuie members, with hote oiles and fomentis, as are, oiles of Rew and Lillies: also branne sodden in wine and put in a bag, may well be applyed to the fundament. Also it is good to throw in clisters made of the decoction of wild Mints, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, Sothernwood, seed of Annise, Fennell, and such like, putting to it oiles of Dill, Cammomill, and Lillies. Also it is maruellous good if you take a very old Tile which is blacke with smoake, and bray it with the geare that is contained in it, then commixe it together with seething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, & apply it to the fundament by & by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenasmus* be caused through cholericke humours withholden, and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you must cast in clisters which haue vertue and power to scoure, wash and cleanse, as is this: R^x. of the licour of the decoction of Barley. ℥.j. Sugar roset. ℥.j. *B. Mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. yolks of egges two, oile of Roses, ℥.ij. commixe them, and make a clister: he must eschue all sharpe things, and he must vse things meanly cold and moist, and all those things which do stop and temperate the sharpnesse of choler. If *Tenasmus* be caused of flegmaticke humours, it shall be healed like that which is caused of cold, onely adding to, and commixing with the clisters, such medicines as haue vertue to purge fleame, as is *Electuarium nidum*, or *Diaphanicon*, or *Benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenasmus* be ingendred of inflammation, cast in broth of Pusan, wherein hath bene sodden a few red Roses: or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, minister this clister: R^x. of the licour of the decoction of Plantaine, ℥.v. oile of Roses, ℥.ij. the white of one egge, commixe them together and make a clister. Outwardly you must sprinkle and annoint the place besweene

tweene the priuy members and the fundament with oile of Rew, and Mirtels: or apply this forment: *R.* red Roses, Plantaine, ana. M. j. *Balaustie*, *℥. iij.* *Psidium* *Fomentum.* *℥. j.* Mirtell berries, *℥. ij.* leaues of Brier, *℥. j.* seeth all together in sufficient water, vntill the third part be consumed, then wet a sponge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreouer, when there is need of suppuration, rotting or dissoluing, apply sements made of the decoction of the roote of *Althea*, of Fenugreeke, Cammomill, Melilot, and Bran. If the *Tenasmus* be caused of an vicer or botch, first cast in the things which haue an abster- *Discusses.* *Cure of Te-* *nasmus cau-* *sed of an vl-* *cer.* *sive* and cleansing vertue, and then afterward things that do glutinate, and ioine together must be vied, euen as you did in the fluxe *Dysenteria*. Also this ointment put into the fundament, is good: *R.* oile of Roses, *℥. j.* *℞.* the musci- *Unguentum.* *luge* of gumme *Tragacantha*, ana. *℥. iij.* Ceruse, burnt Lead, ana. *℥. ℞.* *Aloes*, *Frankincense*, ana. *℥. j.* Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherein dip linnen clothes, and put them into the tueil. If the paine be won- *Tenasmus of* *multitude of* *dung.* *derfull* great, you may adde to the foresaid things, *Opium*, *℥. j.* If the *Tenaf-* *mus* be caused through multitude and abundance of dung, then in the begin- *Clister leni-* *tive.* *ning* the dung must be brought out by little and little with soluble and gentle *Note.* *clisters*, as this is: *R.* Mallowes, *Althea*, Mercurie, Beets, leaues of blacke Vio- *lets*, ana. M. j. seeds of Fenugreeke and Linseed, ana. *℥. ℞.* boile them all in suf- *ficient* quantitie of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that de- *coction*, *℞. j.* *medulla Cassie fistularis*, *℥. j.* *℞.* common oile, *℥. iij.* Salt beaten, *℥. j.* and make a clister. But of this one thing you must specially beware, that in *this* case you do minister no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great *perill* and destruction to the patient, by reason of drawing of moe excrements *from* the whole body thither.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Cholicke.

THe Cholicke, or paine which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks, *is* caused many waies: but it hath foure speciall causes. For sometime it is *engendred* through grosse and flegmaticke humours fallen downe with in the *thinne* skinne of the gut *Colon*. Also sometime through windinesse, which hath *no* roome to get out. Also it is caused through inflammation of the grosse and *thicke* gut stretching out and troubling or vexing. Also it is wont to engender *through* sharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the afore- *said* bowell vehemently. Those that haue the Cholicke engendred of a grosse *and* flegmaticke humour, they be grieved and vexed aloft all ouer the *Ab-* *domen*, that is, the place which is vnder the mouth of the stomach: specially *they* are grieved where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele paine as though *the* gut were braied or bored through. Also they be fretted, & haue disposition *to* vomite, belkinges, sundry and strange vomitings, and specially of sicame. Also *the* wombe is letted and stopped, and sendeth forth nothing, nor so much as *wind*. Also the dung which sometime cometh forth, doth looke like Oxes *dung*, and it is light and full of wind. And there goeth before these things con- *tinuall* vsing of meates that be very cold and of a grosse iuyce, also filling with *meates*, ill digestion, and cruditie, idlenesse, and such as be adioyning to these.

Signes of wind-
dinesse.

Signes of in-
flammation.

Signes of
sharpe and
gnawing hu-
mours.

Diet for the
cholicke cau-
sed of flogma-
ticke & tough
humours.

Cure of cho-
licke caused of
grosse humors.

Clyster.

Those that haue the cholicke caused of windinesse, they feelee extension, stret-
ching forth and bolning. They that haue the cholicke caused through inflam-
mation they feelee inward burning and heate, & no small feauer: also retention
both of the vrine and ordure. Also they are troubled with thirst, burning heate,
disposition to vomite, and vomiting specially of choler without any ceasing of
the euill at all. And this is the most grievous and worst kind of cholicke, which
doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca passio*. Those that haue the
cholicke engendred of sharpe and gnawing humours, they be troubled and
vexed with burning thirst & watching, yea and small feauers; the vrine is made
sharpe, and cholericke humours are throwne out oftentimes, going to the
stoole doth raise greater paine or torment. Also meates and drinckes that be
hot, being receiued do prouoke it grievously. The diet and cure of this disease
is diuers, according to the diuersitie of the causes. Therefore when grosse and
clammie humors do cause the cholicke, the whole diet must be extenuate and
made thinne. Therefore let the bread which the sicke shall eate, be new and well
baked in an oven or fornace. Flesh is good, specially of birds, as Hens, Partrich,
wood Culuers, Turtles, Blackebirds, and Doves: he must eschue all kind of
fowles which do swim or liue in waters, all those things which do abound with
many superfluities. Among foure footed beasts, the flesh of Calues and Kids are
good. He must eschue al kind of pulle, which do maruellous hurt in this disease.
For pot-herbs you must vse Fennell, *Apium*, *Aperage*, and such like. Also it will
not hurt to take Garlicke and Onions raw. To be short, let his food be easie of
digestion, and engendring good iuyce. Let him eschue fulnesse and crudities
he must drinke wine that is somewhat restrictive, white, thin, shining, of meane
age, temperately allayed, and let him drinke but little. For the cure of the cho-
licke caused of grosse humors, you must cure it so, that you do not heate vehe-
mently with no medicines, for such remedies do spread abroad, puffed vp, and
make windy all cold and grosse humors, which puffing vp and spreading in the
bowels, doth cause more vehement paine. Therefore it is good to diuide, cut,
and digest those humors without vehement paine or heate, & by vsing of those
things which do not puffed vp and make windie. Therefore in his sharpe & ex-
treme paine make irrigations of the oiles of Rew, Cammomill, and Dill. Also
make fomentes and *Sacculi* of *Althæa*, of Mil, and Bran. Also clysters made with
the oiles aforesaid, and with the decoction of the aforesaid herbs are maruel-
lous good, or with the decoction of the root of wilde Cucumbers, putting to it
Comin or Rew, with Goose grease or Hens grease, after this sort: *Rx* Mallows,
Althæa, Cammomill, Mercurie, Dill, ana. *M. j.* Origan, Calamint, Peniroyall,
ana. *M. ss.* seeds of Flaxe, Fenugreeke, Comin, Louage, ana. *℥. iij.* seeth all to-
gether with well water of iust quantitie, vntill the third part: then take of the
licour of that decoction being strained, *℔. i.* *Hiera piera*, *℥. ss.* *Benedicta laxa-
tiua*, *℥. v.* of *Electuarium nidum*, *℥. j.* *ss.* of *Mel rosarum* strained, *℥. ss.* oiles of
Cammomill, Dill, & Rew, ana. *℥. j.* the yolks of egges in number two, common
salt, *℥. j.* commixe all together, and make a clyster. Also the putting in of sup-
positaries, & annointing of the fundament, made by iuice of *Cyclaminum*, with
Hony and Saltpeter, or Centorie with Hony and Saltpeter, do profit. Example
of a suppositarie is this: *Rx* of Hony sodden, *℥. j.* *ss.* powder of *Hiera piera*, *℥. j.*
Colocyn

Colocynth *℥.ij.* Salt Gemme *℥.℥.* commix them, & make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easily, doth helpe a-boue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath bene prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hote oile, if it may be had. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althea*, *Peniroidall*, *Laurell* leaues, *Fenugreeke*, *Cammomill*, *Mother wort*, *Dill*, & such like. The most conuenient medicine against the cholicke, is wine wherein wormwood hath bin infused or sodden; if they need drinking after a bath, it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also the decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being comixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke doth destroy the disease utterly: and it is better then all medicins. It is ministred to the sicke, *℥.j.* in three *Cyathes* of *aqua mulsa*. And if the paine do not cease and rest, you must minister *Diatrion piperion*, or *Theriaca*. If that the paine be vehement, it is good to vse medicines that do meanly ease, make soluble, and mitigate, as well put in beneath, as also giuen to drinke. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact & astony strongly, because they do somewhat ease & mitigate, but they make the disease longer, by making the humors more grosse, & thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windines; you must cast in clisters that do dissolue wind, as this is, *R.* *Sothernwood*, *Origan*, *Peniroidal*, *Calamint*, *Cammomil*, ana. *M.℥.* *Rew*, *Mints*, wild *Mints*, ana. *M.℥.* seeds of *Anise*, *Fenel*, *Carawaies*, *Comin*, *Dill*, *Lonage*, & *Daucus*, ana. *℥.ij.* seeth all together vnto the third part: the take of the licour of that decoction strained, *℔.j.* *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. *℥.℥.* *Castoreum*, *℥.j.* powder of *Diacuminum*, *℥.ij.* oiles of *Rew* and *Dil*, ana. *℥.i.℥.* commo Salt *℥.j.℥.* commix them together, & make a clister. Also there may be adied to the aforesaid things the correction of *Bayberries*: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue & driue away windinesse. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of one hazel Nut of the said decoction or electuary of *Laurell* berries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, fomentis & irrigations, of such things as do disperle & scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforesaid things, *Nigella*, *Amyntum*, *Parsley*, bitter *Almonds*, blacke *Pepper*, wild *Mints*, *Bayberries*, *Wormewood*, *Nettle seed*, *Gladon*, *Marjoram*, *Cinnamon* and others: of these therefore you may make cataplasmes, fomentis, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as *Galen* witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doth maruellously as it were by enchantment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, also of vsing of milke and other things that do coole, and from meates and driakes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmixed and pure, and let him vse a diet which doth heate, and cut, or diuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowels, you must open the veine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water do rule and beare sway, you must draw blood from the veines of the ankle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things, and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigatiue and easing paine, also Cata-

Glans.

Vomitum.

Infusion.

Vinum absyn-
thyses

Castoreum.

Cure of the
cholicke cau-
sed of windi-
nesse.

Clister.

Compositio ex
baccis laur.

Note.

Diet.

Cure of cho-
licke caused of
inflammation.

Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of sharpe and gnawing humours.
Clyster.

Vitæ ratio.

Stupefacientia.

Philonium.
Pilule de Cynoglossa.

Lib. 9 cap. 31.

Causa.

plasmies and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them copping glasses: Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of fevers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to put in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humours without any mordacity and gnawing, as is broth of *Ptisan*, or the decoction of Fenugreece, Linseed, Cammomill, and *Althea*, with fresh Goose grease, or Hennes grease, and oile of Roses. This clister is specially good: *R* leaues of Violets, both the tame Endiuets, leaues of *Althea* Cammomill, ana. M. j. *ss*. seeds of Fenugreece, Flaxe, ana. *ʒ*. *ss*. boile these in iust quantitie of water vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the licour of that decoction being strained, *ʒ*. xij. *Cassia fistula*, *ʒ*. j. *Hierapiscra*, *ʒ*. vj. oile of Roses, *ʒ*. ij. oile of Dill, *ʒ*. j. Goose grease, and Hens grease, ana. *ʒ*. ij. yolks of eggs, in number two, commixe them all, and make a clister. Moreover you must not only purge the hurtfull & corrupt humours, but also you must temper and moderate them. Therefore ye must vse baths of sweete water, for they do mitigate, and also prouoke sleepe: for which purpose minister stupe of Violets, and Roses, and such like, which are able to temperate and stoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. And also he must vse souping meates, as *Ptisan*, and broths of fishes of stony places. He must abstaine from all hote and sharpe things, whether they be meates, or medicines, or cataplasmes, or fomentes, or irrigations that be hote: as also he must abstaine from drinking of wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and moist. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then you must come to the vsing of stupefacient things: for in this disease they do not only pleasure and profit by astonying of the sense and feeling, but also because they make the thin humours more thicke and grosse, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among stupefacient things *Philonium* is special good, of the which you may minister for the most part one whole dram. Also pills of hounds tongue are matuellous good, if, as is afore taught, you do make fixe pills of *ʒ*. i. and minister one of them to be swallowed before they go to bed. But there be very many things which do helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and substance: among the which, white dung of a Wolle taken with water or thin white wine, is not the worst. That dung is better which hangeth on heards or bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said dung of the wolfe easeeth the cholicke being bound to the Ilions. Greene Mints, as *Actium affumeth*, lodden awhile, and drunke three dayes, healeth cholicke.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliacapassio.

The *Iliacapassio*, is a disease causing most grievous and deadly paine in the small guts. The Latines do call this disease *Poluulus* and *Connolulus*. The barbarous do call it *Iliaca Passio*. This disease is caused through continuall corruption & crudity of meats, but specially of fat meats, which, if they be without corruption, & being withholden, they engender obstructions in the small guts. And it is engrendred of certaine stripes & blows in certaine places in which the small guts do lye: also through vehement cold, restraining and withholding of the

the excrements. Moreover, through abundant drinking of cold things, specially if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chanceth to them whose bowels be fallen into the coldes together with the dung, and being violently thrust backe from thence againe, and through that it is inflamed. Also it is caused through drinking of deadly medicines, and through hard dung being impacted about the thin bowell. For the most part this disease is engendred either through inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie dung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance very often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehement paine, and some swelling of the thin & small guts stretcheth out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, loosenesse, vaine and emptie belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowels, perfect stopping and letting of the dung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore he vomiteth vp flegme and choler; he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficultie and hardnesse of breathing. Moreover to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweate, difficultie and hardnesse of making water, yea the fundament is so bound and close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime dung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries and fomentes, as is declared in the Chapter of the Cholicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *Iliaca passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, and through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach, you must prouoke vomite with things aforesaid. But if there do remaine no raw and vndigested meates in the stomach, you must go about by all meanes to draw out beneath as well windinesse as also the dung: and that must be done by clysters, suppositaries & annointings with great diligence in each of them. Therefore you must cast in this clyster, *Rx.* Mercury, Rew, leaues of *Althea*, Centory, ana. *M. j.* Hyssop, Calamint, Wormwood, ana. *M. j.* *ss.* root of *Althea*, *℥. j.* root of wild Cucumber, *℥. j.* *ss.* seeds of Flaxe and Fenugreeke, ana. *℥. iij.* seeds of Commin. *℥. ij.* boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, *℥. xiiij.* of *Benedicta laxativa*, *℥. j.* fresh Butter, *Mel rosarum* strained, ana. *℥. ss.* oiles of Rew, and Dill ana. *℥. j.* *ss.* common Salt, *℥. j.* commixe them together and make a clyster, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient that he do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the Cholicke, putting to them seeds of Rew, Commin, and stalkes of Coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Cyclaminum*, or Hony with *Nitrum* or Saltpeter. The fomentes and cataplasmes wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the Chapter of the Cholicke. Also fomentes made of Wooll wet in oile, wherein Comin, Dill, Rew, and Cresses haue bin sod-

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it
come of cru-
dite.

Clyster.

Glandes.

Irrigations.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

Cucurbitula.**Purgatio.****Cure of Iliaca
passio caused
of poison.****Cure if it be of
inflammation.****Cure if it be of
the falling of
the bowels in-
to the caddes.**

den, be very good. Also emplaisters made of Linseed, Fenugreke, Barly meale, Darnell meale, Rew, Comin, seeds of Dill, and *Asium* are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seeth in the water *Althea*, Rew and Dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somewhat far off, and then also to the places that are grieved, making deepe scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the dung be drawne out first by such thinge as are before rehearsed. It is marvellous good if they vomit by drinking Dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eat by and by hote. They that haue the *Iliaca passio* engendred through taking of some venomous medicine, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraîne them to vomite. After that you must giue them hote oile in drinke, or fat broth that they may vomite againe. After within a few dayes giue him *Theriaca* dissolved in wine, and let him eat meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a little Scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliaca passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must begin with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts, scarifying them. Also cast in clifters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Fenugreke, Linseed, with Oile and Butter. Also apply outwardly those things that are good against inflammations, and do ease paine; you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliaca passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the cods, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowels that are fallen downe to the shere, and keepe it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, and with bands and trusses applied, conuenient for it.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Wormes.

Teretes.**Lati.****Ascarides.****Cause.**

There be three kinds of wormes. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therefore *Lati*. The third are called *Ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *Teretes*, according to their thicknesse they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, and they go into the stomach, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nostrils. And this kinde of wormes is peculiar to infants, and children, and boyes, and girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad and long like a gard or band. They be of incredible length (as *Plinie* witnesseth) lib. 2. cap. 33. Sometime they are seene three hundred foot long, and sometime more. This kind of worrne (as *Paulus & Aetius* witnesseth) is nothing else but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guts within, into a certaine living bodie, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of wormes called *Ascarides*, be thin and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the afore said kinds be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, and flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue round

round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the stomach, *Signes of round wormes, Te- retes.* thinne and small coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and sleepe with mouing of the stomach: and also they do arise vp vntreasonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noyle and crying out, and fall asleepe againe: but some do both put forth their tongue, and shut their eyes, and be quiet, and keepe silence, and do fret and fume with them which raise them, because they cannot watch, they be so weake. Some haue their eyes sprinkled with bloud, and a pulse that is vnequall, obscure, failing and running backe. Also to many there chanceth losse of appetite. Children, while they do sleepe, chew their tongue, and also fashioning of their mouth as though they sucked or receiued meate. Also to some there chanceth gnashing of the teeth. But these things are done by litle and litle, and betweene whiles. To some they runne forth into the stomach, and do cause gnawing and disposition to vomit, and the patients refuse meate: & if they be compelled to eate, they scarce can swallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the belly doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a tympany. The rest of the body it doth consume and make leane without reason, neither fasting going before, nor vntemeasurable purging being made. Also it chanceth sometime the face to be made verie red, specially about the balles of the cheekes, but this colour turneth againe into swartnesse. Some do speake foolish things in their sleepe, like franticke persons. Some change the place that they lye downe in, and tumble and cast themselues from place to place; they increafe feuers in them without order, with vehement coldnesse of the extreme parts, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But all these signes & tokens all together which we haue now rehearsed, must not euery one of them be looked for in euery body: but the chiefest of them, & sometime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the stomach, and an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meate. For the worme that is in the guts, deuoureth the meate that is eaten, so that he hath need of more straight way, & except he eate straightway, the bowels are gnawne. They that are thus diseased, there followes slendernes & weaknes of the body with inequality. The most sure & infallible signe is, if certaine things like Cucumber seeds be auoided out with the egestio of excrements. *Ascarides* do raise a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the stoole continually. They that be troubled with this disease, for the most part, be the better after egestion & easing themselues. Let their diet be hot & dry, specially if the patient lacke a feuer, & let them vse meates of good iuice, and which will be soone dispersed throughout the whole body: & such as do not increafe the cause that engendreth worms. Therefore all meates are to be eschued which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer, they that are troubled with wormes, must be nourished and fed liberally, and may not suffer hunger; because the wormes except they haue meate to feede on, they then by and by gaaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, specially when they are not altogether empty. Let them drinke no strong drinke. For the cure, it is not to be spared. & sometime if there be a feuer *Curatio.* with it, you must haue respect to that, & to the wormes also: and sometime you need to be carefull but a litle for the feuer, and you must be diligent notwith-

Signes of broad worms, Lati.

Signes of Ascarides.

*Simples to kill
wormes.*

Aloes.

Composita.

Pulvis.

Unguentum.

Cerotum.

Pillule

Rufi.

*Cure if fluxe
of the wombe
be ioynd with
wormes.*

standing to get the wormes out of the body. Therefore when men haue not spied and knowne this, it cometh to passe for lacke of heed taken to avoid the worms, that they be gnawne & eaten of them, and so being pulled & gnawne, they dye. The cure as well of the round wormes as of the flat wormes consisteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the bodie being first killed. They are killed specially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not present) these simples are good. Wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the Sea, Sothernwood, Calamint, Horehound, Dittain, Hysope, Rew, leaues of Persica, Coriander seeds, Hartt borne, Lupines, Mints, Peniroidal, Origan, Centorie, Ferne, Gentian, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Garlicke, seed of Coleworts, and roote of *Enula Campana*. To these if a feuer be present, you must adioyne the seeds of both the Endiues, and also the iuyce of their herbes. Among all other, the most commendable remedy is *Aloes*. Therefore if infants will hardly take *Aloes*, because it is so bitter, you must keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and separated, you must cast it in against their wils, with a certaine pipe strengthened with a long splent. Of these aforesaid simples now rehearsed, there may be made diuers compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplasmes, emplasters, & ointments. Among other things, this powder is only good: R^x. of wormeseed, ʒ. ij. of Centory, Wormewood, Hartt borne burnt, ana. ʒ. i. Calamint, Peniroidall, Origan, ana. ʒ. ʒ. Sothernwood, Mints, Lupines, leaues of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ana. ʒ. j. *Aloes*, ʒ. ii. commixe the all together, & make a powder, of the which minister the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and state of the body of the sicke, in Milk or Hony, or sirupe of Liquorice: for those things which do kill the worms, must be ministred with sweet liquors, that thereby the wormes may taste of the medicine the sooner, being allured by the sweetnesse of it that is ministred with it. You must annoint the nauell outwardly with Buls gall, or with this ointment: R^x. oile of bitter Almonds, and of Wormewood, ana. ʒ. j. Buls gall, ʒ. ʒ. Centory, wormewood, Lupines, ana. ʒ. ii. leaues of Persica, Hartt borne burnt, *Aloes*, Sothernwood, ana. ʒ. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the stomach this Cerote: R^x. *Aloes*, wormewood, meale of Lupines, ana. ʒ. ij. *Nigella*, Mints, Origan, Peniroidall, Horehound ana. ʒ. j. Centory, Calamint, ana. ʒ. ʒ. oiles of wormewood, and bitter Almonds, ana. ʒ. ij. *oleum Cestium*, ʒ. j. Buls gall, ʒ. ʒ. with waxe and Rosin, as much as shall suffice, make a cerote. By examples of these you may easily make emplasters and cataplasmes, so that I need not to rehearse here any example of each of them. Moreouer, it is good to cast in beneath abundance of *Mulsa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the sweetnesse of the Hony, may creepe downward. But when the worms are killed with the aforesaid medicines, you must driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both destroyeth appetite, and hurteth digestion, and being lifted vpward, it causeth swimmings, and other euils. The wormes being killed, are driuen out for the most part by suppositaries and purgations, but specially by *Hierapicra*, and *pillule pestilenciales*, or *Rufi*, which haue a marvellous efficacie in killing and bringing out of wormes. But those that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe also, you must cure by thickning of

of the fluxe, and by changing the digestion into a better state, as well with meates as also with cataplasmes: for the more that the fluxe prevaileth, so much the more the engendring of wormes is increased: and againe, the fluxe ceasing, the worms do rest and pause. Therefore you must diligently labour to stop and restraine the wombe, and to adde stedfastnesse and strength to it. Therefore minister iuice of Plantaine, or else let him take dried Plantaine: for both haue like efficacie, as well against the fluxe, as also against wormes: Also make cataplasmes, cerotes and ointments of raw Barley meale, Pomegranate rinde, *Hypocistidos*, & such like restrictive things: but adde vnto them those things which be good to kill wormes. Restrictiue medicines are good to be applyed outwardly for this cause, because they do corroborate and strengthen againe the stomack, being hurt through often vsing of bitter medicines. Also it is lawfull in this case to minister earth wormes being dried, and beaten to powder with *Hydromel*. The wormes called *Ascarides*, being in children that be infants, they must be brought out with suppositaries made of honey and salt. In them that be elder, they must be brought out with clisters, made either with sharpe brine, or with decoction of Wormewood, Centory, Calamint, Lupines, Peniroyall, and other aboue rehearsed, putting to oiles. After ministratiō of clisters, annoint the straight gut, or fundament with these simples (that is) *Acatia*, *Hypocistidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or some other restrictive medicine. For the flesh being constrained by restrictive things, it loseth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth & shurreth out the *Ascarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children and for those that be of greater age, and is most effectiuous. Take old flesh that is powdred, cut off the fat, and fashion it long and round, like a suppositarie fit for the fundament, and thrust it into the twell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can suffer it; then loosen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that sticke on it. After that you shall powre in the things aforesaid, and also annoint it as is aforesaid.

Care of worms
called *Ascarides*.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemorrhoids.

THE Hemorrhoids is an unfolding and spreading abroad of the veines in the twell. Of these some be blind, which do swell, and do send out none, or very little blood: some be open, which be let wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth blood. The Hemorrhoids are caused through dreggie and melancholy blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer sendeth to those veines. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind Hemorrhoids may be seene with eyes, and they cause vehement paine, specially in auoyding the dung. But the open Hemorrhoids do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind Hemorrhoids appeare, and do raise great tormenting in the fundament, if the body be full of humours, cut the veine of the Hamme or of the ankle bones. Also you must make the belly soluble abundantly, lest the drie dung, while it is sent forth, do engender paine. Also you must apply where vehement paine is, those things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread steeped in milke, and sodden with yolkes of egges, and

Cæca.
Aperta.
Cause.

Signa.

Curatio
cæcæ.

To open the
Hemorhoides.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio aper-
tissima.

6. Epid. par. 3.
Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

applied like a plaister. Also it profiteth to sit in a bath made of the decoction of Mallows, Violet leaves, Melilot, Fennegreek, Cammomill, leaves of *Althaea*, Linseed, flowers of Rose campion, and such like. And if the patient cannot use that, wet wooll or a sponge in the said decoction, and apply it to the griete. And if these aforesaid things do not good, you must get blood out of them. Therefore put into the ruell, wooll annoiored with iuyce of *Cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with Oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of Centory, Doves dung, Stauesacre, Figge leaves, if they be rubbed with it: and also the pulpe of *Colocynthis* steeped in oile of bitter Almonds. Among many other, this emplaster is very good. R^y. of Doves dung, ʒ. β. seed of Stauesacre, Lupines, ana. ʒ. j. β. bitter Almonds, ʒ. j. pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ʒ. β. iuyces of *Cyclaminum*, and onions, ana. ʒ. j. commixe them all together, & make it like a plaister, putting to it, if need be, oile of bitter Almonds. But to take away the paine presently, use this following. R^y. Elderne leaves, M. j. boile them in water vntill they be very tender, then take a peece of Scarlet, as much as a mans hand, or greater, and wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, and when it is cold, lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus five or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same Scarlet, lay the herbes very hote also: this doth mollifie the hemorhoids, and ceaseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long Suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *Cyclaminum*. Also Blood-suckers, or Horse-leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the Hemorhoids to open them; and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew asher or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the Hemorhoids be open, and do anoid out blood meapely at certaine times, they may not be stopped: for the bursting out of such blood, doth cause men that haue this disease to be free from many other diseases. Which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where he saith in *Epidemijs* these words: They which haue the Hemorhoides, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the lungs, nor a feeding vlcer, nor with felons, or cats haire, nor with *Terniwithin*, nor with leprie, nor with morpew. But if the Hemorhoids do throw out blood immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patients do consume and waste away with this euill, and their strength is decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but in this case, it is to doubt, lest the dropisie should follow, the liver being cooled through immoderate vacation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, use meates that haue but little blood, and that do ingender but little superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as is *Alica* and Rice. Of pot. herbes, Endiue, Succorie, Purslaine, and such like. Commixe his meate with *Sumach*, and iuyce of vripe Grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate, thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuyce of Quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrained. For the cure, if there be abundance of humours in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must study

study to avert and turne away the blood, by fastning of cupping glasses to the sides, and to the liuer. For the which purpose it is good to bind the hands & the feet with bands, and to vse hard and sharpe frictions and rubbings. Moreover, you must minister within the body those things which do restraine, as are siropes of Roses, of Mirtles, of Quinces, red Corall, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of Amber, of *Spodium*, of *Terra lempia* & other which be rehearsed in the Chapter of spitting of blood. Also apply those things outwardly, which can stop blood that floweth. Among which as *Actius* witnesseth, *lib. 14. cap. 5* is Aloes laid on with *Posca*. The same effect also hath scales of iron, or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good, which is described of *Galen*, *lib. 5. Therap. method.* R^r. of Frankinsence one part, of Aloes one part and a halfe, commixe them with the white of an egge vntill it come to the thicknesse of hony, & lay it vpon the soft haire of an Hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Also ointments, baths, infusions, fomentes and other such like medicines made of things hauing restrictive vertue, do profit, whereof you shall find many examples before in the Chapters of *Diarrhea*, *Lienteria*, *Dysenteria* and *Tenasmus*. And if you shall vse little bags, it is best before you apply them to boile them in wine that is red and restrictive, or at least to sprinkle them with it. Examples of other medicines seeke before.

Medicamentum Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the Tuell.

IT chanceth sometime, that resolution or weaknesse of the ouerthwart muscles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth caue the tuell to fall out. *Causa.* Wherefore seeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforeaid muscles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you must diligently consider whether it be free from inflammation or no: for if it be not inflamed at all, it must by and by be thrust and put to his former place by compulsion: and because it must not fall out againe, after that it is thrust in and put vp into his owne place, you must apply restrictive medicines outward to it. Therefore first you must annoint it about with oile of Roses being warmed, or scoure the tuel with restrictive wine, and then being put vp againe into his place, you must bind him vp. And that you must do by and by, as soone as the sicke hath bene at the stoole, lest that when necessity constraineth them to go to the stoole againe, the tuell should fall out againe. You must apply a Liniment of *Acatia* and *Hypocischidos* with wine. Also you must seeth in water till it be red, Gals, *Balaustia*, shels of Masse, Pomegranate rindes, Daiesies, Sumach, shels of Quinces, and such like, and afterward of that decoction make infusions and washings. But after that the tuell is washed with wine, or with some restrictive decoction, then it is lawfull to strew vpon it, and to apply to it dry medicines. For which purpose you must apply Bolearmoniacke, Frankinsence, *Sanguis draconis*, Gals, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Hypocischidos*, Hartshorne, & such other restrictive medicines, as we haue rehearsed often before. But if the tuell through inflammation be so swollen, that it cannot be thrust vp againe, if the body be full of humours, you must first cut a veine, & prouoke vomite. And also you must apply to the tuell by and by in the beginning those

Curatio.

things that do reſtraine and ſtop or appeaſe : but if there be no abundance of humors in the body, let the ſicke uſe inſeſſions of the decoction of Cammomil, Mallowes, *Althea*, Linſeed, Fenugreece, and ſuch like; or let him deſcend into hot water, and tarric in it for a time. Alſo it is lawfull to apply a ſponge or wooll wet in the decoction. Moreouer, you muſt annoint the tuell with oiles of Cammomil and Dill, vntill it may be put vp: for they becauſe of their diſſoluing vertue, do readily take away the ſwelling, and do alſo cauſe that it may be put vp againe without any difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you muſt uſe the aforeſaid reſtrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the Fundament.

Cauſe.

Signa.
Curatio.

Clefts of the fundament, be chaps which are made in the muſcle that ſhut-teth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made through a North wind on the lips. They are cauſed through flowing of ſharpe humours, or through inflammation, or through extension of the ſwelling of the tuell. This euill is apparent to the eyes, and therefore we need to ſhew no ſignes to declare it by. For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of ſharpe humours, then they firſt of all muſt be purged and tempered. But if it be cauſed through ſwelling of the fundament cauſed of inflammation, you muſt likewiſe uſe at the beginning purging medicines. Alſo the belly at the time of the cure muſt be kept ſoluble with meates that do moiſten, and fat meates, leſt dry dung ſhould hinder and tary the con-glutination. Of ſuch qualities be Mallowes, Spinach, milke of ſweet Almonds, ſolt Eggs, fat Broth, and ſuch other like. But to the chaps themſelues you muſt uſe this ointment: R^x. of the oiles of Roſes and Mirtles, ana. ʒj. Frankincenſe, Maſticke, Litarge, *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ʒj. Aloes, burnt Lead, Ceruſe, *Balaustiæ*, Bole armoniacke, ana. ʒß. white Waxe, as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Or thus: R^x. oile of Roſes, ʒj. ʒß. Gals, Mirrhe, *Terra lemnia*, ana ʒj. root of Comfery, Roch alum, burnt Lead, ana ʒß. the yolke of an Egge being roſted, Waxe as much as is ſufficient, & make an ointment. With theſe ointments you muſt annoint the clefts thrice on a day, but waſh them firſt with decoction of Roſes, Gals, and *Sidiorum*. And if burning and inflammation do vex the diſ-eaſed place, you muſt annoint it with *Vnguentum album Camphoratum*.

Vnguentum.

Alind.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the Liuer.

Cauſe.

W^Eakenesse of the Liuer is cauſed of diſtemper, either hote, cold, moiſt, or dry. Hote diſtemper doth roſt, and as it were burne vp as well the humors which were before in the Liuer, as alſo thoſe humors which are carried to the Liuer by the veines *Meſenterij*. But cold diſtemper doth make the ſlegmaticke and raw humour which is alreadie contained in the Liuer, groſſe and rough, and hard to be moued; and the humors that be caried to the Liuer, it leaueth them halfe digeſted. Drie diſtemper doth make the humors drier and thicker. Moiſt diſtemper doth make the humors thin and more watery. Therefore they which haue weake facultie and ſtrength of the Liuer, are called
Hepatici.

Hepatici, as *Galen* saith. Hot distemper vexing the Liuer, there are colligations, *Signa*. first of the humors, & after that of the Liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse is auoyded by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate, and casteth vp choler. Moreover, thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is rough, and the pulse is swift. When there is cold distemper, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie; the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine dayes abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stinking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thicknesse, but are like putrified bloud which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded bloud, nor blacke bloud, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse bloud coming nigh to melancholy. And also diuerse and many colours of the excrements do signifie cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feuer: the face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempers, if there come drinesse, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke will be more thirstie. But if moistnesse come to either of them, the egestions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the grieue by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hote distemper, and heate a cold distemper. Likewise you must moisten a drie distemper, and drie a moisture. But in the cure, this must also be considered, that in all medicines for the Liuer, as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applyed to it outwardly, you commixe some restrictiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the Liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hote distemper, for his diet, let him vse broth of Ptisan, and other meats that do meanly coole, as Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Sowthistle, and Water and Bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, and Veale, these being sodden in Veruein or Limons. Of fruites, let the sicke eat Raisins, Limons, and sweete Almonds. He must eschue wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weaknesse of the stomach, for then you must minister thin and waterie wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuyce of Pomegranates, and *Syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *Oxysaccatum*, with decoction of Barley or Endiue. Also they must eschue all meates and drinckes dressed with Hony, and that be very hote, and haue vertue to cut and diuide. For the cure, minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of Roses, *Diarrhodon abbasii*, *Diatrion santalon*, and other such like Antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. R^y. the powders of *Diarrhodon abbasii*, and of *Diatrion santalon*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . i. β . seeds of both the same Endiues, red Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Raisins, \mathfrak{z} . j. white Sanders, Withwind, flowers of Squinant, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Sugar, \mathfrak{z} . vi. dissolue it in the stilled waters of Withwind and Endiue that hath the broad leaues, and make lozenges. And also the Antidote *Philonium* only once ministred, sometime hath maruellously healed all hot distemper of the liuer. Apply outwardly fomentis made of Roses, Cammomill & Quinces: or seeth wormewood or Dates in the aforelaid oiles of Roses, Cammomill and Quinces, and then wet wooll or a sponge in them, & lay that tight against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment. R^y. oiles of Roses, of Quinces, and of water Lillies, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. white Sanders and red, red Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. scraping

Curatio.

Nota.

Diet in a hote
distemper.
Orbiculi.

Pugentum.

Epithema.

Cure of old
distemper.

Decoctum.

Pnguentum.

Cerotum.

Epithema.

Cure of a
moist distem-
per.

of Iuory, ℥.j. ℞. seeds of both the same Endiues, ana. ℥.j. Vineger, ℥.j. ℞. Pus-
slaine seed, gra.ij. Waxe, as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also
Epithemes in this disease are wont to profit not a little: which may be made
thus, or after this sort: ℞. the distilled waters of sowen Endiue, with the broad
leaves of Lettuce, of Sorrell, of Roses, of water Lillies, ana. ℥.ij. iuyce of Sen-
green, ℥.j. Vineger, ℥.j. red Roses, red Sanders, shauing of Iuorie, ana. ℥.j. pow-
ders of *Diarrhodon abbatu*, *Diatrion santalon*, ana. ℥.℞. seed of Puslaine, ℥.℞.
commixe them all, & make an Epitheme. You must apply Epithemes, in som-
mer cold, and in winter warme. When there is cold distemper of the liuer, you
must vse medicines that do heate, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer.
In his diet he must vse meates of easiedigestion, and heating. For por-herbes let
him take Sauory, Hysope, Fennell, Parsley, Sotherwood, Sage, and such like.
And let his meates be dressed with aromaticke things, as Cinamon, Cloues, and
such others. He must drinke wine that is thin, yellow and odoriferous. He must
eschue eating of fish, and cold fruits, and idlenesse, and in conclusion whatso-
euer doth make cold. Within the body he must take this decoction ℞. rootes
of *Apium*, of Fennell, & of Parsley, ana. ℥.j. Agrimony, Hylope, Mints, Worm-
wood, Succory, Withwind, Origan, Calamint, *Asarum*, an. M. j. seeds of Annise,
Fennell, *Daucus*, Comin, Carawayes, ana. ℥.ij. Squinant, ℥.j. ℞. Masticke, ℥.j.
flowers of Camomil, red Roses, ana. M. j. Cinamon chosen, ℥.j. ℞. teeth all these
in a pound and halfe of wine and one pound of running water, vnto the third
part, then straine it, and put to the liquor of sirupe of Agrimony, ℥.ij. sirupe
of Wormwood, ℥.j. commixe all together, and make a potion: of the which
let him drinke in the morning and after dinner, ℥.ij. ℞. at a time. For the same
purpose you may minister hote antidotes, as *Diacinamomum*, *Dianisum*, con-
serue of Sage, Galingale condite, roots of Pimpernell couered with Sugar, and
such like. You must annoint him outwardly with hote oiles, as be, oiles of
Narde, Cammomill, Wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse
this ointment, ℞. of the oiles of wormwood & Narde, ana. ℥.j. ℞. iuyce of A-
grimony, ℥.ij. Cinamon. Cloues, wood of *Aloes*, an. ℥.ij. Spicknard, Squinant,
and Masticke, ana. ℥.j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You
may also apply this Cerote: ℞. of the meale of Fenugreeke, and of Lupines,
ana. ℥.ij. roote of *Ireos*, and *Asarum*, ana. ℥.j. of Agrinomie, Wormwood, Me-
lilot, & Squinant, ana. ℥.℞. *Gallia Moschata*, ℥.j. seed of Annise and Fennell,
ana. ℥.℞. Masticke ℥.ij. Mirrhe and Frankinfence, ana. ℥.j. oiles of Masticke,
Narde, Roses, and Dill, ana. ℥.i. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, and
make a Cerote to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good.
℞. seeds of Annise, Fennell, Ammeos, ana. ℥.j. ℞. Cinamon, Cloues, Squi-
nant, ana. ℥.j. see the all in a pound and halfe of Malmesey till halfe be con-
sumed, then straine it, and commixe with the liquor of that decoction, waters
of Wormwood and Agrimony, ana. ℥.ij. powders of *Diacinamomum*, & *Dia-
galanges*, ana. ℥.ij. Withwind, ℥.ij. Vineger, ℥.ij. commixe all together, and
make an Epitheme. In a moist distemper of the liuer, let him vse a diet that
doth drie, as flesh of birds roasted, thinne wine, those things that do prouoke
sweat, as drie baths, or hote houses, and also baths comming of their owne ac-
cord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschue all kinde

of

of fishes, and fruites that haue power to moisten. You must minister within the body, sirupe of Wormewood, *Dialaccha*, and *Diaturcuma*. You must apply outwardly those things which do dry without any great heate: of the which we will speake afterward in the Chapter of the Droptic *Anasarca*. Drie distemper of the liuer must be cured like the other, by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words, it is good for him to vie a diet that doth moisten, and baths of sweete water, and other things that do moisten, whereof we will speake abundantly in their places. But this must not be forgotten, which we also admonished you of before, to commixe alway with your moistening things, those things which adde strength to the liuer. But among those things which seeme to be good, by the propertie of the whole substance, the best is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and 3. 1 thereof ministred with sweete wine alayed with water. For this by often prooffe is knowne to be good against all distempers of the liuer. For as we said, by the properties of his whole substance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating and cooling.

Cure of a drie distemper.

Lupinum secur.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of obstructions of the Liuer.

Obstuctions of the Liuer are caused of vapours and grosse windinesse, hard to digest. But sometime it is caused of grosse and vicious humours in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which veines nourishment is sent to the liuer from the stomach and the bowels. If abundance of grosse and vaporious windinesse be heaped vp together, which cannot find free passage out, and so doth engender obstruction, there ariseth then not onely grieve and heauinesse about the right side, but also feeling and perceiuing of distension and stretching out. If obstruction be ingendred through grosse and viscons humours, there followeth heauinesse with feeling of paine, sometime easie, and sometime vehement: also sometime without a feuer, and sometime with a feuer. For grosse and viscons humours, being many, do cause obstruction and stopping more then other, and specially when the patient doth vse vehement mouing after meate. And if they be sharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obstruction is made more vehement: when the body is stopped, they suffer both stretching out, and also pricking. You must giue vnto them which haue this disease hote meates, and that haue vertue to take away obstruction and stopping, as be Leeks with *Oximele*, Sperage, Fennell, Parsley, Capers and other like things, either sodden in pottage and meate, or taken with some heating sauce which taketh away obstructions. You must eschue all meates and nourishments engendring grosse iuice. Also retrain baths and exercises after meates. He must vse for drinke, wine that is thin and old. Besides his diet, it is requisite for to vie very quickly medicines that do attenuate and take away obstructions: for obstructions waxing old do not onely engender putrification in the liuer, but also in all the whole body, and kindleth a feuer. Among simple medicines, these that follow do take away obstructions notably and without grieve, that is, Wolues liuer, Fumitorie, Agrimony, Cammomill, Galingale, Dragons root, *Asarum*, Annise, *Aplum*, Worm-

Causa.

Signa.

Fitus ratio.

Curatio.

Simples taking away obstructions of the liuer.

wood, *Cassa*, *Ireos*, Licorice, *Rhaponticum*, Lupines, Capers, *Avena*, with wild Parsley, *Pistacium*, bitter Almonds, Spikenard, *Stachados*, Gentian, roote of Plantaine, also the seede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, Succorie, *Alkakengi* both the Endiues, Sperage, and *Bruseus*. Of these also you may make diuerse compound medicines, and specially decoctions, putting to it *Oxymel simplex*, *Scilliticum*, *Syrupus acetosus*, *compositum*: siropes of Wormwood, of Hysope, of Calamint, of Horehound, and such other like. For the same purpose it is lawfull to minister Trochiskes of Agrimonie, of Wormwood, of Rubarbe and such like. Also these Antidotes, *Dialaccha*, *Diacurcuma*, are good, and such other like. Among other simples before rehearsed, *Pistacium* is notable good to take away obstructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but also pleasant, if you steepe *Pistacia* tenne or twelue houres by night in Malmesey, and minister them in the morning, the digestions being ended. You must apply outwardly, epithemes, ointments, emplaisters, and cerotes, which be declared in the former Chapter of the cure of cold distemper of the liuer. And these aforesaid medicines do suffice, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you must vse both blood-letting and purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You must purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of Agaricke, and with other Antidotes which do purge grosse and thicke humours by the belly. You must purge them specially by the belly, when the hollow part of the liuer is vexed: but you must purge by vrine, when the round embossed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by blood-letting and purgations, then you must minister those medicines which are before rehearsed. And specially this Electuarie: R^x of the roote of Ireos, *Chamaepiteos*, of seeds of Annise and *Apium*, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ of *Asarum*, $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ ss. of Cinamon, Ginger, Carawayes, Cammomill, ana $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ of *Stachados*, Gentian, and Horehound, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ with *Oxymel scilliticum* as much as is sufficient, make an Electuarie. This doth maruellously take away obstructions, not so much those that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as those that sticke in the outside of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

*Antidotum
liquidum.*

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

*Causa,
Signa.*

There is inflammation ingendred in the liuer as well as in other members, and through the same causes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauinesse all ouer the right side coming vp to the necke, and downe to the bastard ribbes. Also there is swelling of the right side, specially if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a sharpe feuer, a small and drie cough, an insatiable thirst, abhorring of meates, hardnesse and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue first red, and afterward blacke, vomits as well of pure choler as also like yolkes of eggs, and afterward also rustie; the bellie is costive. Also the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iauundise: also he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine rawing, and do voide forth sharpe vrine. The inflammation that chanceth through causes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, doth cause abhorring of meate, disposioun to vomite,

vomits

vomits of choler, and vnguentable thirst. The inflammation that ingendeth
 in the outward and round parts of the liuer, causeth the patient to haue greater
 paine in drawing the breath then the other, and doth raise a greater cough, and
 it doth stretch out paine vnto the right part of the necke, so that it seemeth to
 plucke it off. Also it chanceth sometime that the muscles leaning vpon the li-
 uer be inflamed: therefore many being deceiued, do thinke it to be an inflam-
 mation of the liuer. Therefore it is necessarie to tell the differences betweene
 these. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round swelling, fashioned
 like the liuer, which will also be fashioned according to the laying of the bo-
 dy. For it appeareth greater when the bodie is turned downe on the left side,
 and againe lesser, when it is turned on the right side. For the liuer going vn-
 der the bastard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the sight, nor to the feeling.
 Again, the thinne skinne, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appea-
 reth to haue a naturall fashion. If the muscles be inflamed, the skinne is stret-
 ched out round about, so that if one would pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot
 easily. Moreover, there appeareth a swelling according to the placing of the
 muscles that lye vpon the liuer, long in fashion, and manifest to sight and fee-
 ling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be inflamed, you must by and
 by let him blood, if age and strength will permit it. Therefore as (Galen witnes-
 seth) you must both pull backe and purge the blood that floweth to the liuer,
 by cutting the inward veine of the arme: because the veine in the right arme
 is right against the liuer, and hath a large passage, hauing societie with the
 veine which is called *Vena cava*. If this veine doth not appeare, you must cut
 the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you must cut the vp-
 per veine, you must draw out abundant and sufficient blood, it his strength
 will suffer it. After blood-letting within a little space, make the belly soluble
 with a simple and easie clyster, specially if it do not void by it selfe. The next
 day after the blood-letting, fasten on a cupping glasse, with scarification, and
 againe likewise fasten it on within a day after; for many haue felt more ease
 the second time of the applying then at the first time. Also you must vse fo-
 ments of Wooll wet in oile, cataplasmes, cerotes, and epithemes. In the apply-
 ing of the which, this onely is to be obserued, that to the other medicines that
 be mollificatiue and discussive, you alwayes commixe some restrictive medi-
 cines. Therefore make a foment of oles of Quinces, or of Mastick, or Roses,
 or Mirrles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a sponge wet in the decoctiō
 of Wormwood, Melilot, red Roses, Cammomill, Dill, Plaintaine, tame Endiue,
 and other like. Also make Cataplasmes or Emplaisters of Linseed, and Fenu-
 greeke, Barley meale, Quinces, Melilot, flowers of Wormewood, and such
 like. Or this emplaister: R. Barley meale, ℥. ss. meate of Quinces beaten, ℥. iij.
 Wormewood, flowers of Melilot, Squinant, ana. ℥. ij. Linseed ℥. j. oiles of
 Roses, Quinces, Camomill, Wormewood, ana. ℥. ss. Vinegar ℥. j. commixe
 all together, and make an emplaister. Also this Cerote is good, R. of the meate
 of Dates, ℥. iij. of Mirrhe steeped in old restrictive wine, Storax, and Ma-
 sticke, ana. ℥. ij. flowers of Melilot, Wormewood, Cammomill, ana. ℥. i. ss.
 Saffron, ℥. ss. oiles of Quinces, of Masticks, and of Roses, ana. ℥. i. with Waxe
 and Rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a cerote to apply to the liuer.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clyster.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

Emplastrum.

Cerotum.

Epithemata.
Nota.

Vita ratio.

*Cure of inflammation
turning to
suppuration.*
Cataplasmata

Emplastrum.

Ruptura.

and make a cerote to apply to the Liuer. For the same purpose you may make Epithemes of the decoction of Roses, Plantaine, Wormwood, Cammomill, or of their waters distilled. And in making of all these things, you must take heed, that when there is vehement inflammation, the restrictive things may preuaile and exceede the things that mollifie and loosen. And, contrariwise, when the vehemencie of the heate is somewhat slaked, the mollifying things must exceed restrictive things. Moreover, you must beware that you do not apply the aforesaid things when they are cold, but first warme them a little. Moreover, in inflammation of the Liuer, when there is great and vehement paine, you must also minister drinke medicines that do ease paine, but so, that you do eschue continuall vse of them: you must vse drinking of simples most. Therefore minister Groundswell sodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of Liquorice with hot water. Also iuice of Endiues doth profit no lesse then the other, putting to them a litle honie: for besides that it cooleth, and addeth strength to the Liuer, it also purgeth the mouthes of the veines of the liuer. But the belly must also be prouoked by eating of Nettles or Mercury sodden. Also in the declination of the disease, the belly must be emptied by clisters, for which purpose Polipody & *Epithimum* with *Mulsa* are put in; and that especially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we said before) must be purged by the guts, but the round and outward part of the liuer, must be purged by vrine. Moreover in inflammation of the liuer there is need of an exquisite diet, as *Galen* witnesseth *lib. 13. Therap. method.* The liuer it selfe requireth meate chiefly that can withstand obstructions. Such be all those that be of thinne substance, and which do scoure without gnawing, as is *Ptisan*, *Mulsa*, and such like: Therefore the best food for them that are thus diseased, is *Ptisan* broth wherein *Apium* hath bene sodden. Also you may minister broth of Chicken, wherein Parsley hath bene sodden: but drinke *Mulsa* or Barley broth, or decoction of the tame Endiues. And if that inflammation do beginne to change to suppuration and rotting, then all the aforesaid signes will increase, as paines, feuers, rawings, carefulnesse, and abhorring of meate. Then you must helpe the permutation and rotting, that it may quickly be done, lest other members in continuance of time do rot with it also. Therefore you shall helpe it to rot with this cataplasme: *Rx.* of the roote of *Althea*, \mathfrak{z} j. β . Fenugreeke, and Linseed, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. leaues of *Althea* and Mallowes, ana. *M*. ij. drie Figs, in number vj boile these in water till they waxe soft, then brue them, and make a cataplasme. Neither shall you do amisse, if you apply an emplaister that can helpe it to change into matter, as this is: *Rx.* of Barly meale, and Fenugreeke, ana. \mathfrak{z} iiij. of the roote of *Althea*, \mathfrak{z} j. β . of the roote of white Lillies, \mathfrak{z} j. β . Linseed \mathfrak{z} j. flowers of Cammomill, and Melilot, ana. *M*. β . boile all in water vnto a iust thicknesse, then commixe of oile of Cammomil, \mathfrak{z} of oile of Lillies, \mathfrak{z} j. β . boile them againe, and make an emplaister. Of these said things you may also make a cerote, by putting to them butter, *Labdanum*, Rosin and Waxe. When the suppuration and rotting is fully come to perfection, then the paines do cease, and all the fits do appeare gentler and meeker. In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth increase more againe, therefore then also you must helpe the rupture or breaking

breaking of it, by vsing of Goates dung, and Doves dung, Nettle seed, Mustard seed, and other things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of Polcy, Fumitory, roots of *Chamaedrys*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of honey, or decoction of Cicers, and other like things which haue an absterfing and scouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoide by the veines, you must commize things that do prouoke vrine: as be, *Sisarum*, *Asarum*, *Cassia* and Cinamon. But if it auoide by the belly, commize those things which do purge gently, as be Goates whey, *Tamarinds*, and *Cassia fistularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse clysters made of the decoction of Baile. When cleansing and scouring of it is done, minister medicines which can glutinate and ioyne it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of distemper of the Spleene.

Like as other parts of the bodie haue eight kinds of distempers, so many hath the Spleene, and most often it suffereth cold and moist distemper. Each particular cause is not to be declared here: for there be some causes that be in other distempers of other members of the bodie, therefore you shall seeke them in Galen *ex capitibus* 1. 2. & 3. lib. *De morborum causis*. The surest and shortest signes of distemper of the Spleene are knowen by those things that be eaten and drunken, and by those things which are applyed outwardly vpon the skinned, neare to the left side. For if cold distemper do vex the Spleene, all meates and drinks which do coole notably, do soone and manifestly hurt the Spleene. Also all cold things applyed outwardly do hurt it: and therefore they signifie cold distemper of it: but contrariwise all hote things do ease it. And if the distemper of the Spleene be hote, it is not vexed with cold meats and drinks, or with cold things being applyed outwardly. And if the heat increase, there is not onely no swelling in it, but also it suffereth contraction, and shrinking vp, specially if a feuer be present. But meats and drinks that be hote, and those things that adde heate being applyed outwardly, do increase hote distempers, and make them outrageous. Also all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewise also you may gather the signes of drie distemper, specially when it is not euident, by the proper nature of it for lacke of greatnesse. Also those things that be applyed outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardly, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they do drie vp the Spleene. When the Spleene is vexed with moist distemper, and so continuing awhile, it causeth it to increase so much, that it toucheth both the stomach and the liuer. Also the kind of paine together with these foresaid signes do declare the distemper that vexeth. For in a hote and cold distemper, they haue small paine or none at all, neither haue they any also in a moist distemper: but least of all in a drie distemper. By these foresaid signes, you may make coniecture of compound distempers of the Spleene. For in a manner altogether, when a hote distemper is vehement, a drie distemper followeth. But in so much as humors flowing into the Spleene do cause swelling, you must haue diligent consideration of them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hoter, although there be no feuer present. Also the eyes & the vrine

Cause.

Signes of distemper of the spleene in bare qualities.

Cold distemper

Hot distemper

Drie distemper.

Moist distemper.

Signes of distemper of the spleen through humours.

Choler.**Melancholie.****Flame.****Bloud.****Note.**

Cure of distemper of the bare qualitie of the spleene.
Note.

Cold.**Moist.****Drie.**

Cure of distemper by flowing of a humour.

be coloured by choler: the sicke will alwayes accuse drinckes, and complaine of thirst, and choler troubling his mouth. He abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and desireth cold things, and with all these his tongue is yellowish. He hath Tertian fits, and the manner of the sicke be wrathfull, and they will chafe out of measure. If melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the rest of the body, and he hath vnnaturall appetite to meate, the patient is sad and heauie, and other signes of choler be present with these. Also fits do vex him the fourth day. When a flegmaticke humour floweth into the Spleene, his colour shall be like flame. The sicke doth not thirst, he desireth meate, vnlesse the humour be salt flame: for then the sicke abhorre meate, and be more desirous of drinke, for they are thirstie. Also fits do vex them euery day; and their vrines are white, and they themselues be slow and sluggish. Some of them that haue cold distemper with it, haue a great and a hard Spleene. And if it be a sanguine humour that floweth into the Spleene, it is possible for it to change the colour both of the tongue and of the skinne. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the sicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more sicke then the rest, although they haue not like swelling of the Spleene. The veines of the whole bodie do appeare full of bloud, and the vrine is yellow. These signes we haue declared at large out of *Ætius*, because they are common, and may almost be applyed to all distempers of other members, caused through flowing of humours. Generally distemper of the bare qualitie of the Spleene is almost without swelling. You must cure and correct them both by meates and drinckes, as also by simple medicines and fomentes, oiles and ointments, and such other-like, which be contrarie to the distemper. Therefore you shall heale hote distemper of the Spleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates and drinckes that do coole, and by annointings with oiles of Roses and *Oleum melinum*, & other things which be rehearsed before in the 23. Chapter of this booke. Likewise cold distemper by those things which do moderatly heate. In a moist distemper of the Spleene, besides those things which are rehearsed before in the 23. Chapter, these things do profit: roote of fine leaved Grasse, drie Plantaine, the floure and some of Salt, *Ammoniacum*, iuyce of Willow, and such like, if you make of them an ointment or cerot by putting to sufficient Vineger; such as we will a litle after describe. Also frictions are most conuenient for this, which haue a discussive vertue. Drie distemper of the Spleene is cured by sweete barbes and hote waters, also annointings with sweete oile, and meates moistning without coldnesse, as is Prisan iuyce. If distemper of the Spleene be caused through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be sanguine, you must let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *Lienaris vena*; or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger and the earre finger: then apply both inwardly and outwardly medicines which do adde strength to the Spleene, as is the barke of the roote of Capers, of Harts tongue, *Ceterach*, Maidenhaire, *Ireos*, Calamint, and such like, which also are able to adde strength and abilitie to the liuer: of which we will speake abundantly in the Chapters following. If other humours flow

to the Spleene, first you must auoide the superfluous humours by purging them with medicines; then all the rest of the time you must correct the distemper that is left, and also apply things that strengthen the Spleene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

THe Spleene, like as other members, is vexed with inflammation as oft as *Cause.*
 hote blood doth flow thither vnaturally. It is knowne by heauinesse and *Signa.*
 swelling of the left side, which will not giue place to the feeling; also by paine
 and stretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abun-
 dance of humours do rush in thither, it is knowne by the greatnesse and swift-
 nesse of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vex- *Diet.*
 ed with inflammation of the Spleene, be simple, and giue them those things
 that will easily digest for their meat, as is Pisan iuyce, bread wet in other things
 which be often rehearsed of vs before in the inflammation of the members.
 And if the inflammation endure long, you may also giue them birds flesh, and
 fishes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of *Potus.*
 Cinamon, or waterie wine. Let the cure be begun by cutting of the veine *Curatio.*
 of the Spleene, or the veine which is betweene the little finger and the ring *Vena sectio.*
 finger, if there be no cause to forbid it. Let the belly be often washed with
 clysters, but specially if you may not let him blood. Then lay vpon the Spleene *Clyster.*
 restrictiue medicines, which can appease the furie of that that floweth, and
 keepe the strength of the liuer and Spleene; but yet you may not onely apply
 restrictiue things, but you must commixe with them those things which do
 extenuate, cut, and loosen without euident heate; lest grosse matter be
 stopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be mo-
 derate inflammation, you must apply moist woll wet in wine that is old,
 sharpe and thinne, and mixed with sweete oile. But if there be greater heate,
 take oile of Roses, or *Oleum melinum*, or oile of Cammomill, with Vineger:
 you may commixe them together after this sort. R. oile of Roses and Quin-
 ces, ana. ℥. ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥. j. the best Vineger, ℥. ss. commixe them
 all together for a toment and irrigation. And if the aforesaid oiles be not at *Fomenta.*
 hand, seeth Brier leaues and Quinces in oile, and adde to also some exte-
 nuating things, as is Wormewood and Peniroyall. And you must beware al- *Note.*
 so that you apply nothing vpon the Spleene cold, but whatsoever medicine
 you apply to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After fomentes and irrigations,
 you must passe to cataplasmes: in the making of which you may adde the
 meale of Darnell and Barley, with drie Figges, Linseed, and oile wherein
 Wormewood and Peniroyall be sodden. But you must beware that the place be
 not kept bare after irrigations and cataplasmes, but as soone as those be taken
 away, by and by apply such cerots or emplaisters as be described in the Chap-
 ter of inflammation of the Liuer. For both the liuer and the Spleene require
 one kind of medicines, but the Spleene requireth so much the stronger me-
 dicines, as it is of grosser nourishment. Therefore you shall seeke examples
 of medicines meete for this place out of the Chapter of inflammation of the
 Liuer; obseruing onely this thing, that you alway commixe Vineger and some-

what that is acceptable to the Spleene, and that doth peculiarly defend the strength. And if the inflammation of the Spleene tendeth toward suppuration and rotting, which doth seldom abate, you must helpe to further the suppuration, lest other members putrifie, by cataplasmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue spoken in the inflammation of the Liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardnesse of the Spleene.

Cause.

Signa.

Falsu ratio.

Curatio.

Fomentum.

Fraguentum.

Inflammation of the Spleene, if it be not rightly cured, draweth together a hard swelling of the Spleene. The cause of this disease is a certaine humour which cleaueth stubbornly to the Spleene: but it is when hardnesse ingendreth without inflammation into ouermuch swelling. This euill is easily knowne by touching, of what cause soeuer it be. His diet must be extenuating, therefore he must eate meate which is easie of digestion, and doth ingender good iuice and thinne. He must eschue all hard flesh, which doth ingender grosse iuice, & which doth strue against digestion. He must drinke wine that is thin in substance, yellowish in colour, not very old, and being without all restriction. Also he must put much trust in exercises, which it is good to vie before meate, the bodie not abounding with superfluities. Also it is manifest that vociferation, and crying out opportunely done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill. For the cure, you must vie very strong things aswell outwardly as also inwardly. Therefore within the bodie minister most strong potions, for those they may suffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barks of the rootes of Capers, Harts tongue, the root and herbe of *Tamariscus* sodden in Vineger or *Oximel*. Also iuice of Centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter Lupines taken with Rew and Pepper. *Anagallis* the female, ℞. j. with *Posca* or *Oximel*, profiteth maruellously to drinke it. Also the most conuenient remedie for the hardnesse of the Spleene, is, iron quenched oft in water, or wine, or *Posca*. For that water, or wine, or *Posca*, ministered in the beginning is pleasant and most profitable, and is given many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the fever, minister water or *Posca*: but to them that haue tender flesh, and lacke a fever, minister wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be some instrument that is layd with Steele. Also the scales of iron may profitably be ministered to strong and rude men: for this doth melt the Spleene notably, for it hath a consuming vertue. But yet lest it should hurt the stomacke, it is good to commize with it some strengthening medicines, as is Harts-tongue, toppes of Wormewood, *Cassia*, Anise seed, *Serpillum montanum*, or such other like. Apply outwardly this foment ℞. Centorie, Harts-tongue, Rew, ana. M. j. barke of the roote of Capers, ℥. j. seeth all in Vineger, and when they be sodden, wet a sponge in the decoction, and apply it hote to the Spleene. Moreouer this ointment sheweth a marvellous effect ℞. of the oiles of Capers, Lillies and *Ireas*, ana. ℥. j. marrow of oxes shacks, ℥. ij. musilage of the roote of *Althea*, Fenugreeke, and Linseed, ana. ℥. j. Badgers greafe, Hens greafe, Goose greafe, ana. ℥. ij. the barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, *Costus*, Centory, ana. ℥. j. Gumme Ammoniacke, *Edellium*, *Galbanum*, ana. ℥. ℞. the gummes being first dissolued in Vineger with
Waxe

Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also emplasters and Cerotes *Cerotes.* do profit much, being made after this sort: R^y. of the oiles of Lillies, *Trees*, & of Capers, ana. ʒ. j. Barley meale, Fenugreece, Linseed, ana. ʒ. j. the barke of the roote of Capers, Hartstongue, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. roote of *Alibea*, ʒ. j. *Bdellium*, Ammoniacke, *Galbanum*, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Opoponax*, Mirrhe, Frankensence, ana. ʒ. ʒ. with Rosin, Turpentine, and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Moreover the Physitian must looke diligently to the disease, and as he seeth cause, sometime adde and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie or attenuate, or dissolve, or which adde strength. In conclusion, cupping glasses fastened with scarification, is not a litle profitable.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene.

IT chanceth sometime not onely through weaknesse of the attractive vertue which is in the Spleene, but also through stopping of the passage by which the dreggie humor of Melancholie is deriued from the liuer vnto the Spleene, there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure and naughtie blood is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the bodie is corrupt, and enclineth to blacknesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be knowne by those causes which we spake of in the Chapter of the obstruction of the Liuer. This euil is knowne by heauinesse which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know, specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like afore said. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may finde great plentie rehearsed in the Chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines; but the Spleene hath neede of stronger medicines, for as much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humours, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer; this onely obserued, that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that do adde strength to the Spleene. The humours being prepared, then they must be purged by such medicines as do purge grosse and dreggie humours, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicines both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former Chapter, and in the Chapter of obstruction of the Liuer. For those places will shew you medicines abundantly.

*Cause.**Signa.**Dies.**Cure.**Preparatio humorum.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Iaundeis.

THe Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of *Icterus, aurimelancholy* all ouer the bodie. Sometimes there chanceth shedding of *go, arcualum, choler* to the skin, the liuer being safe, as in the *crisis* of diseases. Many times the *regium.* Iaundeis is caused and doth chance when the blood is corrupted, without a *Cause,* feuer, of some outward occasion, and is made cholericke, as it chanceth by

Signa.

Black humors.

*Cure of Iau-
deis coming
through crisis
of a fever.*

biting of venomous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stung of a Viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of Leekes. Also it may chance that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the Liuer, such corruption of humors may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with palenesse. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead: and also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the Spleene. Also it is caused many times through weakenesse of the bladder that receiveth the choler, which doth not draw, as it was wont to do, the cholericke humor from the Liuer vnto him, and therefore leaueth the blood vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessels whole mouthes are deriued from the gall to the Liuer, and do not therefore draw the cholericke humor. Also many times through obstruction of the passages which go to the bowels. But that we may discern well the causes of the Iaudeis, you must of necessitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholericke deiections do invade, and there be heauinesse in their right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the Liuer: by whose violence the blood is changed into choler, and carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauinesse and grieffe, the euill is engendred onely through hote distemper of the Liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauinesse about the right side, white excrements be auoided, in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come forth without that heauinesse, you may iudge their strength to be weake, either the attractive vertue which fetcheth out the cholericke humor from the Liuer, or weaknesse of the expulsive vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humours be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholie sent to the skinne together with the blood, they be vexed also grievously: for there followeth it sadnesse without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoid blacke vrine, but their dung is like the colour of Coperons or shoemakers bleach, & their wombe is much costive. But those that haue the Iaudeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they do not so much abhorre meates: they auoid white egestions, their vrines be coloured like Saffron, and they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the Iaudeis, there changeth sluggishnes to moue, & a contrary mind to sweet meates. Also itch of the whole body followeth. The whites of the eyes and the parts of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes, do betoken it by their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifie an abundant humour. The Iaudeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis* when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussive oyles, and all things

things that rarifie the skinne, as be, oiles of Cammomill, of Dill, of Ireos, or such like. Also Rosemary sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolve much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that have the Jaundis caused through biting of a venomous beast, are to be cured almost as those be which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we will speake in another place. To those that have the Jaundis through hote distemper of the Liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the Liuer: therefore that which we have rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the Jaundis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiveth the choler, then two speciall remedies must be used; blood-letting & purging. In them therefore that blood doth much abound, together with choler all over the body, & that be troubled with heavines or stretching out about the Liuer or the Spleen, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him blood, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, and that if the Liuer be ill affected: but if the Spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme: you must draw out the blood now and then, lest if you should draw it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited from blood-letting, we may conveniently minister a clyster. For a clyster may well be cast in after blood-letting; for the avoyding out of the dung maketh easie breath: and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humours that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. *R.* of both the Endiues. Horehound, Agrimonic, Maidenhaire. Origin, Wormewood, ana. Mj. seeds of Annise, Fennell, Parcey, Sperage, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. β . Licorice, *Apium*, Fennell, the rootes of them, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. boile them in sufficient water untill the third part: then straine them, and take of the liquor of that decoction, \mathfrak{z} xij. *Cassia fistula*, \mathfrak{z} j. *Hierapicra*, \mathfrak{z} β . *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, \mathfrak{z} ij. oyles of Dill and Ireos, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. β . Salt. \mathfrak{z} j. commixe them all and make a clyster. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: yet so, that the humours be first attenuated, and made thin by broths, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, and pot-herbes prouoking vrine, specially Endiue, Sperage, Louage, Fennell, and such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of Goats. For his sauce Vineger is good wherein *Aristolochia* hath bene steeped. He must abstaine from fruits, but let his banquet be Almonds, a few at once, and a Cicer a little roasted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a little. Wine white and thin, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those that be taught in the Chapter of obstruction of the Liuer, and also in the first booke the eleuenth Chapter. Aboue other, specially *Apium*, Parcey, Maidenhaire, Calamint, Veruaine, roote of Chickweed or Mather, *Aristolochia*, *Serpillum*, S. Johns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being prepared and extenuate, at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the Jaundis: for through the driness of their stomach, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of Rubarbe deleri-

*Of venomous
biting
Cure of Jaun-
dis of hote dis-
temper of the
Liuer or in-
flammation.
Cure of the
Jaundis
through ob-
struction.*

Vena sectio.

Clyster.

Victus ratio.

Purgatio.

Signa.

Black humors.

*Cure of Iau-
deis coming
through crisis
if a fever.*

biting of venomous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stung of a Viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of Leekes. Also it may chance that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the Liuer, such corruption of humors may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with palenesse. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead: and also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the Spleene. Also it is caused many times through weakenesse of the bladder that receiveth the choler, which doth not draw, as it was wont to do, the cholericke humor from the Liuer vnto him, and therefore leaueth the blood vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessels whole mouthes are deriued from the gall to the Liuer, and do not therefore draw the cholericke humor. Also many times through obstruction of the passages which go to the bowels. But that we may discern well the causes of the Iaudeis, you must of necessitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholericke deiections do innade, and there be heauinesse in their right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the Liuer: by whose violence the blood is changed into choler, and carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauinesse and grieffe, the euill is engendred onely through hote distemper of the Liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauinesse about the right side, white excrements be auoided, in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come forth without that heauinesse, you may iudge their strength to be weake, either the attractive vertue which fetcheth out the cholericke humor from the Liuer, or weaknesse of the expulsive vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humours be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholie sent to the skinne together with the blood, they be vexed also grievously: for there followeth it sadnesse without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoid blacke vrine, but their dung is like the colour of Coperons or shoemakers bleach, & their wombe is much costive. But those that haue the Iaudeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they do not so much abhorre meates: they auoid white egestions, their vrines be couloured like Saffron, and they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the Iaudeis, there changeth sluggishnes to moue, & a contrary mind to sweet meates. Also itch of the whole body followeth. The whites of the eyes and the parts of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes, do betoken it by their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifie an abundant humour. The Iaudeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis* when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussive oyles, and all things

things that rarifie the skinne, as be, oiles of Cammomill, of Dill, of Ireos, or such like. Also Rosemary sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolve much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that have the laundeis caused through biting of a venomous beast, are to be cured almost as those be which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we will speake in another place. To those that have the laundeis through hote distemper of the Liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the Liuer: therefore that which we haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the laundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiue the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vied; blood-letting & purging. In them therefore that blood doth much abound, together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines or stretching out about the Liuer or the Spleen, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him blood, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, and that if the Liuer be ill affected: but if the Spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme: you must draw out the blood now and then, lest if you should draw it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited from blood-letting, we may conueniently minister a clyster. For a clyster may well be cast in after blood-letting; for the auoyding out of the dung maketh easie breath: and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humours that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. R^x. of both the Endiues. Horehound, Agrimonic, Maidenhaire. Origin, Wormewood, ana. Mj seeds of Annise, Fennell, Parcey, Sperage, ana. ʒ i. ʒ. Licorice, Apium, Fennell, the rootes of them, ana ʒ. j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them, and take of the liquor of that decoction, ʒ. iiii. Cassia fistula, ʒ. j. Hirapicra, ʒ. ʒ. Electuarium de succo Rosarum, ʒ. ij. oyles of Dill and Ireos, ana ʒ. j. Salt. ʒ. j. commixe them all and make a clyster. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: yet so, that the humours be first attenuated, and made thin by broths, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, and pot-herbes prouoking vrine, specially Endiue, Sperage, Louage, Fennell, and such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of Goats. For his sauce Vineger is good wherein Aristolochia hath bene steeped. He must abstaine from fruits, but let his banquet be Almonds, a few at once, and a Cicer a little tosted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a little. Wine white and thin, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those that be taught in the Chapter of obstruction of the Liuer, and also in the first booke the eleuenth Chapter. Aboue other, specially Apium, Parcey, Maidenhaire, Calamint, Veruaine, roote of Chickweed or Mather, Aristolochia, Serpillum, S. Johns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being prepared and extenuate, at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the laundeis: for through the drinesse of their stomack, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of Rubarbe deleri-

*Of venomous
biting*

*Cure of laun-
deis of hote di-
stemper of the
Liuer or in-
flammation.
Cure of the
laundeis
through ob-
struction.*

Vena sectio.

Clyster.

Victus ratio.

Purgatio.

bed in the first booke the 11. Chapter. Also *Hierapicra*, *Electarium de succo Raserum*, *de Psyllio* and *Diaphanicon*. And if you profit him nothing with the first purgation, you must returne againe to those things which haue vertue to take away obstructions & stopping: & after three dayes you must purge him more vehemently againe. If the laundeis be engendred through disease of the Spleen, you must turne to the Chapter of Melancholiousnesse, and the Chapter of obstruction of the liuer. The bellie being purged, you must againe minister medicines which do purge the intrails. For which purpose the roote of *Cyclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrails, but also it is most meete to shut out the choler by sweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you must helpe the exclusion of the sweat by couerings, and warmings in bed. You may giue of it, ℥. ij. or iij. with *Aqua mulsca*. Also iuyce of the barke of Radish doth notably well, if it be mixed with sweet wine vnalaied, or *Vinum mulsu*, so that ℥. ij. of the iuyce be tempered with ℥. j. of wine. Also earthwormes drie, giuen three dayes with *Vinum mulsu*, do send out the laundeis by the vrine. Also you may giue very profitably iuyce of Endiue and Succorie to them that haue feuers, by it selfe, and to them that lacke feuers, with wine. Also iuyce of *Cuscuta* profiteth maruellously. Also Cammomill is most profitable, which is called *Leucanthemus*, and also *Euphthalmum*. But all the medicines ministred in drinke, let them be ministred in a bath, if it can be, when the patient sitteth in a great hot vessell. Also you must be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet that recomforteth and refresheth strength, by the which the vertue expulsive may be repaired: and if any member be hurt, let it be strengthened, and let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Also it is good for him to vse exercises, gestations, annointings and sweating out. For this purpose drie hote houses are good: in the which annoint the body with oile wherein *Serpillum* or Rosemary hath bene sodden. And if any of the laundeis be left about the face and the eyes, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoyding after his accustomed manner, you must vse infusions into the nose: for which purpose iuyce of *Cyclaminum* is powred in, also *Nigella* with Vineger, iuyce of the roote of Beetes and *Anagallis*. Also let the sicke, sitting in a bath, draw into his nostrils very sharpe Vineger, and let him keepe it a while, pressing his nostrils together, and it will purge maruellously.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill state of the bodie.

nausea.

Cause.

Signa.

C*Achexia* in Greeke is nothing elie but an euill and naughtie state and disposition of the body. For it is in such case that it is spread abroad in wantonnesse, and all the whole body is loose and waxeth soft. This disease for the most part is engendred of a long sicknesse. Also it followeth when some intraille is hardened, specially after the hardnesse of the liuer and the spleene. Also it chanceth often in a continuall *Dysenteria* & the disease called *Cæliacus morbus*. Also through letting of some accustomed excretion. The whole body is made whitish and weake, so that his legges are scarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digestions be letted, his appetite remaining still: but afterward

ward there followeth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is seldome and weake. Also their bellie sendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are specially taken with this disease, which do soone perish through weaknesse of the vitall facultie, and because the iuyce doth breath out of them readily through thinnesse of the skin. But they that be full of age, do seldome fall into this disease, and do soone get it away againe. If this disease do endure long, it turneth into the Dropsie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. Let his diet be altogether thinne and drie: therefore let their meates be simple, and which will easily digest, and that can ingender the best blond. Let them eschue all fruits also that ingender grosse and viscous humours, and that be hard to digest. Wine is good for them, which is white, thin, and odouriferous. For the cure, if the disease happen by letting of accustomed excretion, you must stirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therefore you must vse blood-letting, if nothing do let it, which you must draw out by little and little at sundry times, vnto the third or fourth day, in them that fell into this disease through retention of the Hemorrhoids or menstruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of viscous humors, blood-letting is hurtfull. Therefore rather purge them with some conuenient purgation. The body being purged, let him vse chiefly waters that spring by themselves of Alume, & Salt-peter, & afterwards sulphurous waters. Also let them exercise diuerse deambulations, gestations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exercises. After let them vse annointings with oyle, wherein is put somewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *Nitrum* and Salts. To cure the wearinesse, apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Also a potion of Wormewood helpeth them maruallously, and *Drapaces* applyed. Also if the liuer be affected, or some other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before prescribed. If the euill turne into the Dropsie, you shall find it next.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropsie.

There be three kinds of Dropsie. The first is called in Greeke, *Ascites*: the second *Tympanites*: and the third *Anasarca*, *Hyposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leucoplegmatia*. *Ascites*, is when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *Peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites*, is when much windinesse and superfluous breath is gathered in the aforesaid places of the bellie. *Anasarca*, is when the humour is disperfed throughout the whole body, that all the flesh appeareth altogether moist and wet like a sponge or paper. The Dropsie is caused through great coldnesse of the liuer, or through other parts very notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the same affect. The liuer is affected by the spleene being cold, and by the stomach and the bowels, also by the lungs, the reines and the midriffe. Also it chanceth through vameasurabable auoyding of the Hemorrhoids, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menstruis, or through some other great affection of the wombe. For in all these the liuer hath no vnnaturall swelling, and yet the bodie is taken with the Dropsie, onely through refrigeration of the liuer, affected in the beginning. But afterward sometime it also waxeth hard, which

Ascites.

Tympanites.

Anasarca.

Cause.

Signa.

Diet.

Panu.

Poino.

Exercitatio.

is euident to be seene in them which through vtinely drinking of cold water haue their Liuer cooled on heapes, so that the Dropfie followeth by and by, before the Liuer be lifted vp into a knotty swelling. Many haue fallen into the Dropfie after the gout, and through the vexing paine of the huckle bones. Most commonly those which feeble not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the laundeis, the Dropfie followeth it. And it followeth *Cæliacus morbum*; and *Dysenteria*. Commonly euery Dropfie causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtie colour. Also they abhorre meate, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also for the most part there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the Dropfie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the Dropfie *Anasarca*. Among the laid three kinds of Dropfies, *Tympanites* is the most perillous: *Ascites* lesse perillous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of Dropfies, that their meate be easie of digestion and sufficiently coact and drie. For that meate that is loose and moist, is apt to be turned into waterinesse. Therefore let his bread be very well baked, and let it haue Salt, *Ammi*, Fennell, Annise, or Commin commixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauented, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of birds the driest are good, as Partriches, Turtles, Blackbirds, Thrushes, and such like. Of foure footed beasts, Goats and Hares. Also Chickens, their extreme parts, when they are roasted. Of fishes, Crabs of flouds. Also Egges roasted are good. Let him vse pot-herbes but seldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and beate: as is *Apium* Parcely, *Daucus*, Rucker, Peniroyall, Coleworts, Garlicke sodden, Onions and Leeks. He must altogether abstaine from Pulses. For sauce, let him vse Vineger with Pepper, Cinamon & such like. Let their salt be compound with Fennell, Hylope, Rosemary, and *Apium*. You must giue them so much drinke onely as shall suffice somewhat to break their thirst: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage them that be sicke of the Dropfie without measure. They must drinke thin wine, and that doth prouoke wine. But they must eschue sweete wines and *Mulsu*: Vineger doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreouer let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschue much fruits and second tables: yet Nuts, Almonds, Pomegranates, Peares sodden, and drie Figs, are to be giuen vnto them, but let them take all those moderately, and not euery day. Let not their bed be very soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them drie herbs, as be Peniroyall, Calamint, Origan, and such like: for it is marvellous how much those do drie vp while they sleepe: so that it hath bene proued, that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheate, haue risen againe after sleepe strong and safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer & a faire day; but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houles being warmed, and nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, and to be caried hither and thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feet, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also the patient must be wrapped in skinner dried with the Sunne, or digged into hole

hote land. After exercises wipe off the sweate with sharpe linnen clothes. Also it is verie good if you vse daily thrice or foure times frictions: for this doth open the passages that are shur, and dryeth vp, extenuateth and casteth alunder humours. Therefore it doth very quickly prouoke forth much sweate, and constraineth the flesh. They must be rubbed with drie hands, or with Salt beaten in water, or hote oile. After this they must be washed with Alumewater, or Sulphure water, or salt water. For many which haue bene taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*, and haue vied such kinds of bathes, they haue sufficed to weare out the disease, and also to make a stronger state of the bodie. And hitherto, we haue rehearsed a common diet for all kind of Dropsies. For the cure, *Curatio*, the remedie that is common for all Dropsies, is, that by and by in the beginning you must purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do both by blood letting, and by purgations, and by those medicines that prouoke urine. That which is good particularly for this or that kinde, we will teach in the Chapters following, in which we will follow the cures of them euery one particularly.

CHAP. XXXIII. Of the Dropsie *Anasarca*.

IN the Dropsie *Anasarca*, all the whole bodie and the flesh appeareth loose *Signa*, and wet like a sponge, as it is said: so that all the whole bodie swelleth vp, and is like a dead bodie. In this disease you must beginne the cure with letting of blood, specially if the euill be engendred of suppression of hemorrhoids or menstruis, and if age & strength will suffer. For by this meanes the abundance of humours that do hurt, are drawne out, and the feeble nature, being vnloaden is swifter, and the cause of the disease is minished, and also health commeth againe with lesse labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out and purged by blood letting, you must come to the remedie of *Purgatio*, purging medicines. But if there be need of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulsion, you shall minister decoctions & other things which be recheard before in the Chapters of weakenesse of the Liuer, and obstruction of the Liuer. For which purpose minister also sirupes of Wormwood, of tame Endiue with the broad-leaues, of Agrimonie and *Bizantia*. Let the purging medicines be of simples, Rubarbe and Agaricke; of compounds, pills of Rubarbe, *pilula de Hiera simplicis*, and pilles of Agaricke, and such like. Also *Hierapicra* is good in the beginning, because it taketh away obstruction, and addeth strength to the intrails. Therefore you must onely beware that you minister not purging medicines that be strong, and which adde no strength to the Liuer: but you must bring forth the hurtfull humour with easie medicines by litle and litle. For if you purge but once, & on heapes, you destroy the strength maruellously, and boole the Liuer. Therefore euery weeke you must make the wombe soluble, and you must alwayes passe from gentle remedies by litle and litle to the stronger. Therefore in this kind of Dropsie the antidotes *Diaphanicon* & *Electuariū Nidum*, be good. Also the roote of Elder sodden in wine doth purge notably. Also the roote of Walwort profiteeth, for they be both of eneuening. Moreover the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth from

Tritura.

Alia.

Cataplasmata

Fargmentum.

purging medicines; you must minister those things that adde strength to the liver, wherof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obstruction and weaknesse of the liver. Also minister those things which prouoke urine. For which purpose you may well minister *Diarrhodon abbatu*, *aromaticum Rosarum*, *Dialacca*, *diacurcuma*, trochisks of Agrimony, of Rubarbe, of Wormwood, *Theriaca*, and such like. And this medicine profiteth notably. R^x the powders of *Diacurcuma*, and of *Dialacca*, ana. ℥. j. powders of *Diarrhodon* *santon*, and *Diarrhodon abbatu*, ana. ℥. j. powder of *aromaticum Rosarum*, ℥. j. Rubarbe chosen, ℥. j. seeds of Endive, with the broad leaues of Melons, and of Fenell, ana. ℥. ij. of Wormewood, Cammomill, and Withwind, ana. ℥. j. of Nutmegs, Squinant, and Spikenard, ana. ℥. j. of very white Sugar, ℥. j. commix them together, and make a powder. Also this profiteth maruellously. R^x seeds of Caraway, Fennell, and Annise, ana. ℥. ij. seeds of Comin, and S. Iohn wort, ana. ℥. j. seeds of *Ammeos*, *Parcelu*, *Daucus*, & Louage, ana. ℥. j. the roote of Ireos, and of *Asarum*, ana. ℥. j. Wormewood. ℥. j. of Licorice, ℥. j. Sugar the weight of all the rest, commix them all, and make a powder. And you must do your diligence that in *Anasarea* the medicines be more drie then moist, because the whole state of the bodie is so waterie. Moreover you must apply those medicines outwardly which can drie vp humours, as be cataplasmes, emplasters, ointments, and other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplasme is good made of Barley & Beane meale, of Fenugreeke, of the roote of Walwort, of Laurell berries, of Wormewood, and of Origan sodden in Wine, and laid ouer all the whole bodie. Also Oxes doung conueniently dried, may well be applyed with *Pesca* or *Oximet*, hauing the fourth part of Brimstone put to it. Also fresh Cheese hauing much Creame being laid to, maketh wel against all swelling parts. Moreover Doves doung, and Goates doung, Mayweed, and Cammomill, by euen portions bruised, sodden in Vineger and Honey, may be apphed. Moreover you must vse emplasters of Leauen, drie Figges, *Nitrum*, Ireos, Melilot, Sage, Penitroiall, *Cardanommum*, *Sulphur viuum*, Laurell berries, Stanesacre, salt Armoniacke, Masticke, Frankensence, Sothernwood, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Doves doung, make it vp with *Oximet*. But you must altogether eschue fat and rozeny Cerdis, for they engender windinesse, and cause swellings. But yet the legs and the hands and other parts of the bodie being swollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne or by the fire. R^x of *unguentum Agrippe*, ℥. j. of the meales of Lineseede, Fenugreeke, Beanes and Barley, ana. ℥. ij. seeds of *Althea*, *Nigella*, *Daucus*, ana. ℥. j. *Sulphur viuum*, ℥. ij. Bole armoniacke, ℥. ij. roote of Ireos ℥. ij. *rock Alum*, Frankensence, ana. ℥. j. *Euphorbium*, ℥. j. oyles of Ireos, white Lillies, and Cammomill, ana. ℥. j. with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the swollen parts very often, it being melted on the coles. For his diet, you must seeke it in the former Chapter of the Dropie.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Dropie *Ascites*.

IN the Dropie *Ascites* all the whole belly is swollen vp, and if it be stricken, there is heard such a sound as a bottell doth make that is not full of water

water, but the other parts of the body, specially the vpper parts, are not puffed vp nor swollen. Let his diet that hath this Dropfie, be of birds of mountaines, *Diet.* and other meates easie of digestion, and which do ingender good iuyce, as is said before in the thirtie two Chapter. The cure must be begunne by vsing *Cure.* of purging medicines. Let them be such as we rehearsed in the former Chapter. Coleworts of the Sea, called *Soldana* and *Soldanella* taken in drinke, excheleth all the rest: for this sheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hydropike water, so that many by the onely vsing of it, haue bene restored to health. Giue of it in Wine or Whey, \mathfrak{z} ij. or more, or lesse, according to the diuersitie of the bodie. Also pilles of *Sagapenum* are verie good: and two drachmes or three of the iuyce of the roote of *Iress*, putting to it, \mathfrak{z} j. of Sugar. Also you must minister sharpe clysters, vlesse the bellic be soluble of it selfe: for then it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this clyster is *Clyster.* specially commended. *Rx.* flowers of Lawrell, \mathfrak{z} ij. roote of Polipodie, Agarricke, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. β . Dodder, or *Cuscuta*, \mathfrak{z} iij. seeth them in wine or water vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, \mathfrak{lb} i. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, \mathfrak{z} β . of *Electuarium nidum*, \mathfrak{z} ij. β . *Mel rosarum*, \mathfrak{z} j. oyles of Rew, Cammomill and *Ireus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. salt Gemme, \mathfrak{z} j. β . commixe them al, and make a clyster. For the same purpose, if you thinke good, you may seeth *Colocynthis*, *Carranus*, Laurell berries, Anise seed, Ammi, and Caraway seeds, Rew, roote of wild Cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the aforesaid remedies you must lay vpon the whole belly some of the prescribed cataplastmes and emplaisters. Also apply ointments and remedies that prouoke vrine and sweate: and let him vse exercises, of the which we haue spoken abundantly before.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Dropfie Tympanites.

IN this kind of Dropfie the belly is puffed vp and stretched out: and being *Signa.* stricken, it maketh a noise like a tabour or timbrell, but the other parts of the bodie waxe leane. It requirerh like diet that the other kinds of Dropfies haue: *Villna ratio.* but in this all windie things are specially to be auoided. Also let their exercises be much; and great thirst doth helpe and succour the patient strongly. Let the cure be begun with purging medicines, whereof you shall finde examples *Curatio.* before. Also it is good to cast in clysters which haue vertue to dissolue and *Clyster.* discusse wind, as this is. *Rx.* rootes of *Apium*, and Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. seeds of Anise, Fennell, *Daucus*, Louage, Parsley and Comin, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. Caraway seede, \mathfrak{z} iij. Rew, *Asarum*, leaues of Walwort, Mehlot, ana. \mathfrak{M} j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained, \mathfrak{z} xij. *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . *Electuarium de bacca Lauri*, \mathfrak{z} iij. oyles of Rew and Dill, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. β . Salt, \mathfrak{z} j. β . commixe them together and make a clyster. You must giue also vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you must vse as well inwardly as outwardly those things that dissolue and discusse windinesse, whereof you finde plentie in the Chapter of the Cholick. The belly must daily be nourished with *Panicum*, *Milium*, Salt, Branne, leaues of Rew, Cammomill flowers, hore ashes sewed in

Sacculi.
Ceratum.

bags. Also you may apply to it this cerote. *R.* flowers of Camemill and Melilot, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . Mints, Savorie, *Asarum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. seeds of Annise, Fennell, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Cardamomum*, \mathfrak{z} . β . Minthe, *Castoreum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. oyle of Rew, \mathfrak{z} . iij. oyle of Dill, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . Rosin and Waxe, as much as is sufficient make a cerote. Moreover, cupping glasses fastened often to the whole belly lightly and with much flame do marvellously profit. Afterward the belly must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long untill it be red, inwardly he must use Antidotes, *Dianisum*, *Diacuminum*, and *Electuarium à bacchi Lauri*, or these Lozenges, *R.* of the powder of *Dianisum* and *Diacuminum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. the powders of the Antidote of Laurell berries, \mathfrak{z} . j. the powder of *Diagalange*, \mathfrak{z} . β . seeds of Annise, Carawayes, *Daucus*, and Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . leaues of Rew, seeds of *Apium* and Louage, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Sugar, \mathfrak{z} . vj. dissolue it in the distilled waters of Fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the Chapter of the Cholicke.

Lozenges.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of reines that send forth bloudie urine.

Cause.

MAny times there happeneth a disease of the reines, through the which thin wheyish bloud is pissed It is caused through weakenesse of the reines, which be not therefore able to deuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *Vena cava* vnto the reines. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud of the reines, and other grosse matter. Also sometimes the reines do send out bloud likewise as they are wont in the Hemorrhoids. Moreover some do void out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue list vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Sometime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines by sharpe humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weakenesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out very wheyish: but if it be through amplitude and largenesse of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuits, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chance through breaking of a veine, then the bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent forth by little and little, and paine doth vexe the reines. Therefore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine which is caused through weakenesse of the reines, or amplitude of the vessels that straine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and restrictive meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are rehearsed in the Chapter of spitting of bloud. You must abstaine from those things specially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke, besides those things that are rehearsed in the Chapter aforesaid, minister decoction of the roote of Comfery, and *Tragacantha* ministred that is steeped in blacke wine, is good. Also \mathfrak{z} . j. of Harts horne with wine: iuyce of Marigolds doth stop bruifings out of bloud from the reines. Likewise leaues of Willow brayed with wine, *lapi Hematidis*, \mathfrak{z} . j. roote of white Thorne, and decoction

Signa.

*Cure of bloudy
vrine by
weakenesse of
the reines.*

of Knotgrasse. Moreover, ʒj. of Bolearmoniacke ministred is good. Syrupes of Roses and Mirrles, Trochisks of Amber, of *terra Lemnia*, and of *Spodium*. Moreover sheepes Milke is onely praised, being ministred fasting, ʒ.iiij. with ʒ. j. of Bolearmoniacke commixed with it. Apply outwardly to the reines and the loines those things which be described against spitting of blood, and in the Chapter of *Dysenteria*, and other eruptions of blood: and whatsoever can together with his restraining and drying, adde strength also: as be leaues of Brier and Oke, Mast, Mirtle berries, Pomgranate rindes, *Balaustia*, and such like. After this the state of the bodie must be refreshed and restored with meats of good iuyce, with milke and flesh of birds, and with Swans flesh that is leane; that thereby the whole bodie may be brought to his former strength, and the reines being strengthened also, they may fulfill their owne proper office, and that they may deuide and straine out the wheish humour from the blood. But if the reines do send out blood according to the circuits, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of sharpe humours flowing from above, then by & by you must cut a veine of the same side of the arme. To those that send out by blood circuits, let them blood a litle before the circuit, but let the other blood by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the blood, that his pulling backe and auersion may be done by litle and litle. Let the places about the reines be couered with sponges wet in *Posea*, or moist wooll, with oile of Roses and Vineger. After this apply ointments, emplasters, & cerotes described in the places before rehearsed. Also a cupping glasse may commodiously be applyed, specially if you suspect inflammation to be present in them which pisse blood through breaking of a veine. Also pctions are good rehearsed before in the Chap. of spitting of blood. In the meane season also the sicke must be driuen from all salt and sharpe things. But when excretion of blood ceaseth, he must vse a diet that doth not ingender much blood, specially in those that void out blood by circuit. Also the vpper parts of the body must continually be exercised. In those which pisse blood through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you shall cure them after the blood is stopped by those things that are spoken of in the Chapter of the exulceration of the reines.

Cure of bloody urine coming through circuits, or breaking of a veine, or gnawing.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

THE reines are vexed with inflammation for diuerse causes. For both *Cause*.
corrupt humours, and stripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medicines, do ingender inflammation of the reines, and specially continuall and vehement ridings. There cometh to the sicke a beating paine behinde about the first ioynt of the backe, a litle about the bastard ribs: but the paine stretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, specially the right side rein being vexed; but downeward vnto the bladder and priuie members, and the loines and hips, and also to the share and thighs. Also there followeth astonishment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be stretched outright, nor he cannot go on his feet. And whether sneezing or any other concussion do chance, they are vexed with most vehement paine, their extreme parts be cold, and most the *Signa*.

calles of the legs, and the feete. There is present difficultie in making of water, and they pisse continually and painfully. In the beginning their urine is thinne and waterie, hauing no residence in it: but the inflammation waxing worse, it is more rubicund. Also afterward it is grosse and filthie, and there be vehement feuers present. And if the inflammation increaseth still, all these signes waxe more vehement. To these cometh disposition to vomite, and gnawing of the stomacke, and vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed and sweat vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is stopped, so that they are puffed vp with wind, and do send out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meat, and to some there are continuall exacerbations, but to some betwene whiles. And generally, egestion of the wombe, & much excretion of urine do go before those paines. The sicke must lye in a very soft bed: and the first day he must abstaine from meat, but you may not extend his fasting to many dayes: for the vrines being made more pure and sharpe by fasting, do vexe with most vehement biting and gnawing. Therefore in the beginning you must nourish them with thin souplings that do ease and cease gnawing & biting, as is broth of Pisan, or *Alica* of Barley. Also Mallows for his potherbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water wherein a litle Cinnamon hath bene sodden. To be short, let his diet be thin, and such as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you must by and by let him blood, and you must cut the veine that is in the hamme, or in the ankles, and that must be done on the leg that is right against the reine that is vexed. Also sometime (as *Galen* saith) you must let blood of the arme (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of blood is present. After blood letting you must come to outward medicines, as cataplasmes, fomentes, liniments, emplaisters, & such like which haue vertue to coole meanly, and to ease paine, made of oyles of Roses, Quinces and Cammomill, of Barley meale, Beans meale, Fenugreeke, Linseed, and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapters of inflammation of the Liuer and the spleene. And if the paine be not eased by those things that be applyed outwardly, apply a cupping glasse to the loines and the guts, and scarification being made, you must draw out much blood. Then you must vse nourishment of sponges, and other things which can ease paine. You must onely beware all this time, that you giue not such medicines to drinke as prouoke urine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humours to the inflamed parts. This medicine I haue proued to be singularly good R^x the iuyce of Clary, and the iuyce of Nightshade, ana. ℥. ij. drunke in ℥. vj. of stale Ale morning and euening vj. dayes together. Also you must beware in the beginning of the inflammation of purging medicines. But yet you may vse soft clysters (pecially if the belly be soft) made of the decoction of Mallows, or Linseed, and Fenugreeke, or Pisan broth, putting to it oyle of Violets, or Cammomill oyle. But you must beware you put not in great abundance of it, for then the bowels being filled and stretched out with it, will presse together the reines. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceased and concoct, which you may know by the ceasing of the paine, then also you may purge him by medicines that prouoke urine. For after inflammations concoct and digest, the urine cometh forth much

Vitæ ratio.

Cyratio.

Localia.

Notæ.

much in quantitie and grosse, and in those that haue residence, it is good, and so iudged the best altogether. What medicines prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the 7. Booke of making of medicines, in the 7. Chap. specially among pot-herbs, Fennell, *Apium*, & Parcelly well iodden, are good And if by the aforesaid medicines the inflammation be not druen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauinesse do rest by vsing of the aforesaid things, and also if difficultie of pissing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vex the patient, these betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as swiftly as you can, you must helpe the suppuration and breaking out of the matter. For the which purpose, a Sponge continually wet in water and oile, applied in stead of a foment, profiteth. For the same purpose also we vie cataplasmes which are made of Barley meale, Bran, Figs, *Althaa*, and such like rehearsed before in the Chapter of inflammation of the Liuer. Also it profiteth greatly to descend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as Mallowes, *Althaa*, Linseed, Fenugreeke. And if after perfect suppuration, the rupture & breaking be delayed and taried (which you may know if the feuers and pains waxe lesse, & sense of heauinesse remaine about the reine that is affected) minister those things in drinke which prouoke vrine, as is, decoction of Fennell, Penitronall, Origan, and such like: for these sometime do breake the suppuration, and purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vsing of them do profit nothing, you must wash the belly with sharpe clysters: as with root of wild Cucumber iodden & allaied, or decoction of Garlike or Radish. You must steepe those in Brine, and commixe a litle oile, whereby they may be made slippery to be powred in. These must be throwne in with a clyster pipe, & the sicke must be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that suppuration, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Also if the rupture and breaking tarry, Comin with wine called *Passum*, helpeth, and Rew with *Vinum mulsum*. Moreouer, the rupture being made, litle peeces of flesh being long are sent out with the vrine. And if the vicers be malignant, there be sent out humours stinking, swart, and slimie: but if they be benigne and gentle, the matter that is pissed forth, is white, equal, light, and without grievous saour, and litle in quantitie After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, minister Milke with Hony, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the Chapter of vlcers of the reines.

Signa suppurationis.

Signa perfecta suppurationis.

Signa rupture facta.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the Stone in the Reines.

THE Stone of the Reines happeneth oftener to men of perfect age then to children The cause of ingendering of such stones is continuall crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, whereby abundance of grosse and earthly humours is heaped vp together, and burning or fierie heate about the reines parcheth the humours, and knits them together, and hardeneth them into a stone. The stones be in the reines, nigh their ventricles, either little or great, and sometime smaller, sometime many, differing among themselves in greatnesse, figure, colour, and sharpnes: for they are found blacke, whitish and pale. There changeth to the sicke grievous paine in the reines, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thrust in, and yet there appeareth no swelling without. He can turne his backe-bone hardly. The leg that is right against the reine that is diseased, is astonied,

Cause.

Differences of stones.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.
Purgatio.

Clyster.

Note.

Unguentum.

Injections.

Cataplasmata.

there is present abhorring of meate & vomiting. About the beginning of ob-
turation and stopping, the vrine is pissed forth litle in quantitie and waterie.
Afterward there followeth perfect suppression of the vrine, and the wombe a-
uoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go the stoole. Sometime
there is auoided forth bloud, through the violence of the stones, specially if they
be sharpe stones. Also the vrine hath grauelly residence, specially when the stone
is remoued from the reines; which signes aforesaid Hippocrates declareth in lib.
6. Epid. par. I. Aphor. 5. Moreover things that be light and round, are easily sent
out: but not so, if they be of any other forme or fashion: but specially if they
be long and sharpe, they are hard to be sent out. When the stone, stopped in
the reines, doth cause most vehement paines, lest abundance of bloud through
the greatnesse of the paine should come downe together to the member dis-
eased, in a bodie that is full of humours and strong you must by and by cut the
veine in the ham of that leg that is astonied, and is right against the reine that is
diseased. But in those that labour of ill digestion or vicious humours, purging
of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted
except some other thing do forbid them: which also Hippocrates biddeth, while
he teacheth that yong men should be purged with Hellebore. Also if it be not
lawfull to let bloud, nor to minister purgation, you must wash the wombe by
ministring of clysters, which you must do at that time specially when there is
great plenty of excrements in the bowels. But you must only beware that they
be not strong clysters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other
places to the bowels, lest the passages of the vrine should be streightened and
pressed together: but let them be such as are onely able to auoide the excre-
ments contained in the bowels, as is this clyster. R. Mallowes, *Althea*, Mercury,
Maidenhair, Parietarie, ana. M. j. water Cresses, M. j. seeds of Pareely, *Apium*,
Fennell, and Flaxe, ana. ℥. iij. root of Gladdon, ℥. j. Bran, ℥. j. boile them in iust
quantitie of water vnto the third part, & then take of the liquor of that deco-
ction being strained, ℥. xj. of *Cassia fistula*, ℥. j. of *Hierapicra*, ℥. j. *mel Rosarum*
strained, ℥. j. oiles of Dill, Rew, and Cammomill, ana. ℥. j. Salt, ℥. ij. commixe
them all & make a clyster. But we may in no case vie continuall clysters, & neg-
lect almost all other remedies, as many Physitians do now adayes, but vse them
twise or thrise, & so, that they be not kept aboue their accustomed time. For if
they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cause pressing together, and
streightnes of the reins, & the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged
and emptied of excrements, you must minister those medicines which can loo-
sen the conduits and passages; for which purpose the region of the reines and
the loines must be annointed with this medicine R. oiles of Dill, and of sweet
Almonds, ana. ℥. ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥. j. Hens grease, & Goose grease, an.
℥. ij. Butter without salt, ℥. j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a soft oint-
ment. Also he must vse injections of the decoctions of Calamint, Origan, wa-
ter Cresses, Coleworts, leaues of *Althea*, Mallows & such like, or the sicke must
often be let downe into a great vessell of warme sweet water. Also fomentis of
Bran, with leaues of *Althea* sodden, being applied to the grieved place, be
very good. Also cataplasmes made of Wheate meale, of Linseede, and Fenu-
greeke, of Lupines, of the root of dog Fennell beaten very small, and of Cam-
momill

momill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine called *Passum* about the loines and the belly. Neither shall he do rashly which applyeth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed, to the bladder and the share. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another before the first coole: for cold doth draw together and bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines and in the conduits of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it, that it coole not; for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these driue not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those things which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: Gladdon, S. Johns wort, Parcelly, *Orcoselinum*, Grommell, *Ammi*, seed of *Daucus* and Fennell, *Asarum*, roote of Brionie and Mather, barke of the roote of Capers, Sperage, and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is, roote of Peucedane, or dog Fennell, Briony, *Apium*, and *Radicula*. Also commixe with them those things that breake and teare the stone in the reines, as is, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, *Edellium*, Tutlan seed, *Bruscus* root, Saxifrage, Betonie, roote of *Damosanium*, broth of Cicers, roote of Cipresse, Grommell, *lapis Iudaicus*, *Xanthium*, the seed and roote of *Althea*, gumme of Plum-tree, earth Wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the Sea. Every one of these part of them sodden, and part of them very finely powdred, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone, at that time when the vehement paines be released, which chanceth when the stone is remoued and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschue much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great abundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and loosen the reines, and the conduits of the vrine, with fomentis, cataplasmes and infessions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clysters, lest the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a litle released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subtilly fastened to, if inflammation do not let it: for oftentimes cupping glasses do so remoue on heapes those stones that they cease the paines by and by, that is, the stones being carried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten the cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priue members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduits of the vrine. Moreouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine, as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must go about to let the sicke lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright and haue the ioynts of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by all the meanes that you can inuent you may make the stone to fall out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickly: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe,

*Preseruation
from the stone.*

*Powder a-
gainst the
stone of the
reines.*

and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profit nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *Catheter*, which is apt to draw out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the breadth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it stayeth about the middle passage of the yard, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must per wre hot water by little and little, from the furthest parts of the yard, or you must put the yard in hote oyle, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some decoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawne is wont to fall out. But when you cannot draw him out this way neither, you must cut the yard aboue with a litle wound, about the bignesse of an Akorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yard; for almost alwayes it turneth into a *Fistula*, and afterward the vrine cometh out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone. The greatest thing to auoid ingendring of the stone, is to vse meates of good iuyce, easie of digestion, and moderate. Therefore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but little all kind of Pulse, and of corne: also Cheese, Milke, and the meates that are made of them. Moreover, blacke wine, and plentie of flesh, and generally all things of good iuyce, and that be ouer hote and sharpe. You must admonish them whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often alter supper, and that they drinke Wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if blood seeme to abound, let them cut a veine: or if vicious humours be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine agreeing to their temperament. Also their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure and strained. Also let their wine be thin and white, and not very old, for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily Parfeneps very well sodden, Fennell, *Sium*, Peniroyall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of most effect: R^x. of the roots of Fennell, *Sperage* and *Filipendula*, ana. ʒ. j. rootes of Mather, ʒ. j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Althea*, ana. ʒ. j. Licorice scraped, ʒ. ij. the stones of sea Sponges, and *lapis Iudaicus*, ana. ʒ. j. seeds of *Ammeos*, *Daucus*, Parcely, Saxifrage, Fennell, Annise, Grommell, ana. ʒ. ʒ. seeds of Melons, and Citrons pilled, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. seed of *Alkakengi*: ʒ. ʒ. Pellitory of the wall, Mallowes, ana. ʒ. j. Pahioll mountaine, Maidenhaire, Peniroyall, *Asarum*, ana. ʒ. ʒ. of the bloud of a male Goat dried and prepared, ʒ. j. *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacke*, ana. ʒ. ʒ. of Crabs eyes, Cinamen chosen, and Squinant, ana. ʒ. ij. beate all, and bring them into a most fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreover the preparing of the Goats bloud aforesaid is taught of *Aetius*, lib. II. cap. 12. Other remedies we will speake of in the Chapter of the stone in the bladder.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of unmeasurable Pissing.

DIABETES is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst: *Diabetes quid*
 And alio whatsoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken it is pissed out againe. *Causa.*
 This disease is ingendred of weaknesse of the retentive vertue of the reines:
 but there is such strength of the attractiue vertue, that it sucketh the whole bo-
 die through immoderate heate. There followeth to the sicke a stubburne *Signa.*
 thirst, neither are they filled by ministring any kind of liquor. Therefore they
 are constrained to drinke continually, because that which is drunke goeth out
 so swiftly by the vrine againe. Also the bowels of the sicke seeme to burne, the
 loynes swell vp. and the stones and hanches also. And if yet more gnawing
 heate be increased in the bowels, the stomach is wrinkled, and the veines in it
 are lifted vp: all the state of the bodie is leane, and there chanceth grievous con-
 suming of the bodie. The effect of the cure consisteth in this, to stop the sharp-
 nesse of the humour and the bloud, and with that to make the wheyish hu-
 mour which is commixt with it, of slow moving, and to correct the distemper *Curatio.*
 of the reins. Therefore by and by, when the euill beginneth, being not yet come
 to his perfection, it is best to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out bloud
 moderately. Also you must giue him things that prouoke vrine meanly, which
 may purge out the vicious humours that be settled in the reines. But if the euill
 be immoderate and old, you must neither vse bloud letting, nor minister any
 thing that prouoketh vrine: for these do further the colliquation and consuming
 of the body, which doth chance also by it selfe. For in them that this euill is in-
 ueterate, their strength faileth them, and through bloud-letting the whole bo-
 die is made sharper: and things that prouoke vrine do multiplie and increase
 the euill in them. The greatest and chiefe remedie of this disease, is to reuo-
 mite that vp againe that is drunke. Let his drink be very cold, as also let the rest
 of his diet be cooling. Therefore giue him meates of good iuice, and which *Diet.*
 can difficultly be changed, and do lacke mordacitie and gnawing or which are
 able to stop mordacitie and sharpnesse, as be, rere eggs, *Alica* made like a sou-
 ping, and leane swines flesh much sodden. Also you may well giue them new
 Cheele well compact, and without salt, and milke wherein flint stones or red
 hore Steele hath bene quenched, the whey taken away. Also for souping, cold
 Pisan broth is good. For por-herbs, take Endiue, Lettuce, and Purslaine. Of
 fruits, Peares, Apples, & Pomegranates. Also fishes of grauelly places be good.
 He must drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to wash
 the salt humours which cause the thirst; for wine causeth the temperature of
 the bodie to sweetnesse. In drinke also you must minister vnto him iuice of
 Pomegranates, *Rob de Ribes*, or *Rob de Barberies*. For medicines, minister vnto *Medicamenta*
 him the iuyce of Knotgrasse, or of Sanguinarie, with blacke wine. Also deco-
 ction of Comfery, & of Dates, & of Mirtle berries or Peares. Likewise sirupes of
 Roses, and Mirtles, and such like. Also Trochisks of *Spodium* may be ministred
 with iuice of knotgrasse, or black wine. Ourwardly you must apply to the sides, *Localia.*
 the loynes and the share, ointments, cataplatmes, & cerotes that do coole: as be
 those which are made of rose Vineger, *Polenta*, Lettuce, Ducks meat, Pellitory

*Emplastrum.**Sudorificatio.*

of the wall, Vine leaues, Purslaine, and such like. For which purpose also ointments do profite, made of oiles of Roses and Mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of Nightshade, or of Vine buds. Also you must lay to the Hypochonders or sides, in forme of a cataplaine, Barley meale wrought vp with vinegar and oile of Roses. Also vse this emplaster. *Rx* Barley meale, \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} Vine buds, tops of Willow, *Bursa pastoris*, ana. \mathfrak{M} . \mathfrak{ss} the rind of Pomegranats. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . \mathfrak{ss} Purslaine, \mathfrak{M} . \mathfrak{j} . feedes of Quinces, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . red Roses, \mathfrak{M} . \mathfrak{j} . \mathfrak{ss} boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oile of Roses, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . oile of Mirtles, \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . boile them againe, and make a plaister. Of these aforesaid things you may make a cerote, by putting to *Hypocischidos*, *Acatia*, *Bolearmoniacke*, *Rosin* and *Waxe*. Also you must prouoke them to sweate, that the vicious humours may be turned to sweating out. The best euaporation and sweating is in a tunne, made with hearbs and other hote things to prouoke sweate. after such sort that the head may be without the tunne. Or else apply a vessell full of hote water to the feete lying in his bed, and prouoke sweate. Also wash the conduite with Plantaine water, and burnt Alume.

CHAP. XL.

*Against Ulcers of the Reines.**Cause.**Renum vlcera
Signa.**Diet.*

Vlcers or biles of the reines be caused through rupture and breaking of the veins in the reines. Also it is caused through rotting of inflammation, and through sharpe and gnawing humours carried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loynes, with heauinesse, and the vrine is pissed forth without any impediment, which chanceth not so in the vlcers of the bladder. Also there is attter commixed in the vrine, with little peeces of flesh, or haire swimming in them; according to *Hippocrates* saying, *4. Aphor. 75.* who saith, If bloud or water be pissed out, it signifieth exulceration, either of the reins, or of the bladder. And by and by after he saith, If in a grosse and thicke vrine there appeare little peeces of flesh, or as it were haire, they are sent from the reines. Therefore when these appeare, let the sicke eschue crudities, and sacietie or fulnesse. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digestion, or that will easily corrupt, or ingender inflammation or windinesse. Let him chiefly abstaine from those things which do soone waxe soure or sharpe; also from all sharpe and burning things, and whatsoever doth breed and ingender choler, as is, much thirst, abstinence, hunger, labour, wrath, solitarie life, exercise, watching, and immoderate sawces. He must eschue about all things immoderate riding, and all vehement mouing or stirring. Also he must auoid all perpetuall idlenesse, and continuall bathing. He must vse new bread well wrought, & giue him flesh of birds of the mountaines, and kids flesh, and such like tender flesh. Also giue him scale fishes of grauelly places, roasted on a gridiron. Moreouer, riuier Crabs, souplings of *Pritan*, and *Amylum* sodden with milke, be maruellous good. Giue him also Milke mixed with Eggs, and the fat broth of a Henne. Also rene Eggs ministered alone, are good. Of Pot-herbs, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purslaine, and Lettuce, are good; but all these must be sodden, for the sicke must eate nothing that is raw, as is aforesaid, Of fruits, Raisins are not hurtfull, nor pine Nuts. Also

Also Almonds well blanched are good. Much drinke and strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as Hippocrates saith, 1. Aphor. 20. is an enemy to vlcers. For his drinke let him vie wine that is alayed, and somewhat restrictive: or let him drinke Goates milke, or Sheeps milke, or Almond milke. Carnall copulation is marvellous euill, not onely for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesaid. It is not vprofitable to vie naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselves, and specially Alum waters, and Brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, as well outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are cauted through sharpe and gnawing humors, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humours. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is good not onely to avoid vicious humours, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vicer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chance there: for it turneth the mouing of the humors into a contrary part. Also in the meane season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purslane, seed of Melons, Cucumbers, and Gourds, sirupes of Violets, Roses, and water Lillies, and the Conserues of them. But when the vicious humours be purged, he must drinke *aqua Musa*, or the decoction of Fenugreeke with hony, or of Cucumbers, or of Mallowes, or of Melons seed with *Hydromel*. Also minister Milke with Hony newly milked, and hot: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also Goats whey, decoction of Barley, Raisins, and Licorice, is marvellous good, and the iuyce likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed (which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine neither peeces of the couer of the vicer, nor yet dreggie and filthie attor, but matter that is whiush, light, equall, and little in quantitie) then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him Bolearmoniacke, gumme Tragacanth, *Amylum*, *terra Lemnia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things this powder is marvellous good *R. Puluis. terra Lemnia*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *ss. Tragacantha*, *Spodium* burnt, an. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Amylum*, pine Nuts roasted, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *ss. Linseed*, Cucumber seed blanched, Melons seed, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. seed of *Apium*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. Dragons blood \mathfrak{z} .j. beate them all together, and make a very fine powder, of the which giue the sicke daily, \mathfrak{z} .ij. with Milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must apply such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplaisters and cerotes, or ointments made of the oiles of Roses, and of Mirles, of Barly meale, Frankinsence, Masticke, red Roses, and such like: examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the Bladder.

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Medicines
stopping gnawing of humours.Purging of
the vlcers.

Glutinatives.

Puluis.

To drie and
strengthen
the reines.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the stone in the Bladder.

STones in the Bladder do ingender oftener in children then in older folke. *Calculus vesicae.*
When that vrine grosse and very thicke is carried into the largenesse of the

Signa.

Curatio.

*To breake the
stone in the
bladder.*

bladder, it settleth and stayeth there, like dregges of wine, or muddy water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a stone. Therefore there be two speciall causes of the ingendring of the stone in the bladder: that is, thicknesse of the vrine, and heate of children. They that haue the stone in the bladder, itch often, and do handle their priuie members, which also are swollen, and they are constrained to make water continually, and they are vexed with the Strangurie or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this disease is almost the same that the cure of the stone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, because the stones of the bladder require stronger medicines, and you must apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The stones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with these medicines (that is) the seed and roote of Fennell, of Louage, blacke Piony seeds, Motherwort, Cammomill, the roote and seede of *Althaa*, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, Sorrell rootes, the stones of Sponges, the stone of *Tecolithus*, Grommell, *Bruscu*, root and seeds, the stones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the seed of little Burres, the barke of Capers, Sothernwood seed, Iacynth, white Violets, Smal-lage, Parcely, and other such like, which do prouoke vrine, & which be rehearsed in the Chapter of the stone in the reines. To these you must conioyne the most laudable remedie, that is, a hedge Sparrow being dressed in salt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the disease perfectly. For it expelleth the stones that are already ingendred by the vrine, and it letteth them from ingendring any more. Also Goats bloud is a present remedy, as well for the stone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it dissolueth those that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, and ceaseth paine. Furthermore, if the stones of the bladder cannot come out by the passage of the vrine, but that they be there stopped, and compact together, & so do cause suppression of vrine, then the sicke must be laid vpward, so that his hips must lie vpward and highest, and then you must moue him hither and thither many wayes, that thereby the stone may fall out of the passage, and afterward bid him pisse euen as he lieth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water so neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyring, and after that you must minister those medicines which haue vertue to breake the stone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to passe by this meanes, you must come to cutting. The stone therefore being consumed by any of the meanes afore said, such an order of diet must be appointed to the patient, that the stone may not ingender againe, which we haue prescribed in the Chapter of the stone in the Reines.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bloud broken out of the Bladder, or curded in it.

Causa.

Signa.

IT chanceth sometimes, that a veine breaketh in the bladder, and then some of the bloud is sent out & some waxeth thicke & curdeth within. When the bloud is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he waxeth pale, his pulses be small, darke, and thicke, he is sorrowfull, he is cold, and his strength decayeth. And sometime when a clod of bloud chanceth to fall into the passage of the vrine, then it stoppeth the going out of the vrine.

You

You must in this case, as also in other burstings out of bloud, cause a very quicke and speedy remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawne backe often, and by little and little. Let the patient in his lying be laid upward, and let his hips be lifted up, and apply sponges dipped in *Posca*, that is, water and vineger sodden together, to coole him. Also the extreme parts must be bound, and the shere must be couered with sponges dipped in *Posca*. If the euill increase, cupping glasses fastened to the ilions and to the loines profit much. After irrigations with the sponges dipped in *Posca*, you must vse cataplasmes of Knotgrasse, Brambles, Plantaine and Pomegranate flowres. Also vse cerotes made of *Hypocisthu*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, and such like, rehearsed before in the Chapters of Spitting of bloud, and of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. You must poure into the bladder iuyce of Knotgrasse, Plantaine, or Millefolie, commixing with it *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of *Spedium* and such like. Also infusions of such like things are good; for both *Posca* and decoction of *Lentiscus*, and also of Brambles, and such like, are good. Also you must minister in drinke, medicines apt to bring out bloud, as be, *Rubiponticum* finely beaten, and xij. red seeds of Pionie, *Terra Lemnia*, Horsetaile, the roote of Centorie the great, the barke of Frankinsence, and such like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, first you must go about to dissolue and disperse that bloud with conuenient medicines. Therefore you must minister in drinke, Motherwort, *Stachados*, Citrine, Wormewood, Sothernwood, shauing of a Vine, Radish seed, Hares or Goats creame, each of them with *Oxymel*. Also *Oxymel* ministred by it selfe doth profite maruellously, for it dissolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by little and little with the vrine. Apply outwardly baths, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to loosen and release, which you must seeke out of the Chapter of the stone in the Reines. Aboue other things this cerote is verie good: R. of the oiles of Rose and Cammomill. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β Calamint, Comin, leaues of Elderne, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *Bitumen Indicum*, Gumme Ammoniacke, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Hares creame, \mathfrak{z} . iij. Sothernwood, meale of Fenugreece, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . *Sperma Ceti*, \mathfrak{z} . j. with Rosin and Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerote to apply to the shere. And if you profite nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is still stopped, you must of necessitie vse a cyring, by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you must againe minister the things aforelaid in drinke, and apply those things outwardly which do dissolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of bloud will not yet be dissolued, you must come to the curing of it likewise as you did in the stone of the Bladder.

Curatio.

To bring out bloud.

To dissolue curded bloud.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the Bladder.

OF diseases that be in the Bladder and ingendred there, the most grievous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The sicke haue these tokens following. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wor not what: they vomite pure choler, and they cannot make water, the shere becometh hard, and hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole,

Signa.

Curatio.

Diet.

Clyster.

Fomenta.
Sacculi.

Catheter.

as is wont in the disease called *Tenasmus*; the ordure that cometh forth is thin, and hath no residence: also sometime inflations follow, and the wombe is collic, the right gut being pressed together by the inflammation of the bladder. To them that haue this disease, if nothing let it, cut the veine of the hamme without any tarrying, or draw blood of the ankles. Also minister to him a thinn kind of diet, as is prescribed in other inflammations. He must also abstaine from wine, and he must vie water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden. Outwardly you must apply those things that haue power to cease and mitigate paine. Therefore the place of the bladder must be nourished with oyle wherein hath bene sodden Dill, Linseed, and sometime Rew and *Althea*. Medicines that be cold and restrictive must altogether be forborne, and that chiefly because the bladder is full of sinewes: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth, 5. *Aphor.* 28.) is an enemy to sinewes. Moreover, because cold things do shut vp and bind, and so do stop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it selfe) it increaseth it. And last of all, because cold things do prohibite and let that the humours causing inflammation may be dissolved, consumed and digested: therefore medicines meanelly hote are rather to be applyed, which haue vertue to cease paine, to loosen the pipe and passage of the vrine, and to dissolve the inflammation. Also let the guttes be washed with soft and easie clysters, and after the dung is come forth, cast in oyle of Dill, or such like thing, to ease and cease the paine. It is good to seeth Poppy shels, together with oyle, and to powre in Goose grease, or fresh Hennes grease sodden together in the same oyle. In most vehement paine you must powre in ʒ. i. of pilles of Hounds tongue dissolved in oyle of Dill: or take *Opium* with Mirrhe and Saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Also let the sicke sit in the decoction of Linseed, Fenugreece, roote of *Althea*, *Daucus* seede, and such like; and bid the sicke pisse as he sitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not strong enough to receive and expell out the vrine: therefore the patient or some that be about him, must thrust and presse the share easily and softly, and that must not be done out of measure, lest that paine should be augmented thereby. Also after clysters and infusions vie fomentis by hote water, and apply oyle in oxen bladders, or other vessels, halfe full, or litle bags, as is shewed in the Chapter of the Pleurisie. And if for all these things the euill cease not, fasten a cupping glasse with scarification to the grieved places. Moreover, he must abstaine from those things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he must eschue much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the disease, you must come to the vse of those things that haue vertue to dissolve and mollifie, whereof we haue spoken often before. The putting in of a cyring into him that is diseased with inflammation of the bladder is not easie to vse, and specially in men: for seeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it sharpeneth the paine, and increaseth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vse it. For the passage of the vrine in them is short and straight, so that they may suffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the stopping of vrine do very much constrain you, then you must of necessitie vse a cyring in men also; not because it taketh away the anguish of the disease, but rather because it should

should amend the great suppression of urine, and deliver the patient from deadly perill. After that you have enticed out the urine, you must come againe to the remedies which do ease paine, vntill the inflammation be dissolved and rotten. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be dissolved by & by through the meanes of an *Erysipelas*, arising outwardly vpon the skinne, and remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and oftentimes much urine being cast out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuerthelesse although those things appeare, you must still vie the remedies aforesaid: in as much as for the most part, perfect tension and stretching out being risen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are caused, and long constitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceased, and the constitution of the dis-ease is now waxen old, you must come to the vsing of ointments which do call out and bring forth the humours from within: and likewise emplaisters which do rubifie and blister the skin, are to be applyed, which you may find after.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Ulcers of the Bladder and his necke.

THe bladder is exulcerate either through some bile, or botch, or swelling *Vlcera.* which hath bene before, or through some rupture, or by eating & gnawing of a fluxe, or through some such like cause. There followeth this sicknesse *Signa.* sharpe paine of the bladder, at all times pissing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthie, there commeth forth dreggie and slimie matter, and such as hath a grosse residence like bran. And sometime thin skins like leaues, and wooll, are sent out with the urine. If the vlcers do spread abroad and feed deepe, there is sent out urine that is bloudie, attery, and stinking. To these signes may be added, difficulty of making water, & rising vp of the yarde. There is paine not onely when the passage of the urine is exulcerate, but also when the exulceration is in the bottome or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottome of the bladder, or nigh the pipe and passage of the urine, by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the share: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is paine felt onely at such time as he maketh water, and specially at the beginning and ending of his pissing, & also his paine is the greater if the urine be sharpe. They that are vexed with this euill, do either sit contruallly, or they cannot stand vpright, nor rest lying along; and through great and continuall paine they are killed with feuers, watchings, and consumings, some sooner & some later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the leastwise verie hard to cure: as well because the bladder is finewy, as also because the urine which is of nature sharpe, doth continually touch the vlcers, and so gnaweth them, and will not suffer them to conglutinate and ioyn together. For although much urine be sent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied; but alwayes some of the urine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers, yea when the abundance of urine is sent out, then the bladder shrinketh vp and falleth together, so that the urine that is left in it, although it be very little, yet it toucheth euery part thereof. But seeing that oftentimes some things chance besides our expectation, you shal go about the cure, by the which if you bring nothing else

Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.

Curatio.

Restrictive
medicines.

Note.

to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie down and to rest in his bed: and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Then you must minister remedies for intermitting fevers. The chiefe thing in this case hath bene drinking of milke, and this is to be preferred aboue all other medicines; for it maketh smoothe roughnesse, and washeth vlcérations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such as that is which is ministred in the exulceration of the reines. Also you must comfort the sicke by medicines that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and irret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, and other things which are rehearsed before in the Chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meete to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spread broader and eate deepe, you must apply outwardly medicines somewhat restrictive, and such as be hote when they are applyed, that by their heate they may helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, and that through their vertue they may prohibite the places nigh adioyning to feed and eate. Restrictiue medicines be these; Galles, Pomegranat rinds, Alume, *Acatia*, *Hypocischia*, and such like often rehearsed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to them, medicines cast in with a cyring: you must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oyle of Roses warme. And if none of these be at hand, you must cast in continually most sweete water warmed, specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuyce of Prisan, or the decoction of Lineseed, Cucumber seed husked, Fenugreek, Mallows, or milke with the oyle of Roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clyster to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vppward, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusion to enter in, because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sick sit often in hote water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somewhat. And when the vlcers do spread abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a cyring such things as can stop the feeding, as be, *Acatia*, *Hypocischia*, *Terra lemnia*, Bole armoniack, and other rehearsed a little before. But if the vlcers be foule & filthie, you must powre in medicines which haue vertue to scoure and cleanse them, as is *Mulla* much watered, or milke with a little honey, or with the seed of Cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *Amylum*, or Tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scarre, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictive incissions, and by emplasters, fomentes, and irrigations that be of like facultie and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painfull fits applie emplasters and irrigations, hauing power to cease and ease the paine: and in the time of the intermission betweene the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euill. Therefore apply to the share, Synapismes, and such things as will rubifie and

and blister. And let the sicke vse a diet that is good to restore strength. And if the euill doth not waxe gentler, you must make burnt scurfs about the share, either by medicines or with iron, and to suffer the vlcers to purge and cleanse themselves long time with matter flowing out. You may also minister medicines to cease paine in drinke, if vehement paine vex him. For this purpose *To cease paine.* about other things which we haue rehearsed in other places, the pills *Alkaken-gi* with *Opium* are good. Also these things following do much mitigate the paines of exulceration, that is, Cucumber seed, Mallowes, white Poppie, Tragacanth, *Amylum*, Pine nuts, and Almonds. Therefore this medicine may be ministered: R. conserue of Violets, ʒ. iij. seed of Mallowes, ʒ. ij. of the foure great cold seeds, ana ʒ. j. Liquorice scraped, ʒ. j. ʒ. Gum, ʒ. ij. Bole armoniacke, ʒ. ʒ. Trochiskes of *terra Lemnia*, ʒ. j. make them vp all together with sirupe of Liquorice, and minister of it daily in the morning the quantitie of an Hazell nut. Moreouer, you must throw into the bladder medicines that can cease paine, and heale the exulceration.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Strangurie.

Stranguria in Greeke, *Stillicidium vrinae* in Latine, is a disease whereas the *spasmodia.* *S*vrine distilleth downe by drops, or by little and little, and causeth a continuall prouoking and desire to pisse. This disease is caused through the sharpnesse *Cause.* of the vrine, or by exulceration of the bladder, or by an impostume of the Liuer or the reines, which being broken, and sending the filth and attar to the bladder, through the sharpnesse thereof it causeth continually desire to pisse. You shall iudge that sharpnesse is the cause, if the vrines be cholericke, and also all the state of the bodie, if the rest of the signes betoken choler, and that gnawing do chance about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as also an impostume or bile of the Liuer and the Reines, by the signes afore rehearsed in their owne proper Chapters. If therefore the Strangurie be caused through sharpnesse of the vrine, then you must purge the vicious and naughtie humour that doth abound, with all speed. For the which purpose, besides those things which are often spoken of before, Whey with *Cassia Fistula* is marvellous good, or some other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholericke humour being auoided and purged, the patient must vse meates that be temperate, and that can stop the sharpnesse: as is iuyce of Ptsan, Mallowes, Purslaine, Violets, Cucumber seed, and such like. He must abstaine from all *Vicia.* things that be sharpe or salt. Also let him eschue wine, exercises, wrath, and slow eating: for all these things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vse stony fishes, and baths of sweet water, which is wont to make temperate vicious humours marvellously. In drinke you must minister much sweet water hote, or the decoction of Barley with sirupe of Violets and Roses. But you may not giue him wine, as is laid, except it be sweete and alayed with water. Also milke drunke hote, is the best thing that can be. To conclude, for the order of his diet, he must vse meates that do moisten, and broths that do make the wombe soluble. But the sicke must be compelled to pisse continually: for if the sharpe dregs do tarry long in the bladder, it gnaweth and exulcerateith it. Also to stop

Pulvis.

Terebinthina
resina.

Clyster.

the sharpnesse of the humours minister the medicine which we described in the end of the former Chapter. For the same purpose minister decoction of Licorice, or this powder following: *Rx.* of the seeds of Melons husked, Citrons, and Cucumbers, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. seeds of Gourds, Purslaine, and Lettuce, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of red Roses, \mathfrak{z} . j. iuyce of Licorice and of Masse, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . beate them all and made a fine powder, whereof giue daily the weight of \mathfrak{z} . j. β . in the morning with sirupe of Licorice, of Iuleps of Violets or Roses. Also Venice Turpentine washed in Rose water or Endiue water, and ministred the quantitie of a Nut, or sometime two or three, is maruellous good: for this (as *Galen* witnesseth *lib. 5. De tuenda sanitate*) doth not onely loosen the belly without hurt, and so by that meanes turneth away the sharpe humours from the passages of the vrine, but also it scoureth and cleanseth the inward parts, and specially the reines. And there haue bene some that haue recovered health onely by the vse of this. Also clysters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, *Althea*, leaues of Willow, water Lillies, and other afore rehearsed, putting to them *Cassia fistula*, Sugar, and oile of Violets and Roses, do profite much. But if the sharpnesse do still increase, you must also cast in by the yard into the bladder, milke with *Amylum*. Also for the same purpose, you may cast in decoction of white Poppie, and you must annoint outwardly vpon the share and thereabouts, oiles of Violets and water Lillies, putting to them a very little of the iuyce of Purslaine. But if the Strangurie doth chance through exulceration of the bladder, or through some other part of the body being euill affected, and so purging it selfe out by the vrine, then it is manifest that thole members ought first to be cured; but yet so, that this present euill be not neglected. The cures of euerie part you may seeke out in their proper places and Chapters.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie in Pissing.

Svrvia.
Cause.

Signa.

Cure of a cold
distemper.

DYSVRIA in Greke, *Vrina difficultas*, is a disease wherein the vrine is pissed hardly and difficultly. It is caused through weakenesse of the bladder, and through cold distemper of it, which hurteth his actions. Also sometime it is caused of grosse and flegmaticke humours which stop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold distemper if it come of an outward cause by the patients telling, and by the thinnesse and whitenesse of the vrine. But if besides the whitenesse there appeare grosnesse in the vrine, you may iudge it a flegmaticke humour, which hath stoppe d the necke of the bladder, as is aforesaid. Cold distemper is cured by those things that do heate. Therefore he must vse heating meates, and wine that is hot and condite. Also you must vse medicines which prouoke vrine, as are Pafeneps well sodden, Feonell, *Apium*, Sperage, Smillage, and such like. Also Crabs and Hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well: you must drie their flesh, and minister the weight of one \mathfrak{z} in drinke. Also minister in drinke the decoction of aromaticke things, or eleuaries made of them, and so named of them. Aboue other things, the Antidotes of *Diacalaminthes*, *Dialacca*, and *Diacurcuma*, are very good. Also Triacle giuen in drinke is marvellous good. You must nourish the share without,

with

with hote oiles, as is, oiles of Rew, Dill, Lillies, Scorpions, and of *Castoreum*. Also you must applie fomentes, and little bagges made of Cammomill, Southernwood, Betonie, Mugwort, Rew, Calamint, Saneine, and such like oiles, into the fundament. If a cold and flegmaticke humour do cause difficultie of pissing, then the patient must vse *Uxamel*, and decoctions of Hylope, Penitroiall, Origan, Thime, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse fomentes, irrigations, and little bagges made of hote things, whereof we spake a little before, and in the former Chapters. Moreover, whether a grosse humour, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kinde, through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a cyring, vnlesse inflammation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before.

Fomenta.

Cure of fleg-

maticke hu-

mours that

stop the vrine.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the Urine.

ISCVRIA in Greeke. *Supressio vrine* in Latine, it is a disease in the which the vrine of the patient is altogether letted and stopped. This disease is caused sometime through weaknesse of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage streighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it commeth by a little peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression and stopping of the vrine. Also utter sent downe to the bladder from the reines, or the Liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humour doth. Also it chanceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, and yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsive, when as his proper sinewes be euill affected: so in haile folke when the vrine is holden long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused through weakenesse of the bladder, it is knowne by those signes which declare the cold distemper of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humours, it is knowne by the diet that went before: as if one that liueth idly hath vied much meates which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the Chapters of the Stone. If it be caused of inflammation, or of any other swelling, it is knowne by paine, by feuer, and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused through some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowne by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine commeth out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage where you coniectured the bile to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion and pissing of bloud, or fluxe thereof. When as utter bath

Isxuria.

Cause.

Signa.

Stopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chanced before : for either the bladder or the reines laboured of some euill before, whereby such, and so much attre might gather : or there hath bene an impostume in some member about the reines, which being broken, the attre is sent downe into the reines, and so into the bladder. The rest of the causes may be knowne by the patients telling. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersity of causes.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of weaknesse of the bladder.

Cure if it be of grosse humors,

Unguentum.

Cure if it be of the stone or clodded bloud.

Cure if it be of a peece of flesh or knobbe.

Cure if it be of the obtuse sense of the bladder.

Cure if it come in haile folke.

For if the stopping of vrine be caused through imbecilitie and weaknesse of the bladder, you must minister and apply those things which do heate, as is said in the former Chapter. For you must altogether remoue cold distemper, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the withholding of vrine be ingendred of grosse and clammy humours, he must be cured by fomentes, infusions, and cataplasmes made of hearbs that be hote, and that haue vertue to cut and diuide the humours, and with a diet of such like things. Besides those things which we haue rehearsed in the former Chapter of difficultie of pissing, this ointment following is very good to take away the disease: *R.* of the oile of Scorpions, oile of Nard, and of Lillies, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. Gumme terapin, *Bellium & Opoponax*, ana. \mathfrak{z} i. Goose grease, Duckes grease, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. roote of *Enula Campana*, \mathfrak{z} ij. Peniroidall, Calamint, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. dissolue the Gummes in wine, and with Waxe as much as is sufficient make an ointment. Also you must throw into the bladder with a cyring, oile of Scorpions, or Lillies, or some other thing that can dissolue, cut, and diuide clammy humours. If the vrine be stopped through the stone or clodded bloud, you must seeke the cure out of their proper Chapter : for the stone which hath stopped the passage of the vrine must be remoued out of his place, as is taught before in the 41. Chapter, but the clodded bloud must be dissolued, as is taught in the 42. Chapter. If the vrine be stopped through inflammation, or some other swelling against nature, the cure must also be sought out of their owne proper Chapter. And if the vrine be stopped through some litle peece of flesh or hard knob, apply bathings and other dissoluing and loosening medicines, and such as do open and spread abroad the pipe and conduit of vrine : examples whereof you may seeke out of the Chapter of the stone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out so, you must come to the vsing of a cyring, and by putting in of the instrument, you must entice out the vrine. If the vrine be suppressed through the dull sense of the bladder, you must raise vp his action, by prouoking wine and you must helpe it by infusions, fomentes, and other hote medicines, which can take away his sleeping and dulnesse. But you must onely eschue those things which prouoke vrine, lest that through plentie of it, the bladder be stretched out, and so the contractiue vertue of it should be hurt. Moreouer, you must entice out vrine with *Nitrum*, or Saltpeter, or with a quicke Louse, or with some other thing that can stirre vp the vertue expulsive of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through some great businesse vrine is holden too long, and so hath made the bladder feeble, that it cannot expell it out, then he must helpe himselfe thus. He must stand so, that the necke of the bladder may leane downward, and must lay both his hands about his share, and he must presse it, and thrust out the vrine by litle and litle, and thus he may do also in the dull sense of the bladder aforesaid.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Exulceration of the priuie members.

VLcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue need of medicines which do drie vp vehemently: such as these be; paper butot, drie Dill berot, and drie *Aloes* made into powder: for you can scarcely finde a more pfect remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedie to the exulceration of the priuie members. Also among compound medicines, this is the most effectuous and profitable: *R^y Aloes Spanicum*, ℥.ij. Gales, ℥.j. Dragons blood, Bolcarmoniacke, Turie, ana ℥.j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ℥.ss. Mirbe, ℥.j. of Gumme Arabicke, ℥.ij. Alumie butot, ℥.ss. Let all these be beaten, and make a fine powder, and strew it upon the exulcerate parts. But if the vlcers be very moist and soyle, first scoure them and cleanse them with *Malsa* well stayed, and then after with Goates milke: which thing being done, vse the aforesaid powder, or *lapis Hematites*, or Frankincense, or Pomgranate rinds, or *terra Lemnia*, or such like beaten into powder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflammation, with linnen clothes wet in Rose water, or Nightshade, or Purslane water, or Houseleke water, putting to it the white of an Egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies seeke out of the other Chapters.

*Aloes arida.**Puluis optimus.**Absterision of the vlcers.*

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

PRIAPISMVS (as Galen witnesseth in lib. 6. De male affectu loci, cap. 6.) *Priapismus.* is when the yard is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heate gotten. And if there chance to the yard paining or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as Galen doth witness in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouthes of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirit ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinew. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluxious and windie ayre to ingender in the hollow sinew. For the loines being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, and that also their mouthes should be wider opened. Therefore at that time they send out no small substance of spirit or ayre into the hollow sinew, which being a litle filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his power doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinew. Sometimes this euill chaneth to them which haue abstained long time from carnall copulation contrarie to their custome. And this thing chaneth specially to them that do abound with much blood, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of blood with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieved as those be which be taken with distention and stretching out of the sinewes: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, do quickly perish vnclesse helpe be yed to them by, and by: and when they dye, their belly is puffed vp, and their sweate is cold. The cure is diuerse according to the diueritie of causes: for if the disease do

*Priapismus.**Satyriasis. Cause.**Curatio.*

to make cold.

to make cold.

Clyster.

to make cold.

The summe of
the cure.

chance through gaping of the mouths of the arteries, & so through the heat of them, by and by it is good to let blood by cutting of a veine: which thing also himself shall do when this euill taketh them which abound with blood, and have abstained long time from carnall copulation, contrary to their custome. And stirrups for the blacke veine which is called *Medina* or *Mediana*; the middle yeint of the armes. Also he must vse a thinne diet, and abstaine from wine, Give him but litle meate made of come, and that which doth ingender no wind at all, and that causeth thirst; and it is good for him to vse to drink water, exercises and frictions or rubbings are well applyed and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits of aire. Also it is good to go about emptying by vomiting. Also if the wombe be cosine & bound, you must make it soluble with a clyster that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of Beetes, Mallowes, and Mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, lest that the humours should be drawne downward. For the same cause also he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you must altogether labour and study to minister those medicines which can void and empty the abundance, and draw vpward, and so turne the humours from the priue members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be falsesse, apply horseleeches. But you must lay vpon the loines those things which do evidently coole, as is, Nighshade, Purslaine, Henbane, and Singreene. Also you must of necessitie annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament and the yard, with some inyce or water of herbs that do coole gently. If a cerote made of fine oile of Roses, washed often in cold water, be applyed as well to the yard as also to the loines, it doth notably well. The making of this Cerote, which is called *Ceratum liquidum*, is taught of Galen lib. 1. *De simplicium medicamentorum facultate*. cap. 6. Also this cerote is good. R. white Wax washed ten times in cold water, quart. j. Purslaine, 3 ij commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerote. To be short, apply and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede of the which we will speake abundantly in the next Chapter. Moreover, it is hurtfull for him to rest lying vpright, but he must lye on his side. He must altogether be kept from sights and stories, and rehearsing of those things which pertaine vnto lechery. If this disease chance of a vaporous and windy spirit, or aire ingendred in the hollow sinew, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissoluing of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the Chapters of curing of inflammation and windynesse of the stomach, and to the cure of the windy Cholicke: for there you shall find plentie of remedies.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

Teroppeia.

Causa.

GONORRHAEA in Greeke, *seminis profluuium* in Latine, is an excretion and shedding of seede or sperme against the patients will, and without sicknesse of the yard. It is caused through imbecillitie and weaknesse of the retentive vertue in the vessels containing the sperme, or through some other disease that murther the parts of the vessels of sperme, after that sort as the expulsive vertue doth according to nature: as in the falling sicknesse it chan-

ceth

ceth sometimes; and in other violent contractions and crampes. Also sometime
 it is caused through fluxe of the spermatike vessels. The seed that breedeth
 out is watery, thinne, without appetite of carnall copulation, and for the most
 part without feeling of it, but sometime it cometh out with certaine pleasure.
 They that haue this disease, their whole body corrupteth by little and little, and
 waxeth leape, specially about the loynes, and there followeth much weaknesse,
 not for the multitude of seed, but for the principallie of the places. And if it
 come out (they said not standing) there followeth imbecillie and weaknesse
 of the retentiu verue in the spermatike vessels. But if it cometh out (the
 yad standing) the griefe is somewhat like a conuulsion, or crampe. This di-
 ease chanceth not onely to men, but also to women, and in women it is hard to
 cure. The cure of this disease is common with those cures that are ministred
 in euery fluxe. First therefore you must keepe the sicke in quietnesse, with little
 meate, and with drinking of water. Then also you must couer the places about
 the share and priuities, and the loynes, with wooll wet in oile of Roses, and in
 wine, or in oile of blossomes of Apples, or of Quinces. Also sponges wet in
 Posca applied are not hurtfull. The daies following you must vse cataplasmes,
 emplaisters, and oymments made of Vine branches Quinces, Acacia, Hypocis-
 chis, Sumach, and such like afore rehearsed. Also he must vse restrictive inef-
 fions made of decoctions of Brier, Plantaine, Mirtles, and such other like. These
 things must be sodden in austere and sharpe wine, or also in water. Let him vse
 meates which are hard to corrupt, and that are difficultly changed, and that
 haue power to drie vp. Also you must giue him with his meates and drinke,
 the seed of *Agrostus*, and of Hempe, specially roasted. Also the seedes and
 leaues of Rew, the seed and stalke of Lettuce, and the roote of water Lillies.
 In drinke minister daily, in stead of common water, the water wherein yron
 hath often bene quenched. To be short, he must eschue the vsing of sharpe
 things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of portage, and all his whole
 diet must be appointed of such things as do drie vp and restraime. And you
 must minister such medicines as do extinguish and quench seede, as is Tutsan
 seede roasted and rubbed; also the leaues and flowers of ingre (said to restraime
 lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but also when they are taken in
 drinke, or strewed vnder one. Purslane eaten, and Lettuce seede drinke, and
 the roote and the seede of water Lillies taken in meate, do extinguish the seede
 by cooling of it. But Rew eaten corrupteth and destroyeth the seede with his
 heate. They which eate Calamint continually, do lose the power of gene-
 ration, and likewise the seede of white Violets doth the same. But Smilax wa-
 ter, in which yron is often quenched, being continually drinke, doth dimi-
 nish the seed without any griefe. Moreover, of these simples before rehear-
 sed, you must compound and make diuers remedies. And specially this pow-
 der is good: R^e of the powders of *Diaccuminum*, *Diocalaminthes*, an. ʒ. i. seed
 of Tutsan and Rew, ana. ʒ. i. Calamint ʒ. ij. seede of Lettuce and Purslane,
 ana. ʒ. i. Sugar, the weight of them all: commixe them together, and
 make a fine powder, whereof minister ʒ. i. or ʒ. j. infused in soure wine.
 Also it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead vpon the loynes, for it is wont
 to coole much. To those that can not suffer the hardnesse of lead you must

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguish
seedes

Tritura.

give counsell, that they shew vnder them some of the foresaid herbes dried for the which purpose about other things, Vine leaues, Rew, Calamint, and Rols are praised: for these profit, and besides that, they hurt not the reines, for vehement cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let not his bed be loit, and let him lie for the most part vpon his side, eschuing vp-right lying, lest thereby the arteries of the loines should waxe hote. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sick to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed and strengthened. Also it shall be good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washing, which is wont to driue away all grieve ingendred of fluxe: and that specially if the water be endued with any medicinable qualitie. Also it is good at certaintimes to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, and that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skin. Moreover, the patient must exclude all thoughts belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

Cause.

Diet.

Curatio.

Puguentum.

Simples to
prouoke car-
nall lust.Antidotum
liquidum.

They which be married, and cannot vse the act of generation because of the sluggish impotencie and weakenesse of their members, coming of a cold distemper wherewith they be vexed, or of some other cause, such ought to exercise the neather parts, and to vse meates that do heate, and ingender good humours: as is, the flesh of Hennes, Capons, Partrich, Feasants, young Doves, Birds of mountaines, and specially Sparrowes, Cocks stones, and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be, Cich peason, Beanes, Scallions, Leekes, the roote and seed of Parsenep, Pine Nuts, sweet Almonds, Rape rootes, and such other like. Also the Egges of Partriches do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleepe in a soft bed, and let him reade things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priue members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments, and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following: *R.* oile of Lillies, *℞.* j. *℞.* oile of Castoreum, *℞.* ss. Pepper, Nigella, Pelitorie, ana. *℞.* j. Mirabe, *℞.* ss. Euphorbium, gran. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also he must vse medicines which do ingender plenty of sperme, and can heate. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be Rocket, Mustard seed, Garden Cresses, Nettle seed, roote of Aron, and Pepper, *Satyrium*, *Orminum*, Annise, Squill, *Orchis*, called also *Testiculus canis*, whose greatest round roote drunke with Milke, doth prouoke stiffnessse of the yarde, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water, doth slake the stiffnessse thereof: also Fennell and Dill are good. The stones of a Foxe dried, beaten to powder and drunke, do cause a stiffnessse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of Scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffnessse of the yarde. Moreover, burne the drie pisse of an Hart, and minister *℞.* j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine: *R.* *Dianthos*, *Plirisarcoticon*, *Diagalanga*, ana. *℞.* iij. *Diasatyrium*, *℞.* vj. Pine Nuts, sweet Almonds, *Pistax*, ana. *℞.* ij. *Satyrium*, *℞.* j. roote of Aron, *℞.* j. seeds of Rocket, Nettle,

Nettles, & garden cresses, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Scincus*, ʒ. ʒ. *Nux India*, ʒ. j. of long Pepper and Ginger, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. powder of Harts pisse, ʒ. j. sirupe of Mints, and Sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an Electuarie, whereof minister before supper or fasting the quantitie of one drachme or two, alone or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

CELE in Greeke, *Ramex* and *Hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *Ruptura*: it is caused diuers waies, and thereupon it hath diuers names. For if the *Peritoneum* do breake, and the bowels fall downe into the coddles, it is called in Latin, *Ramex intestinorum*: that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowels do cleaue or stay about the priuie members, it is called in Latin *Ramex inguini*, that is, the rupture about the priuie members. And if any quiet and watery humour be gathered in any part of the filmes or skione of the coddles, it is called in Latin *Ramex aquosus*: that is, a waterie rupture. When there groweth hard flesh within the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *Ramex carnosus*: that is, a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that fill vp the coddles. As if the kall or filme that lappes in the bowels, do fall downe into the coddles, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti*: that is, the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slippe downe also with it, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti & intestini*: that is, the rupture of the filme and the bowels. So when the veines which do nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *Ramex varicosus*: that is, the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, it is caused either because the *Peritoneum* is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken. Both these do chance through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp a great weight. A waterie rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessels that are ioyned together be increased in the coddles, and then a watery humour mixed with blood is driuen downe to those parts, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroake the vessels breake and slide downe: and their blood flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is changed into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without fluxe and waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowels, and the rupture about the priuie members, are common. For there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or about the priuie members, which appeareth greater then it did before in exercises, iourneis, holding of the breath and such like occasions: being thrust together, it goeth backe againe slowly, and it rolleth downe againe quickly. The particular signes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritoneum* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowels fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space, and for very litle cause; the swelling appeareth equall and deepe,

Κήλη

Ruptura.

*Ramex intestine-**Ramex ingui-**Ramex aquo-**Ramex car-**Ramex o-**Ramex omen-**Ramex vari-**Ramex vari-*

Causa.

Signa.

Cure of the
rupture of
the bowels,
and of the in-
guen.

Ceratum.

A glutinative
decoction.
Prunella.

the bowels that fall downe being stayed with the *Peritoneum*. The proper signes of a rupture that cometh when the *Peritoneum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuersally from the beginning of the rupture, and that onely through violent causes: the swelling is of a wonderfull greatnesse, vnequall, and it sheweth straightway sticking out in the skinne, because the bowels are fallen out of the *Peritoneum*. The common signes of a watery rupture be these: swelling that is without paine, and firme, and permanent in the coddles, not vanishing by any occasion: but in them that haue a little of the humour, it giueth place, and in them that haue not so much of it, not so. And when there is a watery humour in the coddles, the swelling shineth of the same colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or swart. And when these signes appeare in both sides of the coddles, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleshie rupture, hardnesse, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the swelling do increase into a hardnesse or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor sense, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vex him. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, be cured in this wise. You must lay the patient vpright, and separate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by little and little: and when they are put vp, you must keepe them vp with conuenient trusses and ligaments. But if the places adioyning to the coddles, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieved with inflammation and most grievous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windinesse, and so thereby the bowels be made disobedient to go vp againe, then you must vse and apply fomentes, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to cease paine and inflammation, and to disperse windinesse, as those things be which be made of Mallowes, Cammomill, Dill, Linseed, Fenugreeke, Caraway seed, Annise seed, Comin, and such like. Also nourish the places that be vexed with paine, with wooll that is moist, dipped in wine and oile. When the bowels are put vp againe into their places, you must go about that they may be kept vp still with conuenient trusses and bands, applying to it first restrictive or glutinative cerotes, or emplaisters, as this is: *Rx*. Ship pitch, Masticke, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Frankinsence, \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Hypocistis*, *Sarcocolla*, *Acacia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *Lapis Hematitus*, Dragons bloud, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Bole armoniacke, rootes of Comfery, Galles, Pomegranate rindes, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Misle of the oak, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of either *Aristolochia*, \mathfrak{z} . ij. Sumach, Pomegranate flowers, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Goates tallow, \mathfrak{z} . ij. Turpentine and Waxe as much as is sufficient: dissolve the gummes first in Vineger or Wine, and make a cerote, and put it in a Weatherskinne, and apply it, binding it fast, and do not loose it before the seventh day. And in the meane season, let the sicke tarrie thirtie dayes in his bed, and let him abstaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of Wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying aloud and such other like. And in the meane season, let him drinke this decoction: *Rx* both the kinds of *Sanicula*, of *Solidago saracenic*, or *Consolida saracenic*, *Ophioglossum*, *Pedalion*, *Agrimonia*, *Numularia*, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. Knotgrasse, *Clematis*, *Daphnoides*, great Plantaine, Burnet, ana. \mathfrak{M} . β . root of Comfery, Hounds-tongue, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . roote of the sixt kinde of *Geranium*, \mathfrak{z} . vj. leede of Mirtles, \mathfrak{z} . iij. Pomegranate

granate flowers, ʒ. ij. leaues of Laurell, ʒ. j. ʒ. boile these in red wine & water of iust quantity till the third part be consumed, then straine it, and by putting to it Sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweet, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, ʒ. iij. Also you must take very good heed, that the belly waxe not collicke: for if he be constrained to labour much when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe. Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as we admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessitie of mouing requireth it. A waterie rupture must be cured by such medicines as do heate and drie vp, as be Beane meale, Laurell berries, Linscede, *Daucus*, *Alibea*, *Nigella*, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the Chapter of the Droppe *Ascites*, and other Dropsies. To conclude, as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by Surgery, let it be sought out of *Paulus Aegineta libro sexto, cap. 26.* where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treat thereof in these Bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a waterie rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of Menstruis.

THe menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them, either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped, you shall know it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no grieue of the whole body nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the foureteenth year, and in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth year. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth year. For the most part, the purging endureth either two or three dayes, to many five dayes, in some it endureth to the seventh day. The menstruis also do stop in some the fiftieth year, or the fiftie five year, and they flow not vntill the sixtieth year but in few women. Also barraine women and dancers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoever excrements is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out little or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouermuch grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without blood then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that little blood which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But those that are leane & slender, which be wasted with some continuall sicknesse, they haue no superfluous blood in them. Moreover, the menstruis do not flow in them whole blood is either grosse or clammye, or if it be sent to some other part of the body, and purged out: as for example, if it go out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much blood from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much blood hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing, as abundantly sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the belly, and all kinds of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis

Cause.

In whom the floures are naturally stopped.

In whom the floures are stopped against nature.

are withholden through great and sharpe sicknesses, and through abundance or scarcitie of foode. For of little foode, that little doth expire and breathe out straight; and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion and voyding out of the menstruis is prevented and letted: and for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole body being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withholden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chanceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distemper of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted through hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrescence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through abundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thicke skinnies ingendred about the necke or entrie of the matrice; to other some the scarres of vlcers which haue bene before in the wombe, haue stopped the monthes of the vessels which carried blood into the wombe. To some after the abortion of the wombe (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of blood. Moreover, stubburne carefulnesse, immoderate feare, and great sorrow, do stoppe the menstruis. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomite, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceived. Moreover, there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the fore part of the head. Also there follow continuall feuers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atter and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately bene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly, or else it is stopped altogether. The diuersitie of causes is knowne partly by the disposition of the whole body, and partly also for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distemper in themselves, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepe and slower to all kind of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreover their vrine is waterie, and such like signes appeare which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distemper are cleane contrary to these signes of a cold distemper before rehearsed. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former Chapters, are wont specially to be these: that women that are vexed therewith, are grieved most in the time of the menstruis, and they feelee vehement paine about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp very great. The cure is diuers, according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold distemper of the liuer or wombe do stop the flowing of the menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away by contraries: that is, with meates and medicines that do heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous, and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the body. Above other, these things that follow are good, Peniroyall, Thime, Calamint, Sothernwood,

Signa.

Cold distemper.

Hote distemper.
Plenitudo.

Curatio.
Cure of cold distemper.

wood, Diptaine, roote of *Ireos*, *Cassia*, Gladon, *Asarum*, and *Sauvenger* of which you may make decoctions and fomentes. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Also the meete and convenient times to take these medicines be first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondly, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annointing, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easly and continually. Women that be too hote, and vie much exercise, haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safeguard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet wherby their bodies should be to dried, that the menstruis should not need to be purged: but this were against conception: for they do not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscrete diet, purgations be necessarie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, wherby the menstruis that are stopped through hote distemperature may be brought out. Women therefore that be hote, and vie many exercises, must chiefly be made moister by moist meates and driakes taken in good quantitie, as be souplings of *Pisan*, and of *Alica*, and meates that are made of Lambes flesh, Kids flesh, and fishes that be tender, birds of mountaines, and milke. Let their pot-herbs be Lettuce and Gourds, and their fruit new Figges. They must vie white wine that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good: and to conclude, that diet ascribed to them that haue the feuer hecticke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be with-holden and stopped by reason of the fulnesse that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of blood. And you must cut the veines of the ankles, or of the hammes, and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable if cupping glasses be fastened to the legs. The blood being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annointings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but onely grosse and flegmaticke humours do stoppe the flowing of the menstruis, first you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and prepare them and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction: *Rx* the rootes of Gladon, *Ireos*, *Paracly*, and *Sperage*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. of the seedes of *Apium*, *Fennell*, *Bruscus*, *Anise*, *Daucus*, *Ammi*, and *Nettles*, an. \mathfrak{z} j. *Calamint*, *Wormewood*, ana. *M. ss*. *Origan*, *Sothernewood*, *Mugwort*, *Penitioiall*, *Asarum*, ana. *M. j*. *Hysope*, *M. j. ss*. cholsen *Cinamon*, \mathfrak{z} j. seeth all these in a convenient quantitie of water, vntil the third part be consumed: then straine it, and make the licour of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the white of an Egge, putting into it of the sirupes of *Calamint*, of *Hysope*, and of *Horehound*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. *ss*. and make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, the weight of \mathfrak{z} iiii. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *Hierapicra*, *Diaphanicon*, and *Electuarius Nidum*, pilles of *Garlicke*, or *Benedicta*, or such like. After purging, the patient must vie exercises, and frictions of the neather parts, and specially walkings. Moreouer, apply fomentations, and bathings made of *Cammomill*, *Mother-*

Cure of hote
distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercises.

Fomentes.

Unguentum.

*To prouoke
menstruum.*

*A notable
medicine.*

Pessum.

Alius.

Suffitum.

*Cure of fat
women.*

*Cure of leane
women.*

wort, Mints, & other things rehearsed in the decoction abovesaid. Also annoint the patient with this ointment: *Rx.* of the oiles of Lillies, and Rew. *ʒ. i.* Motherwort with the thin leaues, Peniroyall, Calamint, *ʒ. i.* roots of Ireos *ʒ. i.* Hysope, Origan, *ʒ. i.* with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Alter this, for the cause abovesaid, minister medicines which can straightway prouoke and bring forth the mensruis being stopped, such as these be: Mirrhe, *Castoreum*, Laurell berries, Madder, Pepper, Sage, Saueine, *Cassa*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This medicine is notable good, *Rx.* *Castoreum* *ʒ. i.* wild Mints beaten into powder, *ʒ. β.* old wine, or *Mulsa* *ʒ. iiii.* commix them together, & minister it hote after a bath. Also the decoction of Peniroyall, Mugwort, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, Sage, Dill, *Ammeos*, Fennell, *Aenula campana*, & such like are good. Also Calamint beaten into powder, the weight of *ʒ. ij.* or Saueine, the weight of *ʒ. j.* drunke in wine or *Mulsa*, is very good. Moreover Trochisks of Mirrhe do maruellously profit. Also wine wherein Wormewood hath bene infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that necessitie so require it, such as this is: *Rx.* of *Triphera magna* that is without *Opium* *ʒ. j.* of the meale of *Erinum*, *Nigella*, Mather, Mugwort, Peniroyall, *ana. ʒ. j. β.* iuyce of Rew, *ʒ. i.* commix them together, & make a pessarie, and put it in with Woll or Cotton. Or this pessary: *Rx.* Mirrhe, *Bdellium*, *Storax. ana. ʒ. j.* Calamint, Sothernwood and Wormwood, *ʒ. j. β.* roots of Gladon & Mather, *ana. ʒ. j.* seed of *Nigella*, dry Rew, Laurel berries, *ʒ. ij.* Saueine, *ʒ. j.* *Castoreum*, *ʒ. β.* beate all these to fine powder, & commix them with hony, or *Triphera*, or *Mithridatum*, & make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hot oiles, as is oiles of Ireos, Lillies, Laurell, & such like. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of *Storax*, *Galbanum*, Frankinsence, *Bdellium*, the root of *Aristolochia*, Mugwort, Cloues, Cinamon, & such like: examples whereof you shall find in our book of making medicines. Moreover the wombe must be euaporated and fomented with odoriferous things, as with Marioram, Sauory, Calamint, Cammomill, Peniroyall, Mugwort, root of Ireos, and such like sodden in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherein you must put a reed or some other pipe; and you must annoint it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fomented with it. Also it will profit if the woman sit in this decoction vp to the nauell, and after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, & with swift exercises, & other medicines which can make the body slender and leane: as be continuall deiection & solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate and breathe out, & such like, which be abundantly intreated of by *Galen l. 14. Ther. meth. cap. 15. l. 6. De tuenda sanitate*. Those which are not purged of their mensruis through leanness of the body, whether it chance through sicknes or any other meanes, you must first recreate & refresh them, & restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient diet, and by other medicines, which *Galen* rehearsed in the places aforesaid. And if they waxe fleshy, there is good hope that the mensruis will burst out by their owne accord, which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by potions, fomentis, and other medicines aboue rehearsed, if the mensruis do not flow,

flow, because of some disease and vice of the wombe, first you must cure the
 euill that is caused of the stopping of the menstruis: and after that you must
 proceed to the prouocation and purging of the menstruis. The cure of the di-
 seases of the wombe must be sought out of their proper places.

*Cure if it be
 of vice of the
 wombe.*

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of the menstruis.

WE say, that menstruis do redound and overflow in women, when that
 great plenty of them do flow out longer then the accustomed time of
 their purgation. There is no iust or certaine time of their purgation: for to most
 women they flow two or three daies, to many fife dayes, & to some seue daies.
 The menstruis do chance to flow out of measure, through great or smal vessels
 opened wide, or broken. Also immoderate purgations do ingender in women
 sometime through grievous trauell in childbirth, which also do cease often-
 times of themselves. Oftentimes after abortion they labour of a vehement
 purgation & fluxe of menstruis, & sometime it bringeth them into a dangerous
 perill. If the greater vessels be broken or open, the blood floweth out gushing
 on heaps: but if the lesser be open, it floweth out by litle & litle, & not in great
 quantitie. If it be caused through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by
 litle & litle, but also it floweth with very great paine. Moreover when the men-
 struis flow immoderately, there followeth a filthie colour, the feet are puffed
 vp with a light swelling, the strength of the body is decayed, both the digestion
 and appetite of meat is corrupted: & in all points such signes as were wont to
 follow immoderate voiding of blood, either by the hemorrhoides, or by any
 other fluxe of blood, do follow in this disease. First therefore in the beginning
 of the cure, you must bind the places between the ioynts & the extreme parts
 of the body with bands, beginning at the armpoles & the shaxes. Also you must
 fasten great cupping glasses lightly vnder the paps, as Hippocrates teacheth, §.
 Aphor. 20. Also they must vse meats and drinks that be sharpe and restrictive, as
 is Rice, and such like: and let the sicke rather eate roasted meats then sodden:
 and specially such flesh as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birds that liue on
 mountaines, & wild beasts. They must abstaine from mouing, and wine, and in
 stead of it they must vse some restrictive potion, or *Pasta*, nor cold but warme.
 Moreover, you must minister restrictive medicines in drinke, as these simples
 be following: *R.* Pomegranate flowers, *Hypocistis*, *Acacia*, Corall, *Lignum*, *ser-
 ra Lemnia*, Galls, Knotgrasse, both the *Consolidae*, the stone *Hematitis*, shells
 of Mast, Plantain, Barbaries, & such like. Compound medicines be these follow-
 ing, as syrups of Roses, Mirrles, trochisks of Amber, & of *terra Lemnia*. Also
 these pills following are marvellous good to stop & restrain the menstruis, *R.*
terra Lemnia, Bole armoniack, Frankincense, Masticke, Galls, ana *℥* ij. Dragons
 blood, the stone *Hematitis*, ana *℥* j. Haris long burnt, *℥* j. *Hypocistis*, *Acacia*,
 red Corall, ana *℥* ss. Pomegranate flowers, red Roses, ana *℥* ij. Amber, *℥* j.
 commix the with sirupe of Mirrles, & make pills, whereof minister the weight
 of one drachme or *℥* ss. Also foment the place outwardly with the oiles of Ro-
 ses, Mirrles, Quinces, & sharpe wine. And apply ointments, emplasters, cerots,
 and restrictive Epithemes, whereof you shall find many before in the Chapters.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

*To restrain
 menstruis.*

Catapotis.

Influxus.

Pessulus.

of the fluxes, *Dysenteria*, *Diarrhea*, and *Lienteria*. Also infusions made of the decoctions of the aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must use such medicines as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuyce of Plantaine is marvellously commended, wherewith *Galen* saith, in foure dayes he stopped a fluxe of the wombe that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuyce of Knotgrasse, or Nightshade, or *Hypochischin*, or *Acaria*, or such like cast in. Also the using of pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praised: R^x. of Frankinsence, Pomegranate flowers, and Galles, ana. ʒ. j. of Gumme Arabicke, *Acaria*, Amber, Harts horne burnt, ana. ʒ. ij. Bolearmoniacke, ʒ. ij. beate all these to fine powder, and mixe it with wooll dipped in oyle of Roses, and put it into the wombe.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

P. Qus ratio.

Cure of a fluxe that is white and atterie.

VTERI fluxus in Latin, fluxe of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole bodie purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour as the humour that doth abound in the bodie. For some is red, as blood putrified, or attier: some white, which commeth of steame: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie, which is of a wheyish matter. And if pure blood come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowne. The places are continually moist with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she saoureth no meate, but abhorreth it: in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine and sometime without paine, or with ulceration or without it; and either with an inflammation, that is, with the vicer, or else it is filthie or vnpure. The diuersitie of causes you may know by the colour of that that floweth forth, as is aforesaid. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting of blood. For many incommodities would follow if you should first go about to repress and stoppe the rage and violence of the blood that floweth, as the Drop sicke, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomacke, or of the head. You may part the times of your blood letting as you do in them that spit blood; so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the blood may be the longer a little. You must cut a veine in the arm. After this you must bind the extreme parts of the bodie with bands, and you must use and apply all such things as can turne the fluxe of the humor another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of us in the former Chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictive, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thickenesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake, wine that is grosse and restrictive. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vex a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humours may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also it is not against reason, seeing

seeing that that which is flowed out is ingendred of fleame, if you do minister a medicine to her which doth purge fleame. And you must minister and apply to the whole body, medicines and remedies which do drie vp, seeing that the disease is moist. Therefore exercises, specially of the vpper parts, and frictions are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birds of the mountaines, and wild beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred as do extenuate grosse humours, and after that do bring them out with the vrine, as be, *Asarum*, *Pennell*, *Apium*, and suchlike, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictive, as be, oiles of *Roses* and *Quinces*, and other rehearsed in the former Chapter. Also you must vse absteriue and scouring medicines, lest that vlcération be made with the humour that floweth: wherefore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and cleansing of the filth, you must annoint with oile of *Roses*, or of *Quinces*, or of *Mirtles*. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictive medicines, not neglecting absteriue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall need because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceaseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the belly and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heate, and from such things as do prouoke vrine.

*Cure of a pale
and cholericke
fluxe.*

CHAP. LVI.

Of Strangling of the Wombe.

SUFFOCATION or strangling of the wombe, is nothing else but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnesse that followeth after the retention and stopping of menstruis. For in women, the wombe when it is reached and stretched out, it runneth not to another place like a wandering beast, but is drawne backe through the extension. Also it chanceth oftentimes through the seed that is restrained. Also many times it chanceth through cold which happened to the wombe at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard abortion, or when as any hath hastened to stop suddenly a fluxe of bloud flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slownesse, weakenesse of the legges, palenesse of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present, there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voice doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawne vp together; the pulses are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out of the mouth and nostrils, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries doth remaine still. When the euill doth cease, the balles of the cheekes beginne to waxe

Cause.

Signa.

red, and the eyes be lifted vp and opened. Also a certaine humiditie and moistnesse, that one may by feeling perceiue to run out of the wombe of women, and the bowels do make a noyse: and also the wombe it selfe is a little loosened, and so their mind, senses, and moving cometh to them againe. This disease cometh by courses at certaine times, as the falling sicknesse doth, and that chanceth when the matrice (as is aforesaid) is filled with seed, or some some other matter that putrifieth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it selfe is diseased with the quantitie or qualitie of any thing, then menstruis, or seed, or other kind of symptomes are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body do cause this disease, the body is so vehemently cooled, that both breathing and arteries beating cannot be perceiued by the senses. Which humour, if it be either grosse or sharpe, it causeth conuulsions or crampes: but if it haue the nature of melancholy, it causeth sorrow and sadness, and defection of mind, refrigeration and paine of the stomach. This kind of disease ingendreth in all seasons, but specially in Winter and Autumne and most commonly yong folke, and such as be prone to lecherie, and barren, specially if they be made so by medicines, be most taken with this disease. Many do recover from this disease, and many againe do perish suddenly in the very fit, or at the least way within few houres after. That chanceth when the pulses be swift and inordinate, and then do leaue off and vanish cleane away. At the last a cold humour in little quantitie doth bedew and moisten the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you must bind the extreame parts, and besides the bindings, you must rubbe the legs and all the whole body, and do euen as you would recover one that is swounded. And you must place the sicke with her necke & shoulders bending, and rising vpward, and with her thighs and share leaning downeward. You must apply to her nostrils stinking things, as the snuffe of a candle newly put out, feathers, specially of Partriches, burnt, or Wooll burnt, or soles of shoes, or shales of Garlick or Onions: also haire burnt, and specially if they be the haire of the sicke, or Goats horne burnt. Also pitch melted vpon the coales, *Galbanum* or *Castoreum*, or such like. Also you may hold a chamber vessell with old vrine at their nose, or old linnen clothes dipped in Brimstone and burned: and you must perfume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things, as be *Storax*, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. And it is good to fasten cupping glasses with much flame, and lightly, to the parts aboue the priuie members, and to the bottome of the belly. As soone as the fit doth come, you must apply fomentes, and little bags warmed, to the bottome of the belly and share, for you shall scarcely find a more present remedie in the coming of the fit of this disease. And you shall make them of both the Motherworts, and with Origan, Betony, Cammomill, Calamint, Wormewood, Peniroyall, Linseed, Louage seed, and such like. And if the fit be prolonged, you must also adde to such things as are good to dissolue and bring out windines: wherof you shall find example & meanes out of the Chapters of windinesse of the stomach, and paine of the Cholick. Also then you must poure into the wombe, both ointments and oyles that be very odoriferous, as is, oyles of Spike, and *Iress*, & such like. Also let a midwife dip her fingers in these oyles, and then put them into the mouth of the matrice, rubbing it long and easly,

How to do in
the fit.

Sacculi.

that through that pronoking the grosse and clammie humour may be avoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, and call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause sneezing, as be, Pepper, *Castoreum*, *Struthium*, and such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse infusions made of the decoction of Laurell berries and leaues, Peniroidall, Calamint, Motherwort, Horehound, Saucine, *Althaea*, Camomill, *Serpillum*, *Ireus*, *Aristolochia*, and Fenugreece. But in the time of the infusions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of Roses and Vineger. But I iudge, that you must rather vse fomentes and litle bags then infusions, specially when as for the most part; although thou wouldest neuer so faine, thou canst not vse infusions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceased, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomites do lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must apply cupping glasses with scarification to the loynes, and the ilions. After the seventh day minister the purgation of *Hiera Colocynthis*, or pills of Agaricke, and by and by come to the drinking of *Castoreum*, which being continually drunke, it deliuereth the patient straightway from this euill. Also you must minister euery day thereof, ℥. j. sometime with *Mussa*, sometime with the decoction of Motherwort, and sometime minister it with thin wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse infusions & pessaries that do mollifie, made of Goose grease, *Storax*, Masticke, gumme Armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heat, and haue vertue to bring out winde. Therefore vse this perfume specially: R. of the Trochisks of *Gallia & Alipta Muscata*, ana. ℥. j. *Storax*, ℥. iij. Cloues, Maces, ana. ℥. j. wood of *Aloes*, ℥. ij. Cinamon cholep, leaues of Laurell, ana. ℥. ij. *Ladanum*, ℥. ij. Beate them in to powder and commixe them with *Storax liquida*, and make Trochisks for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be content with very litle meat and drinke, & let all her diet be exsiccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must begin oftentimes with blood-letting, specially if the menstruis haue bene stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *Hierapicra*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, Salt: then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply very well *synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, Pellitorie, Pepper, and Mustardseed. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as, deambulations in the morning, gestations and carryings in a cart, or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carying about, crying out loud, distinct & apt reading is conuenient. Also anointings and frictions yled now and then are good. Baths of sweet water are seldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is very good to vse naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this is as it were the very last refuge. Above others those bathes are good which be in *Badenie*, in the base Germanie, in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at *Bahe*, and at

What must be
done straight
after the fit.

Trochisks of
perfumes.

Diet.
Cure of the
whole bodie.

Buckstones in Darbeshire, and there is a bath neare Newmarket in Suffolke, at a towne called Exning, they be all very good; but if they go to any of these baths, they must take heed of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of falling out of the wombe.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

WE say, that the matrice falleth out, when it is so turned downward that it sticketh out outwardly; and yet the whole matrice rolleth not downe, being loosened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwise folke do thinke; for if it should fall downe so, it could not be restored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but seldome, yet there be many causes of the falling out of it. For, a woman falling from a high place, if she fall on her haunches, the pannicles and filmes that hold vp the womb, and the members adioyning, do breake, and cause this disease. Also it chanceth many times that in a sore travail of child-birth the wombe falleth out, because of the drawing out of the secundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Also many times it chanceth through negligent and vnskillfull drawing out of the child, specially if it be dead. Moreover it chanceth sometimes through a stripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or coming of enemies, or through perillous sailing, or through some such like cause, all the body being loosened, the wombe falleth out. Also sometime this euill chanceth (all the wombe being loosened) through resolution or weaknes of the pannicles and muscles, which thing chanceth specially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie and clammy. It falleth out most commonly by the mouth of it, and that which falleth out, is like to the egg of an Ostrich, differing onely in this, that it is bigger, or lesse in quantitie. There is no need of many signes, because the diuersitie of causes may partly be knowne by the constitution and state of the bodie, and partly by the telling of the sicke, and them that be with them daily. When this disease is but newly begun, you must endeavour to put vp the wombe againe, and to restore it into his owne place: for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarry so still, specially if age agree vnto it. For in them that are well stricken in age, the wombe being put vp againe, it slideth out againe through euery light cause. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a clyster. Likewise if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on each side: for otherwise it chanceth by their stretching out, that the matrice which is in the midst between the, is pressed together, & pent in a strait place, and so when it is fallen out, they let it and stop it, that it cannot be put vp againe into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you must lay the sicke vp right, so that her haunches may lye highest, her hammes bowed, and her legs spread abroad: then you must bathe & nourish abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme Oile, or Butter, or Mallowes sodden, or with the decoction of *Althea*, Fenugreeke, Linseede, or such like: and you must prepare Wooll together on a heap, in figure and thicknesse according to the

proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dippe it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *Hypocistia* infused in wine, and put it into the wombe, and you shall wrest and writh vpward all that which is fallen downe by little and little, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you must couer the parts about the priuie members with a sponge wrong out of *Posea*. The woman shall lie with her legges stretched out and ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more safegard to bind the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be swollen through continuance of time, and be stuffed vp with plentie of humours, so that the swelling do let the putting vp of it, you shall nourish it with decoction of Beetes, and then you must cleane it and wash it with Vineger, and strew in it Salt finely powdered; and when it leaueth swelling, then put it vp as is aforesaid. Then fasten cupping glasses with much flame to the nauell, and both the ilions or small guts: and apply continually to the nose odoriferous things. The third day (the wooll being as yet still in the wombe) let the woman sit in blacke soure wine a litle warmed, or in the decoction of Mirtles, Bramble leaues, Pomegranate rindes, and such like. This being done, let her lye vpright againe with her haunches highest; then take the former wooll out, and put in such another in the stead of the first, dipped in the same medicine. Also apply cataplasmes and emplaisters outwardly to the bottome of the belly, made of Dates, Pomegranate rindes, Lentils, and such like. Also Cerotes that are made of Malticke, wood of *Aloes*, *Ladanum*, Frankensence, Squinant, *Acorus*, Nutmegs, gumme *Tragacanth*, and such like. are good to be applyed. But let these things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Also during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eichue mouing, and such things as prouoke sneezing. And the wombe must be perswaded beneath with stinking things, but to the nose you must apply most odoriferous things; for the matrice flieth from stinking things, and it followeth and embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meats be such as ingender good iuice, & giue her odoriferous wines. Also the belly must be made soft & solable, lest if she should go to the stoole difficultly, the matrice should also fall out againe. But yet you must take good heed that the belly be not too much loosened, for then the parts adioyning are loosened, and so the matrice will fall out againe. Moreover if that part of the womb which is fallen out, hath through continuance of time by negligence bene putrified and rotten, and through continuall wetting of it with vrine & filthinesse sticking in it, it be exulcerated, you must cut off and seare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath bin knowne (as *Paulus* testifieth) that the whole matrice, because it was rotted, hath bene taken away, and the woman liued still.

Vicituratio.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the Mole of the matrice.

MOLE in Latine is called of *Artius* & *Paulus*, a swelling that is hardened, sometime in the mouth and entry of the matrice, and sometime it sticketh out in all the matrice, and in feeling it is almost like a stone. *Galen* in li. 14.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Unguentum.

Pessus.

Morsuli.

Pessus.

Ther. meth. defineth, *Mola* to be a peece of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seede, and much menstruous blood flowing into the matrice, and there kept, restrained and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioine together, and changeth it into the forme and fashion of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction & drawing vp of the sides, shendernesse of the body, euill colour, losse of appetite, and suppression of the menstruis. Also in this euill the pappes do swel, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with child, but in proccesse of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this disease, as is in conception. Many of them do make a suspicion of the Dropsie, but yet there is a difference betweene them two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the Dropsie doth, nor maketh a noise as the Timpany doth. But yet often in proccesse of time, the Liuer is cooled, and the Dropsie ingendreth. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the beginning. But howsoeuer it chanceth, the cure may not be neglected, but you must apply and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you must giue her meates that ingender good iuice, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that will cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, and carryings, and deambulations and bathes, and in her lying, let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine of the arme, and then you must purge her by *Pisula fatida*. When the bodie is purged and emptied, apply cataplasmes, fomentis inlessions, pessaries, ointments and cerots, which haue vertue and powe to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althea*, Mallowes, Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, Lineseed, & such like. For this purpose also it is good to apply *unguentum Dialthaa*, or *emplastrum Diachylon simplex*, or apply this ointment, R^x of the oile of sweet Almonds, ℥. iij. oile of Lillies, ℥. ij. B. Goose grease, and Hens grease, ana. ℥. j. B. muscilage of Lineseed and Fenugreek, ana. ℥. j. of the gummes, *Ammoniacum* & *Edegium*, ana. ℥. ij. roote of *Althea*, *Nigella* leeds, and *Daucus*, ana. ℥. ij. dissolue the gums in wine, and with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must put in Pessaries made with Butter, Swines grease, Harts marrow, Raisins, fat Figs, Lineseed, and Fenugreeke. After this you must minister such medicines as can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that we rehearsed in the Chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good. R^x the powders of *Diacinamonum*, *Diagalanga*, *Diacuminum*, ana. ℥. ss. powder of Diamber, ℥. j. powder of *Dialacca*, ℥. ss. Cinamon chosen, S. Iohns wort, *Calamus aromaticus*, *Asarum*, roote of Gladon, Annise seed, ana. ℥. j. seed of Rew, Ginger, Motherwort, Horehound, *Dictamnus*, Sage, ana. ℥. ss. Sugar dissolued in the waters of Motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is sufficient, & make lozenges, whereof minister daily the weight of two or three ℥. Also it is good to put in this pessary, R^x of the roote of *Asarum*, Gladon, and Madder, ana. ℥. ij. seed of Rew, *Nigella*, ana. ℥. ss. *Maioram*, Nutmegs, Cloues, Laurel berries, ana. ℥. j. *Saucine*, ℥. j. *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, ana. ℥. ss. powder them and searce them that haue need, and with Turpentine make a pessarie. To conclude, you must

must vse medicines that can dissolve and loosen congealed blood: for so there will follow excretion, and voiding out of much black blood and clotted. Also it profiteth marvellously to the taking away of this disease, specially if the euill haue continued long, to vse naturall bathes, and such as do ingender by themselves, which haue vertue to dissolve and dissolve. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearsed in the Chapters of the Dropie, may be vsed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of Inflammation of the wombe.

THe wombe is inflamed through many causes: as through a stripe, or retention and stopping of the menstruis: also by abortion, exulceration, vnto measurable lecherie, sitting on a very hard stoole, very long and swift deambulation and walking. Also sometime it chaunceth through cold, prohibition and letting the transpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be these: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the shere, the loynes, and the roots of the eyes: conuulsion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, and the necke, & declining of them contrary. Also paine of the stomacke, and shutting vp the mouth of the matrice, and pulse that be small and often. If the inflammation be feeble and small, the aforesaid signes will not be great and strong, and the wombe will be vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the signes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painfull all ouer, but if some part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greatest in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loynes most, and hard dung is withholden and stopped, because then the right gut is pressed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, & the strangury or difficulty in pissing is ingendred, because the bladder is pressed together. If the sides of it be inflamed, the parts about the priuy members are stretched out, and the legges are grieved, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is a paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you shall feele the mouth hard, vnpleasant, shut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neither age, nor state of the bodie, nor time of the yeare do let it, you must cut the veine of the hams or of the ankles (if the inflammation came not after abortion, or great voyding of blood.) Afterward you shall place the sick in a darke house, which is moderately warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you must rub the space betweene the ioynts, and also the extreme parts, that you may turne away the course of the fluxe from the wombe. For her meate, which must be little in quantitie, you must vse Pissan broth and rere Eggs: but there must be a day betweene she must abstaine from drinking of wine, and for that she must vse the decoction of Cinamon, or hore water. Also the belly if it be not soluble enough of it selfe, must be washed and emptied by easie and mollifying clysters. Outwardly you must apply vpon the loynes and about the shere, Wooll wet in Vineger wherein Roses haue bene sodden. Also

*Cause.**Signa.**Curatio.**Diet.**Localia.*

Dates or Quinces sodden in wine commixed with oyle of Roses, is good to be applyed. Also you must apply cataplasmes made with the meale of Linseed, Fenugreeke, and with Melilot, Plantaine, Lintels, Knotgrasse, Purslaine, Singreene, and such like: and that specially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *Erysipelas*. Moreover you must put into the matrice, woll moistened with oyle of Roses, or Quinces, or in the iuyce of Purslaine, or Singreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline and cease, you must come to the vsing of those things which haue vertue to release, dissolue and discusse. Therefore you must bid the patient sit vp to the loynes in Fenugreeke sodden, or in the decoction of *Althea*, Linseed, Mallows, & sometime also Motherwort, Horehound & Sage. Also you shall annoint about the priuities, & the loynes, Barley meale with Fenugreeke and Linseed sodden in *Mulsa*, or the decoction of drie Figs. Also put in pessaries made of Butter, Harts-marrow, Goose grease, Hens grease, and such like. When the cure hath proceeded, sundry meats and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifest, bring the sicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windinesse in the Wombe.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

THe wombe is puffed vp through cold, or humors corrupt in it, or through abortion or sore trauell in childbirth, the dore of it being shut, or a clod of bloud being in it, and stopping it. Oftentimes the windinesse ingendreth in the hollow bought and space of it, sometime in the bosome of it, which is euident to the senses, & sometime in the thinner parts of the substance of the wombe, not appearing to the senses. There followeth this euill, swelling of the bottome of the belly, with hardnesse & paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the stomach: and yet neuerthelesse it is stretched out on both sides, sometime to the shere, and sometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom also the head agreeth. Also many times wind breaketh out of the priuities, that the sicke may feele it. If therefore windinesse be gathered in the hollownesse of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noise in the bodie, such as chanceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: also if you beate your fingers on it, it maketh a noise like a timpanie. But when the windinesse is contained in the thin and slender passages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured first if age, the region, and the time of the yeare do not let it, by bloud-letting, fasting, and purging with *Hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you must vse fomentes, and annointings with oyle of Rew, or with oyle wherein Dill hath bene sodden. Also let her vse infusions made of the decoction of Rew, Peniroyall, Calamint, Horehound, Motherwort, *Althea*, and such like. Also apply cataplasmes, made of the seeds of *Asium*, Fennell, Caraway, Comin, Louage, *Daucus*, Annise, Fitches or Darnell meale, and such like. Also you must powre into the wombe such things as haue power to loosen and dissolue windinesse, as is, oyle of Rew, *Ammeos*, Origan, and the decoction of things before rehearsed. And if windinesse be included and stopped through the meanes of a clod of bloud, after the vsing of the aforesaid things, and specially infusions, let

let the Midwife put her finger being first annointed, into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by little and little. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplasters, and cerots that be stronger, as this is, R. Sothernwood, Origan, and Calamint, ana. ʒ. ij. seed of Tutsan, ʒ. ij. of Centorie the lesse, ʒ. j. Caraway seeds, *Amni*, ana. ʒ. ʒ. *Cassia*. ʒ. j. *Bdellium*, Armoniacke, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. oile of Rew and Dill, ana. ʒ. j. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerote and applye it to the wombe: *Cerotum*. also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the toppe. Also, for her diet you must minister foode that doth attenuate and dissolue windiness, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *Dianthion*, and *Diacuminum*, and *Diacalamintus*, and such like.

CHAP. XLI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

THe matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child-birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the agriued part, and at certaine times stinking and atteric humours are sent out from the filthie vicer: and other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as head-ach, and specially of the fore-part of the head, of the great sinews in the necke; and at the rootes of the eyes is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers ends, and other tokens declared before in the Chapters of inflammation of it. Therefore if the vicer may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *Specillum Oricularium*: But if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent forth. If the vicer be inflamed, the humour is little in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie, with great paine. If the vicer be foule and filthie, the humour commeth forth in more great abundance, and is matter with lesse grieve. If the vicer doth eate and feede, the humour is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vicer is inflamed, you must vse bloud-letting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is aforetaught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the body doth abound with vicious and corrupt humours. Also applye such medicines as do repressse and stop the flowing of humours and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuyces or waters of Purslaine, Plantaine, *Bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vicer be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicines, as is. *Prisan* with Honey, *Mulsa* with the decoction of the roote of *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, Wormewood, or Agrimonic. Those vicers which do eate and feede, must be washed with Mares milke, or Ases milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony and roote of *Ireos*.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Cerotum.

These things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annointed: but if they be deepe within, cast them in with an instrument called *Metrenchita*. When the vlcers be well purged and cleansed, you must vse such things as will close them vp: first gentle things, and then those that be of more effect. The cerote of *Aetius* doth especially please me, which is this: R. of white Wax, ℥. j. of fine oile of Roses, ℥. iij. and melt them together vpon the coales, and when it is cooled, then put it into a mortar, and put thereinto womans milke, or Asses milke, or Goates milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle vntill it be white; then powre out the aforesaid milke, and put in new mulke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about ʒ. j. of Saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oile of Roses, ℥. ij. the grease and marrow of a Goose, ana. ℥. ss. also you must put to oile of Quinces in stead of oile of Roses. You must apply this cerote to the belly and the haunches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by secret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that faculcie: as be, the decoction of Pomegranate rindes, Roses, Quinces, Bramble, Mirtles, Sumach, *Acatia*, *Hypocischidu*, with restrictive wine. To this place you may transerre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the Chapters of vlcers of the reines, the bladder, and the yard.

CHAP. LXII.

Of straightnesse of the Matrice.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

PHINOSIS in Greeke, *Obduratio* or *Coarctatio vteri* in Latin; it is a stopping or streightning in the mouth or necke of the matrice, whereby those places are made so streight that it will not admit nor suffer any seed: or if they do receiue it, they cannot hold it; for because of the knobby hardnesse it cannot shut together. Sometime it receiueth seed, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, and thereof is a child conceived, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great streightnesse of the places, it cannot be brought forth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and infusions that be of like power and vertue. Therefore you must apply fomentes made of the decoction of Fenugreeke, & *Hydrelaon*. Also you must vse pessaries that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *Aesipum*, that is, oile tried out of wooll in sheeps flanks or necks, Saltpeter, & Turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is, Mallowes, *Althaa*, *Nigella*, Fenugreek, Lincseed, *Ammoniacke*, *Bdellium*, Rosin, Grease, and such like, of the which you may make cerotes, emplaisters, and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, and euaporations made of aromaticke things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a drie sponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you must put

put is another that is thicker. Therefore you must haue many and sundry sponges ready. Afterward you must annoint vpon the sponges that you will put in, some medicine made of Alumne, and *Elaterium*, mixed with Hony, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if after the sponges be taken away, the place do not seeme open and wide enough, and inflammation be present through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applyed, then annoint vpon the sponge that you will put in this ointment: *Rx.* oile of *Irees*, \mathfrak{z} j. of *Vnguentum*, *fiae Turpentine*, \mathfrak{z} ij. of Goose grease, \mathfrak{z} j. root of *Irees* and Frankinsence, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. Waxe as much as is sufficient, & made an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oile of Roses or Violets in stead of oile of *Irees*. When the inflammation is ceased, and the place is open, annoint vpon a sponge a cerote made of oyle of Roses, and Goose grease, and vse that vntill it be healed, making the place a little soulder: but yet you must alwaies put in sponges vntill the end of the cure, lest that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe.

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrennesse.

STERILITAS in Latine, barrennesse in English; it is caused of the wo- *Cause.*
mans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part when his seed is either hote, and as it were burned; or else cold, thin, waterie, and feeble, as is the seed of old and feeble men: or when it is sent forth thicker then it ought to be: or because the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very short yard, so that they cannot cast their seed into the innermost place of the matrice, which also sometime chanceth through much fatnesse: for fat men haue such great bellies, that they cannot cast the seed into the deepest parts of the bodie. Also women of their part cannot conceiue, that haue their matrice either hote and fierie, or cold and moist, or foule, filthie and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* saith *5. Aphor. 62.*) the seed is corrupted or quenched in such. Also women that be verie grosse and fat, do not conceiue (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth *5. Aphor. 46.*) Moreover, women that be leane and slender do not conceiue, or if they do conceiue, they suffer abortion straightway, which also *Hippocrates* witnesseth *5. Aphor. 44.* Also some do not conceiue because their wombe is weake, or streight, or short: or because the vessels of it be stopped or shut vp, or blinded and couered, by reason of a scarre, or because the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or because the mouth of the matrice is too streight, or too wide open. Also vnwilling carnall copulation for the most part is vaine and barren: for loue causeth conception, and therefore louing women do conceiue often. Also age too great or too little, doth let conception. Therefore you must separate them that be young from carnall copulation, so that the man may be thirtie yeares old, and the woman eightene. But specially an vncomely and foolish shape and forme of the womans bodie doth giue an occasion to barrennesse. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate stature and height of the body, breadth of the loynes, and the share, buttockes sticking out, a handsome and conuenient greatnesse of the belly, a straight breast and *Signa.*
large pappes. The signes whereby the diuersitie of causes be knowne be these. *Hote distem.*
The hote distemper of a man is easily knowne by the abundance of haire, per.

Cold tempera-
ture.

Cure of both to
man and wo-
man common.

Cure of a wo-
man full of
corrupt hu-
mours.

Speciall blacke haire vpon the genitalles, and the places adioyning, from a-
boue vnto the middle thighs. Also this distemperature is lasciuious and readie
to carnall lust, but it is soone satiate and filled. A temperament that is too cold,
is declared by the parts about the stones being bald and without haire. Also
they that be of this temperature, be not desirous and prone to carnall lust.
Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the rest of the bodie, and be-
cause few menstruis are sent out, and that with paine, so that sometime the
womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is sent out is blackish.
Also there followeth this temperature, an infection or tickling to lecherie,
and drinesse of the whole bodie. A temperature of the matrice which is cold,
is knowne by suppression and stopping of the menstruis. Also they that haue
this temperament do despise vse of carnall lust, and haue the mouth of the
matrice drawne together. If through too much moistnesse barrennesse be
ingendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with
moistnesse, and the menstruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Drinesse
is knowne by the contrary signes to moistnesse. The rest of the causes may be
knowne, partly by sight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about
her. For the cure common to both, as well the man as the woman, it is con-
uenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a
meane and measure in labouring, eating drinking and bathing, and in all other
exercises. Men therefore that haue their seed corrupted through naughty and
cuill kind of diet, if they vse a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their geni-
tors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her selfe
with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idlenesse doth fill and
stufte the whole bodie with superfluous humours and excrements: but great
labour drieth vp the bloud, and consumeth the menstruis. Let her vse meates
and drinke easie of digestion, and such as the stomach may well comprehend
and consume. And you must specially obserue in their order of good diet,
that neither the man nor the woman be made fat: for they that be fat, are
vnapt to procreate and beget children, because their genitors cannot touch to-
gether, and also because they send out little seed. Moreouer, it is conuenient
that you giue vnto such as desire to get children, some accustomed and plea-
sant thing to eate or drinke before meate, which is most apt to prouoke car-
nall lust, and to ingender seed: as those be that do heate measurably, and pufte
vp with wind. Therefore wine in this case measurably drunke, is to be prefer-
red before water. For as the Prouerbe is, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*,
that is, If you haue not bread and wine, carnall lust will coole and pine. For
pot-herbs they must vse Rocket, *Orminum* (it is an herbe like vnto Horehound)
Erysimo, and other such like, which we haue rehearsed for them that cannot vie
carnall copulation. Rew, Calamint, and Mints must be eschewed altogether:
for Calamint and Mints, although they ingender much seed, yet that which
they ingender, is feeble and weake: but Rew doth altogether corrupt & de-
stroy seed. If a woman do not conceiue through the vice and corruption of
certaine humours, it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, and to a-
mend her with a good diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to
take as good heed as can be to those things that chance to the matrice, and that
their

their menstruis may flow without any impediment. Therefore when the purgation of their menstruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a measure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take some of those things that can prouoke and stir vp the purgation of the menstruis, as be herbes that be odoriferous and sharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, Fennell, *Apium*, Louage, and such like, whereof you shall find plentie in the Chapter of the stopping of the menstruis. After the purging of the menstruis, both the right side and the left side of the matrice is open. If cold distemper doth cause barrenesse, you must correct and amend it by foment, cataplasmes, and suffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heate: as those be that are made of Motherwort, Pennyroyall, Sage, Rew, Annise seede, Comin, Gladdon, and such like. Also it profiteth her to drinke *Castoreum*, and odoriferous seeds, Comin, Annise seed, and Iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearsed in the Chapter of stopping of menstruis. You must amend and correct a hote distemper of the matrice causing barrenesse with such things as do coole and moisten: as these herbes be, Lettuce, Mallowes, Gourds, Purslaine, and Orach, with such like. Also she must drinke wine that is thinne, white, and alayed. Also it profiteth her to sleepe, and to bathe in sweete water. Also you must apply to the loynes and about the priuities such things as do coole, as iuyce of Nightshade mixed with oyle of Roses, which also being layd vpon Wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceiue through moistnesse of the matrice, it is good for them to vse a drier dyet. Also they must exercise themselves much, and they must be rubbed in the vpper part of the body. Also, to the intent to purge out and turne away humors, let them vomit sometime after dinner, and sometime fasting: and you must drie them with scarcitie of meate, and let them eate flesh of middle aged beasts roasted, and giue them pure wine, that is mightie to drinke, but giue it them seldome. Also it profiteth to apply restrictive things to the matrice, as be, Roses, leaues of Briar, Galles, Sumach, Mirtles, Knotgrasse, Pomegranate rindes, and such like sodden. But you may not do this, vlesse the whole bodie be first purged. A drie matrice must be cured by the contrary to that which is aforesaid, as with baths of sweete water, annointings, and meates that do moisten. Let her vse wine that is alayed, being not yet very old. And if a womans conception be impeded and stopped through grosse humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *Hierapicra* in whey: and she must vse a most exquisite diet, and meates that do ingender good iuyce: but you must consume the flegmaticke humours with much labour, with sweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts, and all other things which be rehearsed in the Chapter of stopping of menstruis, which it behoueth not to rehearse here particularly. Also windinesse ingendred in the wombe, doth let the fertilitie of conception, and causeth barrenesse. Such women therefore as haue this, must first be amended with a streighter diet. Then you must minister both outwardly and inwardly to them, such medicines as can dissolve, disperse, and consume windinesse, as is, Comin, Rew, Dill, seed of *Apium*, and such like, which be rehearsed in the Chapter of windinesse of the matrice, and in other places. If shutting vp of the matrice doth cause barrenesse, you shall open it by casting in of ope

*Cure of cold
temperature
of the wombe.*

*Cure of hote
distemper.*

*Cure of a moist
distemper.*

*Cure of a drie
distemper.*

*Cure of grosse
humours.*

*Cure of win-
dinesse.*

Cure of a matrice shut vp.

Cure of an open matrice.

Cure of a writhed matrice.

doriferous clysters, and by vsing of fomentes and iniections made of Fenugreek, Linseed, Mallowes, and such like rehearsed in the Chapter of streightnesse of the wombe. And afterward you must proceed to stronger medicines, as Motherwort, Calamint, Peniroyall, and Marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vse a drying diet, and drying fomentes. And it is good also to vse restrictiue medicines, as be, the decoction of Galles, Bramble rootes, Mirtles, and such like rehearsed before in the cure of a moist distemper. Last of all, if crookednesse of the matrice do cause barrenesse, you shall direct and make straight the matrice with mollifying fomentes, for fomentes can do that best: but yet you may conueniently put in mollifying pessaries; but specially the decoction of Peniroyall, and Motherwort, and *Castoreum* drunke with *Pesca*, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* saith, that the carnall lust vsed backward is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures onely by other Chapters: for the particular cure of each cause must be sought out of his proper Chapter.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of sore trauell in child-birth.

Difficilis partus causa.

SORE trauell in child-birth doth chance either through default of the parent, or of the child, or of the secundine, or through some outward cause. Of the parent, if she be grosse and fat, faint hearted, and vnskillfull of paine; or if the whole matrice be small, or if there be inflammation of the whole wombe, or of some part of it, or that it be vexed with some other diseases: or if she be naturally weake, so that she cannot driue out the child: or if that she do labour before time. Also if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be some peece of flesh ingendred there, by reason of a bile or vicer going before. But default of the child is, if it be of an vnaccustomed greatnesse, or small and of a litle weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monstrous, as hauing two heads, or three feete, or if it be dead, and so doth not labour to come forth, or if it swell: or being aliue, if it be weake, so that it cannot proceed forth: or if they be two or moe, and do all rush suddenly together into the necke of the matrice, or if the child be fashioned contrary to nature. For the naturall forme of a child coming forth is, first with his head (his hands being stretched out vpon the thighs) and with his head declining to the neather parts, but straightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the best forme in coming forth next vnto this, is, first with his feete, hauing the hands stretched vpon both thighs, and so descending straight out. All other formes in coming forth, except these two, are contrary and abhorring to nature. The trauell is made difficile through the secundine: if it be not pulled away, because of the grossenesse or thicknesse of it, or if it breake before it should do, because of the thinnesse of it: for then the humour that is gathered together in the matrice, is sent out before conuenient time. Therefore the priuities be without moisture, and be drie at the time of the trauell, when moistnesse were necessary, which should make a slippery and easie going out of the child, and so through drinesse the child slideth out hardly. Also difficultie in child-birth is ingendred of outward causes: as of cold, which thickeneth the matrice,

matrice, and maketh the passages streighter; or through a great heate, which dissolneth and weakeneth the strength. But outward causes are knowne by the telling of the patient, or of them that sit by her. Weaknesse of the woman that laboureth, as fatnesse, may be knowne by the state of the body. Also by diseases that she hath had before you may readily come to the knowledge of weaknesse, and of many other evils. Weaknesse of the child is knowne by feeble and slow moving of it. Which if it be dead, it moveth not, and there is coldnesse of the bellie, and great paine about the navell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, and a naughtie colour of the face. Greatnesse of the child may be conjectured by the constitution of the parents bodie, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenesse and thicknesse of the secundine may be gathered and knowne thus; if none of the aforesaid signes be present, and the woman strong and lusty, and the child moveth quickly and easily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore you must place a fat woman downward in a litle bed, that is, hanging downward with her head, and her face towards the ground, bending and inclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oyle, Ducks grease, Hens grease, and such like: and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by little and little. You must comfort and encourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskilfull of paines in trauell, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and let her thrust it out to the ilions with all her might. If sore trauell in child-birth be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or as it were, adarctation and penning in of the child, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing, by powring in largely sweete wine and hote. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke, or Mallowes, or Linseed, or also egges are good, because they are of a loosening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the parts about the priue members, and the belly & loynes with the aforesaid decoction, or with some other loosening and mollifying medicines. Also it profiteth to vse hote infusions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house inclining to heate. Also it is good to vse infusions, and annointings with oiles that be hote in touching and vertue; and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a feuer nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, and you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanelly hote. Many do vse to such violent shaking of the bodie. And if any woman be weake, and haue sore trauell in child-birth through resolution of the bodie, you must comfort and refresh the bodie with medicines that do thicken and draw together, and with such meates and drinckes as do recreate, restore, and adde strength to the bodie; as be infusions and sprinklings with Mirtles, Vine leaues, Pomegranates, Roses, smelling to Vineger, and annointings with Wine mixt with cold oyle of Roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the matrice. If sore trauell do chance through an vnnaturall forme of the child in comming forth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and

*Signa.**Cure of a fat woman.**Cure of a fearefull woman.*

partly by making it straight. And if the head or foote be sent out first, you may not draw out the childe taking hold by that member, but put your fingers to the shoulders or haunches of the child, and thrust vp that againe which is come forth, into the conuenient place. If there be two or three, or more children, & do thrust altogether into the necke of the matrice, you must drue back the rest into the bottome of the wombe, & bring that out first which seemeth to be most readie: but if it do not come forth because the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through some other cause, you must come to drawing out of the child, or to cutting, which is taught abundantly of *Aetius*, lib. 16. cap. 23. and of *Paulus* lib. 6. cap. 74. For it is not our purpose to teach handie cure here. Moreouer, if the tunicle or secundine of the child be thicker and stronger then that it may be broken, you must cut it. Those that haue the humour which is contained in the tunicles or secundine, flowing and running out before the conuenient time, so that the places be dried vp, you shall wash it all about with whites of Egges, with the decoction of Mallowes, and Fenugrecke strained, or with iuyce of Pitsan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuersally helpe all that haue sore trauell in child birth, is this that followeth *Rx*. Cinnamon chosen, \mathfrak{z} ij. Mirrhe, *Cassia lignea*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. white Amber, \mathfrak{z} j. \mathfrak{ss} . beate them together, and make a fine powder, whereof minister in wine that is odoriferous, the wight of one drachme. Moreouer, the child being borne, oftentimes it chanceth that the secundine doth sticke fast in the wombe; which if it chanceth, then sometime the mouth of the matrice is found open, and sometime shut: and the secundine many times is still ioyned to the bottome of the wombe, and many times it is separate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open, and the secundine which is left therein do cleaue to some part of the wombe, being wound vp together like a ball, it may easily be drawne out. You must draw out the secundine with your left hand being warmed, and annointed with some fat thing, and put into the wombe. If the secundine be fastened and knit to the bottome of the wombe, you shall likewise put in your hand, warmed and annointed with grease, and take hold of the secundine and draw it out: but you may not draw it straight forth, lest the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but softly and easily, first pulling it crooked, bringing it this way and that way: then after that, you may draw it somewhat harder, for by this meanes you shall loosen it from the fastening. But if the mouth of the matrice be shut, you shall vse perfusions, and with the fingers of your left hand you shall labour to open it easily, and to make it wider by little and little. Which if you cannot bring to passe, it is good to apply about the priuities, fomentes, perfusions, and ointments that can mollifie, dissolue, and release. If she be strong, you must put into her nostrils at that time also sneezing powder, made of *Castoreum*, Pepper, and such like. For *Hippocrates* in 5. *Aph.* 49. writeth thus: That the secundine may come out, giue her sneezing powder, and let her stoppe her nose and mouth. Also you must minister vnto her potions that can prouoke mensstruis: which things aforesaid, you must do the first and second day. Moreouer, she must vse suffumigations, seething in a pot, Motherwort, *Ireos*, Saucine, Peniroyall, Calamine, *Dictamnus*, and such like. Then put the pot vnder a close chaire, vpon the which let

Pulvis optimus.

To draw out the secundine.

let the woman sit, being compassed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand, and labour to pull out the secundine, as is aforesaid; but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rent it, for within a few dayes after, being rotten and turned into atter, it will fall out. But because through the euill saueur and smell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head, and marreth the stomacke, they that are troubled with this euill, must be continually perfumed. For which purpose these things are good: *Cardamome*, *Bdellium*, with *Saucine*, *Frankensence*, *Storax*, *Ladanum*, wood of *Albes*, and such like. Also perfuming with icate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellously. Also simples, such as prouoke menstruis, be good: as decoction of Motherwort, and Laurell berries, with *Vinum mulsam*. Also make pessaries of *Mirthe* and *Cyclaminum* commixed with oyle.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

ISCHIAS in Greeke, properly is called a most grieuous paine, which is *ischias*. I wot to chance about the ioynt which the Greekes do call *Ischion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in English the huckle bone. The Latines call this disease *Ischia*, and they that are afflicted with this disease, are called *Ischiadici*. The Barbarous sort call this disease *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diseased with it *Sciatici*. It is caused through a grosse and flegmaticke humour, which being *Causa* congealed, abideth in the ioynt of the huckle bones. Therefore continuall crudities and rawnesse, and vnmensurable vsing of venerious acts, do not a little helpe the ingendring of a *Sciatica*. Also sometime swift deambulations and walkings, or suppression or stopping of the hemorrhoides, and custome of vomiting being omitted, and purgation of menstruis, or else other familiar and accustomed emptyings being impeded and stopped, and neglecting of exercises: for each of these do ingender abundance of flegmaticke humors. There goeth before this euill sometime paine of the muscles that be nigh vnto it, and specially of the loynes; sometime the beginning is in the huckle bone it selfe: also sometime it chanceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe onely about the hammes, and to some about the ankles, but in some all the leg is equally vexed with paine. Also in many, there is paine about the priue members, and then also the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in passing: and then chiefly the whole legge, from the hanch to the heele suffereth paine. Let the cure be *Curatio* begun with voiding and purging of the humour that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humours, before all other remedies, cut a vesse in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or also in the arme, on that side that is diseased. For sometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the body be stuffed with a flegmaticke and grosse humour, you must beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpose you must minister clysters often, made after this sort, or in like manner. *R.* of Centorie, Sage, *Verbasculi odorati*, Rew, *Clyster*, *Chamapityos*, ana. M. j. rootes of Gladon, *℥. j.* *Stachados*, *℥. iij.* seeds of Annise

*Vomitus.**Cucurbita magna.**When sharpe medicines may be vsed.**Simples.**Emplastrum.**Argentum.*

and Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. \mathfrak{ss} . Agaricke of the best, \mathfrak{z} . ij. root of Polipodie, \mathfrak{z} . v. Seeth these in sufficient quantity of water vntill the third part: then take of the liquor of that decoction, \mathfrak{z} . xiiij. of *Hierapicra* \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . of *electuarium Nidum maius*, \mathfrak{z} . iiij. of oyle of Lillies, \mathfrak{z} . iiij. oyle of Rew, \mathfrak{z} . j. the yolkes of two egges, salt, \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . comix them all and make a chyster. Also vomiting doth helpe them that haue the *Sciatica* much more then the purging downward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downward suddenly. Therefore you must prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterward you must minister vomiting medicines, beginning first with them that be easie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickened together, which can difficultly be dissolued and loosened, caused through Phisitions vsing sharpe medicines out of time, such be holpen by fastening on of a very great cupping glasse with scarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vse such medicines as can repress and stop the fluxe: for seeing the disease is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muscles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is sent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this disease, there is need of medicines that can mitigate and assuage, which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as those things which do coole, do thrust the humours violently to the ankle bone: so those things that do vehemently heate, do draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer you may not come to the vsing of sharpe medicines, till after bloud-letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man apply sharpe medicines to the diseased member before the bodie be emptied or purged, he shall make the disease hard to cure, because of a multitude of humours so thickened there, that they cannot be dissolued. For besides other things, it is made grosse and viscous, and through the heate and drinesse of the sharpe medicines, it suffereth as it were roasting or burning. First therefore you must irrigate and sprinkle the aggriued place with oyle of Rew. After you must apply more effectuous medicines, which do heate, and can draw humours from the bottome to the top, as be *oleum Vulpinum*, oyle of Pepper, *oleum Costium*, oyle of Iuniper, *unguentum Aragon*, *Mariatum*, and *Agrippa*. Also Sage, Rew, Laurell leaues, Elder, roote of Wallwort, Peniroyall, Saueine, *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and such like. Of the which you may make fomentis, ointments, emplasters, and cerotes. But if grieve be extremely painefull, then vse this which followeth, for it is most excellent against this euill. \mathcal{R} . Rosin of the Pine tree, \mathfrak{lb} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . *Galbanum*, \mathfrak{z} . v. melt them with a soft fire, and then streine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the powder of Masticke, \mathfrak{z} . j. and then spreade it warme vpon dogs leather, or lambes leather, and stricke it a good thickness; and before you apply this plaister to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following, \mathcal{R} fresh Hogs grease, \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . and take Sowers or Monkes peason in number twenty, and beate them both well in a mortar, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoint the places and the plaister, and warme the plaister against the fire, till it be soft, and lay it to the aggriued place, and let it lie nine dayes. If there be haire vpon the place, you must shauethem off first, and rolle it well, lest it slippeth away; then euery day morning,

morning and evening at each time let the patient take, ℥j. of this electuarie. *Electuarium.*
 R. of the rootes of *Acerus* or Gladon, being made cleane, ℥b. j. stampe them very small, (as possibly you may do) then take of clarified Honey, ℥b. iiij. and put in the rootes by little and little, euer stirring it, and when it is well sodden, put into it of Cinamon, ℥j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vse: and at the end of the nine daies, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay too the forenamed plaisters other nine daies, vsing the same electuarie, and procure vomite, as before, euery sixe or seuenth day; for that doth greatly reuert the humour. But in the beginning of the griefe, apply to the agriened place againe and againe, sponges wet in the decoction of Iuniper, or Sage, or Elder leaues. Afterward vse this ointment. *Aliud vnguentum.*
 R. of *vnguentum Martiatum*, ℥.iiij. oile of *Ireos*, and Lillies, ana. ℥.℞. iuice of Rew, and *Chamaepityos*, ana. ℥.ij. Honey. ℥.j. ℞. Sage, Penitroiall, Pepper, ana. ℥. ℞. Pellitory, Stauesacre, an. ℥.j. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also the vsing of this cerote profiteth, *R. oleum Costium and Vulpinum*, ana. ℥.ij. ℞. oile of Pepper, ℥.℞. *Opoponace*, *Bdellium*, *Storax*, ana. ℥.iiij. roote of Briony, Salt-peter, leaues of Elder, ana. ℥.ij. *Aristolochia rotunda*, Rew, ana. ℥.j. ℞. *Euphorbium*, ℥.j. dissolue the Gummes in very sharpe Vineger, and with Turpentine and Waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. *Ceratum.*
 And if the euill do remaine still, you must vse clisters againe: and then fasten a very great cupping glasse with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gashes with scarification. And if that the disease be not ended so, you must vse againe purging vomits, and the other remedies aforesaid; which being done, you must come to the vsing of Dropaces and Synapismes, and so to the vsing of burning medicines: amongst which, the roote of the herbe called *Iberis* is not the worst, being new digged vp in Sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a litle old Swines grease, being layed and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole shanke or legge. Also the leaues of it will do the same thing. And being so applyed, let it lie not past 2. houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be possible for them to suffer it: for it raiseth swelling, with burning and rednesse, as a Synapisme is wont to do. Afterward bring the sicke into a bathe, in the which, when he hath swet a litle, bid him sit downe in the vessell, because of the biting heate, and compell him to suffer it strongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring biting and gnawing with burning heate; then bring him out: from which alwaies almost (as *Ætius* witnesseth) although they be caried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commix much oile with a very litle wine, and shake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humour with a sharpe cloath, and couer the leg it selfe with very soft wooll. And truly (this being done) it hath bene wont to neede no other remedy for the cure. But if sometime it chanceth any part or remembrance of the euill to be left still, within a few daies after you may vse againe the same remedie. And certaine daies after, you may lay on the cerote which is a litle before described. Moreouer, among burning and blistering medicines, this is good *R. Mel anacardinum*, Leauen, ana. ℥.j. *Cantharides*, (the wings cast away) ℥.ij. Vineger, as much as is sufficient, and commixe them together. *Cauticum.*

Alind.

Vetus ratio.

Or this is good: *R.* Euphorbium, Salt peter, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Sope, quicke Lime, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Mel anacardinum*, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed together, may be of the thicknesse of honey. Let his diet be such, that his meate may be meanly thinne, and easie of digestion. Let his exercises be walkinge, continuall writhings, leapings, or dancings and running. It is good alwayes to haue the bodie soluble. And if the disease hath endured long, and cannot be driuen away with the afore said medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort as *Paulus* teacheth in *lib. 6. cap. 76.* and *Asim, lib. 12. cap. 30.*

CHAP. LXVI.

*Of the Gout in the feete and ioynts.*Podagra,
Arthritis.

Cause.

Signe.

PODAGRA and *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kinde: and therefore they differ not but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weaknesse of the ioynts, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humour do flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioynts, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *Articularis morbus*, the ioynt sicknesse. Sometime this euill doth rush in suddenly, being equally disperied throughout all the ioynts. But for the most part, the fluxe is wont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in some, paine doth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollownesse of the foote is grieved, either through chafing of the shoe, or some such like thing. The Goute taketh his beginning at the feete, whereupon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, & also to the ioynts of the huckle bones and the thighs; afterward to the hands, euery ioynt particularly being grieved. They that are taken extreemely with this dileate, haue paine in the backe bone ioynts, and in the ioynts of the ribs, and eye lids, and to some paine in the throte also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is engendred of continuall crudities and drunkennesse, and of immoderate vsing of lechery, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkings, through long standing, or often riding, by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions and fluxes, and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the minde, do not onely ingender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humours. Also many times the Cholicke being naughtily cured, is wont to be a cause why the ioynt sicknesse should follow. But for the most part, a disposition to this kinde of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posteritie. Also vniuersally abundance of all raw humours is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and do fasten themselves in the ioynts, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is ingendred of commixtion of humors. The outward causes may easily be knowne by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humours you shall know by the signes following. The humor of bloud, if it be much in quantitie, it causeth fulnesse, and great swelling, not onely of the veines, but about the skinne

skin of the whole member that is grieved, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very cold or very hote, and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the blood doth chance continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with blood, and are puffed vp and swollen. The conuenient age for this euill is youth. Also meates that ingender good iuyce, and nourish abundantly, were eaten before, and exercises were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is most afflicted, is Spring time. If the humour that floweth into the ioynts be cholericke, you may know it by the yellowish colour of the skinne. Sometime rednesse is mixed with the yellow colour, that is, when choler is commixed with blood. Also there is sensible heate and sharpe paine like lancing. Also moistnes sodainly bursteth out of the skinne, without euident swelling. The patient is ealed with cooling medicines, and reioyceth: but with hote things his paines augment. In the state and strength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirst. His vrine is cytrine, and sometimes also it is sharpe. There is wont to go before this disease, great cares, and wrath, watchings and wearisome, & a diet that was apt to ingender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare that is hote and drie, be apt to cause this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioynts be flegmaticke, the swelling will giue place to the thrusting of the finger, and it is loose and moderate: the colour of the member afflicted, is white. Old age is much afflicted with this humour, and a complexion cold and moist, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenesse, rest, and a diet that ingendered flegmaticke humours. If it be salt steame, great itch, and gnawing or biting doth trouble the diseased members. If the fluxe to the ioynts be of melancholy, which chanceth but seldome, the colour of the swelling is blackish. The age which doth most ingender this fluxe, is the declination of middle age. Also the complexion is cold and drie, and the time of the yeare, Haruest; a countrey that is cold and drie, and like state of the aire, and a diet that ingendereth melancholy. When the humor that floweth into the ioynts is blood, by and by you must let blood, not once onely, but often, taking it away by litle and litle: for if you do omit blood-letting, and do vse repercussive medicines, you shall be an author of great euill. For the blood being driven backe from the vnable members, it rusheth vp to the principall members, & that be necessary to life. Therefore in fluxes of blood, letting of blood is very necessary, specially in them that abound with blood. You must cut a veine in the arme beneath, right against the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this disease, cut a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the ankle, or the sole of the foote: for a veine being cut right against the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacie and strength. Then specially must blood-letting be vied, when this euill beginneth first to invade any man. For they that be vexed often with this fluxe of blood, do feele more hurt then helpe of blood-letting, specially if their bodie be weake and cold. After blood-letting you must apply remedies to the agrieved member, which do neither coole greatly, lest they should drive together and thicken the

*Signs if blood
do flow.*

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes by melancholy flowing.

Cure by blood letting.

Localia.

humors; nor heate vehemently, lest they should draw more humors vnto the diseased member. Therefore you must sprinkle the grieved place with old Vineger, and oile of Roses mixed together, specially if the cause of the paine do seeme to be deepe within. For Vineger of his owne proper thinnesse, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of Roses, which naturally can ease paines. But if the paine be aloft nigh the skinne, you shall helpe it greatly with oile and wine, applying it in Sommer warme, in Winter hote. Alterward also you must vse cataplasmes which can ease and cease paine without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of Fenugreek, Barley, Beanes, Lupins, Camomill, and such like: and you must see that those things be ever hote, which may well be, if they be continually changed, & covered ouer aloft with wooll. Also this medicine profiteth not a little: *R.* Goates milke, \mathfrak{z} . v. the yolks of two Eggs, oile of Roses, \mathfrak{z} . j. Saffron, \mathfrak{z} β . crums of bread as much as is sufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplasme: stamp these till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieved. Also you may make an emplaister or cerote of oile of Roses, Vineger, Rosin, Waxe, Galbanum, gum Aramoniacke, Frankinsence, Saffron, and such like. You must giue him meates which do extenuate, and that do nourish but little, as be pot-hearbs. Let him abstaine altogether from flesh, except it be birds of mountaines. Let him vse fish: that breed in stony waters. Wine if the intemperance of the sicke may suffer it, must altogether be taken away: for it is almost the onely reason whereby health should follow: which, seeing among a thousand, scarce one doth obserue, it is no maruell though there be verie few which be deliuered from this disease at these dayes. In stead of Wine let him vse water, wherein Cinnamon, Annise seedes, or such like haue bene sodden: or that drinke which is called foolishly nowadayes *Ipoeras*: the making whereof you may finde before in the Chapter of the Palsey. Let the sicke diligently auoide fruite, and carnall lust. Also he ought to haue a soluble belly alwayes, that can anoid out the ordure readily alone: which, if it do not well, wash it with some easie clister. If through flowing of choler the disease in the ioynts be caused, then your labour must be to void and purge out the humour that doth vex the patient, which you must do, as well by vomiting as by the belly downeward. Therefore you must surely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full state of it, you must apply medicines that haue vertue to coole and restraine; as be those that are made of Singreene, greene Roses, sharpe Sorrell, Nightshade, Plantaine, and such like often before rehearsed. In this kind of fluxe, many times, because of the vehemencie of the paine, you must vse such medicines as can cause astonishment. For the which purpose, it is good to apply the medicine which we described before, of Goates milke, crummes of bread, Saffron, and yolkes of Eggs, with the which you must commixe Poppy seeds \mathfrak{z} . iij. or *Opium*, \mathfrak{z} . β . or more or lesse according to the paine. Also for the same purpose, leaues of Hemlocke and Henbane do profite, being applied and layed on. But you must note, and take heede, when you be compelled to vse stupefactive things in feruent and vehement paine, that afterward you do recreate and nourish those members by such things as do heate. For vntill you do so, you shall make

Cataplasmata.

Vicus ratio.

Why few be cured of the goutte at these dayes.

Cure of the cholerike fluxe.

Stupefacientia.

Note.

make those members weake and intemperatē, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines be, Origan, Saurie, Mustard seed, Pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the body: but so, that you touch not the aggrieuēd member. Moreouer, you must minister in drinke those things that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine. Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe are wont to do good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially if they be ministred after a purgation: You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: *Diet.* for moistnesse increaseth the fluxe. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictive Apples and Medlars, and other that do coole and stoppe or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether from Wine, as is aforesaid. They which are diseased through flowing of fleame, you must beginne the cure of them with purging of fleame. The flegmaticke humour is auoyded by vomiting; but neuerthelesse also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euill, is downeward by the bellie, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioynts of the bodie. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleame, is to go out by the guts. For if it were drawne by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth perill: therefore it is most safe and healthfull to purge it downeward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this means the grosse humours may be prepared, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hunger and famine many dayes; for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon Hippocrates saith, 7. *Apher.* 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussive and dissoluing frictions, and strong clysters, and medicines that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and cease paine, and which can dissolue and drie moderately, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onely dissoluing and discussive things. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althea*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure or Barley meale applyed to. Also the roote of it sodden in *Aqua malsa*, and stamped and applyed, is good. And this ointment is good. *Rx.* of the oyles of Laurell, and *Trees*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. old swines grease, butter, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. the marrow of an Hart, \mathfrak{z} . ij. fine Turpentine, \mathfrak{z} . v. *Galbanum* dissolued in Vineger, \mathfrak{z} . j. Hysope, roote of *Althea*, Fenugreece seed, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. *Vnguentum.* Moreouer, let the meates that you giue to nourish him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is ioyce of Rice rootes, and such like: but yett flesh of the buds of mountaines roasted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *Acetum Mulsu*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him wine, in very little quantitie at certaine times, and let it be thinne, yellow and o'd. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, must be emptied either with *Viſturatio.* *Cure of a melanchollic.*

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

*A defence for
the gout.*

bloud-letting or by purgation. Use bloud-letting when the bloud is infected with melancholy, and use purgations when the patient inclineth to melancholy; but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to use one of the aforesaid things, but first cut a veine, & then use a purging medicine: which thing you must also do in other evils that have need of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you must use such things as can repress, stop, and also heat sensibly. After purging, use those things that can gently heat, attenuate and dissolve or dissolve, as is afore taught. But because knobs and hard swellings do ingender afterward in the ioynts, as well because of the grossnesse and earthie hardnesse of the humour that hath flowed thither, as also through the using of immoderate dissolutive and drying medicines, without mixing of such with them as have a mollifying vertue: therefore to take those knobs away, you must use those medicines which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnesse of the spleene. But specially very old and sharpe cheese, brayed in the decoction of very fat and old swines flesh, is good to be applyed. Also, for this euill, Figges brayed and layd on are good. Also *Althaea* twice sodden. Oates, Nettles, Briony roote, round rootes, Dill, Sothernwood, Mayweede, Horehound leaues mixed with Pitch, Sulphure and wine. Also you must commixe fat and greates of swine, Goates, Calues, and Geese. Also all marrows and other things that have vertue to mollifie and soften. And also bathings, after the inflammation is ceased, are most commodious and profitable to all that haue the Gout. While they wash them, put sponges wet in Vineger & Salt mixt together round about the diseased places, that they may remaine safe from humors flowing to it. They must wash themselves, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tarry long in hote water. It is best therefore that they be sprinkled and wet with hote water powred on them. Also it is profitable that all the bodie be rubbed with drie linnen clothes. Moreover, they that be cured of the Goute, shall defend themselves afterward from it by this meane: First, twice in a yeare, that is, at Spring time and Autumne, if nothing do let it, let him bloud largely. Also about those times, and oftener, let him use purging medicines. Also it is necessarie for him to eate little meate, and to abstaine from fulnesse. Also he must use meates that be easie of digestion, and which readily be distributed into the members of the bodie, and be without extremets. Let him abstaine altogether from wine, or let him use it very scarcely. Let him use exercise very often, and that before meate: for labour (as Hippocrates saith) must go before meate. And to conclude, they that desire to be freed from the Gout, let them remember this short and most wholesome precept of Hippocrates: The way to helpe and preserve health is, not to be filled with meates, and to be vnslouthfull in labowing. Also let his sleepe, and venereal acts be in a meane. As for remedies in this case, let Salt be brayed small in oyle, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it it helpeth greatly all those that will be free from this euill, except they be of a wonderfull drie temperature. And he must use annointings with that, morning and euening all the dayes of his life.

The end of the third Booke.

THE

THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An exposition of Feauers.



FEBRIS in Latine, a Feauer in English, it is an vnaturall heate, which taking his beginning at the heart, is spread by the arteries and veines into the whole body, and doth hurt and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not that he hath a Feauer, vnlesse the heate being immoderately increased, do offend the man, and hurt his operations and actions.

Febris quid.

Moreouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witnesseth) which do ordaine and constitute our bodie, (that is to say) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently; (that is) the hard and sound members in the bodie, the humours, and the spirits or aire: so also there be three kinds of simple Feauers. For if immoderate heate be kindled in the spirits and aire of mans bodie, it is called in Greeke, *Ephumera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in English it may be called, one day Feauer. This Feauer is like to hote ayre or winde, included in a bladder or bottle: for like as the ayre heateth the bottle that it is in, euen so, the spirits of a mans bodie, being heat more then they should be, do heate all the whole bodie. There chanceth in this kinde of feauer but one fit, and for the most part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon it is called *Diaria febris*, that is, the one day feauer: for they cease after the first fit, if they be rightly handled. But you must note that there be feauers called *Diaria*, which last vntill the third day, as those be which are ingendred of thickening and stopping of the conduits and passages. For although that this word *Diaria* be not of the very substance of such feauers, yet because they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching should be brieue and euident (notwithstanding that the word repugne against it) seeing that they be of the same nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may most rightly be called *Diaria* (as *Galen* sheweth abundantly in *lib. 9. Therapeutices, cap. 1.*) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kinds of *Diaries*: one which is named *Diaria* simply and without adiection or putting to of any word, which feauer doth not extend about the space of a naturall day (that is) twenty foure houres. Another kind there is, which is called *Diaria plurium dierum* (that is) a diarie of many dayes. It is called by another name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The second kinde of simple feauers is, when an immoderate heate is kindled in the humours, and

Three principall kinde of simple feauers Equiue. Diaria.

Note.

Diaria simplex.

Diaria plurium dierum.

Putrida.

it is called *Putrida*, that is, rotten, onely because the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hote water: for as that doth heate a coole vessell that it is powred into: so also humours hote aboue nature, do heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot, either within the vessels or without. If they rot within the vessels, then either all the humours do putrifie together, or else one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and alike within all the vessels or veines, or specially within the greatest, it causeth a feauer called *Synochus putrida*: which, to the intent you may perceine what it meaneth, you must note first, that the Physitians of Greece do call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fit remaining still continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many dayes: or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *Continens febris*, and in English, a constant or continuall feauer. But although there be one forme and likelihood of such feauers, whereupon they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For

Quotidian.

Two kinds of
Synochus:

Synochus putrida, & non
putrida.

Three sorts of
Synochus.

I

2

3

ovixus.

What a continuall
feauer is
Difference betweene
Synochus and

ovixus.

Three kindes
of continuall
feauers.

Tertiana continua.

Quotidiana continua.

Quartana continua.

some of them haue manifest signes and tokens of rottenesse: and some againe haue none at all, which (as we said a little before) be of the kindes of *Diaria*. We, to the intent that our doctrine may be the more eident, do call the first, *Synochus putrida*: and the last we call *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous sort, which call the last of them *Synocha*, and the first *Synochus*: seeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witnesseth) containe them both vnder the name or *Synochus*. Of these feauers which are named *Synochi*, there be three sundrie sorts or differences: for some of them do endure of an equall vehemencie and force from the beginning vntill the ending: those the Greekes call *Homotonos*, and *Acmaesticos*, that is, remaining still in the same force and vigour. Some alwayes increase and augment by little and little: those the Greekes do call *anabaticos* and *epacmaesticos*, that is, increasing and augmenting more and more. Some do decrease and diminish by little and little, those the Greekes call *paracmaesticos*, that is, decreasing. Moreouer, if one onely humour do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it kindieth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latines, *Continua febris*. in English a continuall feauer, which is when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remission and flaking of euerie fit. Whereby it is eident that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis*, that is, a constant feauer, and a continually feauer, do differ much asunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remission or flaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is sensible remission and flaking in euerie fite. Also the feauer *Synochus* hath but one onely fit, but in *Synechis* there be many fits. And they two agree in this, that neither of them doth leaue the patient sometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or else *Continua febris*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it causeth a continuall *Tertian*, or a burning feauer, which is called of the Greekes *Causos*. If sleame do putrifie or rot within the vessels, there ingendreth a continuall *Quotidian*. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the vessels, there ingendreth a continuall *Quartane*. And these continuall feauers be somewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will speake straightway. For

a con

a continuall Tertian agreeth with a true intermitting Tertian, in this, that it hath a fit as well as it every third day. And a continuall Quotidian agreeth with an intermitting Quotidian, because each of them hath a fit every day. Also a continuall Quartane agreeth with an intermitting Quartane, because both of them causeth a fit every fourth day. But yet these feavers do differ two waies, notwithstanding that they agree in the humour that causeth them. First they differ, because in continuall feavers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feavers, that humour is dispersed into all the members of the bodie; whereupon it chanceth through violence of spreading of humours, the feavers are purged out by themselves. Hereby also they differ another way, that is, the intermitting feavers slake betweene the fits, but the continuall feavers do not cease at all betweene the fits. Hitherto we have rehearsed what kindes of feavers humours putrified within the vessels do cause and ingender: now we will expound, what feavers humours putrified without the vessels do conceiue, ingender and kindle. If therefore an humour do putrifie and rot without the vessels, it causeth an intermitting feaver, which is so called, because the fit doth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceasing, and leaueth off betweene the fits. It may most aptly be called in Latine *Febris interpolata*, because the fits come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feaver there be three kindes, that is, a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartane. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rot without the vessels. It is so called, because it ceaseth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greeke is called *Amphemerion*, is caused of sweete steame being putrified and rotten without the vessels: and it is so called, because it returneth euerie day. We did not rashly say sweete steame: for if glasse steame do putrifie and rot a little, it causeth a feaver called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feaver in which the patient is both feaverous; and feruently cold, and doth feele both heate and cold immoderate in all parts of his bodie, both at one time together. To the aforesaid feaver doth belong a feaver, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feaver there is heate felt within, and in the bowels and entrailes: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartane is ingendered of melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceaseth two dayes, and returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of simple feavers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled in the sound, hard, and fleshie parts of mans bodie, and it is called both in Greeke and Latine, *Hectica febris*, and in English the feaver Hecticke. This feaver is like to a hote vessell; for as the vessell doth heate the water that is powred into it: so also the feaver Hecticke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshie parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humours of the body. And if this feaver do not increase, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it, then it is called *Hectica marasmodos*, and *marasmus*. And this (as Galen witnesseth) is vncurable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the driness which is left, being proper to old age, will kill the patient. Besides the feavers now of vs rehearsed, there is another feaver which is caused of breathing in of pestilent aire. But seeing this Feaver (as

Likeesse betweene continuall and intermitting feavers.

Difference betweene continuall and intermitting feavers.

Intermittens febris. Interpolata.

Tertiana intermittens. Quotidiana exquisita.

Epialos.

Lypiria.

Quartana intermittens.

Hectica febris

Marasmus.

Pestilent feavers.

Galen witnesseth, *libro primo De differentia febrium, capite quinto*) is ingendred of rottenesse; for the ayre about vs being corrupted with a putrifying and rotting euaporation, causeth also the humours of the bodie to rot: therefore it may be contained vnder the second principal kind of the feauer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let passe to tell, that some feauers be ingendred without disease or grieue in any member of the bodie, and some feauers be kindled through the inflammation of some member. Therefore, as the former feauers haue their names, so also each of these that follow haue their proper names. For the feauer which is ingendred through inflammation of the filme or kall that girdeth in the ribbes, it is called, *Pleuretica febris*. That which ingendred through inflammation of the lungs, is called *Peripneumonica febris*. That which chanceth through inflammation of the stomacke, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *Typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likewise all other feauers which ingender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerse names, according to the diuersitie of the member. Therefore in euery sicke person you must diligently discern feauers which come without disease of other members, from those feauers which ingender through inflammation of some member. Of the aforesaid feauers, some be *Typica* (that is) certaine and ordinate: and some be *Erratica* (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typica* be such feauers, whose fits, and slakings from them, do come iustly at their appointed time. *Erratica* are such feauers as be contrary to these, for they keepe no certaine and iust time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermission betweene them, as be those feauers which ingender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in some it remaineth vnmoueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearsed the kinds of simple feauers: it remaineth therefore that we declare briefly the kinds of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are caused two wayes: first, because these feauers aforesaid (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the disease of any member. Secondly, because these feauers, which be ingendred through inflammation of some member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are sometime compleate and ioyned together, and sometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witnesseth) is, when the feauers inuade the patient at diuerse houres: and confusion is, when they begin at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the feauers Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witnesseth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together, being both intermitting feauers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitriticus*: because all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the said feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be short, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feauers of the same kind, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feauers, and Tertiens with other Tertiens, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feauers of diuerse

Feauers ingendred of inflammation of some member.

The kinds of compound feauers.

Complications of Quotidians and Tertiens.

Hemitriticus.

diuerſe kinds are coupled together, as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and ſometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreouer, after the ſame ſort, feauers which are ingendred with inflammation of ſome members are ſometime mixed together, as if diuerſe members do each of them kindle a feauer proper to themſelues, or the affection where they ingender be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed many ſundrie wayes, firſt the kinds of ſimple feauers muſt be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that ſtudie Phyſicke: for vneſſe they know them very perfectly, it cannot be that euer they ſhould know well compound feauers. Therefore ſeeing the knowledge of them is very hard, in ſo much that oftentimes cunning Phiſitions are deceived in iudging of them, you muſt ſeek the ſignes and tokens whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to helpe the memory of the ſtudious, haue comprehended all the kinds of ſimple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

Of ſimple feauers there be three principall kinds. For vnaturall heat ingendred	In the humours, cauſeth <i>Putrida febris</i> , a rotten feauer. They do rot in two places,	Within the veſſels, & that two waies. For either	In the ſpirits of breath, cauſeth <i>Ephemerā</i> , or <i>Diaria</i> , whereof be two kindes, that is,	
			<i>Ephemerā ſimpliciter</i> , or <i>Diaria</i> , one day feauer. <i>Diaria plurium dierum</i> , othwiſe called <i>Synochus non putrida</i> , enduring three or foure dayes.	
			All the humours do putriſie & rot equally, & cauſe a feauer called <i>Synochus putrida</i> .	
			Or	
		Without the veſſels, and cauſe an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrifaction	One only humour putriſieth, and ſo cauſeth a continuall feauer. If there be putrifaction	Of Choler, it cauſeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feauer.
				Of Fleame, it cauſeth a continuall Quotidian.
				Of Melancholy, it cauſeth a continuall Quartane.
				Of Choler, it cauſeth an intermitting Tertian.
			Of Fleame that is	Sweete, it cauſeth an intermitting Quotidian, exquisite and pure.
				Glaſen, it cauſeth <i>Epialos</i> .
				Of Melancholy, it cauſeth an intermitting feauer Quartane.
In the fleſhie parts, cauſeth either,		<i>Heſtica Febris</i> , or <i>Maſasmus</i> .		

Of one day Feauer.

Ephemera
quid.

Cause.

Signa.

Common signes
fixe.

1

2

A naturall
vrine.

3

4

5

6

Particular
signes of Dia-
ries.Signes of
watchings.

DIARIA Febris in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke, in English, one day feauer; it is that which hath one onely fit, finishing for the most part in one day, at the most, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the first fit, and doth not exceede nor passe a naturall day, if it be rightly vsed: and that, because of the matter wherein it is, that is, the spirit or breath, which is easily dissolved and disperfed. Therefore *Galen* doth most worthily call this, the most simple feauer, because it is the shortest and the most gentle feauer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed either by ignorance of the Physicians, or through the intemperance of the sicke, or by errors of the ministers and assistants, whereby it turneth into another kinde of feauer, that doth not chance through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is caused, when as the spirit or breath is inflamed and heat about nature, without any putrifaction or rottenesse. And that chanceth many wayes: sometime through constipation, binding, or thickening of the skinne, which stoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or spirits which were wont to flow out by the pores, which because they be hote and sharpe, therefore they ingender a feauer. Sometime it is caused through wearinesse and vehement defatigation. Also through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digestion, sadness, feare, ire, vehement care of the mind, burning of the Sunne, cold, hunger, drunkenesse, and swelling of the kernels in the throte, and such like, which can heate the spirits and inflame them. The signes wherby *Diaries* are knowne, are of two sort: for some signes be common to all *Diaries*, and some be proper and peculiar to each cause. The common signes be fixe in number, whereof the first is the pulse. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulse in greatnesse, swiftnesse and ofttnesse. But it keepeth exquisitely that order, softnesse, and equalitie, which is according with nature. The second common signe is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doth little turne from a naturall state. An vrine that accordeth with nature, is subrupe in colour, meane in substance, hauing in it a residence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equalitie of heate, which in all *Diarie* feauers is gentle, pleasant and easie. The fourth signe is the maner of ending of it: for all *Diaries* are loosened and ended by a breath or vapor which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moistures, or sweet sweates. The fift is the wanting of euill symptomes and accidents, as be, vehement paine of the head, and stomacke, and other parts, abhorring of meates, vnquietnesse, vnstable thirst, and such like. The sixt common signe is, that all *Diarie* feauers be ingendred of an outward cause, which the Physicians at these dayes call a primitiue cause. But the particular signes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ from other, be these that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer caused through watching, there chanceth to them a naughtie colour, and swelling of the face, heauie motion of the eyes, for they scant lift vp the eye liddes: there is moistnesse of the haire of the eye liddes, and small pulses. For watching (as *Hippocrates* saith) seeing it letteth digestion, it ingendreth abundance of crude

crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the naturall beate, and looseth the bodie, whereupon there follow the tokens aforesaid. To be short, warchings do reuoke and pull backe nature from digesting: therefore they cause great cruditie and rawnesse, as well in the braine, as in the rest of the bodie, whereupon also do chance the tokens aforesaid. The signes of a Diarie caused of care and sorrow be these, leanenesse of the bodie. If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer: if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and drinessse of the eyes doth signifie both the said effects, but in thoughts and cogitations it is least, because the spirits and humours are least consumed: and it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effects, a certaine vnaccustomed palenesse or swartnesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her naturall colour. They which haue a Diarie through wrath or furious anger, haue neither hollownesse of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their eyes seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is a losinesse of the pulses. So also the signes of the rest of the Diaries being ingendred through perturbation of the mind, may chiefly be knowne by the pulses. For in sadnesse the spirits are carried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble, and rare. In feare new begonne, the blood and spirits runne inward, as it were to the spring head, and the mind is troubled. For nature being vexed, driueth the spirits hither and thither, which through moving are inflamed, whereby the pulses are made swift, necessitie compelling them, and the minde being chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits be dispersed, and vertue being feeble) it causeth such pulses as we spake of before in Sadnesse. They which haue a Diarie feauer through burning and heate of the Sunne, their skinne is hote and drie, their head seemeth to them to burne, because of the spirits inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and sometimes the veines in their eyes, temples, and forehead, and in all their whole face, are stretched and puffed vp. They that haue this feauer through cold, are taken with heauie distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth and keepeth the fumes excrements within the skinne. Moreouer, the skinne is lesse hote, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moisture, because the wonted fluxe is restrained and stopped through cold. Moreouer, there is no filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused of wearinesse, their skinne is made drier then it is in other Diaries, because exercise drieth vp the bodie, and draweth out the moisture of it; also their pulses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and be wearied about measure, haue small pulses, because of imbecillitie and weakenesse of strength: but they that haue vsed small labours, their pulses be great, because their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a Diarie feauer through drunkennesse or hunger, neede no signes to know the cause, for such causes may be knowne by telling of the sicke. They which haue this feauer through kernels, swellings or impostumations about the throate or mouth, or other where, they haue very great pulses, and because of the feauerous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equalitie of their pulses, because the instrument of moving is not letted, neither by obstruction, nor through abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

*Signes of care
and sorrow.*

*Signes of an-
ger.*

*Signes of sad-
nesse.*

*Signes of
feare.*

*Signes of
Sun-burning.*

Signes of cold.

*Signes of wear-
inesse.*

*Signes of
drunkennesse
and hunger.*

*Signs of swell-
ings about
the throata.*

*Victus ratio.**Wine good for
Diaries.**Curatio.*

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heate And their vrine appeareth pale, because the cholet that should colour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diarie Feauers is brought to passe by dyet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple, consists in this, that you minister vnto them meates that ingender good humours, and that be easie of digestion, and apt to be distributed about the bodie. Giue vnto them that are burnt in the Sunne, and to them that be angred, a diet which doth coole and moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heate moderately. Against watchings or sadnesse, or consuming with ouermuch care, vse a diet which can both moisten, and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drinesse that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreate and refresh their strength. They that haue a Feauer of wearinesse, you must allow them to eat as much meate as they can digest: for you must alwayes eschue cruditie and rawnesse of the stomach. For the substance of the bodie being dissolued and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easie of digestion. You must measure the quantitie of taking of meate, by the patients strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreouer, by the time of the yeare, the region, and such other like. But those whose temperature of the bodie is very hote and drie, such you must feed with meate by and by at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diarie feauer will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feauer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fed with a thinne diet which haue a diarie caused of a botch or impostumation; for in them the substance of the bodie is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diarie feauers, those which be properly named so, and do endure but twentie foure houres. For besides that it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweate (as *Galen* saith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, sorrow, or care; because great abundance of the spirits is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easily and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headache, whether they haue watched, or be feauerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pierceth the head quickly. And they that haue this feauer ingendred of great anger and furie, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, may haue no wine giuen to them; for the spirits and bloud are maruellously chafed. and boileth sore. Also you must driue from wine those that be feauerous through the swelling of botches or kernels in the throte, vntill it be loosened: not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feauer, but that it hindereth the cure of the botch. For it increaseth the flowing of the humours into the grieved places, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple Feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witnesseth) with baths. Therefore whoeuer hath this Feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath: but yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this Feauer caused of botches or impostumations, may profitably tarrie in the ayre or fume of the bath; because it both rarifieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also it prouoketh
and

and enticeth sweate out of the bodie: neither doth it hurt those patients with drinesse, as it would do those that have this feauer ingendred of wearinesse, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For seeing their bodie is dried vp altogether by those causes, they must be kept from the use of the bath, lest it augment their griefe. Therefore such may tarry the longer in a bath of sweete water being made hote, that through the moisture of it they may recover the humiditie that is lost, and is decayed in them. Afterward soft hands must rub them gently, with plentie of warme oyles, wherein there is no manner of restriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moisten, loosen, and soften the hard and stethie parts, and it dissolvethe and disperseth those things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the bodie. They that have this feauer caused through burning of the Sonne, you must cure them by and by in the beginning, with cooling, and with many bathings of sweete water, and onely with powring on a little oyle, without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiseth heate. Things that do coole the head being applyed to it, be oiles of Roses, and of vrispe Oliues, and other which be rehearsed in *libro primo*. These being first made cold, and then receiued with Wooll, and holden vp aloft, you must presse it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vpon the forefront of the head, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the sicke into a bath. If any person haue this feauer through cold, he must also be brought to a bath in the remission of his fit, and his head must be nourished both before and after the bathing with oyle of Ireos, and *oleum Nardinum*, and such like. For they that haue a feauer through this cause, haue need of medicines that can heate, and remoue constipation & binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feauer through hunger, in the declination of the fit, you must bring them straight vnto a bath, and powring vpon them much sweete oyle warmed, rubbe them softly, and you must keepe them long in the water of the warme bath, that thereby the drinesse which hunger hath caused in the body, may be corrected and amended by the oyle and the bath. When they be come out of the bath, you must recreate and refresh the strength with conuenient meates, and then you must bring them againe to a bath, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceased) you must giue them hote water to drinke, and by and by you must minister iuyce of Pulaon, and sometime they may take Lettuce, and they may eate fishes taken out of grauelly places, as being light meate, sodden in a white broth: which, what it was in old time, *Galen* sheweth in his fourth Booke *De sanitate tuenda*. If the feauer *Diaria* do chance through cruditie or rawnesse of the stomack, you must first consider whether the wombe be soluble, or else costive. If it be soluble, and those things onely which be corrupt do seeme to voide forth, then you must wash him, and nourish him in the remission of the feauer; but not vlesse first you diligently behold and foresee all things chancing to the stomacke. For if such abundant emptying hath bene already, or doth now continue, so that the vertue and strength of the sicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and wash him both together. But you must diligently behold first those things that be about the stomacke. You must vse about the sicke, if the emptying do endure no

Note.

Sleepe dige-
steth.

longer, irrigations and sprinklings of the stomacke with oyle of Wormwood, and other things which are rehearsed before in the third booke, in the Chapter of weakenesse of the stomacke. But those things that be applyed to the stomacke, let them be well heat: for those things that be applyed bloud-warme do dissolve and loosen the strength of the stomacke. If the belly be altogether costive, handle and feeble the sides, and then the whole body, and consider whether the meate is descended into the small guts, or into the Colon. And if the meate abide yet still in the stomacke, let the sicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throate, and vomite vp all that vexeth or troubleth him. Then you must foment and nourish his hypochonders and sides, and let him rest. But when the foode is descended already into the bowels, you must bid them lie with their face and stomacke downward, and you must nourish the bellie and prouoke sleepe, for that digesteth crudities marvellously. After sleepe to bring out extrements from the wombe, you must put in a suppository, or cast an easie clyster to loose the wombe. They which have a feauer caused through swelling of the kernels of the throate, in them you must first cure the bile or botch that caused the inflammation, after that sort that *Galen* teacheth in his Bookes *De medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they must be washed. Also they must be nourished with a thinne and scarce diet, because in them the substance of their body is not lost. Also they must be kept from wine for the causes aforesaid. And this sufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* feauer, being so called *simpliciter*, without any addition.

CHAP. III.

Of a *Diaria* lasting moe dayes.

*Diaria pluris
dierum.
Synochus non
putrida.*

Cause.

Signa.

1

2

3

THERE is another kind of *Diaries*, which is named *Diaria plurium dierum*, for no other cause but because it extendeth and continueth vnto the third day. It is otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*. The ancient Authors haue called this feauer *Diaria*, because it is of the same nature that right *Diaries* are of: for it endeth after the first fit, if it be rightly and well handled. This feauer is caused of thickning or stopping of the pores and passages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witnesseth) doth chance either because the small pores are stopped vp, or because they waxe narrower, or also because the body it self is moderately thickned; which is wont to chance through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicine that is very sharpe and restrictive, or through burning of the Sunne, and other such like which can drie the skinne. This feauer may be knowne first by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together then it is wont to be: Secondly you may know this feauer by mouing of the beate: for at the touching it seemeth gentle, and easie; but afterward, if you hold still your hand longer, the beate is sharper. Thirdly, you may know this feauer by the vrine, which is much altered from his naturall substance and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine should be made higher coloured. Fourthly you may know it by the bignesse of the body, which keepeth one state, and doth not fall away, because the thicknesse of the skin doth let the dissolving of the vapours and moisture; and therefore also

also the eyes are not hollow, nor drie, but more swollen, and full of moisture then they should be naturally. Fifthly you may know it by the pulse, which is equall, great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them blood, and you must draw out so much blood as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a suretie, that vnlesse you vse this remedie to those which by nature haue their bodie vnapt to breathe out vapours because of abundance, it will come to passe, that either they shall be choked, or be in danger of often swoounding, vnlesse great strength, or much sweating, or large fluxe of blood do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by blood-letting shortly after minister meates and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meates which can do this in feauers (as Galen witnesseth) be *Ptisane* and *Mulsa*. The medicines be *Ptisane*, and *Oximet*, and things sodden in *Mulsa*, as be *Calamint*, *Hyllope*, *Origan*, *Serpillum*, *Ireos*, and *Apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they inflame and kindle feauers, as also Wine doth. *Oximet* doth onely scoure and cleanse strongly, and doth not inflame & kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions and stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heate is diminished by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottenesse of humours in the pulse, nor cruditie of rawnesse in the vrine: if the suspected houre wherein the feauer tooke the patient the first day be after noone, you may holdly wash the patient quickly long before sixe of the clocke, but it is sufficient if you end the washing three houres before. Likewise if you suspect the tenth houre, you may wash him the seuenth houre, for three houres or foure is space enough betweene the bathing and the fite. When the bodie hath bene heat in the bath, being first annointed with sweete oyle warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following do scoure and cleanse most moderately, that is, meale of *Ernum*, and of Barley, and also of Beanes. Moreouer, *Mulsa*, which is waterie doth the same. Stronger things be, *Ireos*, roote of *Panax*, and *Aristolochia*, and *Mulsa* which is of a meane commixtion; but that *Mulsa* scoureth most of all that is pure, which is, when there is but a litle water mixed with Honey, so that the melted Honey may easily enter into the small pores of the skinne. Stronger scourers then these, be, the froth of Salt peter, the Salt-peter it selfe, and then *Aphorismum*: Sope is one of them that is able to scoure most of all. Moreouer, after a bath, you must giue the patient nothing but water which hath had a litle *Apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth innade the patient in the evening, or two houres sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him onely iuyce of *Ptisane*. Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them, you may wash him againe, if you will, and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chaunc any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit which you had the first day, and

then you must consider the urine and also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperature when there is left but a little obstruction. Wherefore you shall wash him the fourth day, and give him meate, having respect to the aforesaid considerations: and you shall hope that nothing will be left the fifth day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feauer is not of the kind of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.

*Continens
febru.*

Cause.

Signa.

SYNOC^HUS in Greeke, is a Feauer, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many dayes, or else it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens Febris*, and in English it may be called, a constant and stable Feauer. There be three sundry differences of these constant feauers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This Feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens Febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vessels, which be about the arme-holes and the share; which is wont to chauce, when a feauerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the bodie. For whatsoever things be hote and moist, and may hardly breathe or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kinde of Feauer is not ingendred nor kindled in folke that be leane and slender, nor in them that haue a thinne and rare state of their bodie, nor in a cold temperament of the bodie, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it ingendreth in them which do abound with blood, and in those that be hote, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises and diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshie, grosse, and thicke bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hore excrements. They which haue this feauer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent and equall: the constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer then it should be by nature, but the quicknesse and frequencie of it, is according to the greatnesse of the feauer, & these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this Feauer there be signes of rottennesse, & that as well in the urine, as in the pulse. and by the qualitie of ynkind heate. The cure of this Feauer must be begunne with letting of blood: and if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing to stoppe or let it, you must draw blood till he do faint & swoond. For if the patient be strong, this is the chiefeft remedie for this kind of Feauer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickly through the fainting and swoounding. As for cooling of the bodie, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, or more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer, in such bodies there chanceth of necessity, loosnesse of the bellie, or a laske, and oftentimes also vomiting of choler: which things, moisture or sweats do gather from the whole bodie. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these Feuers, not to marke the number of days past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe & strong, you may let blood, not only the sixt or seuenth day, but also

in the dayes following. But if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not onely the remedie of bloud-letting hath bene pretermitted and kept back, but now also either through ignorance of Physitians, or through feare of the sicke or his assistants, in processe of time you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discern & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt will be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke will drinke, and you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath bene vsed to drinke cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommodity would arise through it, you shall abstaine from it, and v^e other remedies whereby obstructions may be taken away, and abundance auoided, and that the burning heat of the feauer may be cooled and eased. The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinke ministred immoderately, and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse and clammy humors to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue ingendred obstructions, or rottennesse, or inflammation, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like effects. As often therefore as a feauer is kindled of such humors, cold things are not good for their auoiding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencheth the feuer that is already kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feauer remaineth still, of necessity another feauer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worle then that which went before, because that the body is thickened through cold. And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is, that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall distemperature, or by some vice that they haue gotten. So in some it hath bene found that their throte hath bene so hurt, that they could not swallow; in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest; in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut Colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reines, or the bladder, or some other such like member is so stricken with cold, that it is made weake and vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderate drinking of it out of time, haue by and by bene taken with difficultie of breathing, and with crampe and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinewes. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling, or scame, or bloud, or any knobby hardnesse, you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them that a raw humour doth hurt with obstruction or rottennesse. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, and that you do perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sicke haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may more boldly minister it: for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them that haue but litle bloud and flesh. Therefore by these things before rehearsed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefe remedies of these kinds of feauers called *Synochus putrida*, be these two, bloud-letting, & drinking of cold water: but bloud-letting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient will suffer it, and drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feauer is greatest, and when you are compelled to leaue bloud-letting.

When cold things should be ministred.

Discommodities of cold drinke.

Of cold water.

Continens febris hath two remedies chiefly.

Q

You may not
let blood on a
full stomach.

Diet.

When the sicke
should be fed.

Febris con-
tinua.

Cause.

Three diffe-
rences of con-
tinuall fea-
uers.

Signa.

You must note well the time when you should let blood, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if cruditie and indigestion of meates do go before, you must refraine so long time from blood letting as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there will follow of necessity any fluxe and emptying, you must leaue so much blood still as will voyde by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of blood-letting the menstruis do chance to flow, or also that the hemorrhoides do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the fluxe, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shall let nature work alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much blood, that thereby vnder them both conioyned together, you may bring to passe your request and expectation. Let the diet in these feauers be chiefly this that followeth. In those that haue bene let blood, minister to them two houres after blood-letting, iuyce of Pisan, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe Pisan broth. In this diet the patient must persist and continue vntill the third day. You must note, that in these feauers called *Synochi*, the patients must be fed at such time as haile folke are wont to eat, and when they feele most ease: for so they shall the easilier suffer and beare their foode. And if they be strong and lustie, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feauer straightway, the patient must vse a most thin and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weake and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently forelec, and ponder his strength and abilitie. He that desireth to know more of this kinde of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him reade *Galen in lib. 7. Therapeut. meth. cap. 5.*

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

FEBRIS *Continua* in Latine, *Synochis* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall feauer: it is a feauer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits, but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heate betweene the fits. A continuall feauer is caused, when one onely humor doth putrifie and rot within the vessels. And there be three differences of this feauer, according to the diuersitie of the humour that putrifieth in the veines: for if choler do putrifie within the vessels, it ingendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *Causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feauer. If fleame do putrifie and rot within the veines, it ingendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feauer, then that none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feauer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feauer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian, differing onely in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffenesse, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continuall Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it onely differeth from it, because it doth

not intermit and flake betweene the fits. In like manner the continuall Quar-
tanes haue their signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to
quiet and rest betweene fits. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said,
that continuall feauers be of the kind of rotten feauers, it is necessary for him
that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrify-
ing and rotting. Therefore two things must be taken heed of at the first, where-
of one is the feauer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feauer you must also
regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feauer which is now kindled
and inflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of
the feauer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things
must be considered concerning the rottennesse: one is, that the rottennesse al-
readie ingendred may be healed: the other is, to let and stop that which is ready
to ingender putrifaction. That which is readie to ingender, is caused through
perspiration and breathing out, if it be impeded and letted. So that of this o-
ther two considerations do spring: first, that the humour which is withholden
may be purged and emptied out: secondarily, to prohibite and keepe in that
which is to be withholden and kept backe: it will be prohibited with those re-
medies which do heale obstructions. Againe note, that the obstructions which
are ingendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted and
driuen backe away. You must cure the obstruction which is already ingen-
dred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you
shall driue away and stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and
stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors: whereby it appeareth eu-
dently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing,
must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing therefore that (when
we haue examined the matter particularly) there be five things in continuall
feauers from the which considerations in curing be gathered, that is, the fea-
uer, rottennesse, perspiration impeded and letted, obstruction, and abundance
of obstructiue humours, you must begin the cure with the last consideration.
Therefore seeing that the abundance of humours that cause obstructions, doth
require purging and emptying out, in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the
patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you
must let him bloud. You must then specially let him bloud, when the whole
body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veins be swollen vp, or
stretched out, for that doth signifie abundance of bloud. When the multitude
of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the curing of
obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be
taken away. But because most of those medicines be hote, it is to be feared
lest they should increase both their rottennesse and also the feauer. Therefore
you must vse to minister those things that can deliuer the patient from ob-
struction without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in
the second Chapter of this booke. When those humours that caused the obstru-
ctions be diuided, cut, and scoured, you must assay to auoyd and empty them
out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats. But seeing those things
which should bring this to passe, be hote, of necessity the rottennesse and the
feauer must be increased by them, therefore, as much as we may, we must

*A compendi-
um of curing
in feauers.*

*There be five
things to con-
sider in fea-
uers.
Curatio.*

Bloud-letting.

*How obstru-
ctions should
be healed.*

Bathing doth
coole.

Cure of putri-
faction.

Cure of the
feauer.

Diet.

labour to choose such a thing as doth heate but little, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all (as in this case a bath) you must vse that. *Galen* teacheth in *libro tertio de Sanitate tuenda, capite tertio*, that a bath can do this. For he saith, that the strength of sweete waters made hote, if they be temperate, be hote and moist, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moist. And a little after he saith, A bath if it be discretely vsed, mollifieth the hard and stretched parts, and it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any sticke within the skinne. These things being done, and those humours being scoured out which were compact together in the skinne, so that the obstruction and perspiration impeded be taken away, you must come to the cure of the rottenesse. Therefore at this time you must first corroborate and restore the strength, whereby it may exuperate and overcome the rottenesse, and be able to digest the humours. And you shall heale the putrifaction and rottenesse, if you do voyd and emptye out by all meanes that which is corrupted and putrified. That which is left still within, you must bring to an exquisite meane by moderate motions, and coole breackings: and you shall worke the emptying out of your humours by vrine, egestions, vomiting and sweats. Last of all, you must proceed to the curing of the feauer, which must be done by cooling things. For every feauer, inasmuch as it is a feauer, must be remedied by cooling and moistning things. But to know how each of these things should be rightly done, it is partly rehearsed before, and partly it shall follow hereafter. In continuall feaues, whose state or vigor of the disease will come at the farthest within seuen dayes, if their strength be lusty, and their age agreeing to it, you must ordaine them a very exquisite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feaues, whose vigour, force, and state is longer then seuen dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the first you must feede them liberally: when the vigour and state draweth neare, their diet must be more scarce, but in the state and vigour of the disease, you must feed them most thinly and scarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, and feed him most, increasing his diet in like case as the vigour and state of the feauer doth diminish, as *Hippocrates* saith in the first Section of his Aphorismes.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning Feauer.

Continua Ter-
tiana.

Difference be-
tweene a bur-
ning feauer &
a Tertian.

ARDENS Febris in Latine, *Causos* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall Tertian or a burning feauer: it is of the kind of continuall feaues, as is declared in the former Chapter: and it is caused when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therefore it agreeth with an exquisite intermitting Tertian, because it is ingendred of the same humour that the other is. But yet it differeth from it, in that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is carried all ouer the body, but in a burning feauer the choler is contained in the vessels together with the bloud. Hereupon it cometh that the fits in a burning feauer do not intermit nor slake: but when the choler in them is stirred most vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing strong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feauer endeth. Which *Hippocrates* declareth 4. Aphorif. 58. saying, He that is taken with a burning feauer,

if

if it be vehement cold, and rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the disease. A burning feauer is knowne by these signes: their tongue that haue this feauer, is drie, grosse, rough and blacke; there is gnawing of the stomach, intollerable thirst, watchings, and also many times raving, and egestions of the wombe be liquid and pale: which signes Hippocrates rehearseth in lib. 4. *Signa.*

Acutissimum. They which haue this feauer, let them lye in a cold place, and in a sweete ayre, from whence pure wind commeth. Also let him lye in a soft featherbed, which must be made oftent: let the coverings be very thin and cleane, *Diet.*

which must be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great widenesse, that he may easily moue his members that be hote to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, stirre it with a fanne, or such like. You must giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moisten, as is, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrell, Pusan broth, and such like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or Veriuiue. If the sicke haue vsed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a spoonefull or two, or mixe Iulep of Violets, or some Iulep of Roses, or such like with decoction of Barley. Moreover, the stomacke must be refreshed with iuyce of Roses: and other cooling things must be vsed, as strewing of the floore with greene Vine leaues, & with the leaues and floures of Roses water Lillies, and Violets, and by sprinkling and powring often of cold water on the floore vp & downe. For the cure, in the beginning straightway, you must cut a veine, if age, time, vertue, and strength do permit it. Hereupon Hippocrates saith in his Aphorismes thus: In great burning feauers, if blood be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the state of the whole bodie is cooled, and the feauer is quenched. In many also a lax is caused, and sweats flow forth. Afterward let the breast and stomach be nourished with Dates braied with oile of Roses, or of Quinces, or of water Lillies. Also other cooling medicines be good, as be Vine buds braied, Endiue, Succory, Knorgrasse, Lettuce, Sorrell, Vine leaues, & such like. Also a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oile and water made hot, and applyed to the breast and stomach, it ceaseth the burning of feuers maruellously. Also a handfull of wooll soaked in water and oile of Roses heat greatly, & being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breast, doth easily quench the vehemency of the burning heate. These things must be hote, for warme things do dissolue the strength & vigor of the members. Neither shall you rashly also compixe Vineger against vehement burning feauers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increasing of the fit: for at that time the effect of the bodie is driuen about, & the heat is in the inward members: therefore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermost parts, and be an occasion of greater hurt: for fierie heate being oppressed and stopped within, it raiseth a more vehement & burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, strength, and vigor of the fittes, when the heate is alreadie spread ouer all the bodie, these cold things may be well applied: for then the residue of the vniuersall heate which remaineth about the inward members may be really quenched. Hereupon the patient will begin to breathe better, & shalbe troubled with an easier thirst. Also some by breathing out of a deawie vapor do fall on sleep. The epitheme which you must vie in this feauer, is this. Rx. of Rose water, and Lettuce water, *Curatio.*
Outward medicines.
Epithema.

When cold
water may be
ministered.

Nota.

To whom a
bath is good.

Enctions.

ana. ℥. iij. ꝑ. waters of Endive and Succory, ana. ℥. j. ꝑ. good Vineger, ℥. j. all the three Sanders, of each, ℥. ꝑ. seed of Purslaine, gra. iij. commixe all together, and make an epitHEME. Moreover, when the vigour and strength of the sickness is at hand, you may safely minister pure cold water, if none of those things which be rehearsed in the third Chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very little, do let it, you shall minister the first draught refrained after this sort. Take one cup full of temperate water, and commixe five cup fuls of pure cold water with it, and so minister it to suspected bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feavers, you must needs bring to passe one of these things, that either the cholericke humours may be voided and emptied out, or else that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by sweats, vomits and egestions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water, wherewith very often great burning feavers haue bene cured quite and cleane. A bath of sweete water is good onely to them which haue a burning feauer without any swelling tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Erysipela*: but if signes of concoction do appeare in the urine, it is much more conuenient for the patient. Let the sicke which in a vehement burning feauer desireth to vse a cold bath, be yong, and of a moderate state of the body, as also *Hippocrates* witnesseth and monisheth. Neither let it be done to him in Sommer time, and in hote times of the yeare, and in the vigour and strength of the feauer, and let it be one that hath vsed to wash in cold water in his health. But when the feauer waxeth more moderate, and vertue is stronger, and if there be signes of concoction together with it, a bath of sweete and temperate water is sufficient, and doth good. For annointings, oile of Cammomil doth good, specially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter whereof you should make competent remedies against burning feavers, you shall find in the Chapters following.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

Cause.

Signa.

Differences of
coldnesse in a
Tertian and
Quartane.

E*Xquisita Tertiana febris intermittens* in Latine, an exquisite and pure intermitting Tertian feauer in English, it is caused of choler carried by the sensible parts of the bodie, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, sincere, and vnmixed. Therefore seeing it is ingendred of choler that is sincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Physitians exquisite. This feauer ingendreth in persons that be cholericke by nature, and in their flourishing age, in Sommer time, in hote and drie regions, and when the weather is hote and drie, and in bodies oppressed with labors, watchings, cares, deep thoughts, and burning of the Sunne. Also this feauer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fit causeth a vehement cold, rigour and stiffenesse, and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearsed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the cold in a Quartane feauer, thus, because in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerrated: but in a Quartan the cold seemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile tolke feele in Winter time. Therefore a Tertian feauer doth not chance without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the flesh: but a
Quartane

Quartane feauer doth not by and by the first day innade the patient with vehement rigour and cold: For as it proceedeth forward and increaseth, so also the rigour and cold increaseth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a Tertian feauer, an exact and perfect order and equalitie of the pulses: but yet in the increasing of the fits, the pulses are raised and prouoked to vehemencie, greatnesse, and frequencie. Moreover, in the vigour and force of the feauer, it causeth thirst, and burneth vp the patient, so that he casteth off the clothes to make him bare and naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate spreadeth equally all ouer the bodie, so that the breast is no better then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the first touching you shall feele much gnawing and biting heate, bursting out as it were with a certaine vapour and moisture: but not long after your hand will vanquish it, if you do hold it still. Moreover, there followeth this feauer vomiting of choler, and the bellie is laxative, and they pisse vrine that is cholericke, subruise, and somewhat yellow, and moderately thicke. Also their vrine hath by and by a white cloud, or a laudable sublation in the midst. If the vrine be redder, and if in the first fit there do appeare neither sublation in the midst, nor cloud, the feauer will extend and remaine seuen fits. Moreover, this feauer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the space of twelue houres at the most. For this is the longest time of a fit in true & pure Tertians. But sometime the fit is shorter then the aforesaid space of time, hauing difference more or lesse according to the quantitie and qualitie of choler within, or because of the strength of the patient, or through the present affect of the patients bodie at that present time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure Tertian feauer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, is not called an exquisite Tertian, but an extended and stretched out Tertian. And if the feauer doth innade the patient daily with vehement rigour and cold, and with the signes aforesaid of the vrine and pulses, as also of other things afore rehearsed, then it is called *duplex Tertiana*, a double Tertian. But as for an exquisite Tertian, because it is ingendred of pure choler moued about, you must moisten it and coole it, as much as you may possibly by all meanes. For this humour (as *Galen* witnesseth) is the hottest and driest among all the other that be in the body. Let the sicke lie therefore in a cold place, against a sweete and pleasant ayre. Also you may not suffer many to be in the house, because they should make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be sprinkled often with cold water, and with Rose water, Violet water, and such like. And strew on the floore Willow leanes, floures of Roses, Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Let the patient vse meates that haue vertue and power to coole and moisten. And you must giue him so much of them as he can very well digest. Let his pot-herbs be Orach, Beets, and Spinach, Mallows, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrell, Endiue, Succory, and such like. Also giue him Prisan broth, and souplings made with *Alice*. Of fishes, let him eate such as liue in grauelly places: for such, besides that they do coole and moisten, they ingender good iuice, and are easie to digest. Of fowles, let him eate them that be of soft flesh, as be chic-

Signes of a
double Ter-
tian.

Victratio.

kens and Partrich, Doves, yong Sparrowes, Feasant, and such like: but of those that haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excrements, because of their often exercises. Also he may eate Cocks stones and Sowers feet, for they be without excrements, because they are exercised: and their braines, specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of Pigs well sodden, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easilier be consumed of the stomach. Also rare Eggs, which be but onely hote through, may be suffered, specially the yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest then the whites, and they do coole meanelly. You may suffer him to eate fruites which be not very hard to digest, as be, Cherries, Prunes, Mulberies. He must abstaine from Honey, because it will easily turne into choler, and from Mustard, salt meates, and all sharpe things. Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be digested, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden. Or let him vie to drinke this: *Rx.* Iulep of Violets, \mathfrak{z} iij. water wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden, \mathfrak{ss} j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one vessell into another often. But when the disease beginneth to digest, you must giue him in the beginning a little wine that is thin & alayed with water, & giue him more liberally of it when the end of the disease is at hand. This is the order of diet for many, but not of all men: for they that are not daistily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of nature, you must ordaine for them a thinner diet, that is, let them be contented with Pisan broth vntill the iudgement of the feauer. As for sleeping, they may not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the blond, and spirits, and naturall heate may be letted and stopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawne to the outward parts: for otherwise the feauers will scarce be dissolued, and they will come very slowly to their state, and fluxes will increase and be multiplied: when the fit is ended, sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehement motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the mind, specially anger, feare, sorrow, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole and moisten. In the beginning to quench the boyling of choler, and to mitigate the cholericus heate, let him vie this decoction: *Rx.* of flowers of Violets, Borage, and red Roses, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. flowers of water Lillies, \mathfrak{M} . \mathfrak{ss} . Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. \mathfrak{ss} of Raisins picked, \mathfrak{z} j. Damascene Prunes, number ij. seeds of Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Purcelaine, Gourds, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. of the roote of Succory, \mathfrak{z} vi. seeth all together in \mathfrak{ss} ij. of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with Sugar, and purifie it with the white of an Egge; then adde to it sirupe of Endiue with the broad leaues, and Iulep of Violets, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. \mathfrak{ss} commixe them together, and make a potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting. \mathfrak{z} iij. \mathfrak{ss} . But if the sicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this medicine: *Rx.* of conserues of Violets, Borage, Roses, water Lillies and Succory, an. \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . *Electuarium de prunis Damascenis* without *diagridiū*, \mathfrak{z} vii. *diarrhedon abbatu* \mathfrak{z} j. *Diatrion santalon* in powder, \mathfrak{z} ij. of Iulep of Violets as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreover, you must remoue the

Potus.

No sleepe in fits.

Curatio.

A decoction to digest choler.

Misura.

the cause of the feavers which you shall do if you empty out the cholericke humour. Therefore you must empty out the choler which is crept into the stomacke by prouoking vomite. By what meanes you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former Books. The choler which is caried downward, it is best to empty it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite Tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time nature is wont to thrust in choler thither: as in the declination and slaking of the fit, nature thrusteth it to the neather parts and to the skin. Therefore at that time you must cast in an easie and soft clyster, that it may both bring out the choler easily, and that also by his gentleness the sharpnesse of the choler which is wont to rexe and gnaw the guts, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clyster: *Rx.* of Mal. lowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercury, Endiue, and Succory, ana. M. j. seed of Purslaine, and of Melons, ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. seeth them all in a sufficient quantity of water, till the third part be consumed, straine it, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, of the marrow of *Cassia fistula* newly drawn, ʒ. j. oile of Violets, ʒ. iij. common salt, ʒ. j. ʒ. commix them and make a clyster. Also you must empty out choler by prouoking vrine, and sweats, specially if it be carried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without drying. Therefore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherein *Apium* or Dill hath bene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister Wormwood lately, which is a speciall remedy for the stomach when it is vexed with choler, specially if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, & infuse it in *Mollicratum*, that is wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and suchlike medicines: *Rx.* rootes of *Apium*, Sperage, and Succory, ana. ʒ. ʒ. of the seeds of Parcelly, Fenell, Broscus, and Louage, ana. ʒ. ij. blacke Cicers, ʒ. ij. Dill, M. ʒ. seeth all in sufficient quantity of water that runneth, vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweete with Sugar, adding to it *Oxymel compositum*, ʒ. ij. and make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euery time, ʒ. j. or ʒ. ij. ʒ. with ʒ. ij. of *Oxymel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fit, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feaver. For this purpose also annointings with oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and suchlike, are not a little profitable. Moreover, hote baths of sweete and potable water do profit two ways, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also because of their qualities, they do much good: for such baths do moisten and coole. But baths of sea-water, salt-water, salt-peter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profite much lesse then potable waters. Therefore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they do good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrary qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more good then the emptyings by any meanes (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident, that emptyings & purgings in an exquisite Ter-

Vacuation.

Vomitus.

Clyster.

Prouokers of vrine.

Absynthium.

To prouoke sweate.

Baths of sweet waters.

tion do but little please Galen specially those emptyings that are done by bloud-letting, and by a vehement purging medicine; for all such kind of purging medicines be of a hote faculty & quality. But seeing this feauer is the hottest of all other, therefore it rather desireth to be cooled and moistned, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other means, and specially when nature laboreth and assayeth to driue out the humour. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath, this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistned. Therefore you must strew in, neither Salt-peter, nor Salt, nor Mustard seed, but it is good to powremuch oile, being made hote, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are delighted in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memorie, that it be done opportunately, and in due time; for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftener, you shall not erre from Galens doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against the bastardy Tertian.

Cause.

Signa.

Diet.

A Bastardy Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with flume. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of this feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite Tertian they do. In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceed twelue houres, neither is this iudged in seven fits, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer, in this bastardy Tertian, the signes of concoction do appeare more slowly, neither is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of sweat, as an exquisite Tertian doth. Therefore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistning, as is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power and vertue to heate, cut, and diuide; for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of Ptisan, wherein some Pepper is put, and you must giue them *Malsa* to drinke, wherein hath bene sodden, Hyssope, Origan, and Spikenard. Also you must giue them soupings and broths easie to digest. Moreouer, seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meate daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall beware and take heede that Nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must onely take heede that the disease do not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must strue and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate and cast downe. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger, looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much the more it hurteth and debilitateth the strength. And meates, looke how much they increase the patients strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therefore, you must vie hunger to them that be strong and lustie, and their disease hard to digest: and you must feede them more largely whose strength

strength is debilitate and weake, and their disease not stubburne for to digest.
 Let their drinke be water, in which a little Cinamon and some Hysope or
 Origan hath bene sodden. Quiet and rest is good for them, but exercises do
 hurt them: for this doth call forth outwardly nature and naturall heate, which
 could concoct and digest crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the
 patient blood, you may not faile to do it, but by and by in the beginning, if the
 age, time, region, and state of the bodie will permit it, you must draw out so
 much blood as the present state of the bodie requireth and will suffer. By the
 present state, vnderstand the state as well of the patient as of the disease: for
 the sicke, if he be strong, may suffer blood-letting, if not, the contrarie. If the
 disease remaine, and be caused through abundance of humours, it requireth
 blood-letting, not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them.
 But when the disease will endure long through cruditie and lacke of digestion,
 you must draw out but a meane quantity of blood, that the strength of the pa-
 tient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the disease. Also you must cast
 into the belly not very easie clysters, that they may bring forth the sluggish and
 hurtfull matter, and make them thus, R. Mallowes, Mercurie, leaues of Vio-
 lets, Origan, and Hysope, ana. M. seed of Cardamum, ℥. iij. seethe all together
 in sufficient quantitie of water, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, Bene-
 dicta laxativa, Hierapicra, ana. ℥. iij. Mel rosarum, ℥. vj. oyles of Violets and
 Cammomill, ana. ℥. j. common salt, ℥. ij. and make a clyster. Also you must
 minister to the patient, decoctions made of such things as can cut, and diuide,
 and also prouoke vrine without any great heating and drying: as is this, R. *Decoction.*
 rootes of Apium, Fennell, and Succory, ana. ℥. j. Endiue, Succory, Origan, and
 Hysope ana. M. j. Lettuce, M. j. the foure common cold seeds, ana. ℥. j. seedes
 of Fennell and Apium, ana. ℥. j. seethe all these in two pounds of water, vntill
 the third part be consumed: then straine it, and make the liquor sweet with Su-
 gar, and purifie with whites of Egges the strained liquor. Then adde to it *si-*
rupus acetosus simplex, Mel rosarum clarified, Oximel simplex, ana. ℥. j. and
 make a potion, whereof minister daily euery morning ℥. iij. After these you *Purgatio.*
 must minister such medicines as do empty the belly gently, as is, infusion of
 Rubarbe, *Electuarium e Psyllio*, and *Diaphæmicon*, and such like, which are able
 by themselves, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together
 with fleame: whereof we haue rehearsed many in our former Bookes. After
 the seuenth day, you may minister continually decoction of Wormewood: *Abssinthium.*
 also Oximel drunke alone helpeth many. Also vomiting after meate is so health- *Oximel.*
 full and profitable to these old and inueterate feuers, that many (as Galen *Vomitus.*
 witnesseth in lib. 1. ad Glauconem) haue bene cured with this one remedie. For
 a feauer which hath continued long, doth ingender and breed many flegma-
 ticke excrements in the stomacke, which being cast out by vomiting, the pa-
 tient is deliuered from the feauer. Also the sides must be nourished with bote
 medicins, that thereby the winds and bolning which stretcheth them out, may
 be dissolued and disperfed. Among other this foment is very good, R. flowers *Fomentum.*
 of Cammomill, Melilot, and Dill, ana. M. j. Wormewood, M. ℥. red Roses,
 M. j. Linseed, and Fenugreke, ana. ℥. iij. boile these in sufficient quantitie of
 water vnto the third part, then dip a sponge in it, and nourish the sides there-

*Unguentum.**Balneum.**Cause.**Signa.**Cause of long
intermission
in Quartane
fits.**Cura.*

with. Also it profiteth to annoynt the stomach with this or such like ointment:
R. oiles of Masticke, Roles and Camemomill, ana. ʒ. iij. of Cloues, ʒ. j. Waxe
 as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreover, bathing in this fea-
 uer is not healthfull before that signes of concoction do appeare, because crude
 and raw humors, which should be digested within, are brought out by it to the
 skinne, and so it doth increase obstructions.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Quartane Feauer.

AN exquisite Quartane is another kind of the intermitting feauers, which is
 ingendred onely of a melancholy humour, putrifying and rotting with-
 out the vessels. This feauer doth not by and by in the beginning inuade the
 patient with vehement rigour and cold the first day, but it is like to them that
 are cold in Winter through vehement frost: but when the feauer hath conti-
 nued and proceeded forward and is increased, then also the rigour and cold
 increaseth with it, and waxeth greater and stronger daily, till the whole disease
 be come to his full increase and force: and the cold doth not seeme to the pa-
 tient as it were pricking and vexing the skinne, as it doth in an exquisite Ter-
 tian, but there is caused yehement cold, and as it would breake the bones.
 Their pulses are very rare and slow in the beginning of the fits, but when the
 feauer is in his full force, or also when it is increased, then of necessity the pul-
 ses are swift and often: but yet they do keep their naturall slownesse and rarity,
 if you consider the swiftnesse and frequentie coming in the fits. But the mo-
 uing of the heate, the increasing, and the vigor and force of this feauer is cleane
 contrarie to that in Tertian feauers. For in this feauer the melancholy humour
 is kindled and inflamed by little and little, and as it were a stone, or a shell, or a
 bone, or some other such cold and drie bodie. And when that anie flame or
 heate is kindled in it, then in the fit it leaueth nothing fumous or smoakie, but
 it burneth and consumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceassing and inter-
 mission of this humour betweene the fits, then there is in fleame. And the in-
 termission and ceassing betweene the fittes seemeth to be exquisite and pure
 without any griefe at all: because in this feauer, looke how much melanco-
 lic is kindled and inflamed, and so much in the time of the fit is dispersed, con-
 sumed and drawne out cleane. Moreover, in a Quartane feauer there follow-
 eth not vomiting vp of choler: their vrines are thinne, white, and waterie, and
 as it were strained from a grosse matter. Also this feauer beginneth specially
 in Autumne and Haruest, comming after erraticke feauers. But you must be-
 hold both the nature of the patient and his temperament, also his diet vied
 before, his age, the region, and other such like. For if those things be cold
 and drie, then you may looke more iurely that a Quartane feauer will ensue,
 specially if at any time Quartanes be rise among the people. They that haue
 a Quartane feauer, in the beginning must be handled and ordered moderate-
 ly and gently, neither may they be vexed with anie vehement medicines, or
 by vehement emptying and purging, for the humour which causeth the
 Quartane is stubburne to be drawne and handled. Therefore in the begin-
 ning, and before it be digested, it will hardly and scarcely follow the medicine
 that

that draweth it: and that because of his grossnesse and coldnesse, and also because it stoppeth the narrow wayes by the which it should passe out. Yet if bloud do seeme to abound much, then you must take away that. And if when you haue stricken a veine, the bloud that commeth out do appeare blacke and grosse, as for the most part it doth in diseases of the Spleene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great abundance of bloud being drawne out, nature will get the vpper hand in digesting the rest of the humour, and will make the feauer shorter. You must cut the innermost veine of the left arme, which is called *Lienaris vena*, the Spleene veine, or *Mediana*: for this veine emptieth out the melancholie humour, specially from the Spleene, which is wont to be diseased in a Quartane feauer: but if when the veine is stricken, the bloud doth appeare thinne, and yellowish, you must stop it by and by: for such an humour is not vnprofitable in a Quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the grosse and cold humour, as well because of his substance, as also with his qualitie. You must ordaine for the patient a very good diet, such one as is not windie, and ingendreth good iuyce. Therefore you must keepe the sicke from swines flesh, and from all other meates that be grosse, rough and clammy, and slow of digestion. Moreouer, let him abstaine from all things which do coole and drier the bodie. He must eate birds that liue vpon mountaynes, and do ingender good iuyce: for those that do liue in fennes and marishes, they be vnwholesome and full of excrements, and do ingender a grosse humour. He must vse fishes of granelly waters, which be soft and without roughnesse: but in this feauer salt things and Mustard must be ministred in meates, that they may extenuate, cut, and diuide the grosse and clammie humours, and that they may consume and feed vp the superfluous humiditie and moisture. They must vse wine that is white, thinne, and meanelly hote: for that by the thinnesse it doth extenuate the grossnesse of the melancholy humours, and by the meane heate that it hath, it heateth the body by little and little, which is cooled with the melancholious humour; and it helpeth digestion and also prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accustomed exercises, that is to say, you must suffer them to vse exercises, but not so much as they did in their health. Neither may they vse frictions, deambulations, and other exercises of the bodie so often nor so vehemently as they did in their health; for that would cause perill and danger of obstruction. But if exercises be vfed moderately, and that in the time of intermission betweene the fits, they will voyde out excrements, and bring other commodities which *Galen* rehearseth in *lib. secundo de Tuenda sanitate*. They must altogether abstaine from bathing if they can, and be content onely with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, because it doth heate, doth profit, yet, because it calleth forth humours outwardly, it bringeth perill of obstruction, specially when the bodie doth abound with excrements. And if the Quartane be short, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermission betweene the fits, when the patients haile dayes be, if he vse his wonted exercises. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes, it must be kept soluble, either with his accustomed meanes, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clysters, first gentle and easie, and after sharper: for you must increase

Bloud-letting.

Diet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

Clyster.

Piper.

Prouision for
the intrayles.

Vnguentum.

Prouokers of
vrine.Purgation of
melancholy.

the strength and sharpnesse by little and little, as the matter of the feauer doth concoct and digest by little and little: for at the beginning (as is said before) you must handle and order these feauers gently and easily. You may seeke examples of easie clysters out of the former Chapters. A clyster somewhat sharper is this that followeth: *R*. Mallowes, Cammomill, Mercury, leaues of black Violets, ana. *M. j.* leaues of Sene, the rootes of Polipodie, ana. *ʒ. v.* Hartstongue, *M. j.* seeth all these in a sufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part. Then straine it, and commixe with the liquor of that decoction the marrow of *Cassia fistula*, *ʒ. j.* *Diasena laxatiua*, *ʒ. ss.* common oyle, *ʒ. iij.* *Mel rosarum*, *ʒ. ss.* salt Gem, *ʒ. j.* and make a clyster. Within certaine dayes, giue to the patient *Diatrion piperion*: but because it doth heate vehemently, you may not minister it daily; whose making and vertue you must seeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. De sanitate tuenda*. Also (as *Galen* saith) the patient shall do rightly, if he drinke daily, onely Pepper with water: for it heateth and dissolueth the grossenesse of windie spirits and vapours, and it extenuateth and digesteth the crude and raw humours, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hypochonders and sides. And these things must be done from the beginning of the feauer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and state. And if the sicke seeme now to be in the vigour and state of the disease, then he must vse a thinner diet then he did before or must do afterward, and you must command long quiet and rest to the patient, lest nature being occupied about digesting of the matter of the disease, should be called from her office and worke. Afterward you must prouide and foresee the intrayles, which are wont to be swollen and stretched out, with viscous, tough and grosse humours, and also with abundance of windie spirits and vapours, which being dissolved and emptied out, the bowels waxe soft and are loosened. Therefore you must annoint them with those things which can mollifie and loosen, as be, ointments which are made of Barley meale, seed of *Apium*, rootes of *Ireos*, Rew, and such like. Among other annoint the left side with this ointment, *R*. of oile of Capers, *ʒ. iij.* oile of *Ireos*, and of sweet Almonds, ana. *ʒ. ij.* seeds of *Apium*, and of Comin, rootes of *Ireos*, ana. *ʒ. j.* Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. After these things you must minister medicines which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you minister such things before the inward members be free from obstructions, because those medicines be hote, they carrie the humours downe with them, and do increase the obstructions. For to prouoke vrine, you must minister *Mulsa*, wherein Dill, or Rew, or else *Apium* hath bene sodden. If signes of concoction do appeare, then you must straightway vse purging medicines which can purge out melancholie: and you may not purge him once onely, but oftener, if the matter seeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out all at once, seeing the body is not able to suffer & beare so strong a purgation as should purge out all that stubborne humour at once. You may seeke examples of such medicines as do purge out melancholy, out of the first Book in the Chapter of melancholiousnes. But yet about other things, *Aetius* praiseth sweet wine infused in the inward part of *Coloquintida*, but so, that you commixe with it some *Apium*, or *Daucus*, to make it pleasant. After meate,

meate you must prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white Hellebore first *Vomitus.* commixed with Radish. as is declared in the other Bookes, which if it worke little or nothing, you must minister Hellebore by it selfe. And if any man abhorre from Hellebore, let him vie this or such like medicine: R^x. iuyce of Radish, or distilled water of it, \mathfrak{z} .iij. *Vomice.* Oximel simplex, \mathfrak{z} .ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke: but they which cannot vomite, must be purged downward, such be they that haue a straight and slender breast. After purging you must giue them *Theriacs*, or somewhat that is of like vertue, as this is: R^x. *Liquoris Cyrenaiici*, fine Mirrhe, Pepper, of each like much: beate them by themselves, and commixe them with the iuyce of Rew, and make pilles thereof, and minister the weight of \mathfrak{z} ss. They that minister any of these medicines at the beginning of the sicknesse, or at all, before the vigour, state, and force thereof, they make of a simple Quartane oftentimes a double Quartane, or without doubt they make the single Quartane greater and more vehement: and of a double Quartane they make a triple Quartane, or else the double one is made greater.

CHAP. X.

Of a Quotidian Feauer.

QUOTIDIANA *Febris intermittens*, that is, an intermitting quotidian feauer; it is ingendred of putrified and rotten steame being thrust of nature by the sensible parts of the bodie. It is called of the Greekes *Amphimerina*, because it causeth a fit every day. But if glasse steame, which is the coldest of all other steames, do putrifie by it selfe the one halfe of it, that is, if the whole substance of it do not putrifie equally, but some parts of it do putrifie and some do not, then it ingendreth a feauer called *Epialos febris*: in which *Epialos febris.* the patient is feauerous, and vehemently cold together, and at one present time he feelleth immoderate heate and immoderate cold in all the parts of the body together. For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being spread by all the veines, or in the rest of the body, ingendreth the rigour and cold, but the other rotten part of the humour ingendreth the feauer. A Quotidian feauer doth not invade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the first day, but in processe of time, it cometh rather like a cooling, then like a rigour. The pulse when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, slow, little and weake. Neither also in the augmenting and increasing of the Quotidian is there swiftnesse of moving of the pulses, nor greatnesse, nor vehemencie. The heate in this Feauer is not so sharpe and vehement as it is in a Tertian: for it neither burneth them, neither are they compelled to make naked their bodies, and to throw off their clothes, neither doth it compell them to breathe much and often, and to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to desire to drinke cold water, but it is moist and smokie, and commixed with much vapour. Also it is hardly kindled, and it consumeth a long time, vntill that by increasing it come to the force and state. Moreouer, they that haue this feauer do not thirst, because not onely the tongue, but also the whole bodie in this Feauer is moist. The vrines in Quotidian Feauers either be white, and thinne, and waterie: or thicke, and

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Unguentum.

troubled. There bursteth out no sweat at all in the first dayes, neither is there any exact & perfect rest from being feauerous: for the feauer remaineth each time almost the space of 18. houres. There chanceth also to them vomiting of fleame: and those things which are sent out by egestion, are colder, moister, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Also a Quotidian feauer doth chiefly vex them that be moist and flegmaticke of nature. Also it chanceth in a moist season, specially in Winter that is cold and moist, and in old folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer saw a yong man that was cholericke and drie by nature, taken with this feauer: but they that be moist and most flegmaticke, hauing a grosse substance of the bodie, and do liue an idle life, seruing their bellie, and giuen to drunkenesse, vsing bathing often, and specially after meate, they are soone taken with this Quotidian feauer. Let the diet in this feauer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding. Therefore you must now seeke such places, wherein we haue declared abundantly what kind of diet it should be. In the first dayes, that is, when signes of cruditie and indigestion do yet appeare, the fleame must be diuided and cut, and the pores and passages that be stopped, must be scoured and cleansed. And therefore you must minister *Oximel* because it doth scoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammy humours, and it deliuereth the pores from obstructions. And you must minister those things, which prouoke vrine, that the fleame (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily passe by the conduits, and be emptied out. Therefore it is good to minister decoction of the roote of *Apium*, Parcelly, *Ireos*, Fennell, and such other like often rehearsed before, with *sirupus acetosus compositus*, and *mel Rosarum*, and *sirupus e duabus Radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and diuide. About the vigour and force of the feauer, you must take heed and haue regard to the stomacke, and specially to the mouth of it. Therefore you must prepare those things which being applyed outwardly may adde strength to the stomach, such as be, Masticke, Spikenard, Wormewood, & such other like. Therefore before meate, vse this ointment: *R.* oiles of Masticke, Wormewood, and Nard, ana. *℥.ij.* *℞.* Masticke, Cloues, and wood of Aloes, ana. *℥.v.* Cinamon, *℥.j.* with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the stomach. The stomach being strengthened you must compell vomiting, first by ministring of Radish, then after, meats must be eaten; for so it listeth vp the meats, and causeth the easier vomite. After he must vse medicines that do purge out fleame: for fleame when it is digested, may conveniently be purged. What medicines those be that can purge out fleame, it is euident in our other Bookes, and this here sufficeth to cure a Quotidian feauer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feauer Hellicke.

HECTICA febris, is a feuer wherein an vnnaturall heat is not only kindled in the spirits and humours, but now also it is kindled in the massie, sound and fleshie parts and members. This feauer knoweth no paine, and they that haue it, do think that they haue no feauer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate,

heate, seeing all the members of their bodie be equally heat (as *Galen* declar-
 eth abundantly in his Booke *De inaequali intemperie*.) The feauer Hecticke is
 ingendred and caused two wayes. First, for the most part, of burning feauers, *Cause*,
 which haue continued so long, that in procelle of time they consume the hu-
 miditie and moisture that is contained in the body of the heart: or also if it
 resist more abundantly, then those feauers are not onely Hectickes, but also
Marasmodi, that is, consuming and melting feauers. For feauers being inge-
 dred (the humiditie yet remaining still) when they haue caught and occupied
 the bodie of the heart, hereupon they are specially-kindled and inflamed, like
 the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring the fea-
 uers Hecticke. Another way of ingendring them is this, when they begin of
 themselves by and by, being ingendred as Diarie feauers be, either of sorrow,
 or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse. together with burning by the heate of the
 Sunne. The feauers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such
 feauers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes
 do call *Marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Physitians: if *Marasmos*,
 those feauers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still,
 it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them.
 For the nature of them is hote and drie, so that the heart is in like case as the
 snuffe of a candle when it is very much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it
 will breake and dissolue, and through driness fall asunder, so that although
 you powre abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot caule a greater flame to be
 kindled: for the flame being small and weake, panteth alwayes vp and downe
 in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out.
 Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *Marasmodi*, that is, consuming. The
 feauer Hecticke which turneth into *Marasmus*, or a consumption, is very ready
 and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses and heate by tou- *Signa*,
 ching them, you may see the eyes wondertull hollow, as though they were hid
 in some ditches or furrowes: for then all the moist substance of them is ex-
 haust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye-browes sticke
 out. Also there hangeth on the haire of the eye-lids, drie gumme and filth,
 and vncleane affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in
 the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perissheth,
 and the skin of their forehead is drie and retched out, and their eye-lids winke
 often as though they were sleepe; but their disease is not to sleepe, but is ra-
 ther impotencie and debilitie to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consu-
 med, so that they seeme hollow places: for what other thing haue they but
 skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare belly, it shall appeare to
 you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are
 pulled vward to the breast, and if you touch the skinne, it is very drie, which
 if you take hold on with your fingers and pull it vp, it is like the hide of a beast.
 The pulses be thinne, hard, weake, and often. The heate when you lay your
 hand first on him, doth seeme weake: but a little after it bursteth out sharpe
 and goawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this
 shall be a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate, the
 heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse

*Hæctica fe-
bris.*

*Marasmus.
Curatio.*

Aer.

Diet.

Las.

Potus.

Nota.

Balneum.

and swiftnesse. It is called a feauer Hæcticke so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and reserved : but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the bodie, then it is an absolute and perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *Marasmus*. For the cure of a feauer Hæcticke before it come vnto a consumption, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these points, that is, to coole & moisten, as well with those things that be outwardly applyed, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the ayre that the patient doth breathe in, be cold and moist. And, if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the sixth Chapter, in the cure of the Tertian. He must also vse meates that do coole and moisten, as broth of Ptsan, bread steeped in a little cold water, the flesh of kiddes, sea-fants, birds of the mountaines, cockes stones, capons flesh, rare egges, new cheese without salt, and fishes of grauelly waters, Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Gourds, Spinach, Mallows, and such like : Cherries, Proines, Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and such like. He must also taste milke, for that profiteth him maruellously, so that this feauer be not compounded and mixed with another feauer that is ingendred of rottenesse of humours. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue bene used to it before. Let him drinke thereof moderately, or let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreover, it is good to them that haue this feauer to eat meate often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware and take heed that they eat not great abundance of meate at one meale, which vertue, being weake, should not be able to overcome and digest. They must eschue immoderate mouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feauer Hæcticke : for purgations are hotter and vehementer then they are able well to suffer : but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clysters that can coole and moisten, adding to them marrow of *Cassia fistula*. You must minister such things within the bodie as haue power and vertue to coole and moisten ; as among the compound medicines be these, sirupe of Violets, of Water-lillies, and of Tame endiue, *sirupus acetosus*, and such like. Also *Diarrhodon abbatu*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diapapauer*, and such like. Of simples these be good, the iuyces and distilled waters of Lettuce, Purslaine, Tame endiue, and Poppie. Among those things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feauer : I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be carried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to carrie the sheet, at each corner one. The water of the bath must be most temperate : and also the patient must not tarry in it long, lest any of his moisture within him should be drawne out by it : therefore in no case must he sweate in it. There be some that vse to see the in the water of the bath herbs, as Violets, Mallows, Lettuce, flowers of Water-lillies, and such like : some other do see the calues feete, or lambes heads, vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware lest any thing be powred on his head, seeing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole bodie, the sheet being let

let downe easily, & then againe lifted vp by foure yong men which must carry him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped all ouer once in cold water, but he may not tarry in it any time at all. They that haue this feauer and be brought into a bath, vlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* saith.) By and by, as soone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheete be ready, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, and first wipe him with sponges, & after with soft linnen clothes; and let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other this Liniment is good: *R.* oile of Violets, *℥.ss.* oile of Gourds, *℥.iij.* new butter without Salt, Swines grease, ana. *℥.j.* *℞.* commixe them and make a Liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body. Or adde to it mucilage of *Tragacantha*, *℥.ij.* marrow of calues shankes, *℥.iij.* Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also oile of water Lillies and of Poppie, are good, and specially oyle of Roses, which (as *Galen* saith) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also it profiteth him to haue his heart cooled and moistened with Epithemes: as is this: *R.* waters of Violets, water Lillies, and Lettuce, ana. *℥.iij.* strong Vineger. *℥.ss.* red Roses, all the Sanders, ana. *℥.j.* powder of *Diamargariton*, *℥.ss.* seed of Purslaine, *℥.iij.* Saffron, *℥.ss.* commixe them & make an Epitheme, & apply it to the region of the heart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus: *R.* water of Lettuce, *℥.ij.* Vineger, *℥.j.* *Diarrhedon abbatu*, *℥.j.* *℞.* scraping of suory, *℥.ss.* Purslaine. *℥.ss.* commixe them and make an Epitheme, and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feauer Hecticke medicines are good which can coole and moisten with their odour and sauer, as be floures of water Lillies, Purslaine, Violets, Roses, and such like. Also you may find moe things that are good for the cure of the feauer Hecticke, in the second booke, in the Chapter of the Priticke or Consumption. And in curing of the feauer Hecticke this onely must be your study and labour, that the body may not only be cooled and moistened with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applyed outwardly, & specially by annointing with oile. How much oile applyed and annointed outwardly specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboue an hundred yeares old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulso, foris oleo*, that is, I keepe me moist with *Mulso* within, and oyle I annoint vpon my skin.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iecoris.

Odoramentum.

Pollio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an Hemetrice feauer.

Although there be diuerse kinds of compound feauers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke, in the explication of feauers, yet in this place we will onely speake of that feauer which is compounded of an intermitting Tertian, and a continuall Quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *Hemitriticus*, and in

Cause.

Signa.

*Exquisite
Hemitritans.
Nonexquisite
Hemitritans.
Curatio.*

Latin *Semitertiana*, in English halfe a Tertian. It is so called because this whole feauer hath halfe the nature of the said feauers, each of them: by the example of this compound feauer, you may learne to cure all other compound feauers. Therefore an Hemitrice feauer is caused, when putrified steame is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a Tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a Quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreme parts. Therefore the feauer which is compounded of them both causeth horreur and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a Tertian, and greater and more vehement then the cooling of a Quotidian: so that it is a meane betweene them both. It is ingendred two sundry waies: for either two fits are ioyned together by and by at the beginning, and do inuade the patient together both at once; or else each of them cometh separate from the other. Therefore when the Tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feauer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, and there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driven out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour: but when the Quotidian exceedeth the Tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a litle shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vex him. But when the intermitting Tertian and the continuall Quotidian be equall, and of like force and greatnesse, the fit doth come with horreur and shaking for cold. And when the Quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horreur waxe lesse and gentler: but if the Tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horreur increate and waxe greater. Note therefore when a feauer is ingendred of an intermitting Tertian and a continuall Quotidian, being equall, of like force, greatnesse, and strength, then it is called an exquisite *Hemitritans* ague: but if one feauer do exceede the other, then it is called an vnpure Hemitrice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feauer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite Hemitrice feauer is ingendred of two feauers equally commixed, that is, a Tertian and a Quotidian, you must also vse a cure conuenient and agreeing equally to a Tertian and a Quotidian. But in an vnpure Hemitrice, when there is most of choler, or most of steame, you must also varie and change the cure according to the humour & feauer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the Tertian: but if steame abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the Quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound; but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we need not in this place rehearse the remedies wherby this feauer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the Tertian and Quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly and perfectly the curing of simple feauers, he shall also know how to cure compound feauers without any more labour: for the cures of simple feauers being knowne and considered, it is most ready to any man to cure compound feauers: so that here we shall not need to write severally of the curing of compound feauers.

CHAP.

Of the Pestilence.

Seeing that at this present time and day, there be euery where Treatises of the Pestilence made of diuerse new Authors, I need not now long dispute here of it: but it shall be sufficient, if we do briefly declare the causes, signes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diseases before. There be two especiall causes of the Pestilence, as *Galen* writeth in lib. 1. *De differentijs februm*, cap. 5. The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten aire. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humours be ready to putrifie and rot when a man taketh any light occasion to kindle a feauer of the corrupted aire. Therefore the chiefest cause why men are infected with the Pestilence, is breathing in of aire, without which no breathing thing doth prolong their life. For it beginneth for the most part of breathing in of aire which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chanceth in warres: or the euaporation of some pooles, fennes or marshes in Sommer time. It chanceth also sometime to come before immoderate heate of the aire: when the temperature of the aire is changed from his naturall state to immoderate heate and moisture, of necessity the Pestilence must follow. Hereupon *Galen* saith, that of all temperament of the aire, the worst is that which is hote and moist. Also oftentimes (as is aforesaid) naughty and corrupt diet ingendreth humours in the bodie that be easie & ready to putrifie and rot, and so is the cause why such bodies are infected with the Pestilence. And then truly they specially haue the Pestilence, which vse a naughty and corrupt diet, and so be full of all kinds of superfluities. Therefore it need not seeme maruellous, if sometime some one among many (which yet doth very seldome chance) be infected with this disease, the aire yet not being pestilent and corrupt. For they that keepe a good and healthfull diet, and be without superfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or else very litle hurt, although they be in the corrupt and pestilent aire: and may easily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and state. Hereby it is easie to answer them that aske, how it chanceth that all men are not taken equally with the Pestilence, seeing euery one is constrained to breathe in the pestilent aire? The first cause why some remaine unhurt, is because they be not full of superfluous humidity and moisture, but do vse moderate diet and exercises, and haue their body easie to breathe out vapours. Another cause is, because all mens bodies be not of like disposition and effect. For dispositions of mens bodies are of many sundry formes: for some bodies are quickly overcome and infected, and do most readily suffer any cause: but some againe be insuperable, and cannot be overcome, nor will at all suffer the infection, or else very hardly. And therefore the greatest portion of ingendring of diseases, is the disposition of the body of him that suffereth the disease. For else all men that taried long in the burning heate of the Sunne, or that vied ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine, or inflamed with anger, or affected with sadness, should fall into a feauer. Also we do not deny, but that sometime great

Cause.

1

2

Whereof rottennesse beginneth.

Nota.

Plagues from
God.

The time of
the Plague.

Signes of the
pestilence to
come.

I 2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9 10

11

12

Signes of one
infected.

I 2

3

4

5

6

7 8

9

10 11

12

Signifying
of botches.

plagues and pestilence be sent of God, for the grievous finnes and horrible offences of men, whereby he punisheth our great offences: whereof there be many evident testimonies in the Prophets, and specially in *Ezechiel Chap. 5*. The time of the year in the which chiefly by nature the Pestilence is rife and flourisheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of Harvest or Autumne: for then both the aire and mens bodies are most apt to putrifie, corrupt and rotte, for many causes. There be many and diuers signes of the Pestilence to come, rehearsed of the new Authors: among which signes, the first is the changing of the times of the year. The second is often *Phenomena* in the aire, specially in Autumne. The third is, when pusshes, and pocks, and measles do not only vex children but also yong folke of perfect age. The fourth is when the winds are often in the South and in the West in Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatening raine, but yet it doth not raine at all. The sixth is, if women conceived with child, do suffer abortion for euery light cause. The seventh is, when in Sommer after raine suddenly a great abundance of frogge of diuerse colours do gather together on a heape. The eighth is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beasts and fishes. The tenth is, the flying of birds from their nests, leauing their eggs there still. The eleuenth is, the death of victuals and corne. The twelfth (which is the most certaine signe) is a hote and moist temperature of the year. There be many signes that declare when one is already infected with the Pestilence. The first is, if the outward members be cold, and the inward members burning hote. The second is, heauinesse, wearinesse, floath of the whole bodie, and difficultie in breathing. The third is, paine and heauinesse in the head. The fourth is, carefulesse of the mind, and sadnesse. The fifth is, a marvellous inclination (for the most part) to sleepe, for sometime watching and raiuing do vex him. The sixth is, a diuers and frowning look of the eyes. The seventh is, losse of appetite. The eighth is, immoderate thirst and often vomiting. The ninth is, bitternesse and drinesse of the mouth. The tenth is, a pulse frequent, small and deepe. The eleuenth is, the vrine for the most part troublous, thicke and stinking, like beasts vrine: although sometime the vrine of them seemeth to differ little from the vrine of healthfull men; therefore by such an vrine they that are vnskilfull of the other signes be quickly deceiued, suspecting no hurt because of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth, which is the most sure token of all, is, if there do arise and ingender botches behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the share, without any manifest cause, or also if carbuncles do suddenly arise in any member: for when they appeare, they betoken strength of nature, which being strong and mightie, doth labour to driue the poison out of the bodie. Also they do declare which members of the bodie being affected aboue oiber, do thrust out from them the venomous humors. For if they do appeare in the necke, they declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the heart; but if they appeare in the share, the liuer is most affected. But seeing that botches do not alwayes appeare, (which is most perillous and dangerous: for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expell and driue out the venomous humors) you must haue respect to other signes and tokens which

which he rehearsed a little before. As for the cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare, then if nothing do let, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other parts of the face and necke, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the arincholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side, it is commonly called *Basilica*; or if that veine will not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch do appeare in the share, you must draw out bloud from the ankles of the same side. But if there do appeare no botch outwardly, you must draw out bloud from the same side where there is felt greatest paine and heavinesse. But out of which veine you must let bloud, the paine and grieft of the members afflicted will declare to you well enough: for if the members about the breast be grieued and afflicted most, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be most grieued and afflicted, cut the *Basilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be most vexed, you must cut the veine of the hamme or ankles. And if nature be strong and other things not letting, you must draw out bloud abundantly. But if through age, or for other causes, you may not vse bloud letting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the necke and the shoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. And if the Pestilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or supper time, when the stomach is filled with meate, then he must vomite straightway. At the last, when the bodie and stomach is emptied, you must by and by minister some medicine that can resist poison, that it may draw the poison to it, and call it backe from the heart: for that is the propertie of such medicines. Among a great number of the which, this is praiseworthy, which is called *Electuarium de Ouo*, which once a good and wise Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vse. Why I do preferre this almost before all other, is, because of his maruelous effects and vertues which haue appeared often in diuerse sicke persons: and because it is easie to make, except the roote of white Diptaine, which cannot well be gotten; for the which it is better to vse the leaues of true Diptaine, which may well be come by; minister of the foresaid Electuarie to th^m that be of perfect age. \mathfrak{z} . j. and to them that be yonger, sometime \mathfrak{z} . ij. will suffice: you must dissolue it in water of Roses, or Endiue, or Scabious. Also this medicine vled, is good to preserve a man from the Pestilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of Barley, or the quantitie of a Pease. Also the taking of this potion doth helpe much. \mathfrak{R} . *Theriaca Andromachi*, \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Mithridatum*, \mathfrak{z} . j. Bolearmoniacke prepared, \mathfrak{z} . β . waters of Roses, Scabious, and Buglosie, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. Commixte them. What power and strength is in Bolearmoniacke to driue away the Pestilence, *Galen* teacheth abundantly in *libro nono, de simplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus*: where he writeth, that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as dranke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vled in the time of the Pestilence. Moreover, this powder doth profit very much. \mathfrak{R} . the leaues of true Diptaine, the roote of Turmentill, the roote of Pimpernell, Zedoary, Gentian, roote of *Betonita alba*, commonly called *Tunica*, ana \mathfrak{z} . β . Bolearmoniacke prepared, \mathfrak{z} . j. *Terra Lemnia*, \mathfrak{z} . iij. *Aloes Epaticke*, Myrthe, ana \mathfrak{z} . β . Saffron, \mathfrak{z} . j. Masticke, \mathfrak{z} . ij.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Cucurbita.

Vomitus.

Alexiteria.
Electuarium
de Ouo.

Potis.

Bolus armeniacus.

Pulvis optimus.

*Sudor.**Aeris corre-
ctio.**When meate
should be mi-
nistred.**Of sleepe.**Potio.**Comfortatives**Electuarium.**Epithema.*

and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*, whereof mini-
ster to the sicke, \mathfrak{z} .j. in Rose water, or Sorrell water. When the patient hath ta-
ken some of the aforesaid medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made
with soft sheets, and well covered with clothes, that he may there sweate foure
or five houres, or longer, according to his strength. But if by this meanes you
can scarcely prouoke him to sweate, you must lay tiles being beate at the fire,
to the feet of the patient; for these by reason of their heate will readily pro-
uoke sweate. And in all the time that the sicke doth sweate, you must onely
take heed, that he do neither sleepe, eate, nor drinke. After sweating, you must
diligently wipe off the sweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then
afterward let the sicke rise vp from his bed, if he will or if he can, and let him es-
chue the open aire. Let the aire of the chamber in which the sicke doth lie, be
corrected, amended, and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete
smelling perfumes, daily foure or five times. It is best for the sicke to change
from one chamber to another: because the aire of one chambet, by the con-
tinuall tarying of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be cor-
rected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber into the which the sicke
shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those things
should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient
hath sweate, giue vnto him the broth of a Chicken, and that you must do often
afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and
refreshed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and
but very little at once: for they that are thus fed, will sooner recouer againe
then other. Also he may vse to eate the flesh of Chickens, sodden with Sorrell,
or with iuyce of Limons, or else Veriuyce. Also the sicke must be kept altoge-
ther from sleepe the first day by talke of the assistants, by rubbing of the ex-
treme parts, by pulling of their eares, nose, and haire. For the which purpose
it is not vnprofitable to dip a sponge in very sharpe vineger, and hold it to the
nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion: *R.* lulup of
Violets, \mathfrak{z} .iij. sirupe of the sharpe iuyce of Citrons, \mathfrak{z} .j. β . sirupe of sowne En-
diue, \mathfrak{z} .ij. of the decoction of Sorrell, Scabious, and flowers of Buglosse, \mathfrak{z} .x.
or so much of their distilled waters: commixe them, and make a potion. Also
you must take the water wherein Barley hath bene sodden a little, and com-
mixe with it iuyce of Roses, or Sorrell, or Limons, or of vnrype Grapes, and mi-
nister it in stead of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the
strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other
principall members of the bodie, as is this: *R.* conferues of Violets, Roses, and
Buglosse, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Bolearmoniacke prepared, \mathfrak{z} .j. red Corall, \mathfrak{z} .j. barks of
Citron apples, \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Camphire, \mathfrak{z} .v with sirupe of the iuyce of sharpe Citrons,
as much as is sufficient, make an Electuary or liquid Antidote. Also you must
lay vpon the region of the heart (specially if the sicke do yet feeble heate a-
bout the breast) this Epitheme: *R.* waters of Roses, Buglosse and Sorrell, ana.
 \mathfrak{z} .iij powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, \mathfrak{z} .j. wood of Aloes, red Sanders, the
barks of a Citron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart, ana.
 \mathfrak{z} .v. Saffron, grain. six: commixe them all, and make an Epitheme. But you
must note, that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote:
and

and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straightway; for then they constraîne and shut vp the pores, and so do bring vnto the patient no small grieve. Therefore it is better to vie cordiall bags, as this is: *R. flo-* *Sacculno.*
wers of red Roses, water Lillies and of Violets, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. of all the Sanders, Corall white and red, *Spodium*, Pearles, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. Cinamon, Clouer, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barks of the Citron apple, Saffron, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. seed of Sorrell, \mathfrak{z} .ij. seed of Purslaine, grain.iiij. beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bags of silke, and apply each aiter other being heat. Moreouer, you must altogether couet and labour that the venomous humours may be entiled & drawne to the place where the botches appeare & burst out, and you must do it by letting to of cupping glasses, or by medicines applied, *Outward me-*
that haue vertue and power to draw those humours, as this is: *R. fat Figges,* *dicines.*
in number sixe, great Raisins, \mathfrak{z} . β . salt Gemme, \mathfrak{z} .ij. Honey \mathfrak{z} .j. with oyle of Cammomill: make it into the forme of an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. Or apply this plaister, which is much commended of all men: *R. a* *Emplastrum.*
great Onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the kore within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andre-machi*, adding to it iuyce of Rew or Sage: which done, stop the hole fast that is in the top of the Onion with lute, and set the Onion in the imbers to roast: and when you do thinke that it is roasted enough, pull off the barks of it, and then bray it in a mortar vntill it be thicke like an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. You need not be afraid to apply *Theriaca* to the botches, because of the authoritie of *Gentilius* and *Valescus*, and some other authors: for *Theriaca* and such like medicines against poison, do *Error of Gen-*
not worke their operation by driuing the poyson from them (as they being in *tilis and Va-*
a wonderfull errour do affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poyson *lescus.*
to them, as *Galen* teacheth in his booke *De Theriaca ad Pisonem*. Also this *Emplastrum*
Emplaister is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch: *R. meale* *suppuratori.*
of Fenugreeke, and Linseed, of flowers of Cammomill, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . roots of *Al-*
thea and white Lillies, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Figs in number sixe, leaues of true Diptaine, \mathfrak{z} .ij. roots of Valerian, \mathfrak{z} .ij. Mustard seed, \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Doues dung \mathfrak{z} . β . oyles of
Cammomill and Lillies, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . make them into the forme of an Emplaister or Pultice. Also this is practised: *R. of Emplastrum diachylon simplex,* \mathfrak{z} .ij. of gum *Aliud.*
Ammoniacke, and *Galbanum* ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But if the botch will not breake of himselfe by applying the aforesaid things, you must then lay vpon it Goose dung dissolved in the common oyle, or in oyle of Cammomill. And this is sufficient to speake of here, as touching the cure of them which be taken with the Pestilence.

Now we will briefly expound, by what meanes a man may preserue and defend himselfe from the infection of the Pestilence, which vexeth and infecteth in some certaine place or region. And seeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the Pestilence is not caused but through the breathing in of the pestilent and corrupt ayre, there cannot be a more p[re]tent remedy to preserue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. *A preservation*
from the pesti-
lence.
For there is no other meanes to auoid the pestilent ayre, because whether we will or no, we must draw in such ayre, vnlesse we get away into some other place, where the ayre is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which *Flight is the*
best remedie.

you must the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectiue. And you must flie farre off into such a place whereas the aire is knowne to be pure and good, and destitute of corruption: neither must you returne home againe from that place very soone. Hereupon it is not rashly said of the common sort, that these three Aduerbs, *Cito*, *longe*, and *tardè*, in the time of the Pestilence, do more pleasure and profit then three shops very well furnished. Therefore they that may conueniently for their businesse flie away, let them not suffer themselves to be perswaded by any meanes to tarrie in the pestilent ayre. which if they do, they shall foolishly put themselves in danger of pestilent death. But if you may not flie for vrgent businesse and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tarrise, be without all kinde of stinke, and kept cleane from all filthinesse and stutishnesse. Let the windowes of it be close shut, specially in cloudie and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is risen aboue the earth some houres. You must come abroad but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright; neither come then, vlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preferue you from the infection. You must make fires daily in your houses, with Oken wood, Iuniper, *Tamariscus*, Laurel, or such like, that therby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and strength in fire, to amend and correct the rottenesse and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following: R^r. Rosemary, M. ss. Sage, Betonie, Wormwood, Marioram. Origan, ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder: R^r. of Iuniper berries, ʒ. j. Myrrhe. ʒ. iij. Frankinsence and Masticke, ana. ʒ. iij. ss. roote of *Benedicta*, ʒ. j. Rew, ʒ. ss. Cypressle barks. ʒ. j. ss. roote of *Angelica*. Lauender, ana. ʒ. ij. beate all together, and make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, Iuniper cleft in small stickes, or the berries of Iuniper. Let richer folke vse wood of *Aloes*, or powder of *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, and such like. When necessitie constraineth you to go abroad, carrie this or such a like Pomander with you: R^r. *Lapdanum*, ʒ. iij. *Storax calamita*, ʒ. ij. Cinamon, Mace, Cloues, Nutmegs, ana. ʒ. j. wood of *Aloes*, ʒ. j. Spikenard, ʒ. ss. Myrrhe, Masticke, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ. ss. Muske and Amber, ana. gra. iij. powder them, and searce them, and with *Storax liquida* and water of Marioram as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a *Pomum odoratum*. In Sommer time let the ayre be purified and corrected with cold things, as with flowers of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies. Vine leaues and branches, Willow leaues, and such other like Also sprinkle the pauement with water of Roses, Sorrell. and such like: or with cold water wherewith some Vineger is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell Roses, Vineger, Camphire, Sanders, and such other like: or to smell to this Pomander: R^r. *Lapdanum*, ʒ. ss. *Storax calamita*, ʒ. iij. flowers of water-lillies, Roses, and Violets, ana. ʒ. j. barks of the Citron apple, ʒ. j. ss. all the Sanders, ana. ʒ. ss. of Maces and Cinamon, ana. ʒ. j. Masticke, ʒ. j. white Poppie, ʒ. ss. Camphire, ʒ. ss. Amber, Muske, ana. gra. ij. bray and commixe them with *Storax liquida* and Rose water, and make a Pomander. But seeing *Galen* saith, that one of the chiefest things which they that would be preferred from the

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

the pestilence, ought to regard and take heed of, is, that their bodie be for the most part without superfluities and excrements, and may well breathe out the vapours: truly there is nothing more to be eschued at such a time, then overmuch deuouring and swallowing in gluttonously of meate and drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether easie of digestion, and such as ingender good bloud, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commixe with the meates that be eaten at that time, some Vineger, or some other sharpe iuyce, as Veriuiice, or iuyce of Citron apples, or of Limons or Oringes. In Sommer time he must vse for pot-herbs, Buglosse, Endiue, Succory, and Lettuce: and in Winter, let him vse Sage, Parcelly, *Apium*, Marioram, Balme, and Hyslope. He must abstaine from all fruits, vnlesse they be sharpe, as be Pomegranates, Citrons, Limons, Oringes, and such like, which are good for him to vse. Let his drinke be Wine that is thinne and waterie. Let euery man beware of strong Wine that is vnalayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vse exercises, but in a meane and temperate place, and in an ayre being first purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you must eschue common dancings openly, and also turnings, leapings, and whatsoever such like exercise there be th it requireth often breathing in of ayre. Therefore because of this also in the time of the Pestilence he must eschue companies gathered together by Magistrates by some open commandement, for matters of the commonwealth, as Courts, Sessions, and such like. Let his sleepe, watchings, and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he must sleepe in a chamber that is close, well stopped and shut, lest the pestilent aire should enter into it: the aire of which chamber must be purified and corrected with some perfume aforesaid, morning and euening. He must vse sheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from sleep, let this be his first care and worke, to empty the bodie of superfluities and excrements. And you must onely take heede and beware, that the bodie be not costine at any time: therefore if it do not of it selfe void out excrements daily, you shall prouoke them out with *pilula Rasi*, or with a soft Clyster, or with a Suppositary made for the purpose. When the bodie is emptied from superfluities and excrements, as well by the guts as by the bladder, he must take some medicine that can preserue him from the infection of the Pestilence; for the which, there be many things before rehearsed. And if necessarie businesse do constrain you to go abroad openly, you may chew Zedoary, or root of Angelica, or Pimpernel: or you shall smell to Rew, for the sauer of it doth maruelously resist the pestilent aire. He must eschue all carnall lust, specially immoderate vsing thereof. After copulation, he must keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes must altogether be abhorred, as a most present poison, specially common baths: because when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the pestilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vse a private bath let them preserue and defend themselves most diligently from the corrupted aire when they go out of the bath. But it is better, and more wholsome to vse frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let baths alone: but yet you may wash the head weekly with lie, wherein hath bin lodden

Diet.

Exercitium.

Excretion.

Venus.

Balneum.

- Blond-letting.** *Asarum*, *Marioram*, *Laurender*, *Rosemary*, *Betony*, *Sage*, *Cammomill*, and such other like: but yong men and such as abound with blood, must in the time of the pestilence vse blood letting; and that not onely once, but (if nothing let to the contrarie) blood letting doth often profit much to preserue them in health, because it doth much coole the state of the bodie. and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Also you must purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that pecially in the Spring time and Autumne. As for perturbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth that we describe medicines which can keepe and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilula Rusp* or *Pestilentialis*, or else *Communes*, are principall and chiefe: *Rx*. Aloes epaticke, two parts, Saffron orientall, Myrrhe, ana. part. i. with white Wine, or with water of Scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily ʒ. j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pilles, because of the Aloes and Myrrhe in them, which do most resist putrifaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infection of pestilent ayre. Also you may vse these pils following: *Rx*. Aloes epaticke ʒ. iij. Myrrhe, ʒ. j. ʒ. Agarick prepared, ʒ. j. Saffron orientall, ʒ. ʒ. Bole armoniacke prepared, ʒ. j. seede of Citron apples, ʒ. ij. Mastick, ʒ. ʒ. root of Pimpernell, ʒ. ʒ. with Rose water, make 13. pils of ʒ. j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicine that is commonly called *Electuarium de nucibus*: *Rx* of Walnuts in number 20. of fat Figs in number 13. Rew, M. ij. of Wormwood, *Cotula fetida*, and Scabious, ana. M. j. root of *Aristolochia longa*, ʒ. ʒ. roote of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ʒ. j. ʒ. Turmentill, *Petasitis*, and Pimpernell, ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. leaues of true Diptain, M. j. of Laurell berries, ʒ. iij. of Harts horne burnt, ʒ. ij. ʒ. Maces, Myrrhe, Bole armoniack, true *Terra lemnia*, ana. ʒ. iij. Salt of the Sea, ʒ. j. ʒ. *Nux vomica* ʒ. ij. flowers of Buglosse, M. j. beate them all, and commixe them with ʒ. ij. of clarified Hony, and make a liquid medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is very good: *Rx*. leaues of true Diptaine, ʒ. ʒ. of the rootes of Zedoary, *Tunica*, Pimpernell, and Turmentill, ana. ʒ. ʒ. barks of the Citron apple, ʒ. iij. *Terra lemnia*, ʒ. vj. Bole armoniack. ʒ. j. Myrrhe chosen, Aloes epaticke, ana. ʒ. ʒ. Saffron, ʒ. ʒ. Masticke. ʒ. j. ʒ. Liquorice, ʒ. j. Scabious and Sorrell, ana. ʒ. iij. red Sanders, ʒ. j. scraping of Iuorie, and *Authera*, ana. ʒ. ʒ. the bones of the Harts heart, red Corall, ana. ʒ. ij. seed of Puslane, gra. v. bray all finely, and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, Lozenges, with Sugar, and waters of Roses and Scabious, and minister daily of them, ʒ. j. or more, or lesse, according to age and strength. Also onely Bole armoniacke taken with Vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plenty named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

The end of the fourth Booke.

THE FIFTH BOOKE,
CONTAINING THE CVRING
OF TVMORS WHICH HAP-
PEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

What that swelling is which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the diuision of the same, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THose Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Physitions and Chirurgicalians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme content of old writers, haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*: whereas indeed *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and other Grecians, hath bene reputed but as one kind of those swelling tumours which commonly are said to chance besides nature, which the Latines haue very fitly termed *Abcessus*, and the crew of yonger Physitions do call it *Exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the interpreter of *Auicen*: of the which, as also of all other kinds we will intreate particularly in his seuerall Chapter. Although, indeed, it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the species or differentia of those tumours besides nature, appointing it to be diuerse from that which they call *Exitura*, and also from that other kind *Pustula*: for vnder the name of *Apostemes*, they will conclude and place those tumours onely which being lifted vp into a great bignesse, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humours (as they terme them,) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostemata* is taken for the genus, comprehending vnder it all the tumours besides nature, by *Auicen* and his followers, it is thus commonly defined. An *Aposteme* is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated in one bignesse. Which definition they do affirme to be essentiall, consisting (as they say) of genus and differentia, which do very sufficiently explaine the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the genus, and the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: all which distinctions and diuersities, *Galen* doth recite in his Booke intituled, *De morbo & symptomate*. But these three kindes of sores, which in that swelling besides nature commonly called *Apostema*, do concur as establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: intemperature, which

Apostema.

Abcessus.

The common definition of Apostema.

Three kinds of diseases causing the essence of tumors besides nature.

*Accidentall
definitions.*

*Definitio pri-
ma.*

*Secunda.
Tertia.*

*A perfect de-
finition besides
nature, taken
out of the wri-
tings of Galen.*

they also call an euill complexion : immoderation, whereby they intend a sinister composition : and the solution of that agreeing vntie which nature affordeth to euery bodie. To which three kinds, the Greekes haue assigned three opposite and fit termes, calling the first *δυσχολία*, the second *ἀμείωσις*, the third *συναχμία λύσις* : but they bring also many other descriptions rather then definitions of this *Apostema* : for definitions I dare not terme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined, neither do they serue either to the sufficient explication of his nature, or the constitution of his essence : which they very well knowing, are content to let them go vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue desumed and taken out of Galen his Booke which he wrote *De tumoribus prater naturam*. An Aposteme or tumour besides nature, is one of those things which happening vnto the bodie, doth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremest dimension. This definition they haue extorted out of Galen his words, which he set not downe as an exquisite definition, but as an ordinary assertion. You may fashion (if you please) many such definitions, as this for one. An Aposteme is an increment exceeding naturall constitution. Or this: An Aposteme is a tumour, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall state and habite in quantitie and bignesse. Whereas Galen in his lib. 13. *Therap. Meth.* hath these words: In this thirteenth part of our whole worke we will begin to discourse of those tumours happening besides nature, in which the parts haue forsaken their naturall constitution by becoming more bigge: so that you seeing the slender weight of these definitions, must annexe this particle, *actiones ledens*, hurting the duties of the bodie: or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or else they will not be absolute or essentiall: for euery tumour making distention, or swelling in length, breadth, or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie constitution of nature, either in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or, euery excrement or greatnesse exceeding nature, must not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apostema*, or a swelling besides nature. For (as Galen saith in his booke *De tumoribus prater naturam*) such like augmentations may befall not onely to the diseased, but also to the healthfull, as well in the whole bodie, as in any member of the same. For grosse men although they be enlarged, and as it were distended both in breadth and profunditie, yet they haue not this distension besides nature, but (as he saith) onely not naturally. For they haue not yet passed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of those increments which are besides nature: and those tumours which abide in those parts which are yet sound and without the taste of griefe, may well be said to be aboue and beyond nature, but not besides nature; as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely, be maruellously increased, or inflated, yet so that his substance be free from all annoyance, this cannot appositively be said to be besides nature, but onely beyond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of Galen, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maim to the actions thereof. But such like tumours be-
sides

besides nature are wont to be diuided into three kindes by *Guido* and those of his age, into impostumes, abscessions or pushes, and vicers. Impostumes they call great tumors, in which the matter whereof it springeth doth offend in plentie or quantitie. Pushes are those little tumors (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in quality then in quantitie; yea and in them there lurketh a poisonous venime (as they say.) But the Abscessions are those tumors which the Latines call *Abcessus*, & of the Greeks may well be named *αποστημα*, as we proued before: but let it be lawfull for euery man to impose what titles or names he will, so that (as *Galen* saith) they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselves. Therefore leaving all the scrupulous and scholer like contentions which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumors or impostumes (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will beginne with inflammation.

The diuision of a tumour besides nature into his species, after the opinion of the later sort. Apostemata. Pustula. Exitura.

CHAP. II.

Of the difference of those tumors which happen besides nature.

There be many and sundrie differences of tumors besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name *Apostemes*: the differences whereof, of the later Chirurgians are obserued, to proceed either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the accidents, or from the affected parts, or else from the efficient causes. The differences which they desume from the substance, are supposed by *Auicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the littlenesse thereof. Amongst the bigge tumors they do reckon *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in the fleshie parts, which are fit to be distended) and *Oedema*, *Erysipelas*, and *Scirrhus*, which do all grow vp to a great bignesse and quantitie. Little tumors are called of them little eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skinne and the vitermost parts of the bodie; as the Greekes leprosie, the scab, the ring worme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more largely hereafter. The matter of the aforesaid tumors are the foure humours, as well naturall as not naturall, that is to say, fleame, melancholic, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature; sometime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime a yellow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre vnto another place. The symptomes or accidents which are commonly incident to these tumors are, griepe, heate, softnesse, hardnesse, and such like: from the which they will deriue some differences. But those which they take from the members and from the affected parts, are *Ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the squince, the inflammation of the throat, *Phyma*, *Phygethbum*, and those inflammations which we terme *Glandula* and *Bubones*. But the efficient causes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congestion and fluxe, and *Crisis*, that is to say, iudgement thereof, which happeneth

The diuision of a tumour into his differences. From whence the differences of tumors besides nature are taken of the later sort. Substantia.

Materia.

Accidentia.

Parti affecta.

Cause efficientes.

From whence
the difference
of tumours a-
bout nature
doth come.

Emphysema.

*Calidi tumo-
res.*

*Tumores fri-
gidi.*

*Tumores se-
rasi.*

*Tumores com-
plicati.*

*One euill see-
meth to haue
affinitie with
another.*

in diseases. There be also certaine other causes both internall and externall, whereof we will dispute more copiously and earnestly in that which followeth. But yet truly all diuersities and differences of these kindes of swellings changing about nature, haue their beginning from the nature and substance (which prouoketh the swelling) of that which floweth, as witnesseth *Galen* in his booke which he wrote of Tumors about nature. Likewise in his second booke that he wrote *ad Glauconem* cap. 13. *Meth. med.* In which places he declareth, that the varietie of all swellings which are about nature, doth arise of the nature of that which floweth: for when (saith he) a flatuous matter hath more free access, then also the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *Phlegmone* when as blood aboundeth: as likewise *Erysipelas*, when choler hath his course: and they also be more vexed with *Oedema*, when steame or rheume descending from the head doth reigne. Also they be grieved with the disease *Schirrhus*, when either a thicke or too cold humour is settled in some part thereof. Therefore (as *Galen* saith) all tumours do chance besides nature, which proceed either of humours, or of a flatuous and windie spirit, which is gathered sometime vnder the skin, sometime vnder the thinne filmes that couer the bones; sometime in the belly, sometime in the intralles, oftentimes in the midst of these, and of the *Peritonem*. The Greekes call it *Emphysema*, and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *Apossema*. If such swellings happen of humours, then they are either hote, or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumours come of the best blood, that is to say, which is perfectly ruddie, and of a meane soundnesse and moderate qualitie: and then the Greekes call it *Phlegmone*, the Latines *Inflammatio*: or they proceed of yellow choler, or of burning and thinne blood, or else of those things which be hotter then blood or choler. They terme this euill *Erysipelas*, but these name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold swellings are prouoked either through thin steame, and then the Greekes call it *Oedema*, but our Phisitions terme it *Laxus tumor*, the Interpreter of *Auicen* *Vndimia*: or also it is caused through the humor melancholy, or through thicke, cold, and clammy steame. They call this *Schirron*, the Latines *Durities*, the Arabians *Sephirus*. And swellings sometimes do chance by reason of a late taking away superfluous blood, as hereafter it shall be declared. Tumors are said to be mingled, when such kind of humors are tempered together: and if one maistereth the other, the name is giuen to the swelling from that humour which exceedeth in the mixture: as in blood-ruling choler, we will call *Phlegmone* the principall to be *Erysipelatodes*: and also because melancholie gouerneth, *Erysipelas* is said to be *Phlegmonodes*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretation, both of *Schirrus Phlegmonosus* with *Phlegmone Schirrhusa*, and of *Oedema Phlegmonosum* with *Phlegmone Oedematosa*. And after this example you shall name the other tumours, although there chance commixtion of three or foure humours together at once. Moreover, if the humours be of like force, and equally incorporate, so that the one cannot overcome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of those humours which they stirre or raise vp. As if blood be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together, *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the

the kind and nature of *Phlegmone* & *Erysipelas*. These truly be the chiefe swellings and tumors which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humours (that is to say) *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, *Aedema*, *Scirrhus*: whereunto innumerable other tumors exceeding the measure and bounds of nature, are reduced and comprehended, although they have chosen to themselves diuerse names, according to their sundrie causes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *Phlegmone*, *Phygethon*, which is called *parvus*, (*Celsus* being the author) but of our men *Phyma* and *Tuberculum*: also it is named of the same *Celsus* *Terminthion*, of *Oribasius*, the kinds of species of *phyma*: but of *Aetius*, *phigethlum*: also they be called *Dacthiens*, which *Celsus* calleth *Furunculi*, telons. Likewise *Gagrena* of some member, *napoia*, that is to say, mortification, but not absolute, and also *Sptaselus* which is called of the Latines *Syderatio*, & of *Auicenna*, *Ascachilos*, *Carbunculus* also it is called of the Greeks *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicenna* writeth in the Chapter *De pruna & igne Persico*. But vnto *Erysipelas* are referred *Herpetes*, which in kinde be two manner of waies, that is to say, *Miliares* and *Excedentes*, biting and gnawing, which the greeks do call *ισορυστοι*. He which expoundeth *Auicenna* hath called both the kinds *Formica*, but he being deceiued with the liknes of the name, hath mixed them in the same Chapter by great oversight with those *Merruce* which the Greeks call *Myrmecia*, the Latines *Formica*. *Celsus* seemeth to have comprehended those *Herpetes* vnder the name of *Ignis sacer*: but the Chirurgians of later times haue numbred them among the cholericke pustules, as they terme them. There cometh also of choler almost all those diseases called of the Greekes *Phlyctena*, and therefore they belong vnto *Erysipelas*, whereof *Auicenna* doth intreat in his Chap. *De vesica inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumors caused of fleame, that is to say, vnto *ademata*, are referred certain tumors comprehended of the Greeks vnder the name *Apostema*, which be called of *Auicenna*, *Nodi*, of *Haly Abbas*, *Sela*, and *dubeleta phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abscessus*: whereof there be diuers kinds, according to the diuers matters contained in them. Moreover in *Galen* there be three kinds of *Abscessus* chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: those be *Atheromata*, *Stratmata*, *Melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies contained in the, as we wil declare hereafter more at large. There is also a kind of *Apostema*, that is, of *abscessus*, wherein are other things contained, which do represent not onely the properties of humors, but also of certain sound bodies: but these (saith *Galen*) chance very seldome, and of these we wil also speak hereafter when we shall intreat of abscessions. But now vnto the said kinds of *Abscessus* there appertaine certain names of tumors being deuiled of the later sort, and neuer as yet found out amongst ancient writers, as *Tesudo*, which is a soft swelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *Talpa*: the one seemeth to belong vnto *Atheroma*, the other vnto *Melicerides*. But vnto *Stratmata* doth belong a certain swelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will speake in his place. Hereunto also do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of *Auicenna*, *Glandula*, which do differ from the aforesaid *Nodi*. There cometh also of fleame that which the common sort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *ademata*. These be called of the Greekes *Charades*, of the Latines, *Struma*. Notwithstanding *Galen* in a certaine place

The chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing humours.

What tumors do associate Phlegmone.

Erysipetatosi tumors.

Adematosi tumors.

Certaine new names of tumors giuen of the latter sort of Physicians. *Tesudo*. *Talpa*. *Ganglium*.

*Leucophleg-
matica.*

*Scirrhus tu-
mores.*

Cancer.

Carcinoma.

Elephantiasis.

Verruca.

Porra.

Myrmecia.

Acrocordones.

Clavus.

Thymion.

Cornua.

Calli.

Dracunculi.

Pustula.

amongst the diseases named *Scirrhi*, doth take it for *Durities*. Also vnto *edema* is referred in *Galen* that kind of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *Leucophlegmatica*, & *hypofarca*. But the swellings or tumors which pertain vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the said *Scirrhus*, are *Cancer*, which of the Greekes be called *Carnici*, and *Carcinoma*: Notwithstanding *Celsus* maketh a difference betweene *Cancer*, and *Carcinoma*, that he might say, that it did come and proceed by litle and litle of those things which do chance outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (some member being corrupted.) The same *Celsus* diuided *Cancer* into many parts or kindes, that is to say, into *Erysipelas*, *Gangrena* & *ulcus nigrum*: of this kind also is *Elephantus*, or *Elephantia*, or *Elephantiasis*, called of the common sort of Physicians *Lepra*, and of some, *sancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *Lepra* signifyeth with *Auicenna* and with the vnlearned company, a most grieuous & deadly disease, when yet with *Gal. Paul. Aegineta*, & with other Grecians it is counted but a light grieue, not much differing from that which we call *Scabies*, which is called of the same writers *Psora*. Among this hard swelling kinde of tumors, are accounted the diseases called in the Latine tongue of the interpreter of *Auicenna*, *Verruce*, which be swellings like vnto litle hillocks appearing in the skin, whereof they haue this name, being called of the common sort *Porra*: To this kinde also may be referred *Myrmecia*, as it one should call them *Formicula*, & *Aerocordones*, which of our countymen are termed *Pensiles verruca*, and *Clavus* also, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes *κλος*, of *Auicenna* they are called *Almismar*, *Thymion*, or *Thymon*, representing the knobby tops of the herbe Thyme. *Auicenna* seemeth also to haue giuen it this name *Tussum*, or (as another translation hath it) *Tarfecum*. Also among the diuers kinds of *Verruca*, there be euils called of *Auicenna* *Cornua*, so called, because they being very long, are turned againe crooked like vnto hornes. In like case also there be *Calli* which the Greekes call *καλλοί*, these are ingendred by meanes of the skin being obdured and hardned through much labour. Vnto choler also there seemeth to pertain this euill, which the Grecians call *Dracuntion*, the Latins, *Dracunculius*: according to the liuely similitude or liknesse of that name, *Auicenna* calleth it *Vena medeni*, *Haly Abbas*, *Vena saniosa*: whereof *Paulus Aegineta* intreateth, cap. ultimo lib. 4. This disease is not very rife with vs. Besides these tumors which we now haue rehearsed, there chanceth other also, affecting oftentimes the superficial parts of the body, that is to say, certain smal appearings, which they call *Pustula*, and *Bothor*. Which although they differ both among themselues, and also from those tumors which we haue aboue recited, yet they are caused of the same humors, of the which also they are now called great tumors. Therefore they onely seeme to differ from them in respect of their greatnes and smalnesse. But that such little tumors (which truly a Chirurgion ought not to be ignorant of) might appeare most manifest, and easie to be conceiued of every man, I haue thought it expedient, and a thing worthy the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue already done in the greater. Therefore, that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kinde of pustules or pusshes, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining the

the same title amongst the Latines, and *Psora* called of the same writer *Scabies*, being truly diseases very neare of affinitye among themselves: for there is roughnesse and sharpnesse of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, comming of the same humour, that is to say, of choler. Notwithstanding they differ in this, because *Lepra* doth consume the skinne with manifest scales somewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Psora* doth onely hurt the outward part with diuerse formes, and doth vuloose a certaine scurfe of the bodie. Hitherto also doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines, *Impetigo*, in English the Ring-worme, and commonly of some (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *Volatica*. This chanceth by reason of the mingled putrifaction of wilde bloud being thinne and sharpe, with other that be thicke: and very often and easily it doth turne it selfe (*Galen* affirming the same) into the aforesaid euils, that is to say, into *Lepra* and *Scabies*, which they call *Psora*. Yet there are some which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of *Celsus*, *Impetigo*. But truly seeing he doth write specially of *Impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Libro quinto sue medicine*, it is evidently apparent, that he meant some other thing by this word *Impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongst the Greekes, seeing that truly we neuer reade in any Greeke Author, that there were so many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed of or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with *Galen* speake properly, *Lepra*, and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the same euil: otherwise the same should be changed into it selfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into few words: when the skinne is lightly infected with an onely roughnesse and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*: but when the grieue waxeth worse, it chaargeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cause manifest scales, and doth pierce the skinne somewhat deeply, it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be stretched out onely by the outward superficies, and doth cause brannie or scalie bodies, it is called *Psora* of the Greekes, or vs it is called properly *Scabies*. Although this word *Scabies* doth extend very farre commonly also among the Physicians of late time, who do name all the euill of the skin to be *Scabies*. But they speake very improperly: for the pure and true *Scabies*, so called of the Latines, is without all doubt that disease which is called of the Greekes *Psora*, of *Auicenna* also *Albara* and *Morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of some. For that which is said of him and almost of all the Physicians of Affricke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of *Celsus* also *Leuce*. But amongst them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greeks *Alphon*, in which disease the whole flesh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the bodie, euen as though (as *Galen* saith) it were set about with certaine scales. Put these *Alphi* (as it is in *Galen*) in their kinde are of two sorts, that is to say, white, which come of steame: and blacke, which proceede from a melancholicke humour. But these things we haue spoken of, being led by the consequence of things. For neither *Leuce* nor *Alphi* themselves are accounted amongst the tumours besides nature, but rather amongst the euils of the skin. Which things although they hurt very little, yet because they do dishonest and bring shame, they are wont to be for the most part a greater heauinesse

Lepra.
Psora.

Lychene.

Foure kinds of
Impetigo.

Lepra.
Psora.
Scabies.

Albara.
Leuce.

Alphon is of
two sorts.

Vitiligo.

Small credite
to be giuen to
wordes or
names.

Ionthi.

Epinyctides.

and wearinesse (especially vnto women) then many other diseases which truly do hurt, but yet they be secret. Both these euils, that is to say, *Leuce* and *Alphi*, *Celsus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *Vitiligo* (making three kindes thereof) although other Students of Physicke, turning Greeke into Latine, do conuert *Leuce* in al places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with this Epithet or addition, as to say, *Alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therefore, if we wil comprehend it vnder any certain head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habite of some part of the bodie, which could not well receiue any nourishment to it selfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nourishing facultie, whereof some do constitute two kindes, the one which doth infect the skinne onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue fast vnto it like vnto little scales; the other which goeth in somewhat deeper, so that it toucheth the very flesh, and coloureth the haire: for in it there ariseth gray haire, like vnto a certaine kind of mofinesse: this is gathered together of viscous and glutinatie fleame: but both of them do defile & staine, either with their white, or especially with their black colour. The first species, which is aloft and superficiall, whether it be white or blacke, it is called of the Greekes, *Alphi*, by the same name, as before, because it changeth the colour of the skinne, for *αλφειν* (whereof *αλφει* is deriued) signifieth amongst the ancient Greekes, to change. *Auicenna* calleth it *Morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce somewhat deeper, is called of the Greekes, and of *Celsus* also *Leuce*, and of the rest of the Latins *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicenna*, *Albara*. *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth it *Lepra*, a filthy disease which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernicious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greekes affirme it) & little differing from a scab: neither (as *Auicenna* thought) pernicious and grievous, but onely lothsome and filthy. Whereby we may coniecture, that little credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnlesse the matter be thoroughly discovered. For one and the selfe-same word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vphold many diuerse and different significations, as in their Commentaries doth euerie where appeare. But we haue spoken by the way of the euils and defecations of the skinne, onely that the confusion of things might be eschued which happeneth by words mis-vnderstood. Therefore omitting these things, we will returne vnto our purpose, and with as much breuitie as we can, we will dispatch the discourse of the residue of swelling sores, among which, besides those which we haue rehearsed and touched already, are reckoned by the Greekes, *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hidroa*, *Psittaces*, *Exanthemata*, *Celsi papule*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are little swellings, and those hard, which arise in the outward skinne and superficies of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a grosse humour, which are either resolved, or else ripened by a litle matter which springeth with it. The Latines call them *Vari*: *Galen* maketh mention *libro quinto, De medicam. secundum locos*, of an affect, which he calleth *Ianthosus affectus*, which he saith is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiasis*, vnder the which disease he seemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celsus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epinyctides* (as *Celsus* supposeth) are Pestilent pushes, either of pale colour, or of a blacke colour

four, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bignesse of a beane, arising either in the leg or in the fecte. About them there is alwayes a very vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thick and clammy exulceration within. His colour is like vnto his humor; but the griefe greatly surpasseth the bignesse of the sore, which in quantitie surmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either (as *Celsus* thought) because that in the night time they pricked and molested more grievously. or because they most commonly arise in the night. *Pliny* termeth them blewish pushes, disquieting especially in the night time. The Arabians call them *Essere*, *Sere*, or *Saire*, which words explaine the forenamed nature of the sore. Those which are called of the Greeks *Hidra*, the Latines terme *Sudamina*. & *Plinie* *Papula sudoraria*, *Auicen*, *Planta noctua*, & *Almansorum*, and *Aibaphum*: whereby it cometh to passe, that *Epinyctus* doth much differ from *Auicen* his *Planta noctua*, although the Greek word *Epinyctus* doth draw his originall from the night. But these *Sudamina*, as *Galen* saith, lib. 4. Aphor. 21. are reckoned among those kinds of pushes or wheikes, which sticking in the very superficies of the body, do pricke and shoot, not vnlike to our common vlcers: and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious sweats, which bite the skin, & make it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and yong men, and to those which are cholericke, & in the time of heate; but it is so easie to be cured, that of it selfe (without any aide) it will heale, ripening with a white top. But *Auicen* thinks, that these desudations, by their description, agree rather with *Celsus* his *Exanthemata*, then with *Galen* his *Sudamina*. But he who will obserue the nature of the words, will thinke that *Auicen* his desudations may well be the Greekes *Hidra*, which the Latines call *Sudamina*. But we must not follow the names so much among the Barbarian and Arabian Writers, but the genuine and sincere descriptions of the things themselves. *Psyrates* or *Psyratica*, are pushes, which abiding in the very uttermost part of the skinne, are resembled to bladders, excited by fire, which are called *Phlyctene*. They rise specially in the head. *Psyracion* is not truly read in *Celsus* for *Psyracion*. Those pushes which grow in the skinne, first coming by thicke humours stuffed in the skinne, and are commonly called *Morbilli* and *Variola* of *Galen*, because they swell, and waxe big, as it were the bud of a flower, they are called *Exanthemata*; but of *Hippocrates* (because they do breake out of themselves) they are termed *Exanthemata*. *Ecthymata*. For *E* & *Θ* whereof *Exanthema* is deriued, signifieth a flower, and *Ecthymata* (whereof *Ecthyma* cometh) signifieth to burst out. *Pliny* calleth such pushes, wheikes, and the corruptions of flegme. But these are of two kinds: for some of them are steep, and some go out into breadth. Those which are steepe, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch; but those which are broad, do flow, and proceed from a more cold and thicke humour, and do not a whit procure itch. The first sort, of the common *Physiops* are knowne by the name *Morbilli*: the second by this name *Variola*. But the Frenchmen preposterously abusing the names, haue called the low and broad kinde *Rubeole*, but the higher sort *Variola*. *Hippocrates* in libro tertio *Epi.* doth diuise the kinde of pushes into little and great *Ecthymata*, in calling the steeper kinde *Magni herpes*, either because (as *Galen* saith) they occupy a great place, or else because they happen with a vehement gnawing.

why they be
called Epiny-
ctides.

Sudamina.
Planta noctua.

Desudationes
Auicennae.

Psyrates.

Morbilli.
Variola.
Exanthemata.
Ecthymata.

For indeed these sometime appeare great in height onely, sometimes both in heighr and breadth. *Cornelius Celsus lib. 5. medicina sua*, in his treatise of *Impetigo*, remembreth two kindes of whelkes: the one somewhat small, which if it be daily rubbed with fasting spittle, it waxeth whole: the other somewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more sharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth very vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He saith, that this is termed of the Greekes *αγρία*, in Latine *fera*. But in both these kinds he confesseth, that there is lesse impediment or corruption then in *Impetigo*, so that he affirmeth, that euill whose cure is hard, except it be taken away, doth change and turne into *Impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof) do call both these kindes, but specially the first, *Dartra*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the same manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth slowly. Which whelkes or pushes do agree in all things to be those which are said of *Celsus* to be of the first kinde. Some do constantly affirme, that these whelkes, so named of *Celsus*, do nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *Impetigo* among the Latines. And we have read, that that onely Author among the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papule*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vsed of *Plinie*, wherein he seemed in the beginning *lib. 26.* to haue altogether meant another thing from *Impetigo*, and that it was farre away a worse euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Physicke he hath interpreted sometime *Lychene* among the Greekes, to be *Impetigo*, and the like disease called *Mentagra*, he termeth also in the same place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the same *Plinie lib. 26.* *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept first into Italy in the reigne of *Tiberius Caesar*, which grieue in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much lesse vnto Italy. It was of so great filthinesse and corruption, that anie death was to be preferred or wished before it, and also of so great infection, that by the swift passage thereof, onely by kissing one another it infected the people, but chiefly those that were gouernours and rulers among them. This euill beganne almost at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *Mentagra*. This perhaps is that scabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartra*. *Galen* also seemeth to acknowledge this disease: for in his first booke *De medicam. compos. secundum locos*, he remembreth a most vile kind of *Impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearseth out of *Crito*) prouoketh itching, it afflicteth also the patients, and bringeth them into no small danger. For sometime (saith he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eyes, and it causeth the greatest deformitie of the bodie almost that can be: which description of *Impetigo* doth consent in all things with the *Mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this most contagious *Lychene*, called of *Plinie* *Mentagra*, is that disease which at this day commonly some do call *Gallicum malum*, some *Neapolitanum*, other some not bearing any bare or enuie to their Countries, do call it *Venerum*. For this infection was altogether vnknowne to the ancient Physicians, and also of the former age: and first of all it crept into Neapolis, in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. at which time *Charles* the eight, the most inuincible king of France did overcome and winne the Alpes, going about also to inuade

Papula Celsi.

Dartra Gallica.

Mentagra.

Galen acknowledgeth Mentagra.

Morbus Neapolitanus, & Venerum.

inade Italy; although not long before it had spread it selfe abroad through the countries of Spaine, as some report. Wherefore having as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it began to be called *Hispanica lues*, the Spanish pestilence: which plague being sent vpon the earth, as it were, by the iust reuengement of GOD (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abominable whoredome forbidden of God, hath corrupted and overbrowne with the contagion thereof a great part of humane kind. For the same sicknesse the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage hereof from one to another: and now also it strayeth and wandereth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italy, & all Europe, to the great annoyance of the people. There are also certaine pusshes besides these, rehearsed euen now out of *Auicenna li. 4.* called *Glandosa*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the diseale called *Ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicenna libro 3.* of certaine wheelks, which he calleth in the same place *bothores iuncturarum*: and in *lib. 4.* he calleth them *almatim*, which, because he sheweth that they be blacke and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *Terminthi*, which a little before we accounted among the species of *Phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face: who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *heleodes*, that is, *ulcerosa*, full of scabs or sores. These white and milkie pusshes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicenna*, *leuis bothor*, if their descriptions be thoroughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the wheelks called of the Greekes *Ionehi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicenna* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the diseale *ephelide*, that is to say, for the roughnesse and swartnesse of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto we haue intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly about the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature, appearing vniuersally on the outside of the bodie.

There are two causes of tumours chancing besides nature, agreed of among the later sort of Physicians and Chirurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the fluxe, which the Greekes call *πύμα*, and the congestion or heaping together of humors. Againe, by the same Writers there are appointed to be sixe causes in number of the fluxe; that is to say, 1. the strength of the repulsive member: 2. the weaknesse of the retentive: 3. the abundance and plentie of matter: 4. the loosenesse or fulnesse of the pores of the body through the which the fluxe happeneth: 5. the straightnesse of the repulsive parts: 6. and the lower situation of the place retaining the fluxe. But these may be reduced into foure heads, as vnto the repulsive member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked

The causes of tumors besides nature.

Fluxionis causa.

Pars propellens Particula excipiens.

Humor fluens.

Spatium.

*Causes of con-
gestion.*

*How an hote
defluxion pro-
uoketh a tu-
mour.*

*There is a
trifold decla-
ration of all
those evils
which are yet
in begetting.*

either by the meanes of the expulsive member, or because of the solitude of the expulsive vertue, or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentive member, or because of the straitnesse of the particular pores but some part receiveth the fluxe, because it is either painfull, or hote, or somewhat weake, or seldome, and base or settled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humor there is a defluxion or flowing downe into some part of the body, because it is in abundance superfluous, of nature troublesome, and of substance thin. But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe, by reason of the largenesse of the passages, as of the veins, arteries and pores. But of congestion, (which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature), there are assigned two causes, that is to say, the fault of the vertue nutritive, and the imbecility of the vertue expulsive. By which things we gather, that hote tumours happen for the most part through the defluxion of humours, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hote fluxe excith the tumour, *Galen* doth declare plainly and wittily, in that little booke which he intituled *Inequalis intemperies*, writing after this manner: An hote descending of a fluxe (saith he) as soone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the great arteries and yeines are filled and stretched out, then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a fluxe is strongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof issueth out through the extreme parts of them, and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth; and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the best and chiefeest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour, do waxe hote in enery place, and also are still powred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh, and besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall, are diuersly and many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly, by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out, and torne and pulled asunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hote, but also are suppressed and made heauie. But the other parts of the body some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *Phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kind of tumours chancing besides nature, which are caused of the flowing of humours, something already (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue) is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioyned matter which hath already flowed, and is compact in the aggriued place. Hereupon therefore there must be vsed a diligent care of the Physitian in such kindes of *Phlegmone* which as yet remaine in generation (as in all other tumors also and diseases which are yet in beginning, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen lib. 13. meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreseeeth, & that which cureth: but these things pertaine to another kind of study. But it is conuenient that we set downe the speciall causes of tumours which are about nature, to the

the which these three are commonly appointed: Primitiue causes, which we call both *Progressa* and *Eidentes*; and causes antecedent, which we name *Antecedentes*; and ioyned causes, which we terme *Coniuncta* or *Continētes*. These be called of the Greekes *πρωταρχαί, προγρησάμεναι, συνέχουσαι*. The primitiue causes are said to be these, which while they do worke any disease, are separated, as a fall, a stripe, a blow, a bruise, a tumor, or a solution, or that euil which is committed by admitting a dissolute diet. Antecedent causes, are those which of themselves are fit and materiall to beget any disease or affect, as are foure humours both naturall, and not naturall. Naturall humours are those which serue to nourish the body, and haue their being with the blood, and are comprehended vnder the name of blood. Which if they be sent out from the veines and arteries, they do suddenly congeale and gather together; whether they flow without the body, or do remaine still in the place wherein they be contained. But they call those vnnaturall humours, which are found seuered from the blood, with the which the body is nourished; and by reason of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do sometime grow, although they remaine in the aire which compasseth vs. And these, as it were by a certaine kinde of prouidence of nature, being destined and ordained for some vse, are denutted and sent into certaine receptacles, either into the vitermost parts of the bodie, and so ingender vnkind swellings, called *Abcessus*, or wheelkes, scabbes, defecations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall sweats: or sometime by an insensible aire inwardly infused they do excite sweatings. Sometime also they putrifie with n, and beget Feauers. But such like (say they) are improperly termed humours, assuming to themselves the names of naturall humours. For they hold this opinion, that onely those iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of blood, and of nutrition and moisture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are sincere and pure blood, cholericke also, flegmaticke and melancholicke; by the which foure kinds all the parts of the body are generally nourished and maintained: some parts with a more pure, and (as I may say) a more bloody humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholicke, as the nature of euery part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veines and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and consistencie (as *Galen* hath expressed in *libro de atra bile*.) Furthermore, of those foure humours which are called naturall, foure speciall Tumours are ingendred, which are commonly called *Apoſtemata*. In the which the swelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *phlegmone*, *erysipelas*, *edema*, *scirrhus*. Of humours not naturall (as it pleaseth the later Physicians) do proceed *Abcessus*, which they also call *Exitura* and *Pustula*, which they thinke cannot well be called Apoſtemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kindes also, flatuous and waterie, which proceed of a fluible substance, and are commonly called *apoſtemata ventosa* & *aquosa*, that is, windie and waterish apoſtemes. There be therefore sixe titles attributed vnto simple tumours, that is, *phlegmonosi*, *erysipelatosi*, *edematosi*, *scirrhosi*, *flatuosi*, & *aquosi*. But the compound tumours are not called according to the concurrence of humours,

*Special causes
of tumours
of bone nature.
Progressa.*

Antecedentes,

*Which are said
to be naturall
humours;*

*Which are said
to be vnnaturall.*

*What iuyces
are properly
termed naturall
humours.*

*Of the foure
naturall hu-
mours are in-
gendred foure
lawfull and e-
speciall tu-
mours.*

*What tumors
do come of
vnnaturall
humours.*

*Coniuncta
causa tumo-
rum præter
naturam.*

*What it is
which is called
coniens cau-
sa.*

*Some thinke
that coniun-
cta causa no-
thing differeth
from the ma-
ladie it selfe.*

*What Absces-
sus Galen
thinketh to be.*

(because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humour especially, as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniuncta causa*, or *coniens* of those tumours besides nature which they commonly call *apostemata*, *passula*, and *exitura*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumours also do greatly augment; and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished: and when their substance is viterly spent and extinguished, the tumours also of themselves do fall away. And this cause, called *coniuncta* or *coniens causa*, of all the maladies and sundrie dispositions of the bodie, is after this manner by *Auicenna* defined, that when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanies him: and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanissheth. But for all this, some Physicians of our age, and those very well learned, do contend that *Galen* would admit but two causes, that is to say, an externall and an internall: or as they say now, a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which, that (he saith) doth happen to the body outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the biting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the body, and doth presently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and duties of the bodie, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie: and that *coniuncta causa*, which *Auicenna* and his Sect haue inuented, according to their owne description which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kinde of affect letting the execution of those duties pertaining to the bodie, which is the verie definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue, that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to prejudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one and the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this latter age, concerning this triple kinde of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this Treatise of mine, for plainnesse sake, shall diuide & distinguish these three causes into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primitiua*, *antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumours happening besides nature. Now the course of our Treatise doth exact that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before we shall intreate somewhat of the nature and generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks *ἀποσπασμα*, and of the common Physicians *exitura*, are called of *Galen* (*libro de tumoribus præter naturam*, & *secundo ad Glauconem*) dispositions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumours, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith *Galen*, there must of necessitie be a place void in the midst, which borroweth either some flatuous, moist, or tempered, or mixed substance from the parts, which in length of time is altered into many and

and sundrie circumstances. But there is a double kind of these *abscessus*: one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it selfe is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before, a certaine humour, either vaporious, or else a substance mixed of both parts, is in some part collected together, which also happeneth two wayes: for either in the space lying betweene the seuered parts, such like substance is ingendred, or else it runneth into the parts themselves, and that either in the beginning, or else that way by the which those diseases happen called *αποσχηματα*, which (saith Galen) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infested and grieved some one part, do thence remoue, and are enforced into another. And this substance which begetteth this *abscessus*, worketh himselfe a place betweene the skinne and the flesh. And in time it doth fley off all the skinne, either because it is very vehement, or else because the plentie of matter doth putrifie, and so breake the skin. But if those humours with the which the space situated betweene the seuered parts is filled, do continue any more, they haue (as I said before) many alterations, and are changed into many substances, which do represent the properties not onely of humors, but euen of solide and hard bodies. For you shall find sundry matters within these spaces, some like vnto stones, some to grauell and sand, some to wood, some to coles, some to dirt, some to the foam of oiles, some to the dregs of wine: this varietie of substances some ignorant men haue thought to proceed from the force of incantation.

Two kinds of
abscessus, Gal.
lib. 14. Therac.
meth. & lib. 2.
ad Glauconem

αποσχηματα

What things
may be found
in *abscessus*.

CHAP. IIII.

*Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing,
together with the iudgements thereof.*

TUMOURS besides nature, being resiant in the extreamest parts of the bodie (the examining and speculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chirurgion) being surueyed by the iudgement of the senses, and the affected parts being touched and felt by the hands, are easily descried and knowne. For in euery part of the bodie there appeareth a certaine kind of increasing exceeding the naturall state, and distending about the measure of nature that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the duties or actions thereof, because either some humour, or some such substance proceeding of the humour, or which do fauour somewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporious spirit hath excited it, there also must needs happen a tumour besides nature. But the tumors which they call true *Apostemes*, are discerned by their swelling, by their paine, and by their heate, being stretched out more or lesse. But they are not counted to be true *Apostemes* indeed, which we haue termed *pustule* and *abscessus*, besides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, and also in the greater or lesser sequestration, *determinata*. But the signes of euery particular difference, and of their matter whereof they be ingendred, shall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the simple differences of those tumours which are about nature, by the which the compound differences shall also be easily knowne. But we must not

General signes
of tumours and
bone nature.

Particular
signes.

I.
Iudicia.

Lib. de differ.
morborum.

Four kindes
of tumors be-
sides nature.

1
Principium.

2
Augmentum.

3
Status.

4
Declinatio.

come vnto particular things, before we haue throughly discoursed of vniuersall, for that order is wont to be obserued in the institutions of the Arts, neither truly vnworthily, or without cause. For those vniuersall and common things are more manifested vnto vs then particular, because these particular things are more confused, and mote mixed one with another, as *Aristotle* teacheth *lib. I. Physicorum, ca. I.* Let no man therefore maruell though euery where in this treatise of Chirurgery, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of those which comprehend many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpose, and let vs prosecute the iudgements of tumors consisting aboue nature. In the which first of all we must note, that all those tumors which they call true Apostemes, (if we will credit *Galen* and *Auicen*) are greatly complicate and folded together, neither can any of them be easily iudged or found out to be pure and sincere: for (as *Galen* saith) with *Phlegmone*, that is, with an inflammation coming of bloud, there is something chiefly mingled which doth preserue the nature either of *Erysipelas*, or *adema*, or *scirrhus*: but chiefly *Erysipelas*, because it representeth a kind of *Phlegmone*, or *Aedema*, or *Scirrhus*: and so consider and marke in all the rest of the tumors. But truly those tumors besides nature which they terme not true Apostemes, are very often found sincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of simple and sincere tumors in those things which follow, by the which the remedies also of compound and intricate tumors shall manifestly appeare. For I thinke it good to discourse of all the kinds of tumors, and also to dispose aright that which shall seeme superfluous. For if a man shall know all the simple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded together, he shall be furnished sufficiently to exercise himselfe particularly in the rest. But now let vs see other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumors themselves. *Periodi, paroxysmi*, and the *crises* of tumors besides nature, do follow the analogie of the humours whereof they be conflated or ingendred, (*Guido* affirming the same) which analogie we here declare to be a propertie or proportion, a nature or a likenesse of substance, which they call *forma specifica & occulta*, a speciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumors, especially they which be wholsome, and which are caused of the flowing of humours, are distinguished by foure times, that is to say, by their beginning, by their increasing, by their state, and by their declination. The signe of their beginning is, when the member be ginneth to be stretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is present, but yet with small grieve. We may also iudge augmentation to be present, when we see the tumor to be raised like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the symptomes which are wont to follow euery tumor to be manifestly increased. But the tokens of their state is, when all the aforesaid things, that is to say, the tumor, and the symptomes of the differences of euery tumor hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increasing, but the matter causing the tumor doth degenerate and change it selfe into another kinde of substance. But their declination is then knowne to be present, when the pile of the tumor and the proper symptomes thereof, are decreased and diminished, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumor be ginneth to be transformed into another substance. Therefore such kind

kinde of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially, that is to say, from the essence of the tumour it selfe, that is, from the greatnesse or smalnesse, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents, which do very much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, sometime do seeme to happen all together, because of the short hardnesse of euery one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kinde of tumours, which do chiefly happen thorough the influxion of humours, except they be hindered by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, either of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause, (the fluxe having recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrifaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best and the most to be desired, is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which cometh by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all, the which *Galen* doth insinuate in *libro de inaequali intemperie*, writing on this manner: Therefore of the two, we must of necessity follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified and corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must grant that this putrifaction being resisted and overcome, the muscle must returne to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therefore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, either by digesting those humours which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or loosening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humours, these two things are specially required, viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it selfe. And a little beneath he addeth also these wordes: But if that fluxion do make the parts as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinarie action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted and putrified. Thus farre *Galen*. The tokens of dissolution and loosening of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the little throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, and of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the blacke and blew colour, to which also sometime happeneth an odious stinck. But the tokens of a stony hardnesse of the tumor, are, the immi-
 nution of the tumour, and also the extreame hardnesse thereof. The notes and signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumour, are, the sudden diminution thereof, which chanceth sometime by too much refrigeration and coldnesse, sometime by reason of a secret venime, which lurketh in the place. And the same sudden and often immi-
 nution of the tumour succeedeth commonly some feauer, and also other euill symptomes. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of those tumours which our common Physitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apossema*. The tokens also of those tumours which we call *Pustula*, shall not be forgotten, when we shall haue occasion to handle

The times of tumors do take their differences from three things chiefly.

Tumors above nature are contained vnder foure moodes.

Gal. lib. de inaequali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrifaction.

Signes of induration.

Signes of the regression and lurking of a tumor.

Signes of
abscession to
come.

Signes of
abscession al-
ready present.

Apho. 47. li. 2.

handle them. But the signes and tokens of the abscesses commonly called *Fistulae*, either those which foreshew their coming, or else those which do manifest their presence already, are these. When thou seest (saith *Avicen*) pulsation and beating, or hardnesse to have continued a great time, and also that the grieve together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next event that followeth, is, that the Aposteme will be turned into matter and suppuration, and so consequently to be an abscession. But when thou findest that the place is soft, and that the grieve is somewhat allwaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumour is supereminent above the rest; and againe if by thrusting it with your finger, you shall perceiue a waterish inundation to subsist; and againe that the colour of his top shall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and also that it is turned into abscession. And therefore it is well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that Feauers did oftener happen when the matter was in ripening, then when it was already come to his maturitie. Moreouer, the markes and tokens as well of the present abscession, as also of the abscession to come, are comprehended in these common verses,

*Durities longa, pulsus, dolor, & calor aucti,
Signant pus fieri: sed factum, dicta remissa,
Sub digito vndans, albescens pars & acuta.*

Which may be thus Englished,

By hardnesse long, by pulse and grieve, and eke by heate increas'd,
We know that matter doth approach: but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeeld to fingers weight, and whitenesse doth appeare,
_____ and painfull be also.

Apho. 41. li. 6.

Iudicia ab-
scessuum.

What absces-
sions may ea-
sily be dige-
sted.

But you must be very attentiu and vigilant in discerning and iudging of the matter it selfe. For the manifest knowledge of the matter and suppuration is sometime withholden from the Physition, by reason of the thicknesse of the skinne in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphorisme of *Hippocrates*;) Whosoever is ignorant of the suppuration which is in the body, his ignorance proceedeth of the thicknesse of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the signes of abscessions. Now of the iudgements of them; these things are deliuered vnto vs of *Avicen* and his Sect. Abscessions which are planted neare vnto any strong member, or vnto any iuncture or ioynt, and in those places where there are most veines and sinewes; and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heate, being indurate also and couered with a thicke skin, containing also thicke matter, and so the more slow in motion, the outward place being plaine also, and euen, not ascending like a little hillocke, I say, such a like sore is greatly suspected, and verie hardly and slowly ripened: and such a one as is euery way by description opposite and contrarie to this, is of good and laudable habite; for both soone and easily it mattereth, and oftentimes also (no outward medicine aiding or assisting) of it selfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abscession do grow vp into a sharpnesse, and the substance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thrust forth the conceiued humour without any

any forreine aide, vntlesse a man by making incision will anteuert and preuent his voluntary opening. Such like abscessions are digested sometime by bea-
thing or wind (no solotion being made subiect within the skinne,) but that
happeneth when the matter is small in quantity, good and thin, and not sticking
very deepe. But if there be any emissarie or way made into the tumour, either
by Nature or by Art, the humour conceiued within doth breake forth oftener
then digest. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great
deale safer then that which is made by the hand. But if it be so that it must be
mollified by Art, you shall safelier do it by a sharpe pen knife or other cleare
and bright instrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *Ruptori-
um medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I said) euery apertion which is
made and enforced by Art, is worse then that which Nature affoordeth of it
selfe, because such like manuall openings to make the matter ranke, may per-
haps turne into a *Fistula*. But when necessitie vrgeth, and when we cannot vse a
better remedie, we must boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you shall es-
chue those discommodities which before I named, if (when the matter so re-
quireth) you do seasonably make apertion, and by that meanes hasten the ripe-
ning of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his last
Oracle of his first booke of *Prædictiones* hath expressed the very notes & marks
of the worst matter, and of the best, speaking after this manner: That matter is
esteemed best, which is of colour white, and euery way like it selfe, and soft and
gentle to the touch, and as little vnpleasent to the nose as may be. And that
which is euery way contrary to this, is the worst of all. But the tokens & signes
of all the other humours and solide substance also which are included in these
abscessions, shall be manifested and shewed in their particular Chapters, as they
shall by consequence and order ensue.

*What absces-
sions may soo-
nest be ended
through resolu-
tion.*

*Abscessions
are safelier
opened with a
penknife then
with ruptori-
um medica-
mentum.*

*The notes of
the best and
worst matter
out of Hippo-
crates.*

CHAP. V.

*Of the generall method of curing all tumors besides nature, but of
those especially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as
Apostemes, and Abscessions, commonly called Exitura.*

OF all tumours aboue nature, as well those which are already ingendred, as
those which are not yet in generation, there is one common and princie-
pall order of curing (as it is in *Galen libr. 13. and 14. Method. med.*) namely that
that which is aboue nature resident in any member, and raiseth the same in-
to a tumour, should altogether be emptied out. But those which are yet in
begetting, in them there is a certaine obstruction of the humour that floweth
to the aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required
a diligent and singular care of the Physitian, to declare the cure of them. But
these common manifestations, according to the difference of the tumour it
selfe, and the nature of the affected member, do very much differ and alter.
For truly in all tumours already ingendred, and in euery part of the bodie,
the euacuation of that which annoyeth and infesteth, is in no case to be used
and ministred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro secundo ad Glauconem*, and in the pla-
ces aboue recited, which also shall manifestly appeare in that which followeth.

*The common
order of cu-
ring of tu-
mours.*

*The common
method of cu-
ring of tumors
doth change
according to
the difference
of the tumour,
and the mem-
ber affected.*

The order of
curing of tu-
mors is chiefly
taken from
two things.
The essence of
a tumor doth
containe three
things in it.

Foure things
to be conside-
red chiefly in
the nature of
affected mem-
bers.

Libr. 2. ad
Glaucouem.
The order of
bandling that
which follows.

But we must not cure those tumours with such remedies, which are yet but be-
ginning and occupying euery member, or emptie out that which is already
ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right or-
der in curing) to vse sometime one remedie, sometime another, which is of
force to stop the fluxe, and auoid out that which is ingendred, so farre forth
as the kinde of the tumor and the nature of the affected member doth require.
Galen therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumours a-
boue nature from these two things, viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence
of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreover the dis-
position of the euill (which we haue now in hand) or the essence thereof doth
comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the
later sort, that is, the quantity, the quality, & the matter or substance which pro-
uoketh the tumour. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration
is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a
great tumour is cured one way, and a small tumour another way. For the diffe-
rence of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose.)
And one way is a mighty *Phlegmone*, and another way a little *Herpes* healed. O-
therwise also is that tumour remedied which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in
begetting, then that which is precreated through congestion, or is already
ingendred and congealed. Also a hote tumour, as *Erysipelas*, is otherwise cu-
red then a cold, as is *adema* and *Scirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a
tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The qualitie is
the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter
thereof is the humour, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected
members foure things chiefly are to be considered, viz. their temperature,
their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength.
To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is, the facilitie (as I may
terme it) and difficulty of the senses. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend
and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tu-
mor. These things therefore also do much alter that generall order of curing,
which is commonly obserued throughout all kinde of tumours aboue nature.
It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumours which chance besides na-
ture, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For
Phlegmone, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the
body, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinewy places: o-
therwise in the eye then in the knee or necke: and otherwise are the kernels
in the throate cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body.
But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation and the strength of
the member that is affected and beset with the tumour, do change all those o-
perations, which we shall attempt and prone in the cure: retaining still that
generall inuention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwayes taken from the
disease. Therefore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common and ge-
nerall method of curing of tumors aboue nature, especially of those which are
caused through the influxion of humours, taking their manifestation from the
affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will
teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, when as they
shall

shall degenerate and change into abscessions. Then moreover, we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, especially of those which be simple, by whose proportion or analogie the cure of compound tumours shall easily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place shall require, we will rehearse out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their assumption from the parts which are affected, and as it were besieged with a tumor: which thing being rightly weighed and considered, it shall be easie for any reasonable Physitian or Chyrurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kind of tumours which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumours which are said to be aboue nature, from the flowing of ingendred humours, and from the inuention of the cause of the verie euill, that so both the causes which excite the same may be prevented, and that which is already in it may be taken away. Therefore by example and analogie of one difference of tumours which are caused through defluxion (for here we minde to treat onely of them) we will vnderstand also other differences, which do grow through flowing of humours. And here we will set downe a briebe and compendious curing of one kinde of *Phlegmon*: which chanceth very often, and procureth feauers and other very dangerous euils and symptomes. But in this place, vnder the name of *Phlegmon*, our intent is not to comprehend euerie hote and flaming disposition which the Greekes call *phlogosis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloody fluxe, chiefly incident to fleshie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine and rednesse appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heate, a stretching out, and a striving or thrusting, and when the euill is increased, there is sense of the pulses beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* and other Greeke Writers, as *Paulus Aetius*, and *Oribasius*, which do follow him as their best guide, we properly call *Phlegmon*. That we may therefore come to the matter it selfe, these are the verie words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euery *Phlegmon* cometh by the influxion of blood, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for blood doth flow very abundantly (sometime one or other member sending it forth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beginneth to be affected with *Phlegmon*: but sometime that member which is afflicted doth draw it to it selfe. But the parts which send it forth do driue out the iuyce, being either superfluous, by reason of the plentie thereof, or grievous, because of the qualitie, or else because of both. But they which are attractive, do draw or pull with a sickely heate or grieve. But to these are adioyned certaine helping causes, viz. the weakenesse and basenesse of the member, the fulnesse of the conduits and passages through which the fluxe passeth, the straitnesse also and narrownesse of the pores and expulsive parts, and the inferiour places, as we haue already declared. Therefore of all these, there are three inuentions of curing those tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the later sort of Chyrurgians. 1. The first is to turne away the fluxe, and prevent it altogether. 2. The second is to mitigate the griete, and altogether to remoue that cause for the which the member entertaineth or also draweth the fluxe vnto it. 3. The

The finding out of the cause is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmon quid.

Galen. lib. 13. Meth. med. The common ingendring of euery Phlegmon.

The helping causes of flux. Three orders are set downe for the cure of those tumours which are caused through the influxion of humours.

Primus scopus.

Plethora quid.

Cacochymia.

Antispasms.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

*Cases in which
we may not
use repelling
or repressing
remedies.*

third is, to emptie out all that humour that hath flowed in the aggrieu'd place. But how the first intention should be finished, *Galen* hath fully taught, lib. 3. *Meth. med.* where he declareth vnto vs all the wayes to auert and turne away the fluxe, and the meanes to stop and inhibite *Phlegmone* which as yet remaineth in generation, writing after this manner: When humors are equally augmented amongst themselves (which the Greekes call *Plethora*) yea also when all the bodie is voide of excrements, and doth containe a mediocritie of iuycie humors, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *Phlegmone* reigneth raising the fluxe) through the emission of bloud we helpe and remedie *Phlegmone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often bathings and with exercise; and also with much friction and rubbing. Furthermore it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feauer be not present, and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although the sicke be feuerous. But when the bodie is stuffed either with melancholie, or choler, or fleame, or with other clammy and viscous humours (which state of the bodie the Greekes call *Cacochymia*) the euacuation thereof must be laboured by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humour that reigneth. But of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Antispasms*, that is, a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all these kinds of tumours, while the fluxe doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the beginning and increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, and in the declination thereof, while the fluxe now remaineth and sticketh in the member, and the whole bodie is sufficiently emptied, the euacuation must be attempted, and fetched either from the affected part, or from that which is next adioyned thereunto. The second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe, viz. which do mitigate paine, and also binde and preuent the fluxe. Moreover it teacheth remedies which are able to loosen and dissolue the naturall pores, by the which the affected member is wont to be thoroughly purged. But the matter of all these shall be abundantly describ'd hereafter. Now we will handle the third intention, which is perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumours from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines that do euaporate and dissolue, but also by such as do repell and repress, such as the Greekes call ἀπορροια. And therefore, in the beginning of these phlegmonous tumours, and other whatsoever do deriue their beginning from the influxion of humours, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do euaporate; except in certaine cases, of the which (saith *Guido*) *Galen* seemed to haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, when that such tumors be in cleane and pure members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third is, when the matter is thicke, and not pliable to repulsion. 4. The fourth, when it is very vehemently packed together. *Auicenna* excepteth onely two cases, viz. when it happeneth in any cleane or pure part, or in any other place out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one case, other fixe, other ten, other nineteene, other twenty three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a case, we must know that there

there be two kinds of repulsives, both among the late Physicians and also the Arabians, that is to say, common, and proper. Common repulsives are such as do inhibit all fluxe, keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it, that is, by reason of the thicknesse of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores and wayes whereby it should flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do repress fluxe by refrigeration and cold, Syngreene, Lettuce, *Psillium*, *Cotiledon*, that is to say, *Umbilicus Veneris*, *Lenticula palustris*, *Caphura*. And these also do stuffe & stop the passages, *Farina* called *Volasilu*, the white of an eg, *Amylum*, *Gluten*, and the kinds of gums: to conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without buring. But those things which do confirme and roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oyle of Roses, *oleum Omphacinum*, oyle of Mirtles, oyle of Cammomil, *Abzymhium*, Horehound, *Nuxcupressi*, & such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, & so do free it and defend it from imminent fluxe. But proper repulsives are such, as when the humours do slide into some other part, do meet with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractive medicines are commonly applyed to thin tumors. Of these manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of an hote, but both sorts, that is, both hote and cold, are in operation astringent, and binding. The medicines repressing, which of nature are cold, are Vine leanes, Plantaine, Nightshade, *Dipsacos*, viz. *Virga pastoris*, or *Bursa pastoris*, *Glaucium*, *Balaustium*, *Omphacium*, *Sumach*, *Terra cimolia*, commonly so called, and *Terra sigillata*, and others of that kinde. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *Oxieratum*, the ointment of Bole, the ointment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hote repulsives are, Alume, Cypressse nuts called *Galbule*, *Iuncus rotundus*, or *Odoratus*, called of the Greeckians *χινυ αῖθρ*, called also *Blatta bizantia*, *Lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other suchlike things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxion, prescribed by *Guido* in two severall Prologues. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed from the influx of humors, but specially of such humors as are phlegmonous, it will be availeable to vse repulsives, as they are called, these ten cases onely excepted, that is to say, when the tumour is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venomous matter, or a substance which is very thicke, and so vnfit to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also; if the tumour be inclined to suppuration, or descending from a primitive cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie, and verie weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe: for in these cases, we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine, rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner: In the beginning of all tumours, but chiefly of those which are phlegmonous, common repulsives are profitable (three causes onely excepted,) that is, if the tumour happē in those parts which are called *glāduloſe*, if they be enclined to suppuration,

Repellentia communia.

Repellentia propriè dicta.

Frigida repressiva.

Calida repellentia.

The first prologue of Guido in repressive things.

Gal. 2. ad Glauconem.

The second Prologue.

*Si tumor iam
factus est.*

*Emplastrum.
Cucurbitule.
Artis canon
generalis.*

tion, or if they proceed of a venomous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then, when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumour, it is behovefull to dissolve and scatter the matter, applying to the same place *Diaphoretica*, not biting or sharpe, but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moist; but this must be done principally in the three last remembered cases, in the which we must endeavour to attract and draw the matter which is dispersed, to the head where the tumor most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can, and so inhibit the course and fluxion of the mixed humors. Which truly we may sometime do, by using attractive emplaisters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggrieved place, (as *Avicen* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule of Art. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed of the influxion of humours, (those three excepted which were named a little before) onely pure repressives are to be used. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsives, some of those things which do dissolve and dissolve. But in the state of tumors, yea and somewhat before the state, we must commix repressive medicines equally with dissolutive: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully use onely resolving and releasing remedies. To conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and drive it away: but if the fluxe doth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it descendeth vpon both, that is to say, that partly something hath already flowed, and cleaveth fast to the place; and partly something may yet abound and flow: then it shall be lawfull to use commixed remedies, that is, partly those which can resolve and unbinde, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must use also compound cures, as *Galen* saith. 13. *Therap*. Furthermore, all these things truly are to be understood thus, as if a tumour above nature is to be dispatched and cured by resolving medicines, or (that I may speake generally) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuers matter that excite the tumor, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

CHAP. VI.

Of the cure of abscessions generally.

*Of the cure of
tumors which
are turned into
abscessions,
which they
call Exitura.*

*Tetrapharma-
cum,*

BUt if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abscessus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finished and ended (as saith *Galen Libro 2. ad Glauconem*) by helps and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *Chalastica*, that is, by resolving and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine which is called of *Galen Tetrapharmacum*, being very soft, and prouoking sleepe: with the which according to the opinion of the same *Galen, Lib. 13. Therap* there must be commixed a little honic. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euery one a little portion or quantitie, that is to say, of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the Herbe *Colophonis* which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of Bulles tallow. But in proceffe of time we must passe ouer vnto those

those things which are able to concoct and digest, or to ripen and bring to suppuration. But those which are turned into another kind, that is, into another substance, and that altogether besides nature, they are to be removed and cured by the Art of Chyrurgerie. Moreover, in removing them, according to the counsell of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* it shall be requisite to consider, that among all the wayes and meanes whereby we intend to finish our purpose, we should alwayes make choise of the best of them. The best meanes and wayes are declared and manifested vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the shortnesse of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing safely and without danger. Againe, that thou mayst cure safely, there are three speciall things diligently to be considered. The first and the chiefest is, that you thoroughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the same, yet at the least, that you hurt not the sicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or disease may not easily returne or come againe. By these considerations, if you will declare the best method of curing, you shall find in all these tumours before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgerie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the studie of Chyrurgerie in those chiefly which now we do intreate of, that is, in those tumors which are altogether aboue nature, doth tend to the killing and destroying of them, and doth wholly declare after what sort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to passe, the next counsell is, to transerre the euill, as we vse to do in those humors called *Hypochymata*, that is to say, the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth first tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and also into putrification: but this he appointeth in the second place. These things hath *Galen*. Therefore when the parts which are troubled with *Phlegmone* do beate very vehemently, so that now you begin to despaire of their cure (they being not yet mattered) all the ancient Chyrurgions (saith *Galen* 4. *Therap.*) do minister and apply such kind of medicines which do speedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vse none at all. And although those parts that are annoyed with *Phlegmone* be annointed with a Cataplasme, which may both heate them, and moisten them, & bring them to suppuration, yet the same doth not appeare by the first reason or way, that is, as the remedy and helpe of the euill, but as the mitigating & easing of the symptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *Phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the same *Galen* addeth moreover a litle after, that a short and compendious cure of those parts which are affected with *Phlegmone* is quickly ended and dispatched, by remedies which can dry & vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remove the affect, or else, if they leaue behind them some litle relict, which may turne to suppuration, it is needfull to vse some other sharpe medicine, which is able to bring out the matter; or if the skin about the tumour be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you must necessarily vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auicenna* saith, namely, that the cure of an Aposteme (as it is an Aposteme) is the extraction and drawing out the strange matter which raiseth the Aposteme. But to declare the remedies of them, wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also which

The best order
of curing is
declared three
wayes.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.

Ex lib. 4. *Therap.*
meth.

Auicenna.

When abscesses are chiefly to be cut and opened.

A mattered tumor is more safely opened with a knife then with burning medicins.

Lib. 13. Ther.

A section imitating the Olive or Mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cometh by wide incisions.

Why mattered impostumes about the share must be cut overthwart.

Seven things to be diligently marked in the apertion of an abscession already mattered.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

Two things considered of Galen in the apertion of a mattered tumor.

we spoke of a litle before, they are to be sought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the abscession being already come to suppuration, or changed, or strongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not dissolved and dissolved, or if in convenient season, and while the occasion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you must make an issue by incision for that which otherwise will not be digested. But this thing chiefly is to be proved and enterprised, if there be feared any erosion or gnawing to ensue, or any other danger; yea if necessity commandeth, it ought straight way to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out as speedily and safely as is possible, for the cause before alledged. But apertion is made more safely with a knife, then with burning and scalding medicines, if nothing do hinder it. And commonly such kind of phlegmonous tumours, being already turned into suppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreover apertion, or the letting out of the matter, ought to be done, by reason both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & also of the affected place. But if any part of the mattered member shall seeme to be putrified and rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likenesse of an Olive or Mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more easily. But *Galen* commandeth to avoid and eschue alwayes any great incisions, who did heale such kind of mattered humors, both in the parts about the privie members, and also in the armeholes, onely by incision (as he vsed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need sometime required to cut off somewhat by reason of the plenty, not only of matter but also of the corrupted parts, he vsed no greater incision then the breadth of a great Mirtle leafe. For by wide & large sections, when the member is brought unto a scarre, besides that it is made most filthie, it also becometh very weake, and unfit to moue withall. But these kinds of sections imitating the Mirtle leafe, are vsed in those tumours especially which do matter vnder the armeholes and about the share. And in those truly the lengths of them must be drawne overthwart, & not by the straightnesse or rightnesse of the leg or body: for when we bend the leg or the arme, the skin naturally doth apply it self with it. But in other places we alwayes almost do vse simple incisions. Now in this apertion or incision seven things are especially to be considered, according to the consent of the later Chyrurgions. First, that incision be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The second, that incision be made in the neather place of the tumour, that the mattered and corrupted filth may the better be voided out. The third, that it be made next the wrinkles & processe of the muscles. The fourth, that you do avoid and eschue the sinewes, veines, and arteries, as much as you can. The fifth, that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, especially in great abscessions, lest by too much emptying out, and that suddenly, and also by the resolution of the spirits, there follow weaknesse and faintnesse. The sixth, that the place be handled and touched very gently, and with as litle paine as can be. The seventh, that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with flesh againe, and brought to a scarre, after the manner of vicers. But *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the incision of a suppurated abscession, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and overcometh

cometh your medicines, neither do they seeme vnto you to be able to digest all the corruption: it is requisite to make an issue by incision for that matter which yeeldeth not to digestion, in that place especially where it is most high. 2. Moreover in the incision also of another abscession which pertaineth vnto fluxe, and yet respecting both the kinds, you must not forget to cut and lanch that which is already come to suppuration: and then applie some medicine thereto which can drie it without erosion or gnawing. But after the impostume is opened, you must vse remedies that be of a scowring and cleansing nature, and fit to purge the filthie vicer, as are soft flaxe, or lint, and soft linnen, Emplaisters and Ointments which shall be spoken of in their particular Chapters. At the first time Guido did apply the yolke of an egge being thickened with Alum Zuccarinum, which medicine Gulielmus à Saliceto did also vse. But afterward you must come to the applying of Mel Rosarum, and Mundificatiuū ex Apio: and last of all, to Vnguentum Apostolorum, and Ægyptiacum, if the matter so require. But aboue, without you must minister ointments, as Basilicon, Diachylon, and Diaphanicon, and other of that sort, which are appointed for vicers. For when you haue cut an abscession, it must be cured after the manner of other vicers. Galen lib 13. Therap. after the skin was cut in those phlegmonous tumours which chance about the armeholes and priuie members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call Manna, which is, *Thuris purgamentum*: for this hath a light astringent or binding. But you must also (saith he) first assuage the lanced member, (as much as you see cause, first with fomentes, then with Cataplasmes, and straight after with some moistning medicine, or else with such as do not much drie, (all these being applied outwardly vpon the vicer.) For in the very vicer, both of Manna (as hath bene said) and also of those remedies which are taught and declared by vsing of lint, those things are first to be layed on which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward those that do purge and cleanse. After the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollownesse, you must minister such things as may fill the same: but if it fall out otherwise, you must vse things to bring it to a scarre. Moreover if the sicke will not suffer incision to be made, either with some bright instrument, or with a penknife, by reason of the softnesse thereof, then the apertion is to be finished with burning medicines. For this purpose Auicenna praiseth the seed of Line or Flaxe, leauen and Doves dounge, which you may make more excellent and forcible, if you mingle them with a litle soft Sope, or with the filthinesse that cometh of Mustard seed. But the medicine which is called *Ruptorium*, or *Causiticum*, which is made of Lime and Sope, in this matter is most excellent, and obtaineth greatest fame. Hitherto haue we spoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

Detergentia.

Ointments are to be applied aboue a tumor that is opened.

The vse of Manna and Thus after the incision, the vertue of the. The lanced part must first be eased.

What things are to be layed to an vicer.

Auicennas in fine tractat. 1. Fen. 3. lib. 4.

CHAP. VII.

Of a true Phlegmone, and other tumours ingendred of bloud.

HAuing spoken generally of those tumours which consist aboue nature, it is conuenient that we intreate particularly of the differences of euery

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for Phlogosis.

Phlegmone also is taken for an inflammation coming of the best blood.

Phlegmone duplex.

1. Vera.

2. Non vera.

Sanguis quid.

Sanguis quo duplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies

Four differences of tumors caused of blood.

one of them, taking our exordium from *Phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomes. Therefore *Galen lib. 1. de morbu & symptomatis*, taketh *Phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally, after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time, that is, for euery kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, that is, for euery hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call *φλογισις*. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumour ingendred of blood that is the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thicknesse or grosnesse. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latins it is called diuersly, by reason of the kind, *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks absolutely, *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and consent of the later sort is two fold, *videlicet. Vera & non vera*. A true *Phlegmone* is caused of good blood, which is the best both in quality and substance or essence, but yet more abundant then naturally should happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true & lawfull *Phlegmone*, is caused of naughtie and vnnaturall blood. For blood is a hote & moist humour, proceeding from a more temperate part of the very *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that cometh of the meate in the first digestion; and it is two waies, naturall and not naturall. Naturall blood is a hote and moist humour, slender, and meane in substance, but of a very red colour; in saueur and taste, it is sweet, gentle and good. But that blood is said to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digresseth from the former description of blood, yet notwithstanding containing it selfe within the bounds of his breadth and largenesse; which if it doth once passe, it is no more to be called a blood, but some other humor. But blood doth chance to degenerate from his proper nature two kinde of waies. The first way is (as they terme it) in it selfe, that is, in respect of it selfe, (his proper substance being changed without any commixion with another.) The second way is by another, or in respect of another; and yet it consisteth two waies by it selfe, that is to say, either because the substance thereof is more thicke or more thinne then it ought to be; or because it is burnt, and that which is thinnest of it, is turned into melancholy; but that which is thicke into choler, and that without separation. But in respect of another, blood becometh not vnnaturall, when as another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many waies, according as the diuers kinds of choler, fleame or melancholy may be commixed with blood. By which thing it is manifest, that of blood there are engendred foure kinds or differences of tumors aboue nature. First, of naturall and good blood there is engendred a true *Phlegmone*: but of blood which is corrupted through the admixion of other humours, there do grow three differences of that kind of *Phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawfull; because that the three other humours, that is to say, fleame, choler and melancholy, may be easily commixed with blood. Therefore if melancholy be mixed with blood, it is called *Phlegmone Scirrholes*: if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *Phlegmone Erysipelatodes*: if fleame, it is termed *Phlegmone Aematodes*. But of blood, which is filthy and corrupted through the adustion and corruption of his owne proper substance, according to the manner of the thinnesse or thicknesse thereof, there are ingendred either

Carbun.

Carbuncles, which are called of the Greeks *Ambraces*: or else *Gangrena* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancre. Of the which diseases we will speake hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Causes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

THere are three causes of *Phlegmone*, as there are also of all other tumors besides nature, which do chance through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet*: 1. *Primitiva*, which we call both *pragressa* and *euidens*: 2. *Antecedens*. 3. *Coniuncta*. Euident causes of inflammation are outward causes, as, beating, or belking, diruption, conuulsion, breaking or bursting a wound, a voluntary vicer, a loosenesse, and other of that sort which do prouoke fluxe by exciting paine in the affected member. The antecedent cause, is abundance of blood, which is good and faultlesse, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is blood prouoked (as a certaine superfluous thing) to flow and descend to some member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thrust, and abideh compact together, vnlesse it be by and by repressed from the beginning, as we haue said before in our generall Chapter: to the which we must therefore haue continuall accessse, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumors, whereof we now intreate. The coniunct or continent cause, is the blood it selfe, which is alreadye stuffed in the affected place. The marks or tokens of *Phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member about the naturall habite, vehement heate, so that the member seemeth to burne. There appeareth rednesse in the outward parts, such as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by some other meanes. There is extreme paine, vnlesse the member hath altogether a dull sense. There is also gricuous beating, and pulsation very vehement inwardly. There is also extension or stretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but also the patient himselfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore resistance of the member if it be touched after the manner of extension. There be also other such like signes, which do testifie that abundance of blood is present in some part of the body. *Phlegmone* hath foure times 1. the beginning: 2. the increasing: 3. the state: and 4. the declination: except at the leastway, fluxe hath recourse with it, or it be straightway repressed by repulsive medicines. But when it shall lightly passe over these foure times, it is needfull either to resolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to suppuration, or else to putrifie and rot it, or to turne it into a *Schirrhus* and stonie hardnesse. And truly the signes of all these are to be sought out of the Chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times, and the meanes to finish tumors about nature (which they commonly call *Apofstema*) be declared and expressed. But *Phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill symptomes which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are, vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part, recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adane*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall parts. Also mortification of the affected

The causes of Phlegmone.

1. *Pragressa.*

2. *Antecedens.*

3. *Coniuncta.*

Signes of a true Phlegmone.

Foure times of Phlegmone.

Indicia.

Symptomes

which hinder

the cure of

Phlegmone.

affected

affected member (which they call *corruptio esphiomenea*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, & of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter which did cause the inflammation. Also a stony and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclerotica*, which proceedeth through a certaine ouerthwart and vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherefore in curing tumors which consist aboue nature, we must diligently oftentimes mark and consider how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chance vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist and be occupied about that most, which appeareth and is most vrgent: which Galen hath admonished vs of very well lib. 2. ad *Glaucanem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared lest some remnant of them be left behind which is very hard. Wherefore in euery resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euery tumour, whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily drie, doth leaue very hard knobs, which are hard to remoue. Hitherto Galen. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *Phlegmone*.

CHAP. IX.

*The order of curing the Phlegmone caused of the defluxion
of humours affecting the outward parts
of the bodie.*

*The method of
curing Phleg-
mone which is
yet in genera-
tion.*

*By what
meanes the
fluxe is staied.*

1. *Retractio.*

2. *Repulsio.*

3. *Causa sum-
mutio.*

*Vacuation of
that which is
flowed already
Gal. Ther. 13.*

SEeing that *Inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *Phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of blood, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*Phlegmone* being yet but beginning to reigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten already, there must needs truly be a double consideration in the cure of the *Phlegmone* being yet but beginning, that is to say, to empiric out and auoide that which hath flowed already, & to hinder & stop that which is now a flowing. Moreover we shall stop flux, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the fluxe. We shall draw it backe, and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloodletting, if strength and age will suffer it; but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those parts that haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring backe and repell fluxe, by ministering those medicines which are able to drie and turne the fluxe another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member already infected with *Phlegmone*, by confirming and strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astringion if it be too loose, by cooling it if be too hot, as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, & by emptying the whole body with bloodletting, if it doth abound with blood, and if it tendeth infection to the members: of al which things we will speake by and by. But we do empty out and auoid that which is flowed already, and hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse & dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together

together and refrigerate. And truly in Phlegmonous tumors now beginning, we must rather vse (saith *Galen*) cooling and astringent medicines, then those which do concoct and digest; and so much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thicke substance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *Phlegmone* hath caught and taken vp, you must not apply any longer repercussive remedies, as we said before, but then it is conuenient to vse those which can digest. Also in an old and inueterate inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole bodie, and some other fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardnesse & blacknesse in the mēber: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* also affirming the same) to take away the bloud by scarification. And these things *Scarificatio.* haue we spoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greeks properly are wont to call *Phlegmone*: which things may be sufficient to content a reasonable Physition, and one which is exercised in this kind of studie. But because we haue taken in hand to write these things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it shall not be amisse, neither any thing from our purpose, if after this generall and compendious method, we set downe more particularly those things which not onely the ancient Physitions, but also the later sort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore about the generall rule, as they terme it, the Chyrurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *Phlegmone*, vnto foure branches, or *Foure inten-* particular intentions: that is to say, into a iust obseruation of a good diet. 2. *tions in the* the stopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before, *cure of Phleg-* 3. the emptying out of the humour, which hath already entertained himselfe *mone.* in the member (which they call *Materia coniuncta*.) 4. and the correcting or amending of the symptomes. The first intention therefore is made perfect 1. *The first in-* by the due vsing or administration of sixe things commonly called vnnaturall *tention is an* things, and by the vsing of those things also which are said to be annexed vnto *order in diet.* them. And these things which are sixe in number, called of the Physitions *Res non natu-* *res naturales*, (as hath bene declared from the beginning of this treatise) are, *rales.* the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleeping and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the minde or the accidents. All which things (because *Phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feuers) ought to pertaine vnto coldnesse and moderate moistnesse. For which causes we haue thought good to set downe these precepts following. Let the sicke be in a pure and cleare *Aer.* aire, and that somewhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately *Cibus.* moist. Let him drinke small Ale, or Beere, or other small drinkes. But if a *Pecus.* vehement feauer shall haue any accessse (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him not exercise or moue that member *Motus.* which is beset with *Phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, especially *Quies.* if there be very great abundance of humours in the bodie. Let him keepe a *Somnus.* measure in sleeping and watching: and let him shun sleeping on the day time, *Repletio.* specially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drunkennesse & gluttonie, *Inanitis.* Let the belley be alwayes kept soft and soluble. and now and then let it be *Animi pathe-* washed with Clysters if need require. Let him flie anger, cryings out, & wrath, *maia.* as deadly enemies. Let him abstaine from venereous acts as a mortall foe. *Viciu.*

The

2. The auersi-
on of the fluxe
in the second
intention.

A veine is al-
waies to be cut
directly.

The choice of
bloudletting
is declared of
the afflicted
part.

3. The third
intention is
the euacuation
of the humour
already com-
pact in the
member.

Repressiues in
the increase,
must exceed
digestiues.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of bloud, if strength and age do suffer. But in all members of the bodie, whether you intend to repell, that is, to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from the place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth, which is called in Greeke *κατὰ μέρος*, a veine must alwaies be cut, though there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answer to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therefore if *Ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throate, the shoullder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow, either the outward or the middle veine, except you meane to scaufie the other leg, or breake the veine asunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place. Therefore the election of cutting any veine, and the inuention to turne the humour another way, which *Hippocrates* calleth *Antispasis*, is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen* 13. and 14. *Meth. med.* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *Phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, though it be but meanly stuffed with humors, we must emptie and euacuate by letting of bloud, if we will follow the aduice of *Galen*, who lib. 13 *meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, writing thus: Paine, and truly the heate of the member wherein *Phlegmone* hath settled himselfe, although the whole body be voide of excrements, do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanly, that is, to draw forth bloud, and to make euacuation no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further, you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a little to draw backe the bloud that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of bloud, as hath bene said. Therefore if *Phlegmone* appeareth in the hands; the legs are to be exercised, bound & rubbed; if in the legs, the hands must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Physitian then to the Chyrurgion.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *Phlegmone*, onely by applying repulsive things to that member which laboreth with the inflammation, excepting these cases before rehearsed. For that which is filled with corrupted water, as *Galen* saith, is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do binde and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *reuerentia*, repulsives and restrictiues. But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, that is, to emptie that which is flowed, and also to stop, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestive medicines with repressiues, but yet so, that the abundance and strength of the one may preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, and somewhat more milde, in mitigating, remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination

declination of the state, it is requisite to euacuate by digestives only that which is compact together, if that *Phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussion. If truly it doth turne into abscessions, and that it cannot be that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vie medicines which can both matter, open, and cleanse the ulcer. Furthermore, those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the evils, that is, of *Phlegmone* and *Abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humour: but when incision is made in the abscession, which is already come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicine as may drie without erosion or gnawing, as hereafter shall be shewed. But in those phlegmonous tumours which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and drie backe, is *Oxycraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *Poſca aquoſa*. It is a mixture of water and vinegar, so tempered together that it may be drunke: and then a sponge being wet and laid in this *Oxycratum*, must be applied to that part where *Phlegmone* is. But in stead of *Oxycratum*, by the counsell of *Galen*, we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*: In those parts which are about the sinewes, it shall be sufficient in the beginning of *Phlegmone*, to lay on a sponge dipped, either in cold water, wherewith a little vinegar is mingled, or in water onely, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this Cataplasme of the same *Galen* is very effectually, made of Syngreene and the rindes of Pomegranates sodden in wine of *Rhu*, that is, *Sumach* and *Polenta*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor; and both wayes doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the latter sort of *Auicenna* after this sort as followeth, R^z. of the iuyce of Syngreene ℥ j. of wine that is thicke of substance, & sharpe in taste, ℥ ℞. of Barley meale one quart, of the rind of Pomegranats, and *Sumach* powdered, ana. 3. ℔. boyle them, and make an ointment. There is also another which greatly availeth for the same purpose, invented of *Haly Abbas*: R^z. of *Santalum*, white and red, ana. 3. iij. of *Memitha*, which is called *Glancium*, 3. ij. of *Terra cimolia*, and *Bolcarmoniacke*, ana. 3. j. ℔. Let all be brayed into very fine flours or powder, and well seared, then dissolve them in the iuyce of Syngreene, or Purslaine, or Lettuce, & make a Liniment. Another also in the beginning of Phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much used, which is verie profitable for greene wounds, and bruises taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of Roses, and of the distilled water of Roses, that is, of Rose water, wherein you must wet fine clothes, and lay them to the inflamed member, and let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profit in the beginning of *Phlegmone* to restraine and repell fluxe, which are to be sought out of other Authors which have written of this thing. But these shall content vs for this time.

Among the remedies which in the increase of *Phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of Roses is marvellously effectually, (the Greekes call it *Rhedium*) For this doth partly draw backe, & partly doth digest through

If *Phlegmone* do turne into abscessions.

Repulsives are to be used in the beginning of *Phlegmone*. *Oxycratum*. Lib. 13. Method. medendi.

Galen's Cataplasma, lib. 2. ad Glanc.

Fren. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

Remedies to be used in the increasing of the *Phlegmone*.

2. The auersi-
on of the fluxe
in the second
intention.

A veine is al-
waies to be cut
directly.

The choice of
bloudletting
is declared of
the afflicted
part.

3. The third
intention is
the euacuation
of the humour
already com-
pact in the
member.

Repressiues in
the increase,
must exceed
digestiues.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of blood, if strength and age do suffer. But in all members of the bodie, whether you intend to repell, that is, to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from the place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth, which is called in Greeke *κατὰ μέρος*, a veine must alwayes be cut, though there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answer to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therefore if *Ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throate, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow, either the outward or the middle veine, except you meane to scaufie the other leg, or breake the veine asunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place. Therefore the election of cutting any veine, and the inuention to turne the humour another way, which *Hippocrates* calleth *Antispasis*, is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen* 13. and 14. *Meth. med.* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *Phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, though it be but meanly stuffed with humors, we must emptie and euacuate by letting of blood, if we will follow the aduice of *Galen*, who *lib. 13 meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, writing thus: Paine, and truly the heate of the member wherein *Phlegmone* hath settled himselfe, although the whole body be voide of excrements, do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanly, that is, to draw forth blood, and to make euacuation no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further, you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a little to draw backe the blood that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of blood, as hath bene said. Therefore if *Phlegmone* appeareth in the hands; the legs are to be exercised, bound & rubbed; if in the legs, the hands must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Physitian then to the Chyrurgion.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *Phlegmone*, onely by applying repulsive things to that member which laboreth with the inflammation, excepting these cases before rehearsed. For that which is filled with corrupted water, as *Galen* saith, is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do binde and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *reuerentia*, repulsives and restrictiues. But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, that is, to emptie that which is flowed, and also to stop, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestive medicines with repressiues, but yet so, that the abundance and strength of the one may preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, and somewhat more milde, in mitigating, remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination

declination of the state, it is requisite to evacuate by digestives only that which is compact together, if that *Phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussion. If truly it doth turne into abscessions, and that it cannot be that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vie medicines which can both matter, open, and cleanse the ulcer. Furthermore, those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the evils, that is, of *Phlegmone* and *Abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humour: but when incision is made in the abscession, which is already come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicine as may drie without erosion or gnawing, as hereafter shall be shewed. But in those phlegmonous tumours which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and drive backe, is *Oxiraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *Poſca aquosa*. It is a mixture of water and vinegar, so tempered together that it may be drunke: and then a sponge being wet and laid in this *Oxiratum*, must be applied to that part where *Phlegmone* is. But in stead of *Oxiratum*, by the counsell of *Galen* we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*: In those parts which are about the sinewes, it shall be sufficient in the beginning of *Phlegmone*, to lay on a sponge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a little vinegar is mingled, or in water onely, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this Cataplasme of the same *Galen* is very effectually, made of Syngreene and the rindes of Pomegranates sodden in wine of *Rhu*, that is, *Sumach* and *Polenta*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor; and both wayes doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the latter sort of *Anicen* after this sort as followeth, R. of the iuyce of Syngreene ℥ j. of wine that is thicke of substance, & sharpe in taste, ℥ ss. of Barley meale one quart, of the rind of Pomegranats, and *Sumach* powdered, ana. ℥ ss. boyle them, and make an ointment. There is also another which greatly availeth for the same purpose, invented of *Haly Abbas*: R. of *Santalum*, white and red, ana. ℥ iij. of *Memitha*, which is called *Glancium*, ℥ ij. of *Terracinnolia*, and *Bolgarmoniacke*, ana. ℥ j. ss. Let all be brayed into very fine floure or powder, and well seared, then dissolve them in the iuyce of Syngreene, or Purslaime, or Letruce, & make a Liniment. Another also in the beginning of Phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much ysed, which is verie profitable for greene wounds, and brules taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of Roses, and of the distilled water of Roses, that is, of Rose water, wherein you must wet fine clothes, and lay them to the inflamed member, and let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profit in the beginning of *Phlegmone* to reſtraive and repell fluxe, which are to be sought out of other Authors which have written of this thing. But these shall content vs for this time.

If *Phlegmone* do turne into abscessions.

Repulsives are to be ysed in the beginning of *Phlegmone*.

Lib. 13. Method. medendi.

Galen Cataplasma, lib. 2. ad Glanc.

Fren. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

Among the remedies which in the increase of *Phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of Roses is marvellously effectually, (the Greekes call it *Rhedium*) For this doth partly draw backe, & partly doth digest through the *Phlegmone*.

Remedies to be ysed in the increasing of the *Phlegmone*.

*Lib. 3. de simp.
medic.*

*Oyle of Roses a
present reme-
die in the in-
crease of
Phlegmone.*

*What things
do helpe in the
state of Phleg-
mone.*

*Emplastrum
Galen.*

*What reme-
die must be
used in the de-
clination of
Phlegmone.*

the vapour: because it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betwene the oyle and the Roses. Therefore in oyle of Roses there is a certaine astringion, which cannot (saith Galen) ouergo the weake parts of the tumour: but when they haue pierced somewhat deeper; it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the strength, both to thrust together; to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly; whereby it commeth to passe, that in the augmenting of Phlegmonous tumours, oyle of Roses is a most excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of Phlegmone there is another in Auicenna very profitable. R^y. of the leaues of Mallowses, M. j. of Wormewood, Roses, ana. ℥. ss. of Barley meale, ℥. j. oyle of Cammomill, quart. ℔. Seeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the fashion of a soft Emplaster. Another of the same. R^y. of wine boyled either to the halfe or third part, (the one we call *Sapa*, the other *Defrutum*) quart. j. Rose water, and Vineger, ana. quart. ℔. Saffron. ℥. ij. Let them be a little heat ouer a soft fire, then straine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you must apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an Epitheme. Moreouer such kinds of remedies which are vsed in the increasing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repressiue and digestiue medicines, ought seldomer to be remoued and changed, then those which repell the matter, being ministred in the beginning of Phlegmone.

Aetius, in the vigor or state of Phlegmone, and when there is vehement paine felt, hath set downe these remedies: as Mallowses mingled with a little bread, and with oyle of Roses. Also Melilot boyled in the liquor called *Passum*, and applied with a little bread: of the like vertue (saith he) are Dates sodden in *Passum*, and mingled with the bread and oyle of Roses. Another also which digesteth through breathing in the vigour of Phlegmone very effectually. R^y. Pellitorie of the wall, Mallowses, ana. M. j. fine branne, the floure of meale, ana. pug. j. Fenugreece, Dill, ana. ℥. ss. oyle of Cammomill, quart. ℔. Let them be boyled in wine, and brayed together till they be well incorporated, and make an Emplaster. Another taken out of Galen, lib. 13. Therap. R^y. of the crummes of bread made of corne, ℔. j. steepe it in hote water the space of one houre, then straine it, and commixe therewith of the best honic, quart. j. and make it to the forme of a Cataplasme. This doth dissolue and mitigate paine. Auicenna counselleth to minister in the vigour of Phlegmone, *Vnguentum Basilicon*, and that which is made of the iuyces thereof, called *Drachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter; although notwithstanding both of them do carrie with them a digesting qualitie. But these and other such remedies, which are ministred to dissolue that which is already flowd, and to ease paine, because they are of a verie moist nature, must be changed verie seldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humour which is fallen into the member that is troubled with Phlegmone, is dissolued and dissueld, and the tumour together with the extension thereof is diminished, and the griefe somewhat asswaged, then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand; at which time you must vse onely discutient things, as are wild Mallowses brused and annointed. Raisins (the kernels being taken out) applied with bread and a little honic, and Barley

Barley meale yfed also with honie. Also moist wooll, flaxe, a sponge or some such like thing, wet in hote wine, then strained or wringed, you must minister it: for all these haue an excellent discusse nature, and prouoke not paine. But if by reason of the stubbornesse & hardnesse of the disease, the affected place doth containe too great plestie of matter, and that such as resisteth resolution, you must not by and by (as some do) breake forth vnto Chyrurgerie, that is, to make incision, or to scald it and burne it; but you must labour by all meanes possible, that the humour collected together may be digested and dissolved by such medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to attempt the digestion of the humor by such medicines as can profit in that case, before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to digestive medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to dissolve that which is compact in it, but the matter seemeth rather to pertaine vnto suppuration, you must come vnto those things which can ripen and procure matter. And we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into abscession) may through the vapour be digested, if the matter which exciteh the same be thinn, and little, and fit to be resolved: or if it remaineth not any thing deeply within, and the skinne of the affected member be thinn. But if the humour be plentifull, and thicke, and lurketh verie deepe, and the skin also thicke, exhalation or resolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you must come vnto those helpes which can ripen and prouoke matter, of which sort is this Cataplasme, made of wheate meale, sodden moderately in water and oyle: for this (Galen being our author) doth speedily bring to suppuration those inflammations which will not yeeld to digestion, and it hath also a heate like vnto our heate, that is, temperate and meane; and by reason of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine clammy and glewish proprietie, whereby in stopping the pores they hinder the naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an Emplaster: which two things are most required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There are some which do mingle with this Cataplasme a little Saffron to colour it. But if a tumour, by reason of the thicke and vicious humours which are stuffed in it be hardly brought vnto suppuration, this Cataplasme doth notably helpe which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *Althea*, and of figs that be sweete and fat, which do resemble the thicknesse of honie, commixed with wheate meale, as followeth. *R.* of the foresaid decoction, ℥j. of wheate meale ℥ss. boile them thoroughly together, and bring them into the forme of a Cataplasme. But if in stead of wheate meale, you vse barley meale, or rible bread, which the Greekes call *συζυμιον*, it more availeth to discusse the inflammation then to bring it to suppuration, as Galen hath noted *lib. 2. ad Glaucon*. There is another also exceedingly profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of *Phlegmone*, which is commonly used of the common Chyrurgians. *R.* of the batke of the roote of Marsh mallowes, that is, of *Althea*, of the roote of Lillies, Grownswell, called in Greeke *κρηνη*, leanes of Mallowes, ana. Mj. wheate meale quart j. of the meale of Flaxe seed, ℥j. fresh swines grease, ℥ss. Seeth the herbes in sufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a Cataplasme. But if (when the matter is gathered together and dispatched) the abscession wherein *Phlegmone* is turned, doth not open

What resolution is to be hoped for.

Plus mouentia,

Lib. 2. ad Glaucon.

Haly Abbas remembreth this Cataplasme.

A common Cataplasme.

open of the owne accord (the members now being free from the inflammation) you must go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digested, with a peakeknife, or some other instrument, or by some drawing medicine. Then you must bring the vicer vnto a scarre, like vnto other vicers, which you must do by cleansing the sore, by filling it with flesh, and ioyning it together, which at the last will cause a scarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke which bringeth forth the tumour, and very disobedient to resolution and digestion, and be exceedingly compact in the passages of the flesh (as it wont to be in continuall inflammations which be naughtily cured, the thicke part of the humour being resolved, and the thicke part remaining still in the passages) then you must not be afraid to vse scarification, especially (as *Galen* admonisheth, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*) when hardnesse, blewnesse, or blacknesse do appeare.

Symptomatic
correctio.

Dolor.

Lenifiers of
paine in phleg-
mone.

Lib. 2. ad
Glauc.

The fourth inuention, which in the cure of *Phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian or Physitian, is the correction and the remouing of the symptomes which do so suddenly come vpon the inflammation, and those are paine, recourse of the matter whereof the tumour is raised to the outward parts, putrification and corruption of the mattery member, and as it were a certaine stonie hardnes remaining behind, by reason of some mightie drying and digesting medicines. Therefore if vehement paine shall happen to the tumour, you must labour by all meanes possible to mitigate and assuage the same: because (besides that it weakeneth the strength, and hindereth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe, and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore do grievously torment in *Phlegmone*, straightway you must lay on those medicines which can lenifie and ease the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of *Galen*, which was made of the licour called *Passum*, of oile of Roses, and a little waxe mixed with them both: but this is to be taken in moist wooll, which hath much oile in it, and to be ministred cold in Sommer, and hote in Winter. Therefore such a medicine being tempered and applied, as is said before, doth rarifie, extenuate, digest, and euacuate: it maketh the humour that is sharpe, viscus, grosse, or plentifull, and which cleaveth to the aggriued parts, to be equall, constant, and moderate; and it discuteth the thicke vapour which can finde no fit issue, and so it mitigateth paine: It bringeth no hurt with his heate, for it maketh dull or taketh away the heate of the oile of Roses. Whereby it cometh to passe that this remedy doth assuage paine without doing any hurt, and disprofiteth not the euill, as hote water, oile, and wheate meale, which things in an inflammation that happeneth with paine, cannot be profitable (as *Galen* witnesseth.) For these do loosen and release through their heate and moisture, and do resolve the strength of the member, whereby it is made more weake, and more prone and apt to entertaine fluxe. To the same vse (that is, to allay the paine in *Phlegmone*) you may apply effectually oile of Roses, yolkes of egges, crummes of white bread steeped in hote water, and then straine them, and commixe them with oile of Roses. These also are a present remedy, Mallowes sodden in water, and mingled with branne and oile of Roses, or with oile of Violets. But *Anicen* in mitigating euery paine vseth Saffron, which he profitably commixeth

eth with asswaging medicines. Furthermore if the sharpnesse of paine be so great and vehement, that it cannot be eased with those things, which because they mitigate and lesen paine, (the succors of nature being stretched out) are properly called *Anodyna & pargorica*, that is, prouokers of sleepe, and helpers of paine, you must passe ouer vnto those aides which we call *Narcotica*, that is, stupetactiues. Among the which we haue tried by daily experience, besides the authoritie of some Writers, that Henbane hath profited in this case maruellously, whose leaues you must take, and bake them in the hote embers, then mingle them with swines grease, and applie them to the place. This doth pacifie vehement paine, and bringeth Phlegmonous tumours vnto suppuration. But while you attempt this thing, you must haue a diligent care lest you apply too much moisture, because it is a thing which in the beginnings of inflammations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, it is very pernicious (as we said a litle before.) But if you feare recourse of the matter that exciteth *Phlegmone* to the inward parts, and that chiefly toward the principall members, you must cause it to come forth by some drawing medicines, or else by applying cupping glasses, which do draw vehemently from the inward parts. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation, the reliets of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*, you shall boile in water the rootes of wilde Cucumber (which is commonly called in Herbaries and shops *Cucumer asinus*) or of Briony, or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselves (as *Galen* commandeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges. Then commixe Meale with water, to the which also put a litle suet, either of a Goose or a Cocke; but if there be not plentie of these at hand, adde swines greace, and make Cataplasmes. This doth notably heale that scirrhus affect which through mighty drying and digesting medicines in the member which *Phlegmone* occupied, doth still remaine behinde: also the aforeaid Herbes together with the rootes of *Althea*, being after moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet, and then applyed, do discusse and dissolue such hardened tumours: as *Galen* doth plainly teach, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*. Therefore if you feare, that Phlegmonous tumours, which are scarcely digested through their vapor, neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*, you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollifie and soften. Moreover if any part of the mattering member shall putrifie, you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarrifications: afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water, and then lay on it an Emplaister made of the meale of Beanes or Tares sodden in *Oximell*. There be other things also to be proued in this case, which we will by and by set downe in the cure of *Gangrena*. But now it shall be more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such Phlegmonous affects, in some short sentences. And first we will begin to declare the summe of the cure of *Phlegmone*, being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grieuous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with conuenient purgations, and especially by letting of bloud, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed member be all to washed and annointed with such things as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the

Nota de Hyosciamo.

Recurfus materia ad interiora.

Durities reliqua.

Galenus Cataplasme for hard tumors.

Putrefactio.

Galenus 2. ad Glauconem.

1.

2.

- The summe of the cure of Phlegmone when it afflicteth with much paine.*
1. 2. 3. humour. 3. Let the humour which is contained in the aggrieved place, be emptied out by drying and digesting medicines. 4. Let the affected part, and those also which are about it be strengthened and fortified. Now followeth the summe of the cure of the said *Phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more grievous paine. 1. When as inflammation being caused through the defluxion of humours, doth vex with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemencie of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things which do strongly binde, or vnloosen, through their heate and moisture, or resolute strength. 3. But you must apply to the inflamed place such helps as by meanely binding can repell that which floweth, and euacuate that which infesteth the infected member. 4. Apply to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *Posca*, that so you may preuent the passage of the humour that floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft and gentile Emplaisters and those especially, which are made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Among those things which are of power to drie and repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolution with oile of Roses, which is made of the stone *Chalcitis*; then lay vpon it pure wooll dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you must often apply the foresaid Cataplasme, or that rather which is made of Barley meale. 8. If the abundance of thicke matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion, in that place especially where it is highest. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent, and cleanse it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision paine be vehement, you must first assuage it with fomentes, then with a Cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the member be still inflamed, lay on a Cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called *Chittes*, which doth emptie out and driue backe.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call sanguinea pustula, that is bloud pushes.

De Carbunculo.

αἰσθαῖ.

γανγραῖνα.

σφακελος.

Gangrana & Sphacelus do follow great Phlegmones.

The generatio & description of a Carbuncle.

SEING that we haue intreated abundantly, as much as pertaineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Phlegmone*, which is the first difference of inflammations, and most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke *αἰσθαῖ*: next of *Gangrana*, the Cancre, and last, of *Sphacelus*; (which with the expounder of *Auicenna* they commonly call *Esthimenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *Phlegmone* hath, and doth prouoke a most sharpe feauer; but these are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as *Galen* libello de *Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in many other places hath diligently noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote; with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinn humours, there are raised vpon the out side of the skinne wheelkes or pushes

pushes, like things that be burned or scalded, and then this inflammation is called *Carbunculus* *Carbunculus cum pustula*, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill doth duplex. happen very often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although *Signes of a* seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vicer. 1 *Carbuncle*, say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one 1 *Vlcus crustum* onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken the vicer is brought forth *fistula*. with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, 2. *Some great* but many litle and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the *wheikes, some* seeds of Hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine *small* crustie vicer, such as hot iron doth cause. But betwene their beginnings, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthy colour, sometime blacknesse, and in that place the skin cannot be ealed, but it is as it were fastened to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlogosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of Lime or Pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholie. And these truly are the signes and tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very effect it selte, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement prine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected, do necessarily fall into a Feauer, and that sooner then they which are troubled with *Phlegmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chanceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbraking and continuall yomiting, together with want of appetite, and loathing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, & an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill: When as in very deed *ἀνθραξ*, among the Greekes is the very same that *Carbo* or *Carbunculus* is among the Latines. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time.) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes, killing the people suddenly, and they follow a pestilent Plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heed or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreover, although *ἀνθραξ*, or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous and contagious: yet the worst of all, and the most deadly, is that of *Anicen*, which doth arise in the purest places, and neare to the principall members. For it is to be feared, lest the venomous matter which exciteth the Carbuncle, do suddenly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall member: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exhalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abominable poyson, it is enough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chanceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes, or iawes, it suddenly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomacke. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in *Anicen*, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of an Orange colour.

3. The colour of the crust either earthy or blacke.

4. The flesh blacke about it.

5. Grieuous paine.

6. A vehement paine.

7. Nausea.

8. Vomitus.

9. Want of stomacke.

10. Cordis tremor.

11. Animi deliquium, Indicia.

1. When a Carbuncle is most deadly (the iudgement thereof being taken from the affected place)

2. Another iudgement taken from the affected place.

3. Iudgement of the colour.

4. Iudgement
of the acci-
dents.

But if it waxeth blew or blacke, it killeth almost euery man, and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the owne nature then it. If the accidents which are wont to accompanie this disease be very much remitted or released, there is some hope of recouerie: but if they be still more and more stretched out, and made more vehement, then truly the matter is in great despaire.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a
carbuncle
must be begun
by blood let-
ting.

*Vena è directa
secunda.*

Deepe scarifi-
cation.

Sprinkling of
hote salt wa-
ter.

Arsenicum.

Sanguisuga.

Flux in a car-
buncle cannot
be turned a-
way, neither
ought it.

Lib. 14. Ther.

A Cataplasme
good for a car-
buncle.

*Cataplasma de
Arnoglossa.*

A Cataplasme
of Pomegra-
nates.

Galen lib. Method. med. 14. & secundo ad Glauconem, commandeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (having set downe a conuenient order of diet) must be begun with blood letting by and by at the beginning) if none of those things do let which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine,) who also wil- leth to draw blood euen to the fainting of the heart: for it profiteth much those that be troubled with this euill. And this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be stricken directly against the vicer. But the choice of the veine is ma- nifested vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue said in the cure of Phleg- mone.) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Physitian must take coun- sell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare from what place and how much blood is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I said) do hinder you, it shall not be amisse to scarifie the said tumour, vsing somewhat deepe cuts or wounds, by reason of the thicke- nesse of that malicious humour, that is, such cuts as are somewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaseth Galen.) There are some, which would haue sca- rification made in the crustie or hard vicer onely, and then they straight way sprinkle those incisions with hote salt water, that blood might not meet to- gether in them, and increase but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they also apply some gnawing medicine, as Arsenicke, which in this case among the rest hath the greatest vertue: but some do minister to the scarified place horse leeches, or blood-suckers. But strong repulsives are in no wise to be vsed or applyed to the aggriued member (although refrigeration be needfull, which indeed doth belong vnto the inflammation;) for you cannot so turne away the fluxe, or prevent the malice thereof, because of the thickenesse of the humour. And if at any time you shall do it, you shall find some other naughtie humour (as Galen saith) which is sealed in the depth or inward parts of the body: but this humour must not be suffered to flow abundantly (the same Galen being our authour.) Therefore such remedies are to be sought for, as by a moderate repressiō can digest or disperse the humour. Such truly is that Cataplasme, both that which is made of Plantaine, and also that which is made of Lintels twise sodden. But with this you must commixe crummes of bread which hath bene baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after Galens coun- sell) be neither altogether without Branne, nor very full of it. But this kinde of Cataplasme is called of the latter sort *Emplastrum de Arnoglossa*, which they make after this sort. R. of Plantaine, Lintels, bread baked in an ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boiled in water. To these Auicen putteth Gaules, who also for this purpose doth allow the Cataplasme which is made of the two Pome-

Pome-

Pomegranates sodden either in Vineger, or in sharpe or tart Water, and these they apply both to the affected member, and also to the parts about it. Of this minde also is *Paulus Aegineta*, who saith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and dislender it from hauing any societie with the parts about it, you must seeth in Vineger a sharpe Pomegranate cut in small peeces: when the sore is corrupted you must wipe it smooth, and cleanse it with a linnen cloath, and when it waxeth drie, you must moisten it with Vineger. Also the kinnell of the old filberd nut, or of the young, doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the best remedie for the parts lying about it, is the ointment made of *Bolcarmoniacke*, of the oile of *Roses* or *Mertles*, and of Vineger: which is vsed, because the humour which hath flowed already, should not returne backe againe within. There are some which do draw, and allure the poyson and malicious humour in a pestilent Carbuncle, with sucking or drawing it with cupping glasses, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beset with *Carbo*. Which thing truly I would also counsell to do, if *ἀρτηραι* doth occupie the arteries, and the parts about the lesser veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but slowly. But if it rusheth or breaketh forth strongly and abundantly, the rage of the humour must be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately repress (as of late we recited out of *Galen*,) lest that there be caused too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth so strongly in the affected member, & so the euill be made more painfull and angrie. But vpon this harder crustie vicer, especially when the member is putrified, you must lay some strong medicine, both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digest) and also which can moue the matter, (seeing that so you shall fauour the putrefaction of the member:) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Musa*, *Paso*, or *Polyda*: and it must be washed in some sweet wine, or in *Sapa*, by reason of the thicknesse of the filthie humour. That Cataplasme also which in *Galen* is made of the meale of *Tares* or *Oximel*, is rightly applyed, when as the vicer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the ointment called *unguentum Aegyptiacum* is to be applied. But if these things do little profit, you must come vnto more sharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kinde are these, the roote of *Dracunculus*, of *Aristolochia* broken and laid in Vineger, Lime, *Arsenicke*, yellow Oker, and other of this sort, which do burne like fire. These do profit sufficiently, if they do thoroughly resolue the corrupted member, euen from the quicke. This being done, whatsoever is corrupted and dead within, you must by and by pull away, and plucke it vp by the roots. But when after these gnawing medicines there followeth a scurfe or scarre, which is drawne euery way from the quicke flesh, the wound truly, which is raised through them, must be diligently regarded, as in sores that be burned. But being in extreame diseases, as (*Hippocrates* saith) extreme remedies are perfectly the best: we are constrained sometime (our medicines not preuailing with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by actuall or manuall instruments (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or some other such thing. But the end of burning is, while there is sense of paine euery way, as *Celsus* hath taught very well. After these things the crust or scabbe which is vpon the

Paulus.

Nuxauellana.

Remedies to draw the poyson in a carbuncle.

What must be applyed to a crustie vicer.

A cataplasme of the meale of Tares & Oximel.

Unguentum Aegyptiacum. Adurentia medicamenta.

When adustion must be vsed.

Finis adurentis

*Pfili.**Maturatinum
Auicenna.**Mundificati-
um ex Apio.
A common ca-
taplasme vsed
in Paru.
Consolida
maior.**Scabiosa.**What things
do resolue the
crusts of vlcers**Theriaca.*

vlcers, must be resolued by such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sicke shall refuse to suffer adustion, the helpe of some poore and base fellow is to be vsed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with histeeth, may quite extinguish and pull vp the same; as were in time past certaine people in Italie named *Pfili*, who did sucke their wounds which they receiued by the stinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Morcouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or consumed any other way, the hollownesse thereof (the inflammation now ceassing) must first be cleaned, and afterward being made pure and cleane, it must be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Synulotica*;) which when it is thoroughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vse those things which can bring it to a scarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill do not rage very much, but shall seeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as *Auicenna* saith) by applying Figs commixed well together with leauen and Salt. And when this Cataplasme or the like is layed too twice or thrise, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke, and full of chinkes or clifts; and then the place is to be scowred and cleaned with mundificatiues made of *Apium*. That medicine also which is made of the yolkes of egges and of Salt, if it be often applyed, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the same purpose we vse commonly at this day that medicine which is made of Honie, Salt, Wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Consolida maior*, that is, Comferie (which the Greekes call *Symphyton*) being brayed betweene two stones, doth heale *Anthrax* very maruellously (as they report,) and within the space of one day it quite destroyeth it, so that it needeth no other curing any more after; besides also it is a common helpe for other wounds. Some also do declare wonderfull things of *Scabiosa*, because that (being eaten, or drunke in wine) it thrusteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth dissolue and discusse them without paine.

In the vlcers of a Carbuncle these do resolue the crusts of the scurfe, fresh butter, swines suet, and other fat things of that sort. For this purpose also this Emplaister following doth maruellously profit: for besides that it resolue the scarre, that is, the crust, more speedily then the aforesaid things, it also asswageth the paine that is caused either of the sharpe and burning medicines, or of the bright instrument, and it mightily discusse the malignant humour which exciteth the Carbuncle. *Rx.* of Wheate and Barley meale, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. of the which make a solide Emplaister with the decoction of Mallowses, Violets, and the rootes of *Althaa*, and put thereunto of Butter, and swines suet melted, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. the yolkes of two egges, which must be put in when they are taken off the fire, and all these must be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforesaid rootes and herbes; which must be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then sifted through a searce. As concerning their diet, Epithemes, Cordials, and other of that kind, which are made to strengthen the heart, also euacuations, if they be needfull, do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Physicke which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in ministering them, you must aske the aduice or counsell of some learned Physicion. But commonly all men almost doe vse *Theriaca*, which is wont

wont to be ministred to the greatnesse of a Beane, made of the water of Scabious, or if a very sharpe and vehement seauer be present, you must make it of Rose water, or water of Buglosse: which the sicke must take sixe houres after meate. But because we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida*, and *Musa* (which *Galen* so greatly vsed) it shall not be amisse to set downe here the description of them.

R^e. of Cytrines, that is, of the first flowers or buds of Pomegranates, ℥. x. *Andronis* of Alume that may be cut, ℥. iij. of Coperous or Vitrioll, ℥. xij. of Mirthe, ℥. Trochiscus, iij. of Frankinsence, *Aristolochia*, & Gals, ana. ℥. viij. of Salt ammoniack, ℥. iij.

R^e. of Pomegranate rindes, ℥. vj. of Mirthe, ℥. viij. of Alume that may be *Polyida* Pa-cut ℥. v. of Frankinsence, ℥. iij. of Coperous, ℥. iij. of the gall of a bull, ℥. stillus. vj. Let these be taken in sweet wine.

R^e. of cut Alume, ℥. iij. Frankinsence, ℥. iij. of Myrthe as much, of Cope- *Polyida* passil-rous, ℥. ij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. xij. of buls gall, ℥. vj. *Aloes*, *luc alius*. ℥. viij. Take these in sharpe wine.

R^e. of cut Alume, *Aloes*, Mirthe, Coperous, ana. ℥. vj. of Saffron and *Musa trochis-* of the dregs of the oile of Saffron, ℥. iij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. cus. iij. Let them be taken in *Mulsu*m made of *Faleru*m.

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.

GALEN lib 2. *ad Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reason of the greatnesse of the inflammation be made and changed into mortifications, yet they be not thoroughly ingendred and alreadie confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is so outrageous, that except it be remedied verie speedily, the affected member doth easily represent the habite of death, that is, it doth very readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life, sense, and mouing. But when the member is so corrupted and so feeble, that it is altogether without sense, and as it were dead, so that whether it be stricken, or cut, or burned, the sicke feeleth it not, then the Greeks call this euill no longer *Gangrena*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latines *Syderatio*, the latter sort call it *Esthiomenon*: which name also they giue vnto *Gangrena*. But *Auicenna* calleth it *Esthiomenon*, when as the corruption thereof doth passe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vie in another order. Some call this affect sometime *Herpeta Esthiomenon*, sometime very improperly, *Cancer ulceratus*. But this affect chanceth also to the bones, when as the flesh being beset & compassed about with them, bringing forth and ingendring filthy & stinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poyson, and consumeth them with most corruptible rottennesse. Therefore when as the member shall together appeare void of life, sense, & mouing, you must by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the sound flesh. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangrena*, because the one doth grow vp in the bones, (as we haue declared) and not in the flesh and the vessels of the bodie onely. but the other cometh not to the bones; notwithstanding it is one kind of *Sphacelus*, but it borroweth a proper & singular name beside the cōmon terme. This kind of corruption being

What a Canker is, and whence it hath his beginning.

Gangrena pessimus tyrannus.

Sphacelus.

Syderatio offi-um.

The benūmed member must be pared straight way

perfect

*Ignis Sancti
Antonij.*

*Three causes
of mortificatio*

1.

*What things
do dissolve the
mixture of the
member.*

2.

*3.
Signes of Gan-
grana and
Sphacelus.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

Indicia. lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether deprived of sense, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antonij*, in another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chanceth three wayes. One way, when as the member can no longer receive the life that is sent to it from the heart through the Arteries, by reason of the dissolving of the mixture and content of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is dissolved and destroyed, either because of too much cold (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boisterous winter) or by reason of immoderate, rash and vnadvised refrigeration of the inflammation, or else because of the exceeding and vnmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangrana* and *Sphacelus* are caused, when as the life being gotten into the member, is choaked and stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometimes do close vp and stop the veines, arteries, and pores of the skin, that there the spirits (the breathing forth of the vapourous streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindered) are strangled and choaked. The third way these mortifications, and destroyings of life are caused in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden: and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else because of some bruile received in those passages and pores through the which the breath is carried. To conclude, *Gangrana* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *Necrosis* and *Sphacelus*, do chance vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the body. But the signes of *Gangrana* and *Syderatio*, *Galen* in his litle treatise of tumours aboue nature, declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations: then paine and beating of the pulses, that is, the moving of the arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition is not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is very soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthie savour, and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth very deeply, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skin appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member (which the Grecians call *Gangrana*, is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently seeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perisheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But it (as *Celsus* reporteth) it yet hath but small power, but is now in beginning, it is not very hard to cure, especially in a young mans bodie, and so much the rather if the muscles be sound and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or smally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned againe into *Sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and verie many do dye of a cold sweate.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of the cure of Gangrana caused of great inflammations, and
of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which is
ingendred of Gangrana.*

BEcause the abundance of blood doth ingender a Canker, the order of the *Emptying of*
cure thereof must be straightway attempted by a plentiful and copious *corrupted*
evacuation of the corrupt blood, which is packed together in the affected *blood.*
member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which
shall seeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require)
and strengthening of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the
advice of some learned Physitian, who knoweth how to instruct him therein
(as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congea-
led blood (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part,
either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about
the same member, or in the whole skin of the part affected, together with his
substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or divided by many
deepe scarifications. Some to this end do apply horse-leeches, and they do
open a little the veines that be next the sore; but those deepe and often se-
ctions or scarifications are much more effectuell to cure that euill. But because
of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse great sections, or often incisions
(which we call scarifications) the one, when the euill is more rotten, the other
when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedy
it requireth (as euery man may know.) But when you haue drawne out blood *After scarifi-*
abundantly by those deepe slashes or cuts, you must wash the place with salt- *catio you must*
water, that the thicke blood which otherwise would abound there, may be *wash the place*
brought forth. Then you must apply some medicine that can let and dissolue *with salt wa-*
putrefaction, as is the meale of Tares or Darnell (which the French men call *ter.*
Turaria, because it doth prouoke drunkenness after the manner of wine;) or *Medicines pu-*
if there be scarcity of them, you must vse the meale of Beanes with *treactions.*
Syrupus acetosus. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified place twice a
day with hote vinegar, but especially with *Mulsu*m. For these by reason of the
drinesse, do consume the filthinesse and corruption, and do cleanse it; but be-
cause of their coldnesse they do challenge of putrefaction that which is not yet
defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie
of the euill somewhat remitted and slaked, you must lay aboue vpon the sore
that ointment which is commonly called *unguentum Aegyptiacum*, made of *Unguentum*
Verdigrease, Alum, Honie, and Vineger, of each a like quantitie commixed *Aegyptiacum.*
and boyled together. This doth stop putrefaction and resolue it: and it doth
disseuer also the putrified and corrupted humour from the sound and whole
parts, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreouer it procureth a crust or
scarre, and preserveth and defendeth the whole parts from any infection. But
if you will apply a more strong and effectnall medicine, mingle Salt with the
aforesaid things: or if the euill shall increase yet more and more, minister *Burning Tro-*
some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being thoroughly brayed & beaten *chiskes.*
together

*Arsenicon.
Sublimatum.*

*Lib. 2. ad
Glauc.*

*When aduſtion
is to be vſed.*

*If the Canker
burneth into
Sphacelus.*

*Lib. 2. ad
Glauc.*

Lib. 4.

*Remedies that
can looſen the
cruſts from the
ſcared mem-
bers.*

together, and then waſhed in Vineger and Wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Muſa*, or one of thoſe which are called of the latter ſort *Calidicon*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Aſphodelus*, which by reaſon of the burning force do ſeparate the corruption from the ſound parts. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praized and allowed of, which they call *Sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which muſt be diſſolued either in ſome powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotten (which the Frenchmen call *Coton*;) and ſo applied betweene the ſound and corrupted member: for this doth ſtraightway ſtay the euill, and that truly without paine. But if neceſſitie requireth, you muſt diuide the good from the euill with a certaine inſtrument called a probe, or ſlice. But in miniſtring medicines (that the matter may be handled more without care) you muſt be diligent to know the nature of the ſicke bodie (as *Galen* hath well taught vs ſaying:) If the body be ruſticall and hard by nature, it requireth very vehement medicines; but if it be tender and ſoft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infants alſo or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleaſure in idleneſſe, muſt haue gentle medicines miniſtered to them. Moreover the nature of the parts which are euill affected muſt be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are ſome ſores, which very quickly do come to matter and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and ſome very ſlowly: ſome alſo do ſlowly feele the force and benefit of medicines applyed, and ſome very ſoone.

Furthermore if (notwithſtanding theſe burning medicines) the euill ſhall yet remaine, you muſt burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all theſe remedies are wont ſometime to profit nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celſus* ſaith) it be a miſerable helpe, that is, to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that ſo the other parts of the body may be without danger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching, it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and ſound, after the manner of poiſon. But if at any time you ſhall cut off this putrified and dead member, or ſhall lance off that which is corrupted in any member euen to the ſound fleſh, then by the counſell of *Galen* for more quietneſſe ſake, you muſt ſcare or burne with ſome bright inſtrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and ſound body, for ſo you ſhall quickly ſtay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now aduſtion being done and ended, you muſt vſe the iuyce of leekes, or (as *Paulus* ſaith) you muſt apply ſalt with the leekes, or ſome of thoſe remedies which we haue ſpoken of a little before. For theſe do dry and bind the corruption, and do alſo ſtop the fluxe of humours. But when by vſing theſe remedies, rottenneſſe or corruption ſhall ſeeme to ceaſe: that the cruſts and ſcurfe may ſoone fall away, you muſt vſe a Cataplaſme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *Hydraleon*. Alſo that medicine which they call *Cephaleum*, annointed with hony. Theſe through their cleaſing or ſcouring, do reſolue the cruſt from the fleſh which lyeth vnder it. Moreover that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that alſo called *Macdonicum*, by moving and mollyfying the matter, do bring the ſcurfes from the parts that lye vnder them,

them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lyeth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed in *Apium*, or *Ocinum*, thorough their cleansing doth mightily draw the crusts from the whole parts without erosion or gnawing; of the like vertue also is *Iris*, or the roote of *Panax*, or of *Aristolochia*, or of *Acornus* mixed with Honie. But they are commonly wont to vse Butter or some other annointing thing to resolue the crusts. But when the crust is fallen off, they wash the place with Vineger, and apply this Plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Gulielmus de Saliceto* *R. Honie, lb. Emplastrum* *ss. raw yolkes of egges, three or foure, of Barley meale, lb ss. mingle these* together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But two or three dayes after, that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this Emplaister, of choten Mirrhe, *3. x.* But in tender and yong bodies for the separation of the crust, and deterfion of the filthy corruption, the meale of Tares mingled with Honie, or Frankensence (which was vsed of *Galen*) doth abundantly suffice. These things being rightly ordered, such kind of vlcers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health with such kind of medicines as can draw together the flesh, & procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *Synulotica* and *Epolotica*. 1. Emptie out abundantly the corrupted blood, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scaturifications or sections, wash the affected member with salt water; then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores. 3. When the furie of the euil is somewhat slaked, minister *unguentum Aegyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hote iron that place which is betweene the filthy and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, and now *Gangrana* is changed into *Sphacelus*, cut off that member very speedily which is so perished euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behind. 6. When you haue cut off that which is putrified, you must vse some hote burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the very roote of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of Leekes, and other such things as do drie, bind, and stop fluxe. 8. Make no great speed to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hote instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of blood.) 9. When rottennesse or corruption is ceased, and you feare no more the flowing of blood, apply those things which can draw off the crust. 10. When the crusts or scurfes be fallen from their places, you must vse the same cure as in other places.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangrena* and *Sphacelus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of blood: and draw it out abundantly, if it flow plentifully. 3. Purifie the blood with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularia*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of Hoppes, and Furmitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defend the heart (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those corrupted and filthy smelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified members.

CHAP.

*Butyrum.**Emplastrum**Gulielmi à**Saliceto.**Lib. 2. ad**Glaucnem.**The summe of**the cure of**Gangrana &**Sphacelus.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

*Aphorismes**pertaining to**a Physition.*

1. 2. 3.

4.

Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of Choler.

*Fleame in the
generation of
humors is next
vnto blood.*

*Erysipelas
quid.*

*Erysipelas ex-
quisitum.
Epina.*

*Erysipelas cū
ulceratione.*

*Erysipelas non
legitimum.*

*Mediam vi-
tium.*

Bilis.

Although fleame in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto blood, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body, next vnto blood, then of other humors, yet because tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commonly call cholericke apostemes) do in many things greatly conspire and agree with bloudie tumours, it followeth (after the determination of *Phlegmone*, and other tumours consisting aboue nature, which proceed of blood) that we now speake of those swellings which are caused of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Erysipelata*, but of the ancient Latines *Ignes sacri*. *Erysipelas* therefore is the branch or bud of cholericke fluxe most abiding about both the skinnes, that is, both about that which outwardly couereth all the parts of the body, and also about that filmie and thinne skin which inwardly compasseth the internall parts. But oftentimes also it occupieth some of the flesh that lyeth vnder it, as *Phlegmone* (which is the issue of bloody flux most incident to fleshy bodies) doth also possesse some of the skin. Therefore when very thin choler or hote blood, which is thin also in substance, (called of the latter sort *Cholera naturalis*, but of *Galen* *χοληραις*) is spread abroad over the skin onely, nothing molesting the flesh vnder it, and yet somewhat raising the member into a tumor with a languishing inflammation and yellow rednesse, and altogether doth yeeld when it is touched; this affect is properly called of *Galen*, a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*. But this is for one consideration, or (as they say) it chanceth vniiformely, and without ulceration. *Auicenna* calleth it *Spina*. But when an humour of bitter choler shall be more thicke and sharpe, then that it can returne againe naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that little outward skinne which the Greekes call *Epidermida*, and sometime that exulceration of the skin in proccesse of time pierceth somewhat deeply, so that it toucheth the inner flesh vnder it, and then that affect is called also *Erysipelas*, but with ulceration, which (as *Galen* saith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholericke fluxe, nor a bloudie humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then *Erysipelas* onely, but *Galen* termeth it a disposition thoroughly commixed with *Erysipelas* and the inflammation. But of that which is predominant in the mixture, is the title given to the euill. For when blood ruleth, it is called *Phlegmone erysipelatosa*: but when choler raigneth, terme it *Erysipelas phlegmonosum*. But when neither hath superiority, but the accidents of them both appeare equall together in power, then that euill shall be called a meane betweene *Phlegmone* & *Erysipelas*. Now also of the other mixtures, there shall be the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and small humor, either of fleame or melancholy, it shall be called *Erysipelas edematosum* or *schirrhosum*. Moreover when we speake simply of choler, or of a bilious humour, after the manner of *Galen* and other Physicians, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is soure and blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis* & certa *cholera*, hauing his generation of blood that is thin and hote. But melancholy we neuer absolutely do terme choler, but alwaies with an adiection of the humour

mour, wick ioyneith the colour of the name. Choler therefore, which is called
 of the Greekes *χολη*, and commonly *Cholera*, is a hote and drie humour, pro-
 ceeding of the thinner and hotter part of *Chylus*, or thinne and hote bloud (as
 we said alate.) And this is two maner of wayes according to the diuision of the
 new Physitions, that is to say, naturall choler is a hot and dry humor, in substance
 thin, of colour yellow, or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like Orenge
 tawnie, but in taste very bitter, and sharpe or soure (as some vntruly haue affir-
 med.) Vnnaturall choler is said to be that, which doth degenerate from the
 aforesaid bilious humours. and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his
 circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accoun-
 ted choler, but rather some other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth hap-
 pen to transgresse the limits of his libertie or circuit two wayes. 1. One way
 (as we may say) by it selfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with other. By it
 selfe and in it selfe it is also two-fold. 1. One way, when as that naturall choler
 doth putrefie, and is burned within, and that is called *Aduſta per putrefactionem*,
 that is, burnt through putrefaction. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall
 choler called *Vitellina*, is throughly concocted euen with a fierie heate, in the
 liuer, or in the stomacke, or in the veines; and it is made of the colour of leekes,
 which they also call *Prassina*, or it is caused to be rusty or cankered, which ituly
 are extreame griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through
 admixtion, is caused, when as another humor doth come vnto it extraordina-
 rily. And this truly happeneth many wayes. For if thin and waterish fleame be
 mixed with it, it is made yellow, and like vnto Saffron; if thick and vicious
 fleame be commixed therewith, it is made like to yolkes of eggs but if burned
 melancholy be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis aduſta per admixtionem*. And
 so after *Anicenis* minde and iudgement, there are sixe kindes of naturall choler;
 with *Haly Abbas* soure onely; for he maketh no mention at all of two kindes
 of aduſted choler. But *Gal. 2 de virtut. naturalibus* saith, that there is no choler
 besides nature, but that which is *vitellina*, very like both in colour & thicknesse
 to the yolkes of eggs: for he saith that *porracea* & *aruginosa bilis* are ingendred
 oftentimes in the stomacke, of naughtie and corrupted humours, by reason of
 cruditie or rawnesse of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called Bete, Oni-
 ons, Colewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well dige-
 sted, it ingendreth in the very veines, by reason of sicknesse, or some other
 euill disposition. By these things therefore is gathered, that there are foure kinds
 or differences of inflamations ingendred of choler (which commonly are cal-
 led cholericke apostemes;) that is to say, of true, sincere, and laudable cho-
 ler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is ingendred that kinde of infla-
 mation, which *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth a true and exquisite *Ery-*
sipelas; which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called *λε-*
ρυσίπιδος. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other hu-
 mours, there do arise three other differences, *Erysipelas Phlegmonodes*, *Erysi-*
pelas adematodes, and *Erysipelas Scirrholdes*. And of choler which besides na-
 ture is caused of aduſtion, by reason of thinnesse or thicknesse of the sub-
 stance thereof, there are ingendred either *Herpetes esbiomeni*, that is, *exedentes*,
 which are of the same kinde with those *Erysipelata* which do chance with vl-
 ceration,

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digresse from his owne nature.

Bilis Vitellina. Porracea. Prassina. Aeruginosa.

Crocea.

Anicene. Haly.

Foure differences of inflamations coming of choler. Verum Erysipelas.

Three vnlawfull Erysipelas.

Phagedena.
Cancro ulceratio.

Cause veri
Erysipelatis.

Signes of Ery-
sipelas.

A yellowish
rednesse yeel-
ding to the
finger, a small
tumour, vehe-
ment heate.
Small pulse.
Pricking
paine.
Indicia.

ceration, or there are ingendred *Phagedena*, which do somewhat deeply gnaw the flesh, together with the skin, & there are caused cankerate cankers, & other such gnawing evils: there are also ingendred *Cacoethe*, that is, malignant ulcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *Pustula corrosiva*. Therefore in such kinde of humours, that is truly the most thionne, which raiseth the exulcerated *Herpes*: and that most thicke, which prouoketh the Canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thicknesse, occupieth the next place, which doth ingender *Phagedena*, as *Galen* hath noted *Lib. 14. Meth. med.* The causes of a true *Erysipelas*, as also of a true *Phlegmone*, are three, *Prægressæ*, which are called also *Primitiue*, 2. *antecedentes*, and *coniunctæ*. But *Erysipelas* is seldome caused of any primitiue cause: notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministering of attractiue medicines, do often times excite and cause the same.

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.

THe marques and tokens of a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, are gathered and knowne by conferring the same with *Phlegmone*, according to the doctrine of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* and 2. *ad Glauconem*: whereby it plainly appeareth, that a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* is a certaine *Species* of *Phlegmone*, that is, of an inflammation as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *Erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, that is, by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it slideth in againe, a small tumour rather remaining in the skin, then descending deeply, vehement heate causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *Phlegmone*: for *Erysipelas* is farre away more hote then *Phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper symptome of a great *Phlegmone*. A biting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chancess in *Phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgement hereof, *Erysipelas* doth chiefly lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose which is commonly called *Lepus*; then straight way it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thionnesse of the skinne, and lightnesse of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone, *Erysipelas* is a sodaine and maruellous disease, as *Hippocrates* writeth *Lib. 7. Aphorisme 19.* that is to say, it is an euill symptome, if the flesh lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *Erysipelas*, but this, as *Galen* witnesseth, chanceth very seldome. Againe, the same *Hippocrates* writeth in the *Aphorisme* following, that of *Erysipelas* there commeth corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith *Galen*) neuer do chance to *Erysipelata*, except it be to them which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *Erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also aboue nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *Erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime in *Erysipelas* certaine symptomes, which oftentimes by reason of their greatnesse do exceed the very cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do

hinde

der the order of the cure, that is, they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene said before in *Phlegmone*.) Moreover also *Erysipelas* followeth the mouing of a Tertian feauer, with whose matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion: for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *Erysipelas* from the outward parts to the inward, but contrariwise from the inward members to the outward parts, as *Hippocrates* hath written, *Lib. 6. Aphor. 25*. But those *Erysipelata* which do arise about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* saith) are wont to be so dangerous, that except they be holpen with some effectually remedie, they somewhat strangle and choke the sicke. *Hippocrates* also writeth, that *Erysipelas* is very mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with child; for *Erysipelas* being thus ingendred in the wombe, the child of necessity dieth. For truly a sharpe feuer (as *Galen* saith in his commentaries) oftentimes destroyeth it without inflammation,

Erysipelas followeth the order of a tertian feauer.
Erysipelata about the head are very hard to be cured.
Erysipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the child.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the cure of *Erysipelas*.

Seeing that *Erysipelas* (as also *Phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and ingendred of the defluxion of humours, the method of the whole curing thereof shall also be two fold; that is to say, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *Phlegmone* the order of euacuation doth surmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration, so in *Erysipelas* refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation; for the one doth trouble and molest in quantity, but the other (which is *Erysipelas*) in quality. Therefore *Erysipelas* must be greatly cooled and litle emptied, whereas contrariwise an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and litle refrigerated. Although there be a common Chapter and summe of curing both effects, (as *Galen* saith) that is, the vacuation of the troublesome humour: and therefore after that *Erysipelas* hath bene cooled, we vse those medicines which can digest or discusse. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuersall method which we haue said to be two fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noysome humour,) it shall not be amisse, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the consent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The first scope consisteth in the right obseruation of a good diet. The second concerneth the auersion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *Antecedens materia*. The third consisteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed alreadie into the diseased part, which they also call *Materia coniuncta*. The fourth and last is busied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill symptomes that may happen thereunto. We shall easily dispatch the first scope, if the applying of all those things which they call *Res non naturales*, shall belong vnto moistnesse, and to coldnesse, as is a feauer Tertian; seeing that *Erysipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therefore chuse and prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is somewhat cold and moist. In Sommer let the sicke be in a very cold house somewhat within the ground, that is windie, and towards the North. But if there be no such place to be had, and the aire be very hote, make it readie for him

Two general orders in the cure of *Erysipelas*.

Foure particular intentions of curing *Erysipelas*.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Three unlawful *Erysipelas* Herpes excrescens.

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus.

Animi affe-
ctus.

Venus.

Sectundus sco-
pus.2. ad Glanc.
In a phlegmo-
nous Erysipe-
las it is good
to let blood.

him your selfe by Art. Powre cold water verie often out of one vessell into another, sprinkle the pavements of the house daily with water that is altogether ycie and cold. Spread vpon the floore Roses and Violets, Vine leaues and branches, Sallow boughes, and other flowers and buds which are of a cold and moist facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the sicke abideth. Let him eschue all fat, sweet, sowre, and hote meates. Let him eat Lettuce, Gourds, Purslaine, Sorell, (which they call *Acetosa*) Rice, and other things of that kinde, which do thicken and refrigerate blood. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let his drinke be Ptisan broth, or Barley water. Let him keepe a temperate diet. Let his bellie be alwayes soft and soluble. Let him abstaine from all exercise and mouing, especially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eschue angar, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the mind, as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleane and handsome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let these things suffice concerning the first scope. But we shall also bring to passe our second intent about the cure of *Erysipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away the humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* (not necessarily as in *Phlegmone*) we must draw blood out of a veine, but we must also purge the bellie downward with some medicine which can expell choler, (called of the Greekes *Cholagogon*) if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth seeme to abound with choler. Therefore when *Erysipelas* doth accend and kindle feauers, and those more vehement then *Phlegmone*, those medicines which are exceeding hote, as the iuyce of *Scammonium* (called of the new Greekes *Diacrydion*) and that also which is commonly called in the shops *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, are in no wise meet or conuenient for this disease, and therefore you must vse either Rewbarbe, or that potion which of *Rasis* is called *Aqua Tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. R. Damaske prunes, xxiiij. *Tamarindi* that be new, ʒ. x. of broken Sugar, quart. ʒ. to the which things to make them more effectuell, you may adde Rewbarbe that is well washed. But if the euill be very little and small, these medicines called *Cholagoga* shall not neede, but it shall be sufficient to vse at that instant some sharpe clyster, (as it pleaseth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *Erysipelas* your labour shall not be frustrate, if you shall begin the cure with bloodletting (if nothing do let it.) For that kind of *Erysipelas* doth often lay hold on the face; whereupon *Paulus* commandeth, that by and by in the beginning you must cut a veine in the elbow, especially chusing in it the shoulder veine. But if that do not appeare, you must take that which is most obiect to the sight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of blood, he commandeth to vse a purgation made of some medicine which is dedicated and appointed to drue out choler; yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commanded to cut a veine in that *Erysipelas* which doth rise about the head and face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *Erysipelas*, which verie often molesteth the face: but *Galen* speaketh of a lawfull *Erysipelas*, wherein he vsed no detraction of blood. But in *Erysipelas œdematōsum* or *scirrhusum*, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled & manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleame, or a melancholy humor.

And

And truly in all these things the aduise of some wise and learned Physitian is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swerue or digest. And let this be sufficient, that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chyrurgian ought not to attempt any thing at all in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physitian, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Physitian is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepted those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remaining, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member, and is compacted therein, by applying outwardly digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sense. But of all these kinds of tumours thus consisting about nature, there is a double euacuation. (*Galen Lib. 4. Therap*) one of repulsiues to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporious breathing which doth flie the sense. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the verie qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation, it doth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *Phlegmone* doth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a little before) we will vse repressiue remedies, cooling as is conuenient the afflicted member, or that part which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without any manifest cause. But the end of refrigeration is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *Erysipelas* doth by and by rest and cease with this; but that which is not pure, but after a sort *Phlegmonous*, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew: but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged body: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no not with digesting medicines, but that some scirrhus tumors will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therefore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigeration and moderating helpes vnto their contraries, that is, vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwayes beware and take good heed, that those things which be annointed, be verie liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applyed, be often washed with sponges dipped in some liquor: for the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth dry vp these things. But amongst those things which carrie with them a frigerating and repelling force, verie conuenient for this affect, *Auicenna* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling one of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of Nightshade, of Syngreen, of Purslaine of *Pfyllis*, of Henbane, of Lettuce, of *Vmbilicus ueneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Corylidon*) of Endiue and Succorie, of fenne Lintels, of Gourds, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of very cold water, which containeth foure times as much of oyle of Roses with white waxe. *Rx.* oyle of Roses with oyle of vnripe Grapes made without salt,

X

which

In phlebotomy
and purging,
the Chyrurgia
must be taught
by the Physi-
tion.

Tertia inten-
tio.

Hic Guido de-
pranate citat
Gal.

How much E-
rysipelas is to
be refrigera-
ted.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Materia re-
frigerantium
ex Gal.
Ceratum.

*A compound
medicine.*

*Evacuation of
the ioyned
matter by e-
uaporatiues.
ὑμλυσίς.*

*Hydrelaum is
a mixture of
water & oyle.*

*Si linor iam
loen occuparit.*

*Quarta in-
tentio.*

which being made very soft and pliable in a mortar, sprinkle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commixe a little Vineger that is thin and very cleare, you shall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuell. Moreouer all these things must be ministred cold, and often changed, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth al o very much & that presently, to annoint the member annoyed with *Erysipelas*, with Ceruse onely, or mingled with Vineger and *Lycium*, or with *Terra cimolia* or with porters clay with Nightshade, or with *Spuma argenti*, with oyle of Roses, and with *Acatia* with vineger. To this purpose also this compound following helpeth much. R^r iuyce of Plantaine, ℥. j. oyle of Roses, ℥. iij. *Lithargyri nutriti*, ℥. j. *Ceruse lota*, ℥. iij. of womans milke, ℥. ℞. Let all be commixed together, and brayed in a leaden mortar, and make a Liniment. But *Lithargyrum* and *Cerusa* ought first to be beaten and then the oyle and iuyce aforesaid must be powred on them softly by little and little, vntill they be thoroughly incorporated together the one with the other. But if you desire greater coolers, you may comixe with these and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* mind) a little *Orium* or *Cicuta*, or Mandrake. But I thinke it good to abstaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a stupefactiue nature, except great necessitie doth moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is somewhat abated, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, *Galen* (before any blewnesse did appeare through refrigeration) did vse to dissolve the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a Cataplasme of Barley meale, or of *cruda Pelenta* (called in Greeke ὀμλυσίς) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *Phlegmone*. For euen as the signes of *Erysipelas* were desumed and knowne by the analogie of the tokens of *Phlegmone*: so also the remedies of the cure of *Erysipelas* are to be fetched from the proportion of the remedies of healing *Phlegmone*. Furthermore of such kind of medicines which haue a dissolving & breathing qualitie, very necessarie in this euill, there are very many, both simples and compounds, rehearsed of *Paulus Aegineta*, lib. 4. cap. 21. and of *Aetius*, lib. 14. de re Medica. But now it shall be sufficient to rehearse among so many, one onely remedie, which of all the rest seemeth in my opinion to be most excellent, R^r of the tender leaues of *Althea*, ℔. j. boyle them in *Hydrelaum*, and being well boyled, bray them well together, putting thereunto of oyle of Roses ℥. iij. *Argenti spuma*, and *Ceruse*, ana. ℥. ij. ℞. againe plaie or smooth the with the iuyce of Coriander, or Syngreene, or Nightshade: then put thereunto a few crummes of bread, and annoint them after the manner of an Emplaister. But if peraduenture blewnesse shall not occupie the place (the skin being cut before) you must lay a Cataplasme aboue vpon it, and sprinkle the place abundantly, as *Galen* hath commanded; with hore water: for it doth digest and wash the wound. Also water and salt brine in the meane season shall auaille to pourish or cherish the place, when it is somewhat thicke and grosse, which things do scoure and cleanse the thicknesse thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Erysipelas*, which is the correction of the accidents, is perfected (as we haue said in the cure of *Phlegmone*) when as we shall returne and driue backe the recourse of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and the

the heate. For these symptomes are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *Phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedie to assuage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaves and roots of Henbane, which you must roll vp in tow and teeth them with Prunes: then commixe them with the ointment commonly called *Populeon*, or with Swines greace (as is said before in the cure of *Phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chance to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *Vnguentum album* or *Vnguentū de Lythargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *Scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuell. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our minds and memorie. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of *Galen* these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of bloud. 2. If the bodie be full of choler, and the affect be great, purge the bellie downeward with the medicine of *Cholagogon*. 3. If the disease be little & small, and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole body (as you must) annoint the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderately repress and abundantly refigerate, even to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieved member altered, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceased, you must passe over from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be thoroughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries, that is, vnto digestiues, or discutientes & drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelata* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes, you must scarifie, and afterward apply a Cataplasme of Bailey meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisite or true, but phlegmonous, you may let bloud without fearing any thing, specially if bloud do abound in the body.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heate.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated

Seuen Aphor. out of Galen concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2.

3. 4.

5.

6.

7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pusthes.

THOSE tumours aboue nature which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall and hidden choler, that is, which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sort of Physitions and also of Chyrurgians, do call *Mala cholerice pustula*: But the Grecians, as *Hippocrate*, *Galen* and *Paulus*, do call them *Herpete*, which word doth almost sound and agree with the Latines, as *Malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For *ipno* in Greeke, is all one with *serpo* in Latine, whereupon *ipno* is called *serpens*; yet *Herpes* doth not perfectly signifie among the Physitions *Malū quod serpit*, but a certaine kind of disease whereof we now intreate: therefore the creeping euill extendeth and stretcheth further then *Herpes*; for *Phagodana* are also called

De Herpete.

Pustule cholerice vulgo appellata Herpetes.

Formica Auicenne. *Serpentia vlcera*, creeping vlcers. But *Auicenn* called all these kind of pushes *Formice*, and *Galen* numbred them among inflammations, but *Celsus* seemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *sacer ignis*. *Lib. 5. cap. 28.* *Herpes* therefore is caused, when yellow choler, vnnaturally alone, and secret, that is to say, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into some member, and there remaineth: whose substance if it be any thing thicke and sharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skin, euen to the flesh which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of *Hippocrates* and other *Grecians*, *ἰσθίμυρος*, but of the Latines *Herpes exedens* or *depascens*, an eating or feeding *Herpes*; and it is called *ἰσθίμυρος*. *14. Therap. of Galen*, by this absolute name, *Herpes*. But if choler be somewhat thinne, and not so thicke and hote, it exciteh small wheelkes outwardly in the superficies of the skinne (for that it doth not onely as it were burne but scald) like vnto the seed of Millet or Hirse: by reason of which similitude and likeness, the affect is then termed of the Latines *Miliaris herpes*: but of certaine of the *Grecians* after *Hippocrates* time, it was called for the same reason *κίχνη*: for *κίχνη* in Greeke, is called *Milium* with vs. And this kind of spices of *Herpes* (*Galen* witnessing the same, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*) doth borrow his name or title of the generall word, seeing that the same *Galen* calleth it *Herpes* simply and without addition. Notwithstanding in another place by the name of *Herpes*, *Galen* calleth it *Herpes esthiomenos*, that is, *exedens* as afterward shall be said. But this kinde doth not altogether cause the vlcere, as the other doth which is called *exedens*, but as hath bene said, it exciteh little small pushes to the likeness of *Milium*, which pushes in processe of time when they are broken out, do turne vnto an vlcere. Therefore not without great reason or cause did *Oribasius* and certaine other also before *Galen* time, iudge and thinke, that in this kind of euill, there was mixed with choler some thinne fleame, which did bring forth those little pushes, whereupon it was called of some *pustulosus Herpes*. But the other which is called *Esthiomenos* is not so mixed with fleame, but seemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour, and therefore it chanceth with erosion, which continually affecteth the skin, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For *Esthiomenos* is all one with *erodens* or *exedens*. And truly this euill is of one and the same kinde with a pustulous and exulcerate *erysipelae*, from the which notwithstanding it somewhat differeth by reason of the thinnesse of that bilious humour (whereof both of them do take their beginning.) That is that which *Galen* testifieth in these words: It is (saith he) a very thinne humour which raiseth *Herpes*, and so thinne truly, that it passeth through not onely all the inward members, which are every where of a fleshy substance, but also through the very skin, euen vnto the outward little skin (which is called of the *Greekes* *Epidermida*) which onely because it stayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it should also pierce through this, after the manner of a sweate, it should in no wise excite any vlcere; for that is a common thing vnto vlcers which do arise of a biting humour, which vlcers they call *Spontaneas*, because the humour which causeth them is stayed, and tarieth still in their going out or issue: hitherto *Galen*. When he nameth *Herpes* simply and without any addition, he meaneth *Herpes esthiomenos*, as it is easie to be knowne by the ioyning together thereof, by the signes and cure; and so

in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is simply and absolutely called *Herpes*, as in that little booke *de Tumoribus præter naturam*, where the same *Galen* writeth thus of that same kind of *Herpes* word for word; *Herpes* also feedeth and gnaweth vpon those parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skin onely. But almost all the barbarous sort of Chyrurgians, euen those of late time, do comprehend both these kinds of *Herpes*, viz. *Miliaris* and *Exedens*, vnder this title of *Formica*, to whom both in this thing, and in many other also, *Auicenna* first gaue the occasion of error; who being deceived by the likenesse of the name, because the Greeks call *Myrmecia*, that is, *Formica*, a certaine kind of *Verruca*, hath through a marvellous oversight, euen in the same Chapter, confounded those *Verruca* with *Herpetes*. *Guido* notwithstanding maketh a difference betweene *Herpes* and *Formica*, and confoundeth the name of *Formica* sometimes with *Verruca*, which the Greekes call *Myrmecia* and *Acrochordone*, sometime with *Herpes exedens*, which (I meane *Herpes comedens*) is sometime named of the same *Guido* *Herpestes*, sometime absolutely *Herpes*, who also thought this *Herpes* to be nothing else but a pustulous and ulcerated *Erysipelas*, when this notwithstanding, as we haue alledged out of *Galen*, doth differ from the other by reason of the thinnesse of the humour. For that choler which exciteth *Herpes*, is thinner then that which causeth an ulcerate *Erysipelas*. Furthermore *Erysipelas*, which chanceth with ulceration, doth not onely occupie the skin, but with it also it annoyeth some part of the flesh vnder it. But *Herpes*, whereof we now intreate, layeth hold on the skin onely, & exulcerateth it. Therefore although these euils are of one and the same kinde, (as *Galen* thought) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Those whelkes also which the interpreter of *Auicenna* and the vlearned companie of Physicians, do terme *Morbili*, *Hippocr. lib. 3. Epidemiarum* hath comprehended vnder *Herpes*. But these *Morbili* are caused of a more thin and slender matter, then those pusshes which are commonly called *Variola*. For these (as *Auicenna* writeth) proceed of bloud, but the other are caused through the admixtion of choler & bloud. But if any man do long or desire to know what name the ancient Physicians did bequeath vnto these pustulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latine they are called of *Plinie*, *Papula*, and sometime *pustula eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of *Hippocrates lib. 3. Epidemiarum*, *Ecllymata*, of *Galen*, *Exanthemata*. But the signes, iudgements and causes of both kinds of *Herpes*, may sufficiently be knowne by those things that went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing these euils called *Herpestes*, (as in other such like voluntary vlcers which haue their originall of a biting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obserued and marked. The first is, that the confluxion of the humour vnto the affected part be stopped and letted. The second is, to make euacuation, of that, whatsoeuer is flowne already into the aggrieued member, and thicketh fast in the same. The third is, to heale the vlcere. We do finish our first intent, by purging the whole body with some medicine that can bring forth the humour whereof the euill doth grow, and when the body is thoroughly emptied, by repressing & driuing backe the humor that floweth. Therefore in *Herpes exedens* we must vse some medicine which can prouoke choler downward, seeing (as

Herpes exulcerateth onely the skinne.

Auicenna confoundeth myrmecia with herpestes.

Herpes Erysipelatos and Erysipelas vlcerratum, are all one.

Morbili sunt ex Herpetum genere.

Papularum eruptiones. Ecllymata. Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of Herpes.

1. 2. 3. *Primus scopus. Herpes requirit the medicine Cholagogue.*

we haue said before) a pure and sincere bilious humor doth procreate this euill. It hapneth therefore that in respect of the emptying of the whole body, *Comedentes Herpetes* must be cured like vnto *Erysipelata*. Therefore because it is a thin and waterish humor which causeth this euill, *Galen* hath sufficiently declared to mollifie & soften the belly gently, or to prouoke vrine with those things which can moderately cause the same. But in the other kind of *Herpetes*, which requireth a by reason of the similitude which it hath with *Milium*, we haue said to be called remedie which in Greeke *Miliaris* and *Centuria*, there is required some remedie which is of a can purge both mixed faculty, that is, which can purge forth both choler and fleame. For choler and some haue thought, and that not without great reason, (as *Galen* saith) that in fleame. this euill there is some fleame commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the body and causeth this euill, being emptied out (as it is required) you must apply those medicines which can repressle & keepe backe the flowing of the humour; for then ministring of them shall be more without danger, and more conuenient also, seeing that (as *Galen* saith) if one do thrust backe but a litle portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging remaineth yet in the body, to the bowels and great veines, it will not cause any sensible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantitie of the humour be great, it sometime coucheth it selfe in some principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not be plentifull. euacuated, either by purging downward, or by vrine, or by the skin, which Reprimendum includeth the whole body. But repressiues and repulsiues be not onely those materia. which do bind, but also those which can refrigerate without any astringion. Of which nature are these, Lettuce, Kootgrasse, fenne or pond Lintils, Purslaine, Endiue, Syngreene, and other of that sort, which were very conuenient also for *Erysipelas*. But those medicines which beside their cooling, are also apt The remedies which do coole by nature to moisten *Herpetes*, especially *depaucientes*, do in no wise require, & moystenare but they do onely admit those refrigeratiues which can also greatly drie vp. not meete for For those remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and berpes exedens. drie, as is Nightshade, are not sufficient for them. Therefore by *Galen*'s counsell you must in the beginning lay vpon them the yong tender buds of the Vine, Bramble leaues, of *Rubum caninum*, and Plantaine. After apply also with these Lintels, sometime Honie & Barley meale. Also minister that Cataplasme Reprimendum meete for herpes exedens. sine Semperuino, which is appointed for those phlegmonous tumours which proceed of flaxe; for it doth repell that which floweth, and it dryeth vp that which is contained in the affected member, and it strengtheneth the parts about it. The beginning of the being past, this remedy auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplasme of the rinds of Pomegranates sodden in wine, and of *Rhus* or *Rho*, Cataplasma. Sumach. that is, of the seeds of the shrub *Coriariu* (which of the late Physicians is called Sumach) and of the meale of Barley. But by this Cataplasme you shall very These things do accomplish our second intension. wel accomplish the second intention or scope of curing *Herpes*, because it is of sufficient power to digest that which is flowed already into the affected place: for it appeareth euidently, that those remedies which haue a repressing faculty, ought to exceed in the generation of the vicer; but when the vicious humour doth cease to flow any more into the affected part, then those medicines are requisite which do digest. As concerning our third intent, which declareth the cure

cure of the vicer, it behoueth you briefly to know these things following, viz. That euery vicer whether it cometh of the owne accord, or be caused of some accidentall cause, doth desire to be dried vp by some medicine (as Hippocrates saith) that is not sharpe, byting, or vehemently prouoking, except, when the vicers be malicious and full of corruption; for such euils (saith Galen) require more sharpe medicines, and those which haue euen the power of fire, as is My- ses and Chalcitis, and Arsenicum, and Lime, and Sandaracha, and other things of that kind, which burne as hote as fire. Those places therefore that are exulcerated in *Herpes exedens*, must be tended with Pils, and Trochisks, written for the cure of *Herpes* in those bookes which are called *Pharmaceutici*: which remedies, when necessity compelleth vs to vse them, must be thoroughly washed in *Passum* or in some other sweete wine, or if sweet wine be not ready at hand, in thin and somewhat sharpe wine, which is not too old (that is, which for age hath no sharpe tast) or else in *Posca aquosa* (which they call *Oxycratum*) *Paulus* in *Herpes* which annoyeth vnder the skin, vseth these remedies; the scowrings of Lead steeped in the iuyce of smooth Rew, or a Cerate of Mirtles in stead of Rew. Another of old wooll, washed and burnt about a torch, ℥. xij. ℥. of Wax, ℥. xxv. of the scourings of Lead, ℥. j. of Goates tallow, trimmed and washed with water, ℥. xxv. of Mirtles, ℥. v. But for those *Herpetes* that do gnaw and bite vehemently, called *depascentes*, he chargeth to vse this remedie. R. of the rind of sweete Pomegranats, ℥. vj. *Argentis puma*, ℥. vj. of washed wooll cleauing to the torch or to some sweete wood, and that burnt, ℥. iij. of Wax, ℥. xii. of Ceruse, ℥. viii. of Frankincense, Alum scissible, ana. ℥. i. let them be steeped in wine or in oile of Mirtles. But now the vicers being of long continuance, those Trochisks abouesaid, and other such like medicines which are appointed to cure *Herpetes*, must be washed neither in sweet wine nor in *Posca aquosa*, but rather in wine that is somewhat sharpe, especially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you must vse white wine. But those medicines which are most effectuell and most meete at that time, when the vicers be inueterate, are the Pils of *Musa*, *Andron*, and *Polyida*, whose descriptions are set downe in the end of the cure of *Carbunculus*, and those Trochisks also, which of *Anicen* and the latter sort of Physicians are called *Calidicon* and *Aldaron*. But those *Herpetes* which do onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *Miliares*, must in no wise be enioyned to any of those medicines before rehearsed (if we wil credit *Galen*) for they be very vehement and do greatly drie. But those medicines whatsoever they be, which haue the nature and force of *Glaucium*, that is, of *Memytha*, shall suffice these vicers, and you must wash them with this, but specially with water. But if these things shall nothing auaille, you must also commixe Vineger therewith. Also if you annoint it with iuyce of Nightshade, or Plantaine, you shall helpe it greatly. Hitherto haue we spoken of *Herpes*. Now because in that which we haue said, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *Formice*, which both the Arabians, and the latter sort of Physicians do erroneously, as we haue said, confound with *Herpetes*: this place doth require that we set downe a few words, both of them and of other tumours, and increasings appearing in the skin, which the Latines call *Verruca*.

The cure of the vicer in herpes scope.

Euery vicer must be dried vp.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

How exulcerated places must be looked to.

Posca. Remedies take out of Paulus. Aliud.

Ad herpetes depascentes.

For inueterate vicers.

What is to be done in pustula miliares if they turne into an vicer. Lib. secundo ad Glauconem

*Of the evils called Formica, and of other
differences of Verruca.*

- Verruca.*
Pora.
There be di-
verse kinds of
Verruca.
Myrmecia.
Sessiles Verru-
ca.
Acrochordon
pensile verru
ca.
The difference
between Acro
chordon and
Myrmecia.
Clavi.
ἰλοι.
Almismar.
Thymion.
Thymij mag-
nitudo.
- Those little tumours, or low swellings, which are scene to appeare in the skinne like little hillockes, the Latines haue fitly called *Verruca*; for *Verruca* signifieth properly the highest part of a mountaine or hill: but the common sort call them *Pora*, Leeks, because sometime they haue certaine threads lying betweene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of Leeks. The Greeks haue no name wherein they may comprehend all those kindes of *Verruca*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be these, *μυρμηκία*, *ἀκροχόρδων*, *ἰλοι*, *θυμίων*. *Verruca* therefore of them be called *Myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were sitting iust to the ground, and when they be touched, they are felt painefull like vnto the biting or stinging of an Ant; whereupon their name is giuen vnto them; for the Greeks do call *μυρμηκία*, *Formica*. Wherefore the Latins applying the name thereof to the Greeke word haue called *Formica*, *Verruca*, & for their forme and fashion, *Sessiles Verruca*. These evils, saith *Celsus*, lib. 5. do grow either in the palmes of the hands or in the soles of the feete: but these take deeper roote, and are lower and harder then a wart, and do cause greater paine: and they send forth more store of blood, and they scarce at any time exceed the bignesse of a Hop. But *Acrochordon* is a *Verruca* that is as it were hanging, & of a more narrow foundation, that is, a certaine round bignesse or growing vp in the skin which hath the foundation, that is, the neather part, very straight to the skin. It is so called because it seemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a string. By this difference therefore *Acrochordones* are distinguished from *Myrmecia*, because they are very small at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large & broad: contrariwise *Myrmecia* (as hath bene said) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very small and slender. But these oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *acrochordones* do alwayes appeare aboue the skin. (as *Gal.* 14 lib. *de morbis curandis* hath manifestly declared) Beside these things *Acrochordones* (as *Celsus* saith) do grow vp thicke and many together, and do most trouble children, and oftentimes they fall againe suddenly, and sometime they cause but meane inflammation: there are some also which are turned into corrupted matter, but they seldome passe the greatnesse of a Beane. They be called of *Auicen*, *Clavi*, but the Latins do terme *Clavi*, *Verruca alba*, because they be like to the round heads of nailes. These do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the soles of the feete, where they do cause great paine: the Greekes call them *ἰλοι*, but *Auicen*, *Almismar*. These be often caused of a bruise, and sometime otherwise. But *Thymion* or *Thymon*, in English a wart, is called of *Celsus* and of the Greeks *Verruncula*, a little hillocke, appearing aboue the body, which at the neather part next the skinne is very small (as *Acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is also somewhat hard, and very sharpe in the top, which doth represent the colour of the floure Thyme, whereupon the name is giuen vnto it, and also it is easily spread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth some blood, and is almost as great as an Egyptian Beane, seldome

seldome bigger, but sometime lesser: sometime there groweth vp one alone, sometime many other, either in the ankles of the feete, or in the hands, or in the soles of the feete. But the worst *Thymia* of all are in the filthy parts of the bodie; where they do commonly bleed. *Anicen* seemeth to haue named this kinde of *Verruca*, *Tusum*, or (as another translation hath) *Tarfenum*. Of this kinde of *Verruca* be those euils also, which *Anicen* called *Cornua*, not much differing from the other sorts, but that they be somewhat long, and are turned crooked againe; like vnto hornes. The euils called *Calli* (called of the Greekes *Κάλλι*) do not much differ from the afore-
Thymia in ob-
scuro pessima.
Cornua.
Τύμωι.
Calli named *Claui*, but that they be of themselves without griefe and nothing painfull, and of the colour of the skin wherein they are resident; neither do they ingender of themselves or of their owne accord, but of the hardnesse of the skin caused by labour.

CHAP. XIX.

The iudgement and cure of Verruca.

AMong all these euils *Acrochordon* and *Thymion* are oftentimes (as *Acrochordon*, *Celsus* reporteth) ended, and do heale of themselves, and the lesler they *Thymion* be, the sooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Clauis* do scarre at any time
Lib. 5.
 cease without curing. If *Acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behind *Myrmecia*, it, and therefore it groweth not againe. But where *Thymion* and *Claui* be
Claui.
 cut off, there riseth vp vnderneath a little round roote, which descendeth downe somewhat deepe into the flesh, and there abiding, it doth cause the aforelaid euils to grow againe. *Myrmecia* doe hold fast with verie broad rootes, and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is profitable to cut off *Claui*, and then sprinkle it ouer with hoate water; for so it doth waxe soft and tender without any more ado: and it doth bleed, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaseth. It is also taken away, by cleansing it round about, & by laying on it Rosin mixed with the beaten powder of *Lapumolaris*. But the other kindes (as the same *Celsus* affirmeth) must be cured with hote medicines. Now the fittest remedie for the other euils, is that which is made of the dregs of wine; and that medicine is good for *Myrmecia*,
Myrmecia.
meccia which is made of Alum and yellow Oaker. *Paulus Aegineta lib. 4. cap. The cure of*
15. rehearseth very many remedies, which doth take away and vtterly abolish *Verruca* out of
Paulus.
 these *Verruca*, especially those which be *Sessiles* and *pensiles*. Of the which kinde are *Elatarium* (which is the iuyce of wilde Cucumbers) rubbed on with Salt, the bark of Frankensence with Vineger, rathe ripe Figges, which are ripe before their time, with Vineger, meale and *Nitrum*. Also the iuyce of *Tythymalus*, in English Spurge, the head of the fish *Smaras* salted and burnt, the rust of some mettall with quicke brimstone, that is, which is not thoroughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *Ocimum* with shoemakers bleach. (which, the Greekes call *Chalcanthum*) the water of the greene twiggies of the Vine burnt
Aqua ex sar-
 in the fire, sheeps dang with Vineger, goates gall annointed, the fruite of *mentis distil-*
 the great herbe *Helioscopium* applyed by it selfe, or ministred with wine, Rew
lans.
 with *Nitrum* and Pepper, *Nitrum* with the vrine of a yong boy not yet accusto-

*Stercus bubu-
lum.*

Lacert e caput.

*Other orders
of curing.*

*How Verruce
are safely bur-
ned.*

*The cure of
Myrmecia be-
ing equal with
the skinne.*

*A new cure of
Myrmecia out
of Galen.*

*Another cure
of Myrmecia,
Lib. 14. Meth.
Med.*

Scalprum.

*Scolopoma-
cherion.*

*Another cure
invented, by a
quill.*

med with venereous acts, oxes dung ministred in Vineger. But these which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *Myrmecia* and *Acrochordones*, are greatly also effectuell for those euils called *Claui* and *Thymia*. They do vse also the head of a Lizard to take away *Myrmecia*, *Acrochordones*, and *Claui*. There are some which do boile the heades of salted fishes in that water which distilleth out of greene branches, while they be burning: which they do declare to be a most excellent remedie for the aforesaid euils. Other some to extinguish these diseases, do make a Liniment of the rust of brasie, (which of the late Physitions is called *Viride aris et flos aris*) of Brimstone, and of the distilled water of Vine branches. And this is the onely method of curing which they are wont to vse in rasing out of *Verruca*, that is, by gnawing and scaling medicines. But this one thing is most diligently to be obserued in administering such kinde of medicines, which *Celsus* doth admonish vs of in his fifth booke: namely, that those parts which are about the euils, ought to be couered with leaues, lest they also be exulcerate; for which cause some do anoint the places about the diseases, with ointment of Bolearmoniacke, with *Terra sigillata*, with Rose water and Vineger. Furthermore we abolish *Acrochordones*, *Myrmecia*, and *Thymia*, not onely with these aforesaid burning medicines, but also with the fleame of fire, or with some hote instrument rightly applyed to them. Oftentimes also we cut them off. But sometime we do take them away and vterly destroy them, by a ligature cunningly made and prepared for them, (as it hapneth in that true disease called *Ficus*) or else by setting too the foreteeth, as some at Rome in *Galens* time were wont to do. But if you shall apply fire or some hote instrument to *Verruca*, you must provide that a plate of Iron or some such thing, being bored through, be made ready for the burnt sore, the hole whereof must so fitly comprehend the same, that none of the skin about it may be seene. Adustion being now made, you must resolue the crust with Butter, or with some other annoiuing medicine. Afterward you must cure the sore like vnto other vlcers. But how *Myrmecia*, which do not appeare out of the skin, but altogether equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off, *Galen* teacheth verie well lib. 14. Metho. Med. where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuised a new order to cure these *Verruce*; first he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them, or by sucking them, and then (which did seeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote; afterward setting too his foreteeth, he vterly destroyed them. But *Acrochordones*, appearing about the skin, he straight way bit off with his teeth, and so quickly dispatched them, *Galen* also setteth downe another double manner to cure these euils saying: But a Chyrurgian being somewhat exercised in manuell practise, may easily cut off these *Verruce*, both with that instrument made to the forme of a Mirtle leafe, and with that also which the Greekes call *Scolopomacherion*: this alwayes provided, that the sore be kept and separated from the skin or parts about it. We also bring forth *Myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle thereof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equall with the thicknesse of *Myrmecia*, that it may pinch it round about in euery place, which being afterward turned about the sore, and enforced downeward, it will quickly bring forth

forth the whole *Myrmecia* together with the very roote; but you must marke, that the very end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not only thin and slender, but also sharpe & strong. The quill therefore of an old Cocke, or rather of an Eagle is very fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off onely towards the roote, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehend *Myrmecia*. And truly by this abscission, if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Art. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vicer which remaineth (*Verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp and brought vnto a scarre, as other vicers be.

*Prima scilicet
radicem versus
abscindenda.*

CHAP. XX.

*Of Oedema, and other cold, flegmaticke, and
flatuous tumours.*

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours, we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their originall of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *Oedema*. For as *Erysipelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *Oedema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humour. *Oedema* therefore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vnpainfull tumour: or it is a certaine thionne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmatick humour that floweth into some member of the body, so that the same *Galen* in lib. 14. Ther. thought of *Oedema*, that it was a disease and no symptome. For truly we know (saith he) that *Oedema* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, that is to wit, of a flegmaticke humour or vaporous spirit, gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges and feet, which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euils called *Phthoe*, and *Cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformities of the body. For in those dangerous dispositions, *Oedema* is an accidentall symptome of that affect which oppresseth the man, that is, an accident necessarily following, which requireth no seuerall or proper cure (as afterward shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences, that is, by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *Oedema*. A true *Oedema* cometh of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else but a raw bloud not thoroughly digested, which is found in a lumpe of bloud, very fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *Oedema* proceedeth of vnnaturall fleame. That we may not deale here in any thing obscurely, naturall fleame is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour inclining to a certaine whitenesse; but in tast, and (if I may speake it) in smell, it is sweet and pleasant: vnnaturall fleame is that which doth degenerate and differ from that fleame before described, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite and liberty, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *Phlegma* or fleame, but some other humour. But this fleame chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies. One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his owne naturall and proper substance it is changed, without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly hapneth very often; for it is turned either into a

Oedema quid.

*Oedema est
symptoma.*

*Oedema du-
plex.
Verum.*

Illegitimum.

What fleame is

*What, & after
what sort,
fleame doth
degenerate
from his owne
nature.*

waterish

Galen appointeth two kinds of fleame.

8. Differences of tumours beside nature coming of fleame.

Three causes of oedema.

1.

2.

3.

Signa oedemata.

waterish substance, or into a flatuous substance, or into a very thin matter, and then it is called *Phlegma aquosum, flatuosum, or tenue*: or it is turned into a thicke and viscous substance, which maketh the fleame very grosse & clammy, and through a greater, or (as we say) through a further induration, it is caused to looke like a Plaister, or like glasse; or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both salt, nitrous, and corrosiue. The other way vnnaturall fleame is caused through admixtion, that is, when as some other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either bloud, or choler, or melancholie. If bloud be commixed with fleame, it is sweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is caused to be salt: if melancholie, it is made soure and sharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of naturall fleame after the opinion of Auicen. Haly Abbas appointeth soure onely. But Galen (saith Guido) seemeth to assigne vnto it onely two kinds, that is, salt and soure, although in his second booke of the differences of feauers, and in his second booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places also he maketh mention of the fleame called *Vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioine it selfe with soure fleame, by reason of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By these things therefore it is gathered, that of fleame there are ingendred eight species or differences of tumours besides nature. For, first of fleame that is naturall cometh a true and a lawfull *Oedema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleame, by reason of admixtion, there proceed three other differences of tumours, because that three other humours may be commixed therewith; and these be they, *Oedema phlegmonodes*, *Oedema erysipelatodes*, and *Oedema scirrholes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleame, through the alteration of his naturall substance, there arise foure other differences of tumours. For first of windy and vaporious fleame doth come that tumor, which of the Latines is properly called *Inflatio*, but commonly among the Physicians it is termed *Apostema ventosum*, a windie aposteme. Secondly, of waterish fleame there proceedeth a waterish aposteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, & grosse fleame, there are ingendred those tumours which some do call *Leues nodi*, and there are also ingendred flegmaticke abscessions, which they do commonly call *Exitura phlegmatica*. But these are called of the interpreter of Auicen, *Du-belet frigida*, of which sort are these, *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Melicerides*; *Ganglia* also, which be called of Auicen, *Glandula*, & other of that kind which shall be spoken of in that which followeth. Now of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may say) of caked fleame, there do arise all those hard knots, which are most found in the ioints, and those euils also called *Struma*, which are commonly called *Scrofule*. Fourthly of corrupted & putrified fleame, there do come *Fistule*, & other vlcers which they call *Scrofulosa*. The causes of *Oedema*, as also of other tumors besides nature are threefold. First, primitive causes are these: a fall fro some high place, a stripe, a naughty diet. Secondly, antecedent causes, as the abundance of a flegmatick humor running downe into some member of the body. Thirdly, *coniuncta cause* is the very fleam which is already stuffed in the member that is beset with a tumor. The signes of *Oedema* are these, a loose and soft tumor, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the maner of a caue or den, and riseth not vp againe at the removing of the finger, but retaineth the very footstep or marke of that which presseth it. There

is felt very small paine, or almost none at all; very little heate, a very white colour or (as some will haue it) a meane betweene whitenesse and palenesse, and other such like signes, which doth testifie the dominion and power of fleame. *Oedema* (as other tumours also) hath foure times, the beginning, the augmenting, the state, and the declination of the tumour. This kind of tumour is most cured by resolution, or exhalation, but seldome by suppuration, verie often by turning and changing them into knots or kirkels called *Nodi*, or into other increasings (as they call them) which are termed of the Grecians *Apostemata*, *Indicia*, but of the Latines *Abcessus*. But the ~~markes~~ *markes* and tokens of the ending and finishing of these kinds of tumours are handled before in our generall discourse of tumours. These oedematous tumours are rather excited in the winter time, then at other seasons, for then very much fleame is gathered together in mens bodies. These tumors also do greatly and verie often trouble old men, and them which be giuen to gluttony.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humour flowing into some member.

BEcause *Oedemata*, after the manner of other tumours, are raised through the fluxe of humours into some member, the scope and order of their cure shall be also twofold. 1. The one is, to dissolue the substance of those humours which now do occupie the member. 2. The other is, to withstand and restrain the fluxe. And as the one scope doth excell the other, so the remedies of their cure must be commixed together the one with the other, either somewhat plentifully or somewhat sparingly. When therefore the order of restraining shall overcome that which counselleth vs to vse euacuating and digesting remedies, the force of restrictiues must be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of restriction, the nature and vertue of digestive or discussive and drying medicines must of necessitie excell in the mixture. Moreover both the plentiful fluxe, and the small deale of matter in the affected part, doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of restrictive medicines must be more effectuell, and of greater force. Contrariwise you must vse a greater measure of drying and digesting medicines, when matter aboundeth in the member verie plentifully, and the fluxe verie little. But in an old and inueterate *Oedema*, and that which is already engendred, you shall not vse any longer this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you shall apply such things as can disperse and diuide the matter. Which thing is also diligently to be obserued in all other continuall vicers. But *Oedema*, which is an euill symptome following other dangerous effects, as leanness of the body, the Dropisie, and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *Cachexia*, doth desire no proper, peculiar, or seuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill effect wherof it first groweth. Yet somewhat is to be admitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the strength or increase the chiefe affect, or else hinder the cure. It shall therefore be sufficient (if it shall need any cure) to rub diligently the swelling place, sometime with

Curandi oedematis scopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

The order of curing an old oedema.

Oedemati vt specialis est curatio.

Oxyrhodinum

*Four particu-
lar ordersto be
kept in curing
a lawfull Oe-
dema.*

*Prima inten-
tio.*

*Aer.
Potus.*

Cibus.

*Somnus.
Balneum.
Secunda in-
tentio.*

Oxyrhodinum, sometime with oyle mingled with Salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* and salt. For this kind of friction doth flake the tumour, and mitigateth the paine, if it be prouoked through too much distention (as sometime it chan- ceth:) *Oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oyle with salt hath power to digest and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *Oxyrhodinum* with salt, doth partly digest and drie vp, and partly restraine and stop the affluxion of humours. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawfull *Oedema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thicke fleame: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say. 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the flegmaticke humour, which they call *aquatio*, an equall denision, and in purging the same. 3. In repressing, dissoluing and drying vp the humor that is flowed already, and now doth occupie the member. 4. And last of all, in correcting and remouing the symptomes or accidents which do follow *Oedema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions whereby we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of sixe vnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applyed to the sicke body, if they shall all decline vnto heate and drienesse, with a certaine attenuation or diminishing. Therefore chuse and prepare a thicke and drie aire. Let him take for his drinke wine that is fined, and cleane from dregs, cleare, white, or somewhat red. which they call Claret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and allayed a little with water. Let his bread be very well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheepe, or the flesh of the birds of mountaines, & of the plaines, and those rather roasted then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, pot- herbes, and other fat meats. Let him abstaine from things that be vnleauened, raw, and verie moist. Let him not eate of any kind of pulse or cheese, nor of vntimely and vnripe fruits, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in gra- uellie places, and those also either roasted or boyled in wine.) Roasted meates generally are better then sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the Baker can prouide. Let him eate little, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the bellie be bound, loose it with Figs, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore siue or sixe drie Figs, and fill them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the mor- ning, or before dinner. Let the body be exercised moderately, if so be the af- fected member can permit the same without hurt. Let his sleepe be little and short. Let him altogether auoid bathing, and all other moistning things. The second intention is accomplished by preparatiues or by remedies equally de- uiding (which they commonly call digestiues) and by medicines which can- uacuate that flegmaticke matter wherewith the body of the sicke doth abound. Thereore you must giue him some kind of *Oximel*, which can cut, and diuide, and purge forth the fleame that lurketh in the bodie. Afterward the matter going before the expulsion being thus prepared, at the appointment of some cunning Physitian, must be emied out with some medicine that can purge fleame, called *Phlegmoggon*. But if (saith *Guido* out of *Cauliacus*) abundance be

be present in the body, you may safely open a veine, but yet not without the aduice of some expert Physitian. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are scarce at any time seene any *Oedemata*, especially those which be lawfull; for steame doth not abound in it more plentifully then other humours do. Therefore it being simple and alone, not commixed with others humours, it can seldom flow into any part of a plentiful bodie; wherefore letting of blood especially in a lawfull *Oedema*, may seeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finished in the beginning by applying repercussives, and not by those remedies which by binding vehemently with their naturall coldnesse do repell and driue backe, but by those which haue power to drie greatly, and digest well, which they call prouokers of drinelle and resolution: but in the increase by vsing discussive remedies somewhat more forcible. And in the state thereof, especially about the end, the fluxe being alreadie stayed, by pure medicines, and by those which do verie strongly digest and resolue. But in the declination by consuming and drying helps, if the cure be to be dispatched by resolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into abcessions which they call *Exitura*, it shall be cured by ripening medicines, and by other helps which are set downe for the cure of Abcessions. Moreouer, repressing remedies endued with a drying digesting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *Oedema* coming of the influxion of a flegmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three speciall rules. The first is out of *Galen l b. 14. Therap & 2. ad Glauconem*, where he saith, that if *Oedema* doth consist of a flegmaticke humour, flowing into some member, a sponge wet in water wherein is a litle vinegar, shall sometime abundantly suffice. But these must be so well tempered and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vinegar vpon it. But you must bind the sponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, and ending aboue. Let the sponge be verie new. And if there be not a new to be gotten, you shall cleane and scoure the old verie diligently, by washing it in *Nitrum* and *Aphonitrum*, and in lye. *Auicenna* commandeth, that in stead of a sponge, you sometime apply a double linnen cloth or some such like thing. The second rule is mentioned of *Auicenna* himselfe. *R. Baurach* of the decoction of water, that is, of Salt peter, or of the some of Salt peter, of Ashes, of Vineger, of each as manie as shall suffice. The third rule, is described of *Razu* after this manner. *R. Aloes, Mirthe, Licium, Acatia, Siet, Memitha* that is, of *Glauciū*, of *Cyperus*, of *Crocus Orientalis*, of *Bolearmoniac*, of each a litle quantie; powder them, and commixe them with the iuyce of Coleworts called *Brossice* and with Vineger, and make an Emplaister. Furthermore those remedies which were of late rehearsed, do also helpe much the increasing of this cedematous tumour, if you do put vnto them a good quantity of Vineger, and a litle Alumme, especially in strong bodies, which hath a hard skin, and when as *aquefia Posca* shall not auaille. Therefore if *Oedema* doth not cease or rest with these helps mentioned a litle before, when you bind it too againe you shall commixe a litle more Vineger, that the *Posca* may be the stronger; or you shall lay on a litle Alumme, and apply a new Sponge: for this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, & doth long continue very effectually, and with the substance it drieth the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges,

Tertia inten-
tio.

Remedies to be
used in the be-
ginning of Oe-
dema.

1.

Posca aquefia.

2.

3.

Emplastrum
Razu.

Remedies to be
used in the
time of increa-
sing.

Lib. 14. Ther. Sponges, it is better (saith *Galen*) to vse that which the common sort call *Elychnion*. But aboue all things let it be soft, which kind is vsed at *Tarsis*, where of if there be any plentie: you may boldly vse: for you shall see it to be more profitble then the vsing of sponges, but let it be wetted in *Posca*, and a little Alume therewith. Then (as it is let downe alreadie) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather parts & end aloft. Let the binding be meane and small, as in the setting of a bone. But truly the first casting about of the swathing band, which must begin beneath, ought to be tyed somewhat straight; but all the rest must be slackted by little and little, but yet not so, that any part of the binding be loose. Now the remedies which are ministred after the vigour of the state, when the fluxe is stayed, and in an vniuersall declination (if *Oedema* doth require resolution) are wont also to be described and contained vnder a threefold rule; 1. The first is of *Auicen*, which is a sponge dipped in lye of the ashes of the figge tree, of the vine, and of the holme, which is a kinde of oake; apply these to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to drie and cleanse. 2. The second is of *Brunnus*, which *Theodoricus* also vsed. R^x. of Alume, Brimstone, Mirrhe and Salt; of each a like quantitie: commixe all these with oyle of Roses: and with vineger and make a Liniment, which it doth drie more strongly then the former remedie. 3. The third is of *Auicen* likewise, whose discription is this that followeth R^x. of cowes dung, ℥ss. of *Olybanum*, of *Styrax*, of *Vsnea*, that is, of the mosse of trees, which is called of the *Græcians* *Bryon*, of *Calamus aromaticus*, of Spicknard, of Wormwood, ana ℥ss. apply all these with vineger, and with the decoction of Coleworts, and make an Emplaister. And this truly is the way to cure *oedema* which is finished by resolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digestion, but do come vnto suppuration, you may apply, and that verie profitably, *Vnguentum e succis* called *Diachylon*, and the ointment especially which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the same purpose also this Emplaister following is verie effectuell. R^x. Mallowes, branke Vrsine, or *Hircina*, which is called *Acanthus* and *Acanta*, roote of *Althea*, roote of Lillie, roasted Onions, Snailes, leauen, Linseede sodden and kneaded, and mingled with swines grease, or with butter; bring them into the forme of an Emplaister, or rather of a Cataplasme. Another for the same purpose very effectuell. R^x. of the iuyce of Elder, or Walwort, (which our late writers do call *Lapadium acutum*) of *Lenisticum*, or *Ligusticum*, and of Fenel, of each of them as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight; boyle them with *Dialthia*, with hony, oyle, and butter, and of them make a Cataplasme. The Aposteme being ripe, do not tarrie till it open of the owne accord, for that happeneth seldome, or peradventure neuer; but let apertion be made with some hote iron, or some burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the maner and forme before expressed. Then let the filthinesse be cleaned out & wiped away with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, or with a mundificatione of *Apium*, and with the iuyce of Wormewood, or with this ointment following which doth draw and cleante the thicke and grosse matter. R^x. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of Rosin, *Terebinthina*, Pitch, of bullocks tallow, of oile, ana. a like quantitie: dissolue the gummes in vineger, or let them melt or boile vpon

Remedies for
the state and
declination.

1.

*Spongia aqua
lixiuaimbuta.*

2.

Linimentum.

3.

*Emplastrum
Auicenne.
Vsnea quid.
Concoquentia
seu maturan-
tia.*

This is giuen by
Theodoricus.

Apertio.

*A mundifica-
tine ointment
which is attri-
buted to *Dionus*.*

upon the fire with the rest, and make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthy vlcers. But we dispatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and quality of the accedents that change very suddenly, as if paine doth happen, it must most especially be mitigated, by applying moist oyle of wooll (after the doctrine of *Auicenn*) or by boyled Wine, or by a cerate made of the oile of Cammomil, of the oile of Wormewood, of the oile of Spike, and of Waxe. But if hardnesse be present, it must be dissolued and mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with Harts marrow, or with some such like thing, as hereafter shall be said. But *Galen* in an inueterate *Oedema* did annoint the sore with oile, and then ministred a sponge dipped in Lye, & binding it somewhat iust or straigte, did perfectly cure the euill.

*Li. 2. ad Glau.
Oedemata
diuturna.*

Now it remaineth that we let down the summe of the cure of *Oedema*. 1. First therefore vnto an *Oedema*, which is a symptomatic hapning & coming suddenly with other diseases (as the Dropsie, leannes of the body, and that euill called *Cachexia*) apply such medicines as can discusse & dry vp without griefe. 2. Therefore rub the twolue place diligently with *Oxymel*, or with *Oxyrhodiniū*, or with oile & Salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* and Salt: for by this friction you shall both mitigate the paine (if any be caused through distention) & remit the tumour also. 3. But to an *Oedema* that cometh of the influxion of thin steame, if fluxe doth not yet cease, apply thote medicines, which partly digest and partly constraime and restraine. 4. Therefore bind a new sponge, or some other dipped in Lye, or wetted first in alayed *Posca*, especially in soft and tender bodies, and if (the tumours doth possesse the members of the body) binde about them softly some swadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vse to do in setting of bones. 5. But if by these remedies the tumour doth not slacke or yeelde, put a little Alume with *Posca*, viz. with *Oxycratum*. 6. But if the affect shall be of any continuance, you must not vse any more those remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to say, digesting and restraining) but rather digestiues. 7. Therefore the member being first annointed with oyle, you must minister a sponge (as we said) dipped in ly, & bind it with swathing bands somewhat iust & strait.

*Capita curati-
onis oedematis.*

1.
2.
*Oedema mor-
bus.*

3.

4.

5.

6.

*Oedema inue-
teratum.*

7.

CHAP. XXII.

*Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latines call inflations,
but they are commonly called windy Apo-
stemes, Apostemata ventosa.*

IT is now very requisite for vs to dispute of the Tumours called *Inflationes*, The difference whose cure is diuerse from the cure of *Oedema*. For they (as *Galen* saith, lib. 14. Therap.) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore do yeeld vnto touching and handling, and our fingers being layed thereon do descend somewhat deeply into them. But inflations do come of a flatuous spirit gathered together, breeding sometime vnder the skinne, sometime vnder the thin filmes which are compassed about with the bones, or they do shut in and include the muscles, or else some part of the bowels. Furthermore sometime there is also not a little of the humour gathered together in the belly and in the inward parts, and also in the middle space of them and of the

*between infla-
tio & oedema.*

Lib. 4.

Inflationum
causæ.Lib. 6. de mor-
bis & sympto-
mat.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum
notæ.Inflationum
prognostica.Inflationum
curatio.

the *Peritonæum*, as in that kind of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne, which euill we call a Tympanie: These also differ from *Oedemata*, because they being touched with the finger do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes verie great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weakenesse of the naturall heate, which is placed in a flegmaticke matter to prouoke windinesse. For truly heate may take vp such a vapour of a moist substance, but it cannot diuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the Northwind bloweth) doth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the aire pure and cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause clouds, so it hapneth in liuing creatures. For heate, neither by extreme weakenesse, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane beteweene these affections. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Auicenna* saith) either because of the thicknesse of the member, or of the grossenesse of the vaporous spirit. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thicknesse of the members, and the grossenesse of the spirit or vapour, doth cause that the same vapour is not disperfed abroad.

The signes of inflation are these; a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling: it appeareth very cleare and bright, and when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a Bottle, or Tympanie. Moreover there is felt oftentimes windinesse throughout the whole bodie, sometime running this way, sometime that way, which causeth extensiuè paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirit, which is not dissolued and disperfed, doth procure many discommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and downe within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawn from some venomous matter. But now seeing these three things, viz. the moist matter, the imbecility of the naturall heate, and the thicknesse of the pores of the bodie, do concur together to the generation of *Inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this; first, to strengthen the substance of the heate, to extenuate the vapour and flatuous matter, and to prevent or open the thicknesse of the pores of the body (wherein this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained.) Now we make perfect and finish the two latter things, that is, the rarifying of the thicke body, and the extenuation of the grosse vapour, by one & the same kind of medicines, which is, by vsing those remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members, and by applying those helps, which can heate either more or lesse according to the inflation of the afflicted members, according to the thicknesse or thinnesse thereof, and according also to the grossenesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or facultie of those medicines which are ministred, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not very thicke, are but meanely to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which containeth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly

extenuate

extenuate and heate them. But if the substance of naturall heate shall perish or diminish, it must be repaired againe, regarding the greatnesse of the losse thereof. But if it shall be altered, you must bring it vnto a certaine mediocrity. But if griefe shall there vex or molest the sicke, you must hasten vnto those helpes which can mitigate paine. Very well therefore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of inflations (which they call *Apostemata ventosa*) is dispatched by three intentions. The first consisteth of a iust and due obseruation of diet. The second of a good concoction or digestion; and the third dependeth of the discussing and dispersing of the windy spirit, which is assembled in the member. Therefore let the institution of diet be after this manner. First of all you must abstaine from all grosse, viscus, raw, flegmaticke and windy meates: as are, sweete meates, all kinde of pulse, raw fruite, Rape roots, Chest nuts, and other things of that sort, which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You must vse hote and drie things, and those remedies also which can attenuate and dissolue windinesse, as is bread made of Barley with a little Salt and Commio seed. Let the patients drinke be small Ale or Beere. Let him vse the decoction of Cicers mixed with Onions. Let him take *Apium hortense* (which is commonly called *Petroselinum*, Parsely) Calamint, Rew, Commin. Let the flesh which he eateth on, be rather roasted then sodden, and especially the flesh of birds (as hath bene said in the former Chapter.) But now, that you may dispatch the second intention, you must strengthen and corroborate the vertue concoctiue with some sweet and odoriferous sauours, and by confectiions, and electuaries appointed for this purpose, as be these, *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthe*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and this decoction following which they call *Drageta*. R. of Annise, of Fennell, *Cornus*, *Daucus*, Commin, of Laurell berries beaten together, ana. ℥. j. of Liquorice, Galingale, white Ginger, ana. ℥. ss. of Cloues, Cubebs of long Pepper, seed of Rew, ana. ℥. ij. of Annise seed couered over with Sugar, ℥. ij. of Sugar. ℥. j. ss. make a powder. But outwardly let the stomacke be annointed with oyle of spike, of *Costum*, and oyle of Rew: or make an Epitheme of those things which can discusse wind, and which are appointed to helpe concoction, and let it be applyed to the stomacke. But these things do rather appertaine vnto Physicke then vnto Chyrurgery. The third intention is accomplished by applying some medicine which hath a double vertue, that is, which can both concoct, digest, and moderately bind, neither will increas paine. But to the perfecting of these things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro 14. Therapeut.* The first is mentioned of *Galen* in these words: In the arteries (saith he) and in the muscles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is risen, if it be without griefe, some liquor applyed to the thinnest members shall profit greatly, of the which nature is lye ministred with a new sponge. But if griefe doth also trouble him, you must annoint the member with some oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the paine. These diseases happen through a stripe or bruise, when as either the muscle or the filme which compasseth the bone, is bruised or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforesaid sponge must be layed. The second rule is described also in the same place as-

Three intentions of curing inflations.
Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta heli-
peth digestion.

Tertia intentio.

*Sapa.**Lana succida.**Oesipus.**Ceratum ex
seſipe.**Prolixius**Aphonitrum.**Formula ter-
tia.**How an old
inflation muſt
be handled.**If the windy
vapour ſhal be
venimous.*

ter this ſort: But vnto the muſcles (for they ſometime are painefull) you muſt apply ſome medicine which can mitigate paine in greater meaſure, ſo that to them you muſt apply not onely Lye alone, but you muſt put into it both *Sapa*, and alſo a little oyle. But it ſhall be more profitable in the beginning not to apply Lye, but to vſe *Sapa* with Wine, and a little Vineger, and to put to them a little oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heate them, and lay on vnwaſhed wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plenty of ſuch wooll, then the oyle of wooll is to be vſed with the former mixture; but if neither oyle of wooll be at hand, you ſhall commixe very well ſome cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the bruſed muſcles muſt needs be lenified with ſome medicine which hath a double ſtrength, that is, which can both concoct, digeſt, and moderately bind. But if the medicine containeth no aſtriction, it increaſeth ſometime *Phlegmone*, and eſpecially in thoſe bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindfull therefore of theſe three indications already declared (that is, of concoction, digeſtion and moderate aſtriction) in the muſcles which are inflated by meanes of ſome bruſe or ſtripe when great paine doth aſſiſt, you ſhall the rather vſe a more mitigating medicine, and you ſhall greatly reſiſt paine, by vſing more Oyle and Wine; whoſe force I know to be mighty, when as paine together with the inflation doth ſpeedily haſten to an end. And truly the time is the ſhorter, if you miniſter thoſe things which haue a ſtrong and mighty effect, as are theſe, Lye and Vineger, and next after them Wine hath a mighty operation. As often therefore as you mind not to aſſwage paine, you ſhall caſt into the mixture, a greater quantity of Lye and Vineger. Again when you intend to repell and drive backe, you muſt put in more of Wine then of other things, which wine ſhall be more effectuell for this purpoſe if it be blacke and ſharpe. But if you pleaſe to digeſt, you ſhall miniſter the greater quantity of Lye. But if you ſhall mingle Vineger with them, the mixture ſhall be profitable both wayes, becauſe that Vineger hath a double and mingled faculty. But when the muſcle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of Lye vſe *Aphonitrum*, but it muſt not be gravelly, but rather ſonie. The third rule is an Emplaſter made of the filthines which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrattle, & of vnſlaked Lime, boyled together with water and Wine. Theſe are the words of *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* But thoſe inflations (ſaith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of ſome antiquity you ſhall apply to them thoſe helpes which are made of Lye (as hath bene ſaid before:) and ſecondly you ſhall miniſter ſome Emplaſter. But I will declare alſo the example or order how to prepare theſe things. Firſt, the filthineſſe which cometh from mens bodies muſt be heat, and thoroughly ſtrained, that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the Lime, which muſt be brayed as ſmall as meale, and ſprinkle it in the veſſell where the filthineſſe is, and temper it together to the thickneſſe of clay. That medicine is alſo very good for the inflations which is made of *Sycomorū*, and other remedies of that ſort do greatly helpe alſo. But if this flatuous ſpirit, which cauſeth the inflation ſhall be ſmokie, wicked, corrupt, and excited of a venomous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp
and

and downe in the members of the body, no more safe or better counsell can be giuen, then that (when it is resident in some particular member) that member must be straightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the midst the tumour be opened with a razor, or with some hote instrument, so that the venimous vapour may easily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound must be filled with Aloës, and with Bolcarmoniacke dissolved in the oyle of Roses and Vineger. But within three or foure dayes after, you must fill vp the wound with flesh, and bring it to a scarre. But in such venimous inflations, a very thin diet must be obserued, and the bodie must be emptied with some purging medicine. And if you minister *Theriaca* to the sicke, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth the summe of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in these words following. First, confirme and strengthen the weake substance of heate that is in the affected member, restore the same againe, and when it is altered bring it into some mediocritie. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windy humour which raiseth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skin, and of the whole affected member, with medicines that are effectuell for the thinnesse of the members: afterward seeke to discusse the flatuous vapour. Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according to the thicknesse of the flatuous vapour, or thinnesse of the medicines which are applied.) intend and remit aswell the matter as the faculty & vertue of them. 5. Furthermore, if such a vaporous tumour shall chance with griefe and with inflammation (as it happeneth in the muscles which through some bruise are stuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in proceſſe of time, vse such remedies as haue power to dissolve, increasing by little and little the plentie thereof. Sixtly, inflations which through negligence are inveterate, first annoint them with Lye, and then lay to some plaister, which cne mollifie, dissolve and discusse them.

Virtus ratio.
Theriaca.
The summe of
curing a flatuous tumour.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a tumour caused of a thin substance, which they call aquosum Apostema, that is, a waterish Aposteme.

IF fleame doth vniuersally abound throughout the whole body, that kind of diseale (which is a waterish humour running betwene the skinne and the flesh, called *Leucophlegmatica*) doth accompanie the same, as *Galen* hath noted in his first booke *de Symptomatum causis*. But when this flegmaticke humour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendered *Oedema*: for so they call a loose tumour, which is without paine. But if waterish excrements do abound, they are wont to bring the Dropſie (which they call *Ascites*) which if they shall couch themselves in one onely member, they do raise in it *Phlyctena*, that is to say, pushes or wheelkes. Furthermore the latter sort of Phylitions haue bene accustomed to call this kind of waterish tumour, *Aquosum phlegma*, as also they do terme that humour to be fleame which floweth in the feete and legges of them that are troubled with the Dropſie, and aboundeth in the leane parts of the body, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habite (which the *Græcians* call *Cachexia*.) And these kinds of tumors which do pro-

Leucophleg-
matia.

Serosum in-
crementum.

Phlyctene.

Lib. 2. ad
Glaucanem, &
14. Therap.

Causa.

Signa.

Indicia.

Ascites is cau-
sed of more
cold the Tym-
panites.

What parts
these tumours
do most occupy.

Aquosi tumo-
ruratio.

Curatio du-
plex.

ceed of waterish steame, or of the aforesaid serous increasing, they do also call vnlawfull and vnttrue *edemata*. But in those dangerous dispositions or diseases, they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *edema* (as hath bene already declared out of *Galen*) doth not deserue the name of a disease, but of a symptome, for that it truly needeth no particular or leuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *Oxyrhodinum*, or sometime with Salt and Oyle, or with Salt and *Oxyrhodinum*, doth stop it, and many other things of that kinde do worke the like effect. But the cause of these tumours are these, the altering of the vertue or facultie of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the bodie, and the naughtinesse of nourishment declining to aquositie, as you may easily gather out of the sixth booke de *Symptomatum causis*. The signes and iudgements are almost all one with a true *Oedema*. Yet they differ in this, becaule in the waterish tumours the tumor is more loose then in a lawfull *Oedema*: and therefore it doth not so resist touching, neither doth it sound like winde, but rather as water, and it doth seeme to shine after a sort, when one holdeth it against the light. Now concerning the iudgements of this kind of tumour, there is no doubt but that a waterish tumour proceedeth of a greater coldnesse then a flatuous tumour doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth Commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphorismes. But it seemeth (saith he) that a waterish *Hydrops*, which they call *Ascites*, is engendered of great coldnesse, but a *Tympanie* of the lesse cold which disease is named of *Hippocrates*, a drie water running betweene the skinne. For a moist substance cannot be changed into a flatuous vapour without some heate. Moreouer waterish tumours do happen oftener in the feet, in the stones and cods, in the head and in the ioynts, then any other parts of the body, both because such a kinde of humour doth readily rush into those parts, and also because heate is very meane and little in them, for because they be farre off from the hottest members. And as a flatuous vapour is seldome found without a waterish humour: so a waterish or serous humor is scarce contained at any time in any member without a windy spirit. Hitherto we haue spoken of the generation, the causes, signes, and iudgements of a waterish tumour: now we will set downe the cure thereof. Seeing that these waterish tumors are caused (as we haue said already) of the flowing of a serous humour, there needeth no other meanes, specially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expessed already in the cure of other tumours, which are engendered of the influxion of humours into some member. The order therefore of remedying such kinde of tumors in the beginning shall consist of two points, that is to say, first to empty out that which is flowed, and secondly, to stoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diseases, which are yet but in begetting, so also in these affects, the Physicion must be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreseeing the danger following, that is, both to remedie the disease and provide for the fluxe. The first order therefore is subiect to that part of the Arte of Physicke which cureth the diseases: but the second belongeth to that part which preuenteth the disease to come. But that we may prosecute, and dispatch this double and generall method, it is necessarie to rectifie first
other

other particular intentions, expressed of *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* for the cure *Five particu-*
of a waterish tumour, in this manner and order as followeth. The first con-*lar intentions*
sisteth in a iust institution and obseruation of a good diet. The second in the *in curing a wa-*
helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the waterish *terish tumour,*
humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out the waterish humour through
the passages of the vrine. The fifth and last consisteth in the euaporation and
drying vp of that waterish humiditie which is compact and contained in the
aggrieved member. But because the foure first intentions do rather pertaine
to the Physicion then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whose profit we haue taken
this worke in hand, and also because they may sufficiently be knowne by those
things which went before, I haue set downe the cure in the 33. Chapter of my
third booke: and am determined to handle in this place the last intention one-
ly, which requireth some new intended remedies. The first intention therefore
is ended with those medicines which can drie vp, and resolue those waterish
and serous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of those
remedies there are commonly set downe three rules or orders. The first is out
of *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and *lib. 14. Method. medendi*; which is made of
Oxyrhodinum and Sakt (as hath bin before declared) The second is out of the
same author, which is a new sponge dipped in Lye: and to this purpose serue
those remedies also which we haue before set downe for the cure of *Oedema-*
ta: with the which helpes (that they may drie vp and discusse the more strong-
ly) you must commix *Aphonitrum*, Alume, and Brimstone. The third rule is
a certaine emplaster described of *Auicenn* for the cure of *Scrofule*, which em-
plaster he attributed to *Galen in libro suo de compositione medicamentorum*
capitulo 12. And this emplaster (as he saith) within one weeke at the most, and
oftentimes within three dayes, doth resolue all the hardnesse of the euill. But
although this emplaster cannot be found in the booke before rehearsed to
belong vnto *Galen*, notwithstanding we may vse the same very fitly to the
dissolution of a waterish and flatuous hardnesse: whose description out of *A-*
uicenn is this that followeth *Rx.* of Mustard seed, of Nettle seed, Brimstone,
Spuma maris, *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Bdellium*, ana. $\frac{3}{4}$ j. of Ammoniacke, old
oile and Waxe, ana. $\frac{3}{4}$ ij. But if the hardnesse of the tumour be not discussed
by this emplaster, you can deuise no other more excellent or more present
remedy, then to open with some instrument; and then to cleanse and secure
it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The summe
of curing a waterish tumor is this. 1. Appoint such a diet to the sicke as can
attenuate, beate, and dry vp. 2. Let him vse a moderate exercise of his bodie:
let him eate and drinke little: let him not sleepe much, let him oftentimes pro-
uoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he dige-
steth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windinesse. 4. Purge out the
waterish humour, wherewith the whole bodie of the sicke doth abound, by
the belly and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp and digest through brea-
thing that serous humour which is included in the affected member. 6. But if
it cannot thus be discussed, put some penknife, or some other hote instrument
into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that place where it
is most inclined downward, that so the humour may the more easily come

1. 2.

3.

4.

5.

1.

2.

Auicenn Em-
plaster to dis-
cusse waterish
tumours.

Capita curati-
onis aquosi tu-
moris.

1. 2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

forth. 7. Euacuate the humour which did cause the tumour, by some emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertaine vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the diseases called Glandula, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmatica excrementia.

*Enumeratio
abscessuum di-
tuitosorum.*

*Simplicia sunt
regula compo-
sitorum.*

*Glandula
Auidonis.*

*Anicenis glan-
dula are alone
with Ganglia.*

GANGLIA so called of the Grecians, *Chærades*, that is, *Strumæ*, which they also call *Scrofule*, *Bronchocèle*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia gut-turis*, *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Testudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*, which names giuen to tumours were inuented of the late Physitions, & are not to be found among ancient writers. Those tumours also which *Anicen* calleth *Fugile*, and *Nodi*, and *Vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumours of that kind, in what part focuer of the body they do grow, they haue their generation of fleame, and for that cause are iustly referred vnto phlegmaticke tumours. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do degenerate into a stony hardnesse, and into scirrhus diseases, yet the roote & the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleame, (as *Anicen* declareth) yet we will not deny, but that some other humour may sometime be commixed with fleame, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so there do grow vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of another kinde. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumours shall appeare most euidently. for the one must alwayes be referred vnto the other, as it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said else where.) Therefore all the aforesaid tumours are comprehended vnder the kind of phlegmaticke Abscessions, or (that I may speake after the manner of the common Chyrurgians) vnder the genus of phlegmaticke increasings, which diseases haue certaine speciall differences among themselves (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandula* (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans* an acorne, which forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula* (saith he) is euery where soft, one alone, moueable and disseuered from the other parts lying about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane and pure parts of the body. But *Glandula* in *Anicen* doth breed either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some other place ioyned to the sinewes and cords of the body, and these *Glandula* he would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmus*, the crampe. They do happen also in the palme of the hand, and in the forehead, as *Anicen* saith, who also calleth them sometime *Glandulosa Apopsemata*, sometime *Nodi*: for he doth intreate of those euils very rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in his Chapter *de Nodis*, euen vnto the end, and in his treatise *de Glandulis*. Therefore *Anicenis Glandula* do seeme to be diuers from *Guido* his *Glandula*, and *Ganglia* among the Grecians to be all one with *Anicen* his *Glandula*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie

Ganglium

Ganglium (saith he) is a gathering together of the sinewes, which is caused of some stripe, or of wearines, and that in many parts of y^e body, especially in those which are alwayes moving, as in the midst of the hand and in the feete. *Aetius* saith, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib. 6. cap. 29.* declareth what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what members chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompanie it, confirmeth those very words which we spake before, saying *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow, or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hand and of the armes, and in the ankles and ioynts of the feete, although also it ariseth in other parts of the body. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumour is all of one colour, resisting touching or handling, & without paine, but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfull, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the very skin next the sides: but again, if you prouoke it by force, it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus Aegineta de Ganglijs*, now we will discourse of other flegmatick tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofule* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes *videlicet Glandula*, chiefly appearing in the necke, the haimeholes, and in the parts about the priuie members, where *Glandulae* are placed by the vessels of the body that lye vnder them: yet sometime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinity is turned into the nature of *Strume*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latins call them *Strume*, but the Greeks *Chærades*, either truly because of the stones called *Chærades* growing in the sea, or else because of those beasts called Sows, that bring forth a great companie of pigges at once (for these euils do rise vp many together) which beasts are often infected with that disease. For *Serosa*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke and glandulous neckes, & commonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith, that *Strume* is a tumour, wherein vnder the congealed place there do arise certaine things like *Glandulae* of matter and bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nostrils, the priuie parts of the body and the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also, that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Strume*, saith he, do arise in the forepart of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Melicorides*. *Lupia* (saith *Guido*) is soft and round like vnto a Hop, and chiefly chuseth his place in hard and dry places of the body, as in the eye lids, and in other sinewy members; the Frenchmen call it commonly *une Loup*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shall be afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongst the Greekes, the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *Lupia*, to be all one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignant vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes and legs, & it is very hungry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue his title) eating vp the flesh that lieth next vnto it, which without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedæna*. Diseases

Signa Gangly

Scrofule.

Chærades
Græcorum.

Sues.

Struma Celsi.

Lib. 6.

Lupia.

Lupus morbus.

*Nodi.**Anicene nodi.**Atheroma.**Miliceris.**Steatoma.**Testudo.*

therefore are farre diuerse among themselves the one from the other, although in name they be somewhat acquainted. *Nodus* (as the knot of a rope) is said of the same *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the same place, growing especially about the sinewie place of the body. But *Anicene* in a certaine place, defineth *Nodi* to be *dubela* a *frizida*, and he compareth this name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adipesi* and *adipini Nodi*, fat kernels; and with *Milicerides*, which are called *mellisi Nodi*; and with *Atheromata*, which consist of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulse, which the Greekes call *Athera*. But because these three kinds of abcessions, that is to say, *Steatoma*, *Miliceris*, and *Atheroma*, are most incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* maketh mentiō of them in very many places, we thinke it conuenient (hauing here gotten so fit opportunity) to treat of them plainly, to declare their nature, and their marks, whereby they may be knowne, and in what things also they do differ and dissent, and wherein they do also conspire and agree. *Atheroma* therefore is a tumor of one and the same colour, and without paine, containing within the filme or sinewie tunicle a soft humour like vnto *Athera*, that is, a kind of pulse which is made of boyled meale. Sometime also in *Atheromata* together with a soft humour, there are found certaine stonie and hard substances and other things like vnto small peeces of Brimstone: oftentimes, there are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and like vnto haire wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme and figure very long, and somewhat eleuated in height, which being pressed with the fingers, by reason of clammy shaele and thicknesse of the humour, doth slowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued it doth slowly also returne againe. And *Miliceris* is a tumor which is void of paine also, but yet it is round, wherein the humor which is also included in some sinewy tunicle, (which they call *Cystu*) is found somewhat thinne, representing the substance of hony whereupon some of the Latines do call it *Mellifanum*, a hony combe. *Miliceris* therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in fashion, and in substance of the humor; for both the forme is more round, and the substance of the humor more slender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Atheroma*, and by pressing it with the fingers it doth speedily giue place, and when the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former place. But *Steatoma* is a tumour also besides nature, all of one colour, and very gentle to be handled; in the beginning truly it is very small, but in proceesse of time it increaseth and becommeth more copious, wherein is contained a humour very like vnto tallow, which is also comprehended vnder the filmes of the body. This is distinguished from *Miliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by reason of the bardnesse thereof, for it is both full and plentifull; and it doth so resist touching, that it will in no wise yeeld to the thrusting of the fingers. But let vs now proceed to declare other kinde of Apostemes which are almost reduced vnto these three whereof we haue now intreated. *Testudo* (saith *Guido*) is a great Abcession, very humerall, soft, and of a broad fashion, after the manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euill if it groweth (saith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: it in the necke, it is called *Bocium*; it in the stones, *Hernia*; but sometime it is found with matter, or with certaine

certaine scales, or with a *Fistula* accompanying it. But *Tesudines* and *Talpa*, amongst the ancient Physicians, had neither any proper name, nor yet once intreated of. But some of our dayes do define *Tesudo* to be a soft tumour, or not greatly hard yet somewhat big in the which is contained a grosse matter lying hid in a certaine tunicle, which doth so cleave vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a disease incident to the skin of the head) that oftentimes it corrupteth the same. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abscessions, and comprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*, but it rather seemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, because it containeth a white matter is rather referred vnto *Atheroma* then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithstanding *Guido* affirmeth, that it is a kind of *Tesudo*, yea also that it is *Tesudo* it selfe (as we said of late) as *Hernia* also and *Bocium*, which he also nameth: but these affectis haue borrowed their diuerse names according to the varietie of the place wherein they are found. But that which the common sort call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) do properly call *Bronchocèle*: we call it *Herniam gutturis*, whereupon they also call them *Gutturiosi*, which do labour of that disease *Bronchocèle*, is a great tumour chancing in the necke, verie round, betweene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, sometime dead flesh, sometime a certaine humour like vnto hony, or fat, or sodden meale, or water. Sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) there are found in such tumours certaine haire mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumor, full of flesh like vnto the flesh of a mans buttocks of diuers formes and greatnes, as are Melons & Gourds, & therefore it borroweth sundrie names according to the variety of the fashion & member wherein it is placed. Moreover this tumour which of the latter sort is called *Nacta* or *Napta*, is void of paine, except peradventure it be so great, that by the continuall drawing of the parts of that member, it bringeth some griefe to the parts about it. This also is of the number of Abscessions, & doth pertaine vnto *Steatoma* (as we haue said before in enumeration of tumors besides nature. *Bubo* (saith *Galen*) is a disease of the loose members, or of *Glandula* (which the Greekes call *Adena*) that is to say, a simple inflammation. Wherefore *Guido* hath either vnfully here rehearsed it among the number of flegmatick abscessions, or else he vnderstandeth some other matter then *Galen* doth. But *Bubones* which are caused through a fall from some place, or by other vicers & diseases, are without any danger: but those which are wont to happen in pestilent feauers, are the worst of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the nostrils, or the necke. *Fugilla* (saith the interpreter of *Auicenna*) is of the kind of glandulous Apostemes, and this terme (saith he) is appropriated vnto it, because it is a disease chancing behind the eares. By the which description it may easily be coniectured, that *Fugilla*, so called of *Auicenna*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greekes *Parotis*, that is a glandulous disease growing vnderneath the eares. But some do thinke *Fugilla* to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwise taken of them then of *Galen* and *Paulus*, which is (as they say) a tumour that is deeply planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compassed with any skin or filme: it is very hard also, after the manner of the euils called *Servofule*; & in that signification (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, because he doth register

Talpa.

Bocium.

Bronchocèle.

Nacta.

Nacta or

Napta is re-

ferred vnto

Steatoma.

Bubo.

Fugilla.

What Bubo is

with Guido

and other late

Physicians.

The differences
of flegmaticke
abscessions.

Of the causes,
signes & iudg-
ments of the
aforesaid tu-
mours.

Causes of tu-
mours which
pertaine vnto
fleame.

The matter of
flegmaticke
abscessions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Note absces-
sus velamento
inclusi.

Iudicia ab
fcessuumpetui-
torum.

Arnaldus à
Villa noua.

register *Fugillinus Bubo* amongst the nùber of flegmatick abscessions. But there are now found out verie manie titles giuen to these kinds of phlegmaticke abscessions. But we ought not greatly to stand vpon the names of them, so that we know and vnderstand the only differences of them, because it falleth so out, that according to the diuersitie of their names, their cures and iudgement do varie. Therefore of such kinds of abscessions, some truly are included within a certaine skin or tunicle (which they call *Cystis*) and some are deeply planted in the flesh: some haue a slender foundation, or small roote, and some againe are verie large and broad. Also some are easie to be resolued, and some are farre otherwise: some great and some little. Some also do come vnto suppuration, and some do not. To conclude, some tumours are scalie, fistulus and cancerous, but some do admit or suffer none of these things. The causes of these kinde of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*, 1. Primitiue causes, as a fall, a stripe excessive or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent causes, as are vnnaturall humours, especially those which be flegmaticke and true *Oedemata*, which do degenerate into abscessions. 3. *Coniuncta cause*, which are the diuerse substances; and properly the matters of euery abscession contained in the affected member. But in these kinds of tumours there are contained certaine humours, which be either serous or waterish, as is wine, putrified and corrupt, or filthy, or dirty: or else humours like vnto hony, or sodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are sometime found within these abscessions, phlegmaticke, and waterish, and glandulous flsh, sometime also stones, sand, shels, wood, coales, and other such like solide substances. Notwithstanding these three kinds of tumours do most frequent mens bodies (as we haue said before,) whereof euerie one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Miliceris*, which are thus called by reason of the similitude of the substances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongst these, like vnto tallow, or some other fat thing, another like vnto hony, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Athera*. The signes and iudgements of such kinds of tumours, which belong vnto fleame, may easily be found out by their descriptions and differences before declared. But the marke whereby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this; there is moueablenesse and vnconstancie of the filme or skin called *Cystis*, which the ancient Physitions haue named *Tunica*, and there is a separation of the skinne: but when they be surely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue fast to the flesh, it is an euident token that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, those tumours which are new and tractable, may easily be discusse, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wise be resolued. Rednesse, paine, and increasing of heate, do declare that those abscessions will either come to suppuration, or else degenerate into a fistula or a canker *Struma nunciosa*, which do affect the outward member, and do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinarie heat, do testifie and declare very plainly, that they will beget and breed those inward diseases called *Chæradæ* as *Arnaldus* hath noted in a certaine place. Those remedies therefore, which are outwardly applyed to them, do profite little or nothing. But these diseases (as

Auicenna

Anicen thought) are increased and do multiply by some fall, or some hurt or
 bruise in the bodie. Now these strumous tumours are greatly helped by vsing
 purging medicines, diureticall porions, and Electuaries, (as they call them)
 which can dry vp. Also the change of aire doth greatly auail in yong children.
 But children, by reason of their excessiue eating and immoderate diet, and the *In what ages
and bodies*
 slendernes of bodie, are very often annoyed with *Struma*. But old men by rea- *Struma do*
 son of the contrary causes are seldome troubled therewith. Moreover they *reigne.*
 which haue a narrow forehead, and straight temples, and great checks, are
 subiect to *Struma*: for in such the matter is readily brought down to the neck,
 as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Physitions hath noted very wel.
 But *Struma* (as *Celsus* saith) are wont commonly to weary Physitions, because *Celsus.*
 they procure feauers also, neither do they at any time ripen easily, and they
 are cured either with some hote instrument, or with medicines, and often-
 times they do rise vp againe besides their scarres, and a long time after they
 require medicines againe: and moreover it so cometh to passe that they re-
 maine in the flesh a long season. The incision and corrosiue of such tumors
 is greatly to be feared about the bellie, the necke & the ioynts, by reason of the
 affinity and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the sinewes, and
 also of the internall capacitie. In the incision also of great Glandule, it beho-
 ueth greatly to eschue that veine which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth
 bring nourishment vnto them. For oftentimes it bringeth great profusion of
 blood, whereupon there ensueth straightway no smal danger. These euils called
Struma, do greatly differ among themselues, but in greatnesse, nature, place,
 beginning, multitude, and ioyning together of the vessels (as *Aetius* hath ga-
 thered out of *Leonidas*.) Therefore little *Struma* are sooner and more easily *Magnitudo*
 cured then the great, even as the gentle tumors are more tractable then thole *Struma.*
 which are inflamed. Now some *Struma* cannot be remedied; for seeing all
 such diseases called *Struma* are cancerous, and do stufte vp the vessels of the
 body, while they are curing, they must needs bring the danger of profusion
 of blood, besides that also they are found very deepe in the flesh, and there- *Natura.*
 fore they cannot any way be cut off. For a malicious and hurtfull *Struma* doth
 possesse the best vessels, that is, the greatest veines and arteries (which are
 called *Carotides*) even as though it should hold by certaine rootes. The super-
 ficall *Struma* are more easie to be cured then the internall, by reason of their
 place, and those are curable which do happen in the necke, where yet you *Locus.*
 must be very diligent to eschue the loud and great sinewes: for many by cut-
 ting *Struma* about the windpipe, and by cutting other sinewes, haue caused
 the sicke all the time of his life after to remaine speechlesse. For besides the ex-
 cision of that sinew, the great vessels being laid bare and cooled in the cure,
 do hurt the duty of the tongue. For the multitude of *Struma*, it appeareth that *Multitudo.*
 one alone may easilier be cured then many together. And concerning the
 manner of their rising, it is manifest also, that they which hang downward *Ortus.*
 are a great deale sooner healed, then they which are planted in the flesh. Thus *Duplex absces-*
 much of *Struma*, which *Aetius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of these *sum pituita-*
 kinds of abscessions, which haue their originall of fleame, is of the late Chy- *forum curandi*
 rurgians appointed to be twofold, that is to say, 1. Generall, and vniuersally *ratio.*
 common

Victus ratio.

Aqua aluminosa vis.

Antecedentis materia euacuatio.

Vacuantiæ per aluum.

Puluis Turbith.

Razes.

Hierapicra.

Prouokers of vrine.

Potio Guidonis è Cauliaco.

common to all. 2. particular, which is proper in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shall be, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter which causeth such abscessions be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, lest at length it be vnted to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto the matter which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammy humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicenna*, let them eschue all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much satietie and immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meates. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoid a moist house, that is either situated in low valleys, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of Alume, or of Brimstone: for such kind of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward strumous and flegmatick abscessions, but those also which do outwardly affect the superficial parts of the body (as *Arnaldus* affirmeth.) But we do perfect the other part of our former proceeding, that is to say, to turne away the antecedent matter, lest it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by foure kinds of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge fleame downward, & sometime by letting of blood, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inward parts of the bodie. To purge the bodie downward, the powder of *Turbith* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicenna* R^x. of *Turbith*, Ginger, and Sugar, of each a like portion: but he taketh thereof two Drachmes, and affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleame) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kinde of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus Ventræ ad Almanforem*, of twenty parts of *Turbith*, of ten of Ginger, and thirty of Sugar, and ministred of it at one time, ℥.iiij. *Benedicta* allo and *Hierapicra*, and *Pilule de Agarico*, and *Pilule maiores de Hermodactylis* do greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont to vse this potion following, which (he saith) he gathered out of the writings of many Physicians. R^x. of *Scrofularia*, partes iij. of *Phyllipendule* partes ij. of *Pimpernel*, *Moussere*, *Tenacetum*, of red Coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica marucina*) of *Rubia maior*, ana. part. j. of the root of *Aristolochia*, of *Spithula fætida* of the roote of Radish, ana. part. ss. put them altogether, and boile them in white wine and bony vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and let it be drunke hote. But in the applying of all these remedies,

remedies, (as also for bloudletting, if at anytime it be required) the counsell of some learned Physition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the qualitie, quantitie, and vse of them. But to resolue through breathing, and to digest the humour which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* willett vs to minister *Theriaca, Athanasia, Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *Cretica Calaminthe*, the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthe*; whose composition is to be sought out in *Lib. 4. De sanit. tuen.* Many other helpes are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described, and celebrated of the ancient Physitions; the vse whereof I do not allow, and therefore I thinke it good to pretermitt the declaration of them in these our Commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christian King of France is induced as it were by inspiration with so wonderfull a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Struma* or *Scrofule* to their perfect health againe. King *Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont maruellously to cure Strumous persons onely by touching them, which gift immortal doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Struma*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euery difference: which methode is made not onely diuerse, but also it is changed both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, and by the quantitie of them whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, and of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the quality of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib. 4. de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered and learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into sixe points, which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this manner: imprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Lupia*, & of the interpreter of *Anicen*, *Glandula*) if they be seated in the strong parts of the bodie, and because they are not yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystu*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of oedematous tumours, whereof we haue before iotreated. 3. Ripen, open, and cleanse such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcerous apostemes, which do pertain vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Struma* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, and obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the roote within, corrosiue them about, and cleanse them

Qua per halitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Struma by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmaticke. Tempus quid insinuat.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

*Compressio &
attritio.*

Lupia curatio

*Lamina plum-
bea.*

*Vnguentum
Rogery.*

*Ganglij cura-
tio ex Phila-
grio.*

*Lupia & gan-
glicon is al one
euill.*

*Archigenes
lib. 4.*

*Oribasius his
medicine to
mollifie Gan-
glia.*

them thoroughly, 6. Those which are fastened but to a thin and slender roote, bind them about and plucke them out. The first canon, according to *Avicen* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do consume and sup-
presse vehemently these soft and little abscessions (which *Avicen* doth call *Glandula*, and the new Physicians *Lupia*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumour, and bind it very strongly in the midst, lest it slide from the place: for this doth digest these kinds of tumours. First therefore let *Lupia* be softly rubbed with the hand vntill it waxe somewhat hote, vntill it be after a sort softer then it selfe. Afterward let the affected member be surely layed hold on with the hands, and let it be so often, and so vehemently stricken, with the bottome of a saucer, or with some other solide thing, that it may be disseuered, and that the inward *Cystis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and so the matter therein contained may be disperled: which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound very strongly with a swathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the space of nine or ten dayes, but let the plate be of that greatnesse (as it was said of late) that it may answer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are some which before the application of any plate of lead do minister this ointment made of burnt lead, of the barke of the Elder tree, or of the Figge tree, with oyle and vineger. Other do first vse an Emplaster made of *Alcēs*, *Acacia*, *Mirrhe*, *Olibanum*, *Sarcocolla*, putting to them a little vineger, or the white of an ege, as much as shall seeme sufficient to commixe with the rest. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them little flakes (as he and many other Chyrurgians of that sect do call them) made of flaxe, dipped in the white liquor of an eg, with salt & alume *Zuccharinum* vnthicked. Moreouer *Philagrius* almost after the same manner was wont to cure *Glanglia* (as it is in *Aetius*) which diseases are tumors vnequall (as we said before) speaking after this sort. We denie (saith he) the labour of the Chyrurgians, that is, bloudletting in *Ganglia*, especially if they chance in the hands, or in the feete; but we must cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with Ammoniack, which must be made pliant to the thicknesse of an Emplaster: afterward we apply a plate of lead equall for the tumor; and lest it should slide away from the place, we bind it in the midst with straight bands. But a few dayes after, when we know that *Ganglium* is mollified, we take away the bands, and (not saying any thing to the sicke) while the place is yet hote, we fasten the thombe of our right hand vpon *Ganglium*, and laying fast hold on the member with our other foure fingers we violently breake it, and so *Ganglium* is presently dissolued. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may easily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongst the late Physicians, *Avicen* his *Glandula*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one disease, which the former description of them doth also manifestly declare. *Archigenes* in this disease, commandeth to lay on lime with the fat of a goose, and with *Rosin*, *Terebinthina*, which is the right Turpentine. The same *Archigenes* also did oftentimes vse that medicine made of the stone called *Lapis Achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribasius* vsed very often this medicine, *R.* of *Cerule*, *Resina picea*, old oyle, ana. $\frac{3}{4}$ j. of Ammoniacke, *Thymiana* and *Galbanum*, ana. a like quantity,

quantity, of waxe ℥.iiij. The same medicine is to be scere in *Ætium*, but the quantitie doth vary in certaine things, as thus. R^x. of Ceruse, old Oyle, and *Resina picea*, ana. ℥.j. of Waxe, ℥.ij. of *Ammoniacum*, *Thymiana*, and of *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.i. boile the Ceruse with oyle till it lose his staining facultie, then bray the Animonacke, and cast it into the Ceruse with the oyle, alterward cast in the *Resina picea* and the Waxe, and last of all the *Galbanum*, which first must be made very soft and tender. Moreouer that famous Physition of Greece, I meane *Oribasius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicenna*, and other late Chyrurgians were accustomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglion*, a thicke round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which doth hang vpon womens spindles to make them turne round, which was more large and ample for the disease. For truly, saith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more speedily dissolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Ganglia*, it is far better to vse such mollifying and discussing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian (with excision of the tumours,) especially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the body. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But those diseases which do occupie the head or the forehead, may safely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off or pulled vp by the roots. Therefore diuide the outward skinne with a penknife, and then (if the tumours be small) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of piners, or some such like instrument, and cut them off from the roote. But if they be great, thrust them through with a hooke, and lift them vp and wind them round about, vntill you haue plucked and drawne them forth: last of all, sew vp the sides or brims of them together, and vse those medicines which are appointed for bloody vlcers. But these things belong vnto the fourth canon. The second canon (because I will be silent in those medicines which are appointed for flegmaticke and cedematous tumors, which we haue described already, and yet together with these remedies following, they be very profitable and expedient for these Abscessions whereof we now intreate, and also for all kind of *Hernia*) is finished by the applying of a certaine Emplaister, which is described of *Galen libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum capitulum xlviii*: which Emplaister (as he himselfe testifieth) doth digest through breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectually against the diseases called *Struma*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auailable also against the goutte, and it benefiteth many other diseases. The Emplaister is this. R^x. of old oyle, ℥.i. co. *Spuma argenti*, *Picea sicca*, ana. ℥.50. of *Ladanum*, ℥.52. of *Ærugo rasa*, ℥.8. of *Galbanum*, ℥.4. let *Argenti spuma*, which they call *Lithargirum*, be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are somewhat thickned together, put in the Pitch and the rust of the scourings of brasie, commonly called verdigreace, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a mortar, and bray them and mollifie them, and reserve them to your vse. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke somewhat brown, do commixe with them also the offal of brasie, ℥.viij. for otherwise it would be very blacke. This Emplaister is found otherwise described in *Guido his commentaries*, vnder this forme. R^x. of old oile, ℥.xiiij. of the scourings of brasie, ℥.xiiii. of dry Pitch, ℥.v. of *Ladanum*, ℥.iii. of

*Verticillum
plumbum.*

*Ganglionum
per Chyrurgiam
curatio.*

*Secundus
canon.*

*Discussion by
digestiones.*

Emplastrum.

Diachylon.

Lithargirum, ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*, ℥. iij. For the same purpose *Diachylon* also which is called *commune* & *iracundum* doth profite much, whereof you must take one pound, and commixe therewith the powder of the roote of *Ireos*, ℥. j. The same effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Mesues*, whose description shall afterward ensue. Some counsell vs for the digestion of these abscessi-

*Stereus capri-
num vetus.*

*Haly Abbas
emplastrum.*

*Emplastrum
Auicenna.*

*Brunni &
Theodorici
emplastrum
ad strumas.
Rogerij empla-
strum.*

*Emplastrum
praeceptoris
Guidonis ex
limacibus.*

ons to apply vnto the aggrieved place, the old dung of a Goate with hony and vineger, which must be heat ouer the fire vntill they be well incorporate together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaister: also an emplaister made of Fenugreeke, of the seed of flaxe, and of coleworts, with the scraping of the roote of *Althaea*, which medicine (if there be any hope of suppuration) doth ripen it notably: *Haly Abbas* also for the same purpose doth greatly commend this emplaister following. R^x. of Beane meale, and Barley meale, ana ℥ v of the roote of Liquorice, of the roote of *Althaea*, and pitch, ana. ℥. x. of white waxe, goose iuer, ana. ℥. x. bray them, and mingle them together with old oyle, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tried Venus sports, and ouer a soft fire make an emplaister. Another out of *Auicen* which *Guido* vsed. R^x. of Oxes dung ℥. ij. of the root of Coleworts, of the roote of Capers, of the fish called a shrimpe, of fat Figges, ana. ℥. β. of Hops and *Bdellium*, ana. ℥. ij. of Vineger, hony, Sowestallow, of the dregs of old oyle, of each as much as is sufficient, whereof make an Emplaister. *Brunnus* approueth this remedie, following, whole opinion *Theodoricus* also doth confirme. R^x. of Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, of each a like quantitie: steepe them three daies in Vineger, whereto (when they be dissolued) you may adde of small bran as much as shall suffice, and make an Emplaister. *Rogerius* was wont to vse this remedie for *Struma* (which they commonly call *Scrofule*,) R^x. of the roote of brakes of Daffadil, or of Walwort (if you please) of each as much as you thinke good, let them be boyled in the best wine, and then brayed in a mortar, and adde to them a little quicke brimstone, and make an Emplaister. *Guido* his maister in *Monte Pessulano*, hath often tried this emplaister to be most effectually, which is made of xij. Snails (which they also call *Limaces*) boiled in wine or in lye made of ashes, commonly called *clauelata*. But that which is more profitable, he did minister euery day to the sicke to be eaten one Snail, either drie or otherwise prepared, and as they terme it, made ready to chew. *Paulus* also was wont notably to discusse *Struma* with vnslaked lime, steeped in hony, or in the filthinesse of mens bodies that doth arise either in exercising themselves, or in bathes, or else in oile, or Soves grease. The like vertue, saith *Aetius*, hate the filthinesse of exercising places scraped from the walles, which must be well beaten together and spread vpon a linnen cloth, and applyed after the manner of an Emplaister. For the same purpose this helpeth effectually. R^x. of lime and *Nitrum*, ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and Fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaister. Also the meale of bitter Hops boiled and annoiated with *Oximel* doth discusse *Struma*. For the same purpose also Oxes dung boiled in vineger and annoiated, doth notably auaille, which being applyed after the manner of a Cataplasma, doth marvellously dissolue all hard and scirrous tumours. Rath ripe Figges also, especially of the wild

wild fig tree, applyed with Hogs grease, do discusse all kinds of tumors. Therefore by this our method of curing, you shall heale all kind of *Strume* which are but newly begun, & not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuell practise, euen by the applying of such medicines as can dissolue, and digest, & discusse. But first you must labour to mollifie and afterward to dissolue, or else vse some medicine of a double quality, which can worke both these effects together, of which kind are all those remedies almost which are before described. Now if digestiue medicines shall nothing preuaile in these Abscessions, they must be either brought vnto suppuration, or consumed, or else cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it shall be said hereafter. But here we must not omit that thing which is recorded of some very diligently: namely: that they which are diseased with *Strume*, & with any leprosie, are maruellously holpen by the vsing of Vipers & Serpents, and by drinking of the gumme called *Laser*, euery day fasting to the quantitie of a chich pease. Therefore cast the dead Serpent into a pot, and stop the mouth thereof very iust with some plaister, and set it in the fire, then take the ashes of the burned Serpent, and mingle them with the like quantitie of Fenugreeke, and vse them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be strumous. Also in them that labour with *Strume*, you must prouide that the belly be made soluble, and a slender diet obserued: you must daily prouoke vomiting, & indeuour to purge steame vpward: you must drie the head, and apply Cataplasmes to the forepart thereof, which can raise vp litle pushes in the skin, as is, the root of Capers, with *Polenta*, and other such likethings. And you must vse purging medicines and fine powders that be of like vertue. We also do generally dispatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vse of the former remedies: for all mollifying and resoluing medicines, if they find any place of matter disobedient vnto resolution, they doubtlesse do ripen the same matter, and bring it to suppuration, especially if the said matter be gentle and tractable, or commixed with blood. But *Haly Abbas*, that he might bring these kinds of Abscessions vnto maturity, ministred a plaister made of Barley meale, pitch, and *Olibanum*, & of the vrine of a yong child, all well incorporate together. But *Auicen*, to repress the vehemency of the heate, willethe to commixe the decoction of Coriander with the aforesaid vrine. But if these things do nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuell remedie, take of Myrthe part j. of *Licium* parts ij. and mingle them with the aforesaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Strume* vnto suppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Aegineta*, lib. 4 R. of Myrthe, ℥. x. of *ammoniacum* ℥. vii. of *Viscus quercinum* ℥. viij. of *Galbanum*, ℥. iij. *Propolis*, ℥. j. beate them in a mortar. But when these Abscessions be ripe, and brought vnto suppuration (which you shall easily perceiue by the tokens of matter) they must be opened & cleansed with that ointment comonly called *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacy in malignant and ulcerated *Strume*. To this purpose also the ointment called *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum* is very profirable, & the *Emplastrum de succis* (which they call *Diachylon* & *Diapalma*, which the Greeks call *quixion* whose descriptions are to be found in other places. But if these Abscessions shall possesse any member, wherein there subsisterh any putrification: and cor-

The vsing of
vipers and ser-
pents doth
maruellously
helpe them
which are
strumous.

3.
Tertij Cano-
nis declaratio
Suppurantia,
seu maturan-
tia.

Pauli medica-
mentum ad
strumas sup-
purandas.
Detergentia.

Vnguentum
Apostolorum.
Vnguentum
Aegyptiacum
Diachylon.
Diapalma.

4.
The way to
cure and de-
stroy *Strume*,
out of *Albuca-
sis* and *Leoni-
das*.

ruption of the bones, or any euill symptome shall haue accesse to them, they must be cured after the manner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinity and acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shall cure gentle obedient, superficiall, and curable *Strume*, very cunningly and shortly, after this sort. First, command the sicke to lye downe: for that when he sitteth his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus layed, bind his legs surely together, and tye them to the bedstead, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour, either with a right or a little ouerthwart section, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vessels and sinewes are extended right forth. But you shall not cut the whole thicknesse of the skinne hastily at one time without ceassing: for our mind is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in little tumours, that is, in small *Strume*, make but a simple incision, or diuide them with a small line: but in great Abscessions cut the skin to the forme of a Myrtle leafe: then those vessels which are vncovered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the diuided skin with pinfers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and litle picke out *Strume*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *Strume* shall be wound about the vessels, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence there followeth a copious profusion of blood. Therefore in dispatching this cure draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinfers, and so by litle and litle separate it with the point of a penknife from the other parts thereunto adioyning: and when you haue drawne & loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or groundworke, because of the sinewes and vessels lying vnderneath. But in those *Strume* which do chance about the armeholes, and about the priue members, you must make an ouerthwart incision, by reason of the doubling of the skin. Moreouer, in that section which is made in *Strume* that possesse the necke, you must haue a singular care, lest either the arteries, which they call *Carotides*, or the quivering sinewes be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessel when you make incision, the profusion of blood doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessel with a small cord, or (if it be not very great) cut it quite off, (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the blood. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterprised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *Strume* is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *Strume* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw forth after that manner which we haue before exprest. Moreouer you shall easily repress a meane fluxe of blood by applying those things which haue power to drie vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotton, infused in cold water, or in Vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *Oxycraton*) & after-
ward

ward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloudshed, fill it
 up with the powder of Frankensence, and applic liniments, and for the
 longer preservation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if *what is to be*
 any full veine worthy the speaking of be conuexed within the root or bottome *done, if a veine*
 of *Glandula* or *Struma*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it *be annexed*
 off at the verie ground, but to take it vp and bind it with a small cord, that it *vnto Struma.*
 may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without danger. In which
 fall the cure must be followed with liniments: but the cord must be of some *Cords made of*
 matter which will not easily putrisie, as are those threads which are called *Ser- filke.*
rice, or small lute strings: for those hands which do quickly rot, do soone
 fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But if when the worke is
 finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Ab-
 scissions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behinde, *Albucaasis willeth* *Albucaasis.*
 it to be drawne out, first, by filling the wound with cotton, or with some other
 like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those relicts which re-
 mained behinde, did fill vp the gaping vicer, first with the white of an egge,
 and with Alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Ynguentum Aegyptiacum*, or
 with some of those corrosiuing medicines which are described in the Anti-
 dotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must apply such medicines
 as can lenifie paine: but amongst all other things, we do comonly lay on flaxe
 dipped in the white of an eg, and in oyle of Roses: You shall finish the scope *Corrosio &*
 of our fift rule after this sort: breake the skinne with some burning hote me- *mundificatio.*
 dicine according to the greatnesse of the abscession: But while you attempt
 that thing, you must giue diligent heede, lest that the scalding medicine
 do touch the other parts lying about the tumours. You shall notably dis- *Causticum ex*
 patch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lime or Sope, *calce & sapo-*
 which things do happily execute their effects within the space of twelue *ne.*
 houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no
 danger or discommoditie thereby. The skinne therefore being thus bro-
 ken by some burning medicine, and the crust procured in the place thereof,
 you shall deuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest
 of the crust: but you must make incision somewhat deeply, almost to the very
 quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment streaked with
 some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. More-
 ouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessi-
 ons, yet Arsenicke in this case obtaineth the preheminence, so that a man *Arsenicum.*
 know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantitie of vsing the same can-
 not be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not there-
 fore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without
 measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomes.
 Besides that also the ministring of a small quantitie doth performe a maruel-
 lous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding the common measure *Quantitas*
 or quantitie thereof, is the medicie of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, *Arsenici.*
 and in those members which are farre off from the principall parts: but in
 weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principall
 members, a lesse quantitie must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and
 more

Quando cru-
sta à vino re-
soluenda.

6.
Ligatura &
emulso.

Curatio Athe-
romatis, Stea-
tomatis &
Melicern.

How many
wayes these
Abscessions
may be cured.

more safe, to minister a little at once and often, then at one time to apply an immoderate quantitie. The operation or effect of Arsenicke remaineth three whole dayes, in all which time the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it both for the owne defence, and to stop the fluxe (which immoderate heate may cause) ought to be annoynted, and all to washed with the oyntment called *Populeon*, with water also, or with the iuyce of Nightshade, and with vinegar, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainly assured, that *Glandula* is destroyed and wasted away (which you shall know by the hardness and swelling of the procured crust) then the crust must be resolved euen from the quick, by washing it with butter & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together, and by some other fat and vnctuous thing that is not salted, as swines grease, and such like. But when the crust is fallen from the tumour, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *Lupia* or *Struma* do yet remaine behind, it must be fetched out with some gnawing medicine, as with powder of *Asphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some such like thing. But if there remaineth nothing behind, it must be brought vnto a scarre after the maner of other vlcers. But now that we may also accomplish the intention of our sixt canon, these abscessions which haue verie narrow bases or foundations, must be fast bound either with a cord of silke, or with horse haire, and they must be bound dayly more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cords, vntill they appeare verie drie, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue said of those Abscessions which are deeply planted, and folded about the great vessels.) But the band must be ayded with some consuming & drying medicine. The paine also must be asswaged with the white of an egge, with oyle of Roses, with *Vnguentum Populeon*, or with some other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cord shall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour must be cured after this manner which we haue before exprested. And thus much generally concerning those abscessions which vniuersally consist aboue nature, especially of them that haue their originall of fleame. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to set downe the proper & particular method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*, which diseases are alwayes & often incident to mens bodies, and do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes and differences of tumours besides nature, called of the late Physitions after certaine new titles and names, which among the ancient sort were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Testudo*, *Nasla*, and other of that kind, which we haue exprested in our former chapters: in those three kinds of Abscessions which do most frequent mens bodies (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Melicern*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in the tunicle which they call *Cystu* may be discussed, or that the whole tumour together with the very tunicle may be consumed by medicines, or taken away by section. But some of those tumors require a threefold method of curing, as those which containe a more liquide humour, as is *Melicern*. Some againe are cured two wayes, as *Atheroma*, which is destroyed by section, and consumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be discussed nor consumed, but it is cured by the onely labours of the hand, that is, by section

section onely. Moreover of medicines which in these affects have power to disperse and disperse, you shall find plenty among those remedies which we before have let downe for the cure of *Struma*. But *Paulus* doth particularly *Lib. 4.* and properly discusse *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth of *Curatio per* pressed Grapes (the kirkels being taken out) *xx.* of the scourings of Brasse, *digerentia.* *℥. iij.* which medicine must not be applied before the member be nourished with fomentis. Another Emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Aetius Lib. 15.* reported vnto *Leonidas*. *R.* of pressed Grapes (the kirkels being detracted) *℔ j.* of Comin seed beaten very small, *℥. vi.* of *Nitrum* *℥. iij.* bray altogether in a mortar, and bind them to the tumour. Another discusseive medicine expressed of the same writer, very profitable against *Melicerides*. *R.* *Salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of silver, and of Ceruse, ana. *℔ j.* of Waxe *Terebinthina*, *Chalbana*, *Opoponax*, ana. *℥. j.* of *Rubrica sinopica*, *℥. vj.* of Vineger, *℥. vij.* boyle the scourings of silver, Ceruse and Salt beaten very small all together, then cast in the *Rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in Vineger, and melt them together. last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *Opoponax* and *Chalbana*, both dissolved in Vineger, and conferue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to wait the humour by applying of gnawing medicines (which the Græcians call *Sep- Curatio per* *tica*) it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *Struma*) by hote burning *Lib. 4.* medicines applied to the skinn, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that which consisteth of quicke Lime, that is, which is not yet quenched with water, of Sope, and of the ashes of Lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. *R.* of vnslaked Lime, *℥. iij.* of *Sphærie*, that is, of the burnt dregges of Wine, Liquide *Nitrum* parched in the fire, ana. *℥. ij.* of *Minium* or *Rubrica sinopica* *℥. j.* Let them be brayed with the distilled ashes of Lye, and when you haue brought them to the thicknesse of liquide Honie, beate them thrise ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *Pixu plunubra*, with the distilled Lye aboue, lest it dry vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skinn that is beiet, with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, applying consuming remedies, among which this remedy following doth notably wait without gnawing & byting. *R.* of the offal of brasse, *℥. iij.* of *Saudaracha*, that is, of red Arsenicke, and of *Helleborus niger*, ana. *℥. ij.* apply them with oyle of Roses. Another remedie very effectuell for the same purpose. *R.* of a burnt Hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of Orpine or Arsenicke, ana. an equall portion, commixe them with oyle of Roses. But the parts which lie about the tumour and are adjacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with Ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kinds of Abscessions by making incisions, that is, by Chyrurgerie, truly in that method of curing (whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony, or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be, which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely to take away the tunicle wherein the tumour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be verie attentine and wary (as we haue said before of *Struma*) that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein,

A medicine to wait without byting.

Curatio per Chyrurgiam.

Aetius li. 15.

gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation, and some portion thereof also remaineth still behind. For if (when the tunicle is diuided, and the humour issued) the tumour shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared that the disease will grow againe (as doth *Struma*) when as any portion thereof sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happē, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the reliēs thereof, either with those consuming medicines which we haue before expressed, or by some such like remedies. Now, if *Steatoma* hath a verie broad top, and a very narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous medicines) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very roote; for so the labour of the Chyrurgian shall be quickly ended, the vicer made plaine and equall with the other parts, and the cure shortly dispatched.

CHAP. XXV.

*Of hard and scirrhous tumours, engendred
of melancholie.*

*Scirrus duplex.**Melancholia naturalis.**Scirrus illegitimus.**Melancholia non naturalis.**Differentia. 4.
non naturalis
melancholia.*

WE haue hitherto discoursed of those tumors which are caused of bloud, choler, and fleame: of *Verruca* also, and of those abscessions which are excited through a waterish humor, and a flatuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a slegmaticke substance, and of other tumours generally consisting aboue nature. Now it remaineth that we intreate of those Abscessions which do proceed of a melancholicke humour, as are *Scirrus*, indurated and cancerous tumours, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrus* therefore (as also to *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *Oedema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, *videlicet*, *Scirrus verus*, & *Scirrus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrus* is said to proceed of naturall melancholie. Also naturall melancholie is the dregs of good bloud, and as it were a certaine slimie superfluity, and very grosse bloud, whose colour is blacke, but the taste thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same:) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humours are contained, and appointed of nature to nourish the melancholicke members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholie. And vnnaturall melancholie is that which differeth from the former description of the naturall humour, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his libertie, which if it shall once pretergreffe (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholie, but some other humour. But melancholie (to enter into the generall definition thereof) is a cold and drie humour, proceeding (as *Guido* saith) of a verie grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholie there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholicke humour which is called naturall, and doth daily engender in the bodie, euen when a man is in perfect heath, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that

that (as *Galen* saith) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glisteth like vnto Lime or Pitch. But this is soure, and being powdered vpon the ground, it is hote like Vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also very vnpleasant to all creatures liuing, so that neither mice nor flies will tast thereof. It sheweth likewise like vnto abundance of Salt, wherein no liuing thing can vphold his life, as the sea which is said to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred, when as that slimie bloud (which we haue said to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the bodie, and is purged out neither by any sensible or secret effluxion, but is transformed, corrupted and rotten. For truly this humour (saith *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feauer, it causeth melancholie: which truly is cold, because it resemblith the nature of the earth, but yet it is not void of heate, as is ashes and vineger; and when it is purged downward (as it happeneth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The second *Species* or difference of vnnaturall melancholie is that which cometh through the aduision of other humours, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raiseth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholy. But the flies also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud also or fleame shall be vehemently heated in the bodie, and burnt, there is also called a melancholicke humour, which *Auicenna* because of the aduision, termed to be vnnaturall: but these two last kinds, which do come of the aduision of bloud and fleame, *Auicenna* hath thought to be very mild and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that the kinde of melancholie which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of Wine in the bottome of a vessell or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile; for this is more gentle and mild, yea and especially when as it carrieth not long within the body with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholy, it passeth first into a yellowish forme, secondly into a leekie substance, and thirdly into a rusty colour. 3. The third *Species* of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stony concretion, as when through the ignorance of vnskillfull Physitions or Chyrurgians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the *Grecians* call *Pblegmon*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinarie medicines: or else when those medicines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was very small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dried, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnaturall melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholy: which thing while it happeneth it is made sweet, and doth waxe mild, vntill such time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith; for the it waxeth sharp, and

Lib. 4. Apho.
Lib. 14. Therapeutics.

2.
Melancholy cometh by the aduision of other humours.

Com. 29. lib. 3. pradi. Hip.

3.
Bilis atra per congelationem (ut vocant) et indurationem.

4.
Melancholy through admixtion of other humours.

Four differ-
ences of tumours
caused of me-
lancholy.

Verns scirr-
us non exquisi-
tus

Scirr-
us phleg-
monodes, æde-
matodes, ery-
sipelatodes.

Scirr-
us ex-
quisitus.

Scirr-
us can-
crosus.

Scirr-
us pro-
prie quid.

Cause 3. Scir-
ri legitimi

Signa.

14. Meth.
med.

Guido notat
Cancris tribuit
Scirro.

bitter, & is made partaker of immoderat gnawing. We may gather therefore by our former words, that the 4. differences of tumours aboue nature do proceed of melancholy: for first, of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in sound bodies) there is caused a true and lawfull *Scirr-
us*, called of the Arabians *Sephiros*, of the Greekes *οξυππ* and *οξυππ* *εναρσις*, that is, *Scirr-
us* or *Scirr-
us non exactus seu non exquisitus*, which kinde of tumour truly is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auic-
en* cal-
leth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib. 14. Meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumours, calleth it a tumour conflated of a melancholious humour, and then properly *Scirr-
us*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sense: but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a schirous tumour, then *Scirr-
us* it selfe. Secondly, of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtion of other humours there do grow three o-
ther differences of tumours, that is to say, *Scirr-
us phlegmonodes*, *ædematodes*, and *erysipelatodes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly, of vnnaturall melancholy caused through a certaine stony hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *Scirr-
us*, hard, and voyde of sense and paine: it is called of *Auic-
en* *purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnaturall melancholie through deustion, are all these kinds of can-
kers ingendred, as well vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kinde is *Scirr-
us can-
crosus*. *Scirr-
us* therefore properly is a tumour very hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a naturall melancholy, and vncorrupt humour; which definition the late Chyrurgians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *Scirr-
us*, as of other tumours besides nature, are three. First primitiue, as is an euill diet ingendring and gathering grosse and me-
lancholicke blood. Secondly antecedent, as a melancholike humour collected in the body, which is drawne from the spleene (whole dutie it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy blood) and yet is not expelled with-
out the body (as it ought to be) Thirdly *coniuncta causa*, is the melanco-
like humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *Scirr-
us* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumor, and mighty resisting, a middle colour betweene a red and a blacke, which is a browne colour. This *Scirr-
us* when it happeneth in the parts of the body, many of the Physitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *Pelidnon*, that is to say, blacke and blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meanes of thick and blacke blood, such as is some-
time purged downward in them which labour with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *Scirr-
us impurus & can-
crosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *Scirr-
us*, do properly agree with the signes of Cancer, as *Galen* writeth 14. *Meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *Scirr-
us*, if this one thing be excepted, namely, that *Scirr-
us* hath not such (wel-
ling and full veines as Cancer hath, except *Scirr-
us* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancrosus*: for *Scirr-
us* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceed of one matter, that is, of a melancholicke humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *Scirr-
us* are these, an hard and stony tumour, very obstinate and resisting tou-
ching

ching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholy humor in y body. Such tumors as are truly *Scirri*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare very small, but in proceſſe of time, they do grow and increaſe by little and little, and become great and mighty, whereof ſome do annoy one onely member, but other ſome of the ſaid tumors do leaue that member which they did firſt infect, & afterwards do paſſe ouer into the poſſeſſion of another, which thing when it happeneth, then *Aniten* calleth the euill *Ferinos*. Furthermore, *Ferinos*, theſe kinds of melancholious humore if they be lightly handled, they are commonly cured by reſolution; oftentimes they continue indurated and hard, and many times (which is worſt of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*.

But now we will proceſſe the abſolute cure of theſe kinds of hard tumors aboue nature, which are called true *Scirri*, and not *exquiſiti*, by three ſpeciall intentions. The firſt preſcribeth a conuenient order of diet. The ſecond admoniſheth to take away the antecedent matter, which is readie to procure the diſeaſe. The third warneth vs to enterpriſe the vacuation of that coniuñct matter (as they call it) which now cauſeth the euill. Therefore to ſpeake generally you muſt appoint to them which are diſeaſed with *Scirrus*, a ſober and moderate diet, and ſuch a one as declineth vnto heate and moiſture in thoſe things which they call *Res non naturales*, as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good blood. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneeked, and baked in an ouen with a ſoft fire, and let it haue ſome leauen, and ſalt as much as ſhall ſuffice. Let his drinke be ſmall ale or beere, giue him ſere egges, the fleſh of chickens, capons, hennes, and the brothes of them. Let him alſo eate the fleſh of Patriches, Pheasants, Quails, young kids, ſucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare old. For pot-herbes, let him vſe that which the Arabians call *Aſpanar*, but we ſomewhat altering the name do call it Spinach, alſo Lettuce, Hops, Borrage, Bugloſſe, & other herbes of that nature which can purge forth blood and make it more pure. To conclude, let him ſie and auoid all thoſe things, which naturally do engender melancholike blood, which things *Galen in libro tertio de affectu capite ſexto* hath deſcribed vnto vs; as are, the fleſh of Goates, and of Oxen, and of Bulls, but eſpecially the fleſh of Aſſes, and of Camels, of Foxes and of dogs, of Hares alſo and of Bores. Furthermore, Snails (if they be accuſtomed to be eaten) and the fleſh of all terreſtriall creatures ſeaſoned with ſalt. The fleſh alſo of fiſhes, as of Tunie, of the fiſh called *Balena*, the ſea Calfe, the Dolphin, the Dog-fiſh, and of all kind of Whales. But of pot-herbes, Coleworts are wont onely to engender this kind of blood. The buds alſo of trees, when they are ſeaſoned either with Brine or with *Oxalme*, eſpecially, of the tree called a Maſtixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the Brier, and of the wild Eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynosbates*.) But of all kind of pulſe, lintels chiefly are accounted amongſt the number of melancholike meates. Bread alſo made of brao, and that which is made of Ric and of other corrupt and naughtie ſeedes, which other countries do vſe in ſtead of corne. Moreover, thicke and blacke wines are very ſit to engender a melancholious humour: eſpecially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occaſion keepe his bodie in great heate.

Finally

The cure of a true & lawfull ſcirrus, yet not exquisite, & growne into a ſtony hardneſſe, altogether inſenſible.

Three intentions.

Vitſuatio.

Euchyma.

Pania.

Potus.

Oua.

Carnes.

Olera.

Carnes.

Limaces.

Piſces.

Olera.

Oxalme is made of vinegar and ſalt.

Leguminum

panis.

Typha.

Vinum.

Cafew.

*Sanguinem
adurentia.*

*Animi pathemata.
Exercitatio.*

2.
Vacuatio materiae antecedentis.

3.
Vacuatio materiae coniunctae

Materia scirrhorum caute tractanda.

*Gal. 2. ad Glauc.
Medicines good for scirrhus.*

Finally old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the body, doth easily breed this kind of humour. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furthermore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, roasted, and fried, which doth vehemently drie vp; of salt meates also, and those which are sharpe and lowre, as Onions, Garlick, Pepper, Mustard, and of other things of that kind which do burne the blood. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse, watchings, heauinesse, carefullnesse, and immoderate exercise. Quietnesse and tranquillitie of mind, with mirth and gladnesse is greatly to be desired: and you must diligently endeaour euery day to emptie the bellie, Hitherto concerning the first scope. 2. Now that we may accomplish that which our second intention doth propound, let vs somewhat consider the precept of *Auicenna*, who willett vs to euacuate the whole body both by blood-letting, if too blacke and grosse blood shall appeare, and also by some purging medicine, which can expell melancholy, as are those which follow out of *Mesua*; *Epithymum*, *Sene*, *Polypody*, *Fumisterre*, which of the Græcians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *Fumaria*) *Lupulus*, and the herbe called *Volubilis*. Also *Cassia fistula*, *Myrabolani Indi*, *Lapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *cyaneus*, the Romanes, *Ceruleus*, *Diacene*, *Diacatholicon*, *Hiera*, *Ruphi*: all which things do purge forth melancholike humours. But these things which pertaine vnto Physicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the professors of the art of Physicke, we will hasten to the third scope, which we shall verie speedily dispatch, if we labour to emptie out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggriued member. Which truly is the generall and principall indication of all tumours which consist aboue nature: in which that leaky matter (as we haue said before) is not yet engendered. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be verie circumspect, and attentiu. For truly the matter of such kind of tumours, is naturally so malignant and stubborne, that it will turne into a stonie hardnesse if it be rashly resolued. Againe, if it be mollified more then is requisite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrefie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We must therefore in this case follow the counsell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicenna*) namely, that in such scirrous affects, we must not apply any vehement, hote, and drying medicine, neither any thing else which hath the power onely to mollifie and moisten. For that tumour which hath a superfluous humour, it doth nothing at all dissolve: but that which hath a small fluxe it doth more dry vp then neede requireth. Hereupon *Auicenna* did well admonish vs, to apply to these indurated tumours by turnes, sometime mollifying, and sometime digesting remedies. But because that order was verie tedious and hard to be done, it pleased *Galen* to vse for the cure of these euils, such medicines as had a mixed and double facultie; which deuise was more safe, and lesse dangerous. For by this meanes we shall both mollifie and digest the indurate and hard substance all at one time: yet in the beginning we must commixe something with them which can moderately repress. For this purpose *Auicenna* hath set downe many kinds of remedies, which because they are rather appointed for these *Scirrhi* which proceed of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* when they

they be exceedingly cooled (as we will declare in the chapters following) we *Razi medica-* will omit them, making choyce of that medicine which *Razi in libro septi-* mentum ad *mo ad Almanforum* hath described, vling notwithstanding at the beginning *scirrhos emol-* some equall represson of the flowing of humours (by applying some mode- *liendos & dist-* rate repelling remedy.) The forme of the medicine is this. *R.* of *Bdellium*, cutiendos, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: beate them in a mortar with oyle de ben, which the Greekes call *Balanum myrsinum*, the Latines, *Glans unguentaria*, or with oile of Lillies. Then take of the filth of Fenugreece, of Linseed, and Figges the weight of the former things: bray them all together till they be thoroughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for *Galen* catathis cure doth greatly commend the barke of the roote *Althaa*, which the *plasma.* common sort (saith he) doth call *Anadendro malache*, as though one would say *Therap. 14.* *Arborescens malua*, melted with the fat of a goose or of a cock, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a Cataplasme. But if the tumour doth *If Scirrus will* belong vnto suppuration, you must be verie warie, lest the affected member *matier.* be incended or stirred vp with hote medicines, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured: but if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof already turned into matter, you must vie the helpe of that ointment which is called *Diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stony hardnesse, you must straightway repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapters following.

But now when as through the vnskilfulnesse and ignorance of Physicians, those inflammations which the Grecians call *Phlegmone* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolued, through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently draw and digest by their vapour, then all that substance which is any thing thinne and slender in them, is dissolued, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together & marvellously dried vp, doth take vnto it a stony hardnesse, and at the last commeth to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus*. But it chanceth sometime, that some member is hardened through extension of the flesh which cometh by reason of winde or by some waterish humour (as we haue said before in our Treatise of flatuous and waterish humours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stony hardnesse caused of the priuation of the moisture of the body, and through too much drynesse, as it hapneth in the hardnesse of the ioynts, and in the pores of the body, when the goutte or such like diseases do reigne. But here we will onely discourse of *Scirrhi*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *Phlegmone* or *Erysipelas*, or else from *Oedema*, when as they be often refrigerated and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Scirrhi ex coincidentia pro-* *creati*, that is, *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnity, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus* which is not exquisite or perfect are these: a hard tumour, scarce sensible, that is, as though it were without feeling and paine, perfectly representing the colour of the body, drawing his beginning from vnaturall melancholy. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is it easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force,

Scirrus illeptus & non exquisitus. Quando generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the parts of the body.

Scirrhi ex coincidentia pro-

The signes of an vnlawfull Scirrhus.

*Indicia.**Scirrhus ex-
quisitus cura-
tionem non ad-
mittit.**Scirri incur-
biles.**Summa cura-
dorum scirra-
tum.**Medulla cervi.**Adipes.**Gal. 14. meth.
med.**Anadendro
malache.**Oleum reciniū**14 Meth. med.**Vfus Aceti.*

is clammy, glewly, and thicke, or (as *Galen* saith) a partaker of both kinds, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humiditie thereof is thoroughly resolved, then that which remaineth behinde is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue any cure. But if it may be holpen any way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which cometh through too much exsiccation, and when the moisture of the body is cleane extinguished, is also incurable; for it is sufficient if you stoppe it, that the drinesse may proceed no further. But those *Scirrh*i also, wherein there do grow certaine haire, and which are great and very hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Auicenna* hath declared.

The common and generall declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is contained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib. 14. Metho. med.*) is this, euen to cleanse and draw out that corruption which stubburnly doth cleave vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently draw and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying and moistening remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within very few daies greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truly when the whole substance which is very thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behind, is turned into a certaine stony concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and scirrhous affects, but such remedies onely which can fidly both mollifie, and also digest, as are these things following: the marrow of a Hart and of a calfe, also Goates suet, Bulles suet, the tallow of a Lybard and of a Lion. Among the fat of birds, Goose grease is greatly commended, next that the fat of a Cocke and of a Pheasant. Also *Ammoniacum Thymiana*, viz *Suffimen*, perfume, *Galbanum*, and *Bdellium* of both kinds, but rather that which is called *Scithycum*, because it is somewhat moist. *Styrax* also which is something moist and fat. Moreouer the roote of *Althea*, and of the wild Mallow, which groweth almost euery where, the leaues whereof must be moderately boyled with Goose or Cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse Swines grease: these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicenna* warneth vs not to commixe any Hogges tallow that is salted with the former things, and to vse Masticke, *Labdanum*, oyle of wooll, *Strigmenta gymnasiorum* (which they call the filthinesse of bathes) Asses dung, and the dregs of oile of Lillies, of oile of *Alchanna* which they call *Cyprium*, and of *Cherua*, which of the Greeks is called *κίρκον*, but of the Latines *Recinium*. But that cure which is administred by Vineger is profitable for this cuill, that is, for *Scirrhus* which is full growne, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly saith he, the force of Vineger, if it be vsed moderately and in due time, is very whole some

wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resolue the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applyed immoderately and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner parts, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become very hard; also if it be vsed long, it will diminish and corrupt the very substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore we must not very often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of Vineger. Wherefore Galen did cure the child of one *Cercilius*, who through too much cooling and vehement binding of *Erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrous tumor remaining in his thigh, after this manner. First, he annointed his thigh with *Oleum sabinum*, which of all oiles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these dayes *Oleum sambucinum*, oile of Elder, which the common sort call *Iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the members, he applyed *Ammoniacum Thymiana*, which must be grosse and not very old, commixed with the aforesaid suets and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with verie fat *Ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe Vineger, and commanded the child to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment might be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could releate and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderate and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the child. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawne together and covered with *Scirrhus*, you must vse Vineger after this sort as Galen counsel- leth vs: Take a stone and heate it very hote in the fire; and quenche it in very sharpe Vineger: if it be possible, let the stone be that which we call *Pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *Lapis molaris*, which the Greeks call *Mylites*: then let the affected member be holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the Vineger, that it may receiue the stemming vapour, which doth dissolue *Scirrhus*; and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery dayeuen from the beginning thoroughly annointed with oyle and not with water, which oyle must not be astringent in any case, but of a thin substance, as is oile of *Sapine*. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *Althea*, and of the wild Cucum- ber, and other things of that sort. By this method of curing, many men truly haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as Galen saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainly appeare, that with that cure which we accomplish by mollify- ing remedies as well in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and deuide, among which number Vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnes of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing, ho- ping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now fol- loweth the summe of the cure of *Scirrhus* tumors, which we haue drawn into a copendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kind of *Scirrhus* which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growne into a stony hard- nes, and is altogether destitute of sence, (as is that which Galen calleth *exquisi- tus Scirrhus*) of such a *Scirrhus* I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an

Historia.

Lib. 2. ad

Glaucnem.

Oleum sabinu.

Suffimentum.

The cure of

Scirrhus, st.

newes, and

reines, out of

Galen and

Paulus.

Lapis mylites.

Lapis pyrites.

Oleum sabinum.

2. ad Glaucnem

The summe of

curing scir-

rhous tumors.

1.

2. euill incurable. 2. To *Scirrhus non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feelth any thing, apply such medicines as carrie with them a maruellous heate, and a meane moisture, that is to say, which by mollifying, can also moderately digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *Scirrhus* minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, and immoderately drie vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abideth still behind is dried vp and turned into a stonie hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members, which are annoyed with *Scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commix such medicines as haue power to cut and diuide, as in Vineger, with those remedies which can mollifie and moderately digest. 5. Also command that this scirrhus member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *Scirrhus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *Lapumolaris* burnt in the fire, and quenched in Vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggriued member be euery day annointed with some thin oyle, wherein either the roote of the wilde Cucumber, or of *Althaea*, or greene and fresh Dill, or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaid scirrous members such medicines as can drie, diuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately, that is to say, neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season; that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to prevent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such scirrous tumours as are not indurated and of a stonie hardnesse, let them be cured with such medicines as can filly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a scirrhus spleene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisdom of the Physition.

CHAP. XXVI.

*Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly
call Cancer Apoftematosus.*

*Cancer pertai-
neth vnto two
kinds of disea-
ses.*

- 1.
2. *Of what hu-
mour cancer is
engendred.
Cancer sine
vlcere.
Cancer cum
vlcere.*

THe name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, amongst the Physitions and Chyrurgians hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kinds of diseases, that is to say, vnto a cancerous tumour (which they call commonly *Cancer Apoftematosus*, as well that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body, as in the hips, the roose of the mouth, and in the pappes of a woman.) The other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate *Cancer*. But both these euils are engendred of melancholy, that is to say, of such a humour as resembleth the dregges of Wine, and the filthinesse of oyle, which thing *Galen libro desimo quarto Therapentices*, and in his little booke, *De tumoribus preternaturam*, doth plainly testifie. Now this aforesaid humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *Cancer* without any vlcere. But if it hapneth to be sharp, fierce and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a *Cancer* with an vlcere. But here we will openly discourse of that kinde of *Cancers* which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not yet

yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuie Cancre. That Cancre therefore whereof we now intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about it swolne and puffed vp: it is blew or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then an inflammation: it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are; it sodainely increaseth, and greatly warieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in the Greeke it is called *καρκίνος*, and *καρκίνωμα*, which title as well the Latines as the Græcians haue assigned to this disease of the fish called a Crabbe, because the veines about this euill are filled and stretched out, very like vnto the feete of Crabs, descending from the round compasse of their bodies. But some haue giuen it this name, because it is very hardly pulled away from those members which it doth lay hold on, as the sea Crab doth, who obstinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumor doth also represent the colour of a Crab, whose hew is very blacke. But the first beginnings of these Cancres are sometime so confused and so small, that the common sort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do begin, they do scarce resemble the greatnesse of a pease or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruell (saith *Galen*) though the common sort do not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that arise out of the earth, which are not discerned but of skillfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into such huge greatnesse, and do bring with them so vehement, great, and manifest symptomes, that a child may easily discern them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, seeing all men with one consent do terine this kind of disease *Cancer*, because (as we haue said) the veines in this euill do swell on euery side, and are greatly stretched out, and they do represent the forme and likenesse of a Crab. A cancerous tumor (as we haue said before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainly appeare. It hath a blew or browne colour, which is a meane betweene red and blacke, called of the Greeks *μικτός*. About the place where Cancer is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulse, and as it were a pricking, sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) the tumour is asleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to swell and rise vp, like vnto the Cancer in the armies. Oftentimes also in some they are secretly hidden, and when the place is touched, it is felt in some very painefull, but in other some it is contrary. This tumour also is maruellously stout, and resisteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine strange and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *Carcinoma* generally is a grienous and pernicious disease, for it can scarcely be healed any way, by reason of the grosnesse of the humour, neither can it be repressed or discussed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice also of this disease is so great, that it contemneth all gentle and easie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to them, (as the prouerbe is) but it must be stirred and chafed, and overcome with very vehement remedies (as we are wont to do in the euill called *Crabro*.) This disease is wont to happen in every part of the body, but especially in the vpper parts, about the face, the nostrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and those chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menstruis.

*Cancrosum
in descriptio.*

*Canceri nomen
à Cancro
aquatico.*

*Canceri nota
per initia con-
fusa, & ob-
scure.*

*Lib. 14. Ther-
rap.*

*Note Canceri
evidentis non
ulcerati.*

*Iudicia.
Lib. 14. Ther.*

Celsus lib. 5.

*Gal. lib. 2. ad
Glaucanem.*

But Cancre do also commonly haunt men, whose accustomed purgings are suppressed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them that grosse and thicke bloud (wherupon this euill taketh his first beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer when this melancholious humor, resembling in proportion the dregs of wine, doth descend and flow into any member, and there abideth compact together, it causeth sometime the disease called *Varices*, and sometime it breedeth a Cancre, as when the same is somewhat cooled. But when it is thrust out to the whole skin, it causeth that euill which they call *Elephans*. Cancre therefore is a certaine particular *Elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *Lepra*, the Lepry. But the thicker and the blacker the bloud is whereof Cancre proceedeth, the more dangerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full grown (as they say) and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be pulled vp by the roots, either by section or by aduulsion: but those Cancre which haue their constitution in the inward parts of the

Apho. 38. lib. 6

bodie, do not desire any such kind of cure, as the ancient *Hippocrates*, simply the Prince of Physitions, hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward Cancre: for when they are cured, they do loone perish againe, but when they are not cured, they remaine a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vpon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these Cancre either by section or vsion, do rather increase their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those Cancre therefore are onely curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and so do weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chyrurgian: and these tumours also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name

*What Cancre
must be rooted
out, and what
not.*

the rootes of Cancre, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veines which are full of melancholicke bloud, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate Cancre there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumour, when as in processe of time the humour doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when

*An exulcerate
Cancre worst
of all.*

it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnadvisedly ministred. This exulcerate Cancre of all other is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist the true cure, which attempteth and worketh all things to bring the sicke member vnto health; for this tumour, to cure it perfectly and absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vebement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked and stirred to anger, & therefore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by the. It shal therefore be sufficient to hinder the increasing of vnulcerate Cancre, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hip-*

*What things
do foretell ex-
ulceration.
Curatio cancri
non vlcerati.*

pocrates also admonished vs of in his former Aphorisme. For those tumours which do weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward Cancre, wherein both their vehement heate and their great pulse or beating, do threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a Cancre which is not yet vlcerate, but newly begun, hath three principall inten-

tions.

tions. 1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholicke humor 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour disperſed throughout the whole body 3. The third is to digeſt the humour which poſſeſſeth the affected member, and to ſtrengthen and confirme the diſeaſed place. The firſt intention is finiſhed by a juſt and due obſervation of that kind of diet, which is before deſcribed in the Chapters *de Scirrholoſiſmo*. But among other things this is chiefly and principally to be obſerved, namely, that ſuch nourishments be given to the diſeaſed, as have vertue to refrigerate and moiſten, and which do engender good and ſlender iuyce, as are theſe; the iuyce of Barley ſteeped in water and preſſed, fiſhes of gravelly places, birds of all kinds, ſave thoſe which live in ſennie grounds, the yolkes of eggs, but ſpecially of rere eggs, (which the Græcians call *πόρτα*) and other things of that ſort. But if any extreme heate ſhall infect the aggrieved place, and yet without a feauer, you may ſafely giue him heifers milke, from the which the butter is taken, or elſe the whey of milke. Pot-herbes alſo which have a coole and moiſting nature, as Mallowes, Orach, Spinage and when time ſerueth Gourds. Citrons alſo and Borage may be given him in meate. The ſecond ſcope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humor, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accompliſhed by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholie, whereof you may find plentie in the Chapter of *Scirrhus*: among the which *Epythimum* (which the Romanes call *Inuolucrum*) as a preſent remedie, doth obtaine the prebeminence, whereof you muſt take foure drammes ſteeped in the whey of milke, or in *Mulſa*, (as *Galen* comandeth *lib. 14 Meth. med.*) But this quantitie of *Epythimum*, or ſomewhat more, muſt be offered euery third day. that the melancholicke humour which is gathered together in the veines, and cauſeth the generation of Cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, becauſe it is impoſſible to euacuate all at one time. But we cannot alwayes prohibite the fluxe, leſt afterward the like humour be engendred in the bodie, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter muſt be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of ſome ſimple medicine: afterward (if the matter ſo requireth, and the miniſtring of ſimples doth little auaille) you may vſe the helpe of ſome compound remedies, as is that medicine of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholie, which conſiſteth of two & thirtie ſimples, or *Hiera Ruſſi*, or *Hiera Auicenna*, which is made of blacke *Helleborus*. But you muſt not deſiſt from thoſe former rehearſed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humour which is ſtuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beſet with this cancrus tumour, be thoroughly reduced to his naturall ſtate. But if nothing do let it, as age & ſtrength, it ſhall not be amiſſe in theſe Cancres to let bloud, and then to purge (as we haue ſaid before.) and if they be women, you muſt labour to purge menſtruis, if they be not about fifte yeares old (as *Galen* bath taught vs *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*.) This ſecond indication (ſaith *Galen*) is the firſt and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the firſt place, doth rightly challenge the ſecond degree. The generall manifeſtation therefore (ſaith he) of the cure of a Cancre, conſiſteth in the ſpeedy emptying out of that humour whereof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and

Primus ſcopus

Viſturatio
tenuis ſit &
probi ſucci.

Secundus ſcopus.

Humoris melancholici
vacuatio.

Epythimum,

Hiera Ruſſi
Hiera Auicenna.Sanguinis
miſſio.Lib. 14. meth.
medendi.

Tertius scopus.

*Quod aptum
medicamentum
canceris.*

Lib. 14. Ther.

*Succi Solani,
Diapompholygos.
Diaphenicon
sem diapalma
unguentum
Diapompholygos
Theodoric.*

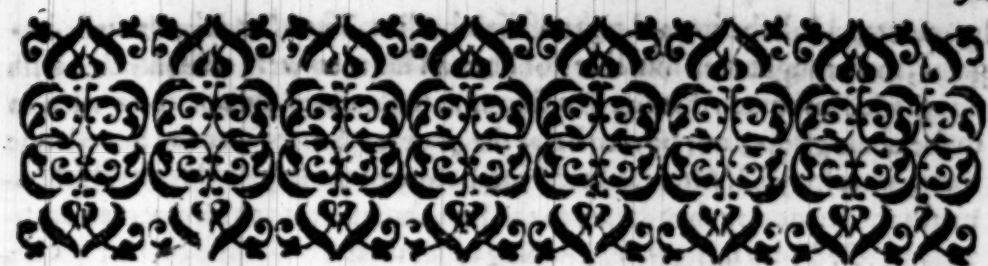
stopping thereof, and to foresee, (if it be possible) that this melancholious humour be not collected in the veines by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to passe, you must euacuate the humour by turnes, now some and then some: and you must also endeavour to strengthen the member, lest the abundance of the humours do plenusfully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is general to all such diseases comming of the flowing of humours, doth will vs to digest the humour which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the same, lest the humours abundantly haue accesse thereunto: moreouer you must appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowne, and that in the beginning, as well in the very time of purging, as before; but now when the whole bodie is thoroughly purged, then may you lawfully endeavour to digest, and if there went before but a small & meane purging, then you must apply some remedie which hath a mixed facultie, that is to say, which can both repressle and digest. Now, that we may iustly accomplish these intentions, we must make choise of those medicines which are of a meane force, and of a gentle qualitie, for such remedies are most conuenient for these diseases. For those which carry with them a weake and feeble power, do worke no effect (as *Galen* saith) but are easily overcome: but such remedies as are strong and mightie, do vehemently either digest or thrust backe the thinne blood which lyeth in the veines, but the grosse and melancholicke parts, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge forth nor repressle, but rather do make them more obstinate and more hard to be dissolued and discussed. Therefore to cure these Cancries but yet beginning, you must vse medicines of a meane and moderate strength, which neither for their imbecillitie can be vanquished, nor for the vehemencie can mightily thicken the blood. Furthermore you must apply (as it is said) such medicines as are gentle, and which do not gnaw or bite: because the malignity of the euill through such vehement medicines is stirred and prouoked, & made more fierce and lauage (as we commonly terme it) But when the matter whereof these Cancries do come, is for the most part grosse, and thicke, and disobedient to resolution, and partener also with many other vicious humors, we shall deale sufficiently in this case (especially when we teare the danger of Chyrurgerie, & that the euill cannot otherwise be cured) if we by the vse of the former remedies, which are made of burnt & washed mettals (as *Galen* counselleth) shall stop and hinder their growing and increasing, especially if they be great tumors: or else after the opinion of *Anicn*, if we seeke to defend the fro vlceration. For the which intentions, *Galen lib. 2. ad Glaucon*, doth greatly commend the iuyce of Nightshade, & that medicine which is made of *Phospholygos*, or that which consisteth of *Chalcites* commonly called *Diapalma*. Theretore *Theodoricus* also for the same purpose, appointed the ointment named *Diapompholygos*, which is made of oile of Roses, of white waxe, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.v.$ of the iuyce of red Pomegranats, & of Nightshade, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.iiij.$ of Ceruse washed. $\mathfrak{z}.ij.$ of lead burnt and wathed, of *Pompholygos*; which is commonly called *Turbia*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ of Frankincence $\mathfrak{z}. \beta.$ *Galen* also reporteth *libro primo de compositione pharmacorum secundum locos*, which booke is entituled of the ancient interpreter *Myamis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Apollonius* for vicers appearing in the

the head which the Greekes call *Achora*: which oyntment he affirmeth to be *Appolonij* me-
 very effectually against the cancrus tumours. The medicine is this: *R.* of *dicamentum*,
 oyle of Roses, or of ripe Oliues, *Hemina*, which the Greekes call *Cotyle*, viz. The force of
 3 vij.℔. which must be infused or put into a leaden mortar, and stirred vp and lead is maruel-
 downe with a leaden ladle, or else brayed with a leaden pestill so long till it *low incancred*
 waxe thicke and blacke resembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it tumours.
sele Lythargyrum lib. i. of Ceruse as much, and commixe them with the oyle, *Paulus lib. 4.*
 and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all such *ex Archigene.*
 cancrus dispositions, especially that which is burnt and washed, all men may
 sufficiently know, which haue had some experience thereof, and which haue
 studiously perused those things which *Galen libro nouo de simplicium medica-*
mentorum facultate, doth write of lead, which he himselfe calleth in Greeke
Molybdos. For this cancrus disease *Paulus* and *Auicenna* do greatly commend
 the Emplaister made of sea Crabbes, especially if it be mingled with an equall
 quantity of the scourings of Brasse. Take therefore of sea Crabbes burned,
 and of the offall of brasse an euen portion, beate them to flower and strew the
 vpon the tumour, or else lay on the ashes of the Crabbes with a seare cloath
 or cerate. But the same *Auicenna* willerh to plucke vp these little cancrus hard
 by the rootes, or else to cut them off, and then to wring and crush out the
 thicke blood on euery side, and afterward seare the place with some hote in-
 strument. For this doth dissipate the reliques of the matter, and consumeth *Lib. 14. Meth.*
 them, it strengtheneth the member and stoppeth the fluxe of blood. *Galen med.*
 also before *Auicenna* his time, did allow that cancrus might sometime be cured
 by Chyrurgery. But truly although *Galen* and *Auicenna* do permit this ma- *Chyrurgery*
 nall cure by Chyrurgery, yet to auoide the danger of immoderate fluxe of *not rashly to*
 blood and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the sicke, omittung those things, *be used in*
 we ought to follow the prescript rule of curing, which is onely accomplished *cancer.*
 by gentle and milde medicines, as a more safe way and lesse troublesome, and
 to content our selues with that onely method: because that if such a cancrus
 tumour which is growne to a mightie bignesse, should be cut round about in
 those places which are ioyned to the whole parts, the danger of immode-
 rate profusion of blood would straight follow, by reason of the greatnesse of
 the vessell and wideoesse of the arteries, which parts (saith *Galen*) if you
 should take and bind them with cordes, the other members by reason of
 their neare acquaintance would be troubled and greatly grieved. Moreouer
Celsus saith, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a scarre, *Lib. 5.*
 yet they will returne againe, and giue occasion of death. But if you intend to
 seare off the roots of this euill, yet truly you cannot do this neither with-
 out hurting of the next parts, especially if you make exustion neare vnto the
 principall members. Great Cancri therefore, and those which are inueterate *Capita cura-*
 must neither rashly be burned with any instrument, nor cut off with a pen- *tionis Cancri*
 knife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue said before.) For *non vlcera-*
 many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicine to take
 away this euill, but by the onely ministring of easie and gentle remedies,
 which can as it were please or delight, haue so hindered the tumours, that
 they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripenesse. Now followeth the

- summe of the cure of *Cancer non ulceratus*, which is yet in beginning, and doth occupie the outward parts of the body, briefly in these words. 1. Ioprimis in a Cancre which is but new'y begun, and which consisteth of no very thicke humour, nor causeth the veines to swell greatly, purge out the melancholicke humour which causeth this euill vniuersally throughout the whole bodie. 2. If age and strength do suffer it, cut a veine in the elbow, and draw out as much blood as need requireth. 3. Afterward minister to the sicke such medicines as can purge melancholicke downward: in the beginning let them be gentle and easie, but afterward somewhat vehement, increasing their force by little and little. 4. If the purging of menstruis in women before fiftie yeares of age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be suppressed, that blood aboundeth not at times now and then, you must prouoke them by all meanes possible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the sicke a thionie diet which can engender good iuyce, and cause no melancholicke blood. 6. If you cannot auoide it, but that a grosse and melancholious humour be gathered together in the veines, you must euacuate the same by turnes, both with simple and compound medicines. But these former Aphorismes do pertaine vnto the Physition: now we wil declare the duty of a Chyrurgian. 7. Apply vnto the affected member both before purging, and in the very time of purging, such medicines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuersally purged, then vse digestiue remedies, but let them be such as are of a moderate strength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore minister to the aggriued place iuyce of Nightshade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which consisteth of *alcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that sort. 9. But if by the art of Chyrurgery you dare enterprise the cure of *Cancer*, you must first (take the Physitions counsell) purge forth the melancholicke humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and suffer a good quantity of blood to come forth, and wring the thicke blood out of the adioyning parts, and afterward cure the disease after the manner of other vlcers.

The end of the fifth Booke.





THE SIXTH BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBVS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

*Of the diuerse names of the grieſe which I minde to ſpeake of,
and where it had beginning.*



Having promiſed to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now ſpying many faults in the firſt print and in the ſecond, I will performe my promiſe, and amend the faults eſcaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my cuntry: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth reigne in all the world at this day, in

great fury and raging manner: in ſo much that it ſpareth none of what degree or calling ſoeuer they be of, (if they ſeek for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it ſearcheth them. This grieſe hath gotten many names, and ſo many as come to my memorie I will rehearſe, and where they were firſt begotten. Firſt, the Spaniards borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in ſtead of their gold, and afterwards *Charles* the eighth, King of France, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in ſhedding of bloud, ſparing neither man, woman, nor child; in ſo much that he ſpoiled a great part of Italy, and ſubdued the Dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and ſpoile to all the common wealth of Florence: and at the laſt he came to Rome and Naples with his whole hoſt, ſpoyling all as he went with great crueltie: and for his hire, this diſeaſe began firſt to ſhew it ſelfe plentifully among his people, and ſpecially becauſe his ſouldiers were much giuen to venerie. The Frenchmen at that ſiege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the firſt finding of this grieuous ſickneſſe, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his coming home, ſo that all Chriſtendome may curſe the King and *Columbus*. This grieſe at the firſt was ſo extreme, cruell and ſo mercileſſe, that it moleſted thoſe which were infected therewith, euen the head, eyes, noſe, palate of the mouth, ſkinne, fleſh, bones,

ligaments, and all the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* travelled againe, and brought with him little gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: insomuch that the Physicians in those dayes did not know what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were spoyled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the Spaniards for friendship they beare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their curtizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian countrey. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kind hearts) fel in loue with them, and (being raniſhed with their beauty) dealt with them to their great cost and trouble to this day. Now to the variety of the names: First, the Italians call it *Morbum Gallicum*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicam*, because it first appeared amongst the Frenchmen at the siege beforenamed. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victory, and for that they had this sicknes. And they also call it *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the Spaniards first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans call it *Menium*; why they should so terme it I know not wel, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuie parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*: the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patnyſa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interpret it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendentagra*, because it first infecteth the priuie parts both of men and women: and we in our country call it the French disease. But howſoeuer it be called it skilleth not, so that we know how to helpe it, which I mind to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

BUt first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those that are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease; as by the effects following it may appeare; and after the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion, it resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proccede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the causes of the sicknesse, or also of some symptomes or consequents thereof; and because it chiefly beginneth in the Liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signe as *Analogia morbi*: for all signes that can giue certaine testimonie and shew thereof, are contained vnder the affects, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, some are *Symptomes*, and some be *Morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be these, falling of haire, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I call *Morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumors of the shins, and other parts of the body, with pustules, &c: which follow this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vpon the Sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, increase, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kind of long disease, great reason there is why it should haue his distinct times, and according to the diuersitie of those times there happeneth

happeneth diuerse *Symptomata*. For one kind of symptomes happen at the beginning of this disease: another kind to the state or vigour, &c. And therefore I will diuide all symptomes into two sorts, to wit, those that follow and properly belong vnto this grief, beginning at those which follow the same being inueterate & confirmed; and these next ensuing be of the first sort. Straight wayes after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himselfe a certaine lassitude or wearines come vpon all his members without any outward occasion, as walking, or mouing, &c. which for sheweth this cruell disease, and happeneth vnto them which are most strong and lusty before. There is perceiued also a lumpish heauines in the whole body, a dulnesse, faintnes, lithernes, or slownesse to moue in all the members. The occasion of this, is the infection of the naturall spirits, which are the immediate instruments of the facultie sustaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whose infection, the body waxeth more heauie and wearisome then it was before. Moueouer, there is a certaine paine or ach, which wandereth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this lassitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by and by it leaueth the head and goeth into the shoulders, and from the one shoulder into the other. Out of the shoulder it flecteth into the legs, the one of them or the other, and in like sort may it be said of all other members. The cause of this is a certaine vapor which beginneth to rise vp from the Liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begotten: but by reason of that seruent heat of the liuer caused by infection, there is ingendred a certaine small vapor, whereof do grow these wandering or flecting pains. Thirdly, when the disease hath begun, & hath a litle preuailed, the colour of the face is changed; you shall see the most beautiful, liuely, and cleane complexion of the skin, in three or foure dayes space changed into a much worse course then before; and what manner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a litle from that it was before, the colour is altered, the liuely spirits in the eyes be changed, the mouth, lips, and cheekes sometimes are changed from their naturall comelines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement and knowledge therein) there is vnder the eyes a wan-coloured or blewish circle, such as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding these things in him, consider with your selfe whether he passeth measure in drinking, in watching, or sleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care; and if it happen not through one of these, then may you iudge he is taken with this disease. Fourthly, there is wont to breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the hands, and the soles of the feete, yea euen in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporious spirits, taking their beginning of the Liuer, which being infected, the face also is affected, and the extreme parts or viter most members are sore distempered with heate. Fifthly, you may adde a drouinesse, or a disposition to sleepe oftentimes interrupted: And this is caused through a turbulent vapour, which is increased through the infection and heate. Sixly, you may adde heauinesse, and sadnesse of the mind: for though a pleasant and merrie nature should be infected with this disease, yet he shall straightway be sad, and giuing to pensiuenesse, and euen grone therewith. This infection increasing, burneth the blond, which sendeth vp troublous and noysome vapours vnto the head.

7. and seate of the mind. Suently, the patient sometime hath a feauer, because of the heate which is about the distempered parts: but this seldome chanceth:
8. The eight is the appearance of some putrified matter, and this is *Signum Pathognomicum*, a signe to discover the maladie. Therefore as oftentimes as you shall see this putrified matter, yet small in quantity about the priuie place, and know no occasion to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the French disease. And what is the reason? This *caries* or matter cannot happen but of two causes: either because the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten and gnawne the fine skinne of the yard; or else because the contagion is communicated and imparted vnto the Liuer by the naturall spirits, and the Liuer expelleth those infected spirits and sanious matter vnto the priuie parts. Of this
9. *caries*, how it may be knowne when it cometh of *Morbus Galicus*, and when it is caused otherwise, I will speake afterwards. In the ninth place succeedeth *Bubo*, and that not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after which act there came vpon him a heauinesse of his members, and a sadnesse of the mind, and after two or three dayes there appeareth *Bubo parvus*, that is to say, a small tumor in the armeholes or share, which is painefull, not growne to any greatnesse: this signifieth that the disease is yet gentle, and in the beginning, but the cause of this is the greatnesse by the purging places of the Liuer, and therefore the Liuer disburdeneth himselfe by sending the disease vnto them, and hereof cometh *Bubo*. The latter signe of this disease at the beginning is *Gonorrhoea Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this *Proteus*. After the first coming of this disease, for the space of fortie yeares, there was nor ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*: but the nature of this disease is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoea Gallica* hath not bene seene aboue these fve and thirtie yeares. Therefore we may looke for new and strange *Symptomates*, I pray God they be light and easie to be holden. Now how this *Gallica Gonorrhoea* is to be discerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter declare, to avoid tediousnesse in this place. The cause of this *Gonorrhoea* is *labefactatio spirituum*, weakning and subuersion of the spirits which rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the testicles and spermaticke vessels, by reason whereof the strength of those parts, is dissolued: so that they cannot keepe their seed but it continually droppeth forth. But now let vs speake of those signes which are appropriated to the disease in his progresse or confirmation: and first, of hard pustules in the whole body, and the same grievous and deformed in the head and beard, sometime with sanious matter, sometime without it. And know you, the disease cannot be aboue the age of fve or fixe monethes at the most when these *symptomates* appeare. And if the disease beginneth in the Winter, it shall bring forth the crusts in the beginning of Sommer: if it beginne in the Spring time, his cruils appeare in Autumme, &c.
- 10.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules.

1. **A**ND the chiefe causes of this breaking out of pustules are these: First, because the matter infected is sent thither from the Liuer. Secondly, because
2. the parts infected do not digest and expell (by way of transpiration) his excrements

ments, and therefore they remaine in it still; and grow vnto crusts. The third
 signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy parts, which
 either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and there-
 fore as often as you see the *caries* in the priue parts healed, and that there re-
 maine *Calli* or hardnesse about the place where it was, be you assured that
 this is *Galicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wish that you remember this,
 when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesse be most manifest and cer-
 taine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the
uvula; the *uvula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so,
 much moisture commeth to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *rancido*
oris, a great hoarsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth, when you
 shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *uvula* full of
 moisture, and (if the patient haue no catarrhe) say that it is *morbis Galicus* con-
 firmed. The cause of the humectation or moistnesse of the *uvula*, is the natu-
 rall spirits infected and changed which is carried with the blood of the veines,
 throughout the whole bodie, and because it is so infected and weakned there-
 fore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomacke, and maketh euill
 digestion. Therefore the same stomacke aboundeth with fleame in the braine,
 and it doth not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mu-*
cus, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by reason of the weaknesse
 of the spirits, engendred of flegmaticke blood, with vnnaturall humours. If
 they be alterward by accesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very grie-
 uous and vehement. No maruell therefore, if this abundance of moist hu-
 mours fall to the *uvula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the blood
 be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haire
 be consumed, so that they fall, it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the
 nose: it perisheth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other
Symptomates. The cause of hoarsenes of the voice, is humidity and excrements
 which do stop and let the waies of the voice. Fifthly, you may adde the tumours
 of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this, be
 you out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For the
 infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emunctory*
 places, that is, glandules. And sixthly, adde thereunto the corruption of the
 palate of the mouth, and of the teeth: and when you see these, looke not to
 any greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seventh place I put
 outrageous and continuall paine, making the patient euen to crie out: this
 beginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth
 not fully vntill midnight; and these most orqueilous and extreme paines are
 caused of a very moist and maligne vapour, which riseth vp from the liver, and
 from the excrements be acquired and gathered by euill nourishment in euery
 part, & especially about the *periosteum* that is, the rime which couer the bones
 of euery part. And in the eight place, I remember corruption of the bones
 in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vicer. How may you
 know the bones to be corrupted, the skinne remaining whole and sound, I
 will hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromatous*,
 that is, tumours which yeeld a tough slimie matter. These of some writers are

10. called *Bubata* or *Gummata*, by a similitude take of trees. For in *Morbo Gallico* tumours do grow like the gummies which issue out of trees, and this happeneth either because the party himselfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the Liver communicateth and sendeth vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, maligne vlcers in all the parts of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinn, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensive matter. To conclude, there succeed this disease sometime their effects, as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to be past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in procelle of time following, the wayes how to assuage and cure all the *Symptomes*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such wayes and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without danger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them, by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOW after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceed and declare also the cure. And vnderstand you, that the wayes of curing thereof are manifold and diuers, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any method of curing, but was alwayes opened by the experiments of Emperickes; for *Hap* and *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse wayes of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which is in yong men, strong and lusty, able to endure sweate, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing, or playing at tennis, or such like, hath bene a sufficient remedie for this euill in the beginning: for by it the heate so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renewed and made more pure and apt to overcome the infection: and therefore it is not to be marvelled, if by this meanes the Liver sometimes purgeth himselfe, when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *Febris putrida* cease and take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *Febris hectica* the patients are healed by medicines alwayes which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning, and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts it is possible that the spirits may be restored of themselues; for this affect is in the spirits. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeed by procuring a great sweate haue bene cured, but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

There is another way that Empericks haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is per *Suffumigia*. The Ancients cured indeed diuerse affects by suffumigations.

migrations: but the Emperickes trying alwayes to helpe this affect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex Cinabari*, yet this oftentimes hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the wayes of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them,

CHAP. VI.

Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.

HAving thus farre proceeded in this matter, we will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present *in substantia*, wherewith is ioyned *feruor*, out of the which groweth a hote distemper and excrementous matter; first therefore naturall, and that whensoever you go about to cure this disease: for the verie Emperickes do that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humors may offend either in quantitie, or in qualitie, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantitie onely, first we must giue him a lenitiue medicine, either of *Cassia*, or *sirup. Ras. sol* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of bloud in the liuer may so be tempered & allwaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterwards to be expelled. Thirdly for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagion infecteth the liuer, vnto the which as their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse, it becometh reuulsion to be made from the inward parts vnto the outward, as in bloud letting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth Phlebotomy: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloud letting, and the veine that is to be opened is *Hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that long time we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease (for the most part) the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the Liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnaturall matter vnto his excretory place, if we should cut the veine the patient hauing them vpon him, we might haply thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the Liuer, to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined amongst learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, lest the matter (as I said before) should be drawne againe vnto the Liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painfull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humors.

After the patient hath bene let bloud, as his strength may permit, the time well serueth to prepare his humours: and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwayes the same mixture of humours that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exustamateria*, this *pituita* ought to be prepared, first by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines you shall finde plentie in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, stegmatick and melancholicke humors and quixt humors, and then let vs come to the cure.

Of the certaine and true medicine of the disease.

IN the cure of this disease, after euacuation is made, the state and temperature of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered the bodie prepared by the medicines before sufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed, and comforted againe as before we haue declared: if we see the disease continue still, and not yeeld to all this ministration, we ought then to come vnto that which maketh the true and certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of it selte hath a knowne vertue, both to alter and restore the Liuer to his naturall estate: and this is the decoction of *Lignum Guaicum*, otherwise called *Lignum Indicum*, and *Lignum Sanctum*, which medicine was found out by chance, and confirmed by great experience to cure this disease, the patient obseruing a very slender diet, and drinking the decoction, in which there is a vertue to attenuate, and power to ouercome this disease.

CHAP. IX.

What sort of that wood is to be chosen as best for this purpose.

- N**OW sithence it is determined that for this purpose to vse this wood is best, it is necessarie to shew also the manner of vsing this wood, concerning which you ought to obserue these things. First what manner wood, and what maner rind is to be chosen for the best. Secondly the preparation: Thirdly the way of giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vsed in ministring it. First concerning the election or choise of the wood, I say it is not to be doubted, alwayes to choose that which is of most vertue, and that is *Lignum sanctum*, which is yellowish and fatte, hauing no blacknesse in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs vse *Guaicum*, whereof there is more plentie. Moreouer, in both kinds of this wood the meane sort is best: we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane sort, which is not altogether blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither slender, nor grosse. I choose this middle sort, because it hath more vntuositie and oylishnesse in it then the other which is growne vnto age. For if the same vntuositie doth more abound in the yonger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we ought to choose that which is best in respect of the disease, to wit, in a confirmed disease, the most vertufull and efficacious, as is *Lignum sanctum* of middle age: but if the disease be not so greatly confirmed, but light and easie, we may vse that which is of a more weaker operation, both in *genere* and *specie*. Furthermore, regard must be had also of the patient his age, for in an old bodie, the old plant is most conuenient: for one that is yong, and strong, the middle sort is to be chosen. Fifthly, in choosing this wood, we must consider of the time of the yeare: for in a cold season, as in the Winter, we ought to vse the hotter, sharper, and bitterer kind, which we may iudge by our senses: in the Sommer time, that which is lesse sharpe, and least of all bitter, either of an old or yong tree. And the markes whereby we may discern the best from the other, of the wood of the old tree, which hath in

it great quantity of blacknes, are these: it is very bigge, and hath a grosse and thicke rinde, which so cleaueth vnto the wood, that beneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rinde to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistned with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wish you to rape a litle of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceed from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by, is, if in rasing it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you may tast of that you haue rased in you mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fifthly, take and rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue rased it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worse sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in tast. Sixthly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous & heauie. Seuenthly see that it be such as hath not the whitish colour enclining to dimme nesse, neither hauing the veines of the white part blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last prooffe of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, verie bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rinde are these: First, that it be taken of a tree which is old, or of middle age, for that which cometh of a small bough is naught; and we know when it cometh of a middle age or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinkled with an ashe colour: and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking it appeareth blacke but not like vnto *Ebenus* be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaiacum.

THe wood being thus rased, we come to his boyling, which we call decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euery ounce of rased wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or strippling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in Sommer season, we must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therefore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the rased wood and twelue pounds of the water, except in the Sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept: and then we take *Lignum*, ℥.vj. of water, ℔.vj. Also in the Winter time we take of the wood rased, ℔.j.℔. of water eightene pounds. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these one pound of the wood, & twelue pounds of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the wood twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water.

but I like not that way: for if you make the difference which is between the decoction made after the infusion of cold water, and that which is made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shall find the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water which is made euen seething hote. Moreover, I wish that you stoppe your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst Branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the said Branne: for by this meanes it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompasse it round about with linnen clothes, that it may be perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requisite strength, and to be boyled in a vessell of stone, or of earth well glased within; those vessells of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse waies, to wit, by drie fire, or in *Balneo Marie*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be farre better, and worke better effect, and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopped, and keepe it in boiling continually: let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is: some will boile it till three parts be consumed, to haue it drie more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, sometime is suffered to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boiling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I thinke it no matter whether it be cleansed hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose, which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise: we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) and boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is) that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to increase the quantitie of this water: for sometime we adde eightene pounds of water, sometime fifteene, and this we are accustomed to do when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly, we increase the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the Sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunke at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuerthelesse ye shall vnderstand, some Physitians do giue the first decoction euen at dinner and supper also, and so they make but one decoction onely: but this vse is but rare, and when they will drie vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of Veale, of a chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fat. It is boiled after the manner aforesaid: and this I thought necessary to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THIS *Guaicum* is boiled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded

ded therewith diuersly. First I will declare vnto you those decoctions which be made of this wood most singly; afterwards others, which because they haue more things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The most simple or single decoction is made of the rinde of the wood, and pure water onely. And this simple decoction the best Physicians do vse, when they will make the decoction strong. The forme of making it is this. We take the same quantity of the wood *Guaicum* and the forme of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the same the barke or rind of *Guaicum*, which hath no determinate quantities; for sometime we put 2. sometime 3. sometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, and for halfe an ounce of the rinde we adde 4 pounds of water, as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. lb. the quantity of the rind, 3. ij. the quantity of water shall be 16 pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & strength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rinde, vj. 3. of water, lb. 18. we beate the rind into grosse powder, & afterward steep it in the water 24. houres, then boile we it to the consumption of the 3. part. in such wise as is said of the simple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine: the forme of preparing it is this; R^x. *Guaicis*. 1. pound, *corticis eius* halfe a pound, water lb. 18. let these be infu'd together according to art, afterward boile them to the consumption of 2. or 3. parts, so that 6. pounds onely of the decoction do remaine. This done, they adde thereto of strong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then straine it, and vse it as before. Sometime it happeneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his stomacke) that the whole decoction is cast vp againe: therefore that it may pierce the sooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue and retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded. which is this: R^x. *ligni Guaicis*. lb. j. *corticis eius* lb. 3. *aqua* lb. 18. these be infu'd according to art, then they boile to the consumption of the 3. part; then we adde to it *Carduus benedictus*, which is much vsed, *Camedries*, *Betonice*, of each of these herbs a handfull. Again they boile it euen till the one halfe be wasted: so that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pints, and after 1. walme or 2. boyling we cleanse or straine it. R^x. the same wood, the same rind, and the same water in quantity, infuse and boile them after the same maner: then adde of Rosemary, *Feniculi*, *Statthadu*, *Betonice*, ana. M. j. *Scine*, *Annil*, 3. j. let these boyle to the consumption of the halfe part, so that there remaine of the liquor but 6 pounds, and thereto adde 3. pints of wine, after the maner aforesaid. Lastly, we make it another way, as thus. R^x. the same quantity of the wood and rind whereof we spake before, and adde of the rootes of *Anula Campana*, of the rootes of *Althea*, of the dry rootes of *Ireos*, ana. 3. j. of Maidenhaire, of Liquorice, *Statthadu*, ana. 3. 3. Boile these together to the consumption of halfe, then put vnto it three pints of wine, and so the decoction is made perfect by boyling, as is aforesaid. And these be the formes and descriptions of those decoctions which are vsuall with practicioners and others. They which vse to drinke, after these manner of decoctions, make no second decoction, but prepare some other liquor for their dinner and supper at their discretion. I my selfe haue bin

wont in this decoction to put purging medicines, and specially to those which haue such stomackes as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vsed the foresaid compound decoctions, but not alwayes, but especially in cold griefes, as *Asthma* & coldnes of the stomack, *Sciatica* & *Palley*, in *Fistulae*, & other foule sores and paines in the ioynts, and in affects of the feet coming of cold distemper: in these cases I haue vsed the said decoction with good successe. But the most simple decoction, I say, doth best against *Morbum Gallicum*, so that there be no compound disease ioynd with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vsed according to the direction of them which do practise.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BVt at what time is this decoction to be giuen? Certes the most meete time is the Spring time; for although we require in the working thereof, heate, sweate, and much digestion of excrements, yet the heate of Sommer is too great, the bodies are thereby resolued and made faint. Therefore the middle Spring, & the beginning of Sommer is most conuenient. Next vnto the Spring is the Autumne; as for the Sommer and Winter they be seasons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his excesse of cold. And if of these two I must needs chuse one, yet I would rather chuse the Winter; for in the Winter season we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made close and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwayes the Spring is best, the Autumne next, the Winter next, and the Sommer worst of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

VWE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our ancestors the Physitions that liued before the last 40. yeares, were wont to keepe their patients in darknesse, as it were in a dungeon, for the space of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones: and they did well, so cruell, so fierce, and outragious was then this disease. But now sithence it is become more mecke and tollerable, Physitions ought not to deale so hardly with all. Therefore we keepe our patients in a chamber, where is somewhat drier ground, not open vnto the winds, the windowes closed in with paper or linnen clothes, the doores not altogether kept close.

CHAP. XIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN measuring the quantitie we obserue these things. First, how great the affect is; for if it be great and rebellious, then must a great quantity of this potion be giuen: if the affect be not great, the quantity should be lesse. Vnto a child we minister a smaller quantity then to one of full growth. Also consideration ought to be had of the complexion of the patient; if his temperament be hote, a litle quantity; if it be cold, a great quantity is to be giuen. If the stomacke be weake, we giue a very small quantity; if the stomack be strong, we giue a great quantity. This quantity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. sirups, but when it is litle by one sirupe only; our limits are from $\text{℥} \text{ iij.}$ vnto $\text{℥} \text{ i.}$ In a child, from 4. vnto 6. $\text{℥} \text{ iij.}$ if

if he be strong & valiant of stomack, you may proceed to § viij. In the strongest person, the disease also being rebellious, we proceed not above § x. and that quantity we seldome vse in any. Moreover, you must obserue another rule, that is to giue a greater quantity alwayes of the sirupe in the morning then in the euening, because in the morning the stomack is empty. & in the night because of sleepe, the force thereof is greater. Again this is to be obserued, in the 1. & 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning, and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twice a day, to wit, morning and euening, at a certaine houre, without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many dayes this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum* the space of forty dayes, because this *Morbis Gallicus* is *Morbis erraticus*, a long disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *Morbis incipiens*, we scarcely prolong the vse of this decoction till the thirtieth day, or the five and twentieth day; but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *Peratro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainly when to leaue the vse of this decoction? Truly when we see that all *Symptomata* be ceased and gone, and if they be ceased at the sixteene dayes end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke: if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *Symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it forty dayes, the *Symptomata* cease not, yet leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still, prescribing to the patient *victus nobilium*, and let him till an hundred dayes be expired drinke of the decoction, lest the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *Symptomates*, which if they remaine, hope you not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we English men terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scarres like indeed vnto buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwayes to be feared, that the disease will againe returne. The other rebellious *Symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoea Gallica*, which if it ceaseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty dayes, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing the decoction, and things to be obserued therein.

NOW coming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say that the Physitiōs giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or foure houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe only, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreover, remember that the decoction ought alwayes to be taken very hot, to the end it may prouoke sweat: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient

lying in his bed. The sirupe being dronke, the patients do vnto sleepe vpon it, and thus they must attempt to do, that it may the better be digested and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiveth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the doore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by committing this act but once in this cure, haue failed of remedy through the same. There be diuellish women desirous to be handled & dealt withall, who will beautifie themselves, to inflame mens hearts to lust towards them; abandon these your company, and thrust them out of the doores and house: let none of that hue be seene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the minde, which to auoide, flie cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nourish fraud and conetousnesse, which doth inflame the bloud & stirre cholericke humours.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of things to be corrected, or symptomes to be oppugned in this cure.

Certaine accidents also in this cure are to be corrected and helpen, among the which one is a certaine loathing of the stomacke, or disposition to vomite, called of the Latines *Nausea*. This coming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is resisted and helped by mixing pleasant things with the decoction, as is some pleasant iulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cause thereof: some hauing a hot stomack do abhorre it; therefore let them vse in the decoction cold waters, as *Cichory*, & such like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which case we permit vnto them good common bread, made of the best floure of the best wheat. Moreover sharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be past; which we endeouour to qualifie and lighten two wayes. First by perswading with the patient to sustaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will soone be at an end, to his great commoditie and much comfort. Secondly, by fomenting the parts, and annointing the, whereof I will speake more at large when I treat *de doloribus*. Another inconuenience that followeth this cure, is costiuenesse, and the patient commeth into lassitude or wearinesse: this is holpen by clisters giuen euery third day. Again some do abhor clisters: vnto such we giue once in the day of the sirupe *cum duabus radicibus* or *mellis rosacei*. And if it be such a person as will not be scoured by common *mel rosaceum*, then in stead thereof we adde vnto the sirupe *ros. soluti*, \mathfrak{z} j. Some vse to giue pills of Aloes, but *mel ros.* in my iudgment is best. Also otherwhiles it happeneth that the patient fainteth or swooneth; & this happeneth after foure and twenty daies, through the slendernes of the

the diet. Then grant him a large diet, as an egge every day, morning and evening, or some other thing at your discretion. And otherwhiles the cause of this their faintnesse and swoonding cometh, for that they are not nourished, or because they take little of their bisket, in which case (as I said) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge reare. But if their stomackes will not digest bisket, let him haue good fine bread. And you shall know this weaknesse of the stomackes digestion by these signes: When either the said solutiue sirope or clisters be giuen them, (if their stomacke be so weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowish somewhat resembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and somewhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedie for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a large diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some Iulep, it is the better. These be the *Symptomata*, and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.
Of Excrements.

NOW am I come to that part of my Treatise wherein I haue to speake of Excrements And concerning this matter, first you shall vnderstand, there be two kinds of Excrements, which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siccum*, that is to say, the ordure, whereof I haue spoken. The other kinde of excrements whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts, is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweate, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine: very good it were indeed, but no Physitions haue attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matter vnto the reines, especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoea*: for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated, and more hurt then commodity will thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweate, Physitions do their diligence, for a large sweate dissolueth the matter of that disease. Some therefore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient well with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hote bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that will do hurt or nay.) I can commend it in such patients as haue not the head very hote and sweating already: also such as haue pustules, and do feare the shedding of their haire. Others take bread hote out of the oven, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heate thereof, they might the more easily sweate. I like not this device, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme bricke sprinkled with wine or veruice, and wrapped vp in clothes, and this is a good commendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feet: in such you must lay no bricke to their feet in any wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to repell them by the siege. And the *Gualcum* potion is wont

Sometime to worke that effect, but sometime it doth not. The most part of Physicians do (in this case) commend euacuation made with conuenient distance of time by purgatiue medicines: wherefore if very great euacuation be made by sweats, let them euery eight day be purged: if they sweate not plenteously, then purge them oftener, euery third or fourth day, in the name of God: and the purgations which we in this case do vse, be according to the humors which do most abound, as sometime with pills, with *Sena*, *Epithymo*, *Hermodactylus*: and sometime with Electuaries, as *confectio Hamech*, *Diacatholicon*, and such other like. as you may find plenty in the first and second bookes, if you looke carefully in them for medicines for the purpose which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of Diet to be obserued in this cure.

NOW are we come to speake of the diet to be vsed, while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwayes slender touching the quantity, and drying: and it consisteth in bisket, which we giue vnto the patient first and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after it might the lesse moisten, (and so it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours which belong to this disease) and also because this bisket bread carrieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is somewhat stayed: and if the stomacke be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very best. His meate must be roasted and excellent good, Chickens, Rabbits, Mutton, Partridges, and such like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boyled that day: once, twile, or thriple in the weeke let him haue to his supper bread and great Raisins, as you like his strength. Some do minister Corants, which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by abundance of sweats, so that we may hope the patient shall that way be perfectly purged, then I thinke best to giue no purging medicines; for nature her selfe expelleth them to the skinne, to be euacuated that way by sweate, whose worke should by purgatiue medicines partly be hindered. If his sweate be not sufficient, then it is best to vse purging, of what kind you thinke best (as before.) For his ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vse the second decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you belecue, the more they drinke the sooner they shall be cured of this disease. And if they cannot drinke the second decoction, we must suffer them to take some ale or beere, but let it not be very strong in any case. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obserue whether the liuer be too hote yea or no: if it be so, then prescribe a medicine to qualifie the distemper, as thus. Take conserues of Roses, of Borage or of Violets, or such like, whereof you may find plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOW haue we to treat of the roote of China, whereof some Physicians do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus Gallicus*, but also for the cure of *Phthisis*, vlcers for the lungs, consumption of the members. In *Lepra*
Gracorum,

Græcorum, i. scabies; Elephantiasis, i. Lepra, proceeding of the melancholick humor; *Podagra* (in all which effects they vie it) the Spaniards do bring over this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to trie the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the Drop sicke: also to re- presse and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eyes comming of a hote distemper: moreover, in an exceeding hote distemper of the stomacke and liuer. But in the cure of *Mortus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe; for I have proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP. XXII.

*The way of making the decoction of
the roote China.*

THe decoction is made in this wise: we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥. ii. thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water: we heate the water, and infuse the China in it, for a whole nights space, or foure and twentie houres. Afterwards we set it to the fire, and boile it to the consumption of halfe, so that sixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction, which forthwith we cleane, and spread out the said thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are referred to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coales, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sowre. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth: and the same stopped exactly with coike, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction we giue in manner of a sirupe in the morning ℥. x. or xij. in the evening as much. The stomacke liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke; sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine, if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meate, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and roasted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made: for of two pound (which, as I told you in the end of the last Chapter, is the full *Dosis* of the roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue dayes. Afterward we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day, ℥. iiij. and so it lasteth sixe dayes more, till the space of eightene dayes be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if need be, we do as before.

Diet.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you will chuse the best China, take that which is rough in colour and porous, not worne-eaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this: for among an hundred rootes, vnneath you shall finde foure good; for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongiours and light, another that they be corrupt and worm-eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeed to be found) rather chuse those that be eaten with

wormes, for that they are lesse euill of the two. And spongiuous rootes soone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no strength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the second way or manner, whereby some Physitions endeavour to vanquish this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with Salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke.

I Have alwayes obserued and followed this rule: I take of *Salsa periglia*, ℥. iij. of water, x. pintes. I cut the *Salsa periglia* into small parts: afterwards infuse it in hote water, by the space of foure and twenty houres. When it is infused, it is boyled to the consumption of the one halfe, afterward it is strained, and this decoction kept for the sirupe. Then we take the same *Salsa* againe, and put thereto of water fiftene pintes, and without any more infusion, we boile it vnto the consumption of the third part: and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and supper. Truth it is: I sometime make the decoction with wine, in this wise: The first decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fiftene pounds or pintes, and the same quantitie of *Salsa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be wasted; then before I take the vessell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine, not strong, but pleasant in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boyled a little, I cleanse it out: and this wine I vse to put vnto it when I see the patient not much infected, and so he may walke abroad if it please the patient; or else when his stomacke is much infeebled. Moreover, sometime I vse to mixe the wood, and sometime the rinde, and then I take of *Salsa*, ℥. iij. of the Guaiack wood as much, and sometime of his rinde, ℥. ij. (but not both at once, very seldome.) Sometime I vse the one and sometime the other; after this forme. R^x. *Salsa*, ℥. iij. *ligni Guaiaci*, ℥. iij. ℞. or else of the rinde, ℥. ij. to which I put of water thirteene pintes, and let them boile together till halfe be wasted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and supper, I take of water eightene pintes, and boile it to the consumption of the third part: when I vse the barke, I take euen the same quantitie of water, although there be of it but ℥. ii. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him these decoctions, in this case I boyle the *Salsa* in thirteene pintes of water, vnto the consumption of halfe: and when it is thus boyled, I haue a vessell either of the raped *Guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I best like of, and into it I cleanse the decoction of *Salsa*, as hote as is possible; and so it is infused for thirteene houres, and then I straine it, and thus I prepare this sirupe. At dinner and supper, I giue onely the second decoction of *Salsa*. The reason why I thus admixe them, is because the decoction of *Salsa* doth little offend the stomacke, but sometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *Guaicum* therewith. Another cause why I mixe them, is to eradicate the disease, wherefore *Salsa* is needfull. Thirdly, when I haue one that hath had this disease long time, I vse both *Guaicum* and *Salsa*, yea and sometime the rind,

but that I do verie seldome, and I vse this decoction in all points as the other in quantity and time. And sometime if the patient be very full of vicers, I vse this decoction following; I take *Guaiacum*, ℥ viij. of *Salsa*, ℥ iij. and infuse them in fourtene pints of warme water, foure and twenty houres; then boyle them vntill there be left seuen pints, and towards the end of the boiling, adde to of *Liquorice*, ℥ j. Raisins of the sunne, the stones picked out, ℥ ij. the rootes of *Consolida maior*, ℥ ij. ℞. of the seeds of *Cardus benedictus*, ℥ ℞ and when it is cold straine it. This decoction take for the first morning and euening, ℥ viij. at a timewarme, and euery morning procure him to sweate if it be possible. For the second decoction, take that which is strained, and adde thereto of fresh *Guaiacum*, ℥ iij. of *Salsa*, ℥ j. put of water sixteene pints; let it infuse thirteene houres, and boile them to tenn: pints, and adde in the end of the boiling Barley, ℥ ij. *Liquorice* and Raisins of the sunne, the stones taken out, ana. ℥ j. Violet flowers, ℥ ℞. and then when it is cold, straine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure dayes, if there be need. And let him take this decoction thirtie dayes, or siue and twentie dayes at the least, as you see cause, and as the vicers do heale, remembring to wash or bathe the places grieved, morning and euening with the first decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath.

BVt you shall vnderstand, that this *Salsa* doth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the same is good for many other aff:cts, as in a Carie he or distillation from the head, being sharpe and salt, in Caocres not vicerate, and in tumours which are hard to be resolued: and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *Scrofula*, commonly called the Kings euill. I minister it in this wise: for the space of fortie dayes, I take of the powder of *Salsa*, and the powder of *Ruscus*, called of some *Bruselus*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder, ℥ j. with white wine, or ale, as I see cause, and it cometh well to passe thereby, sometimes purging the bodie as I see cause, and let the patient go abroad at his pleasure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the spleene, but I adde thereto the iust quantitie of *Tamariscus*, which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.

THIS disease sometime is cured of practitioners by Suffumigations, otherwise called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongst those wayes before named. The cause is this; often and many times sore inconueniences come thereupon, and it cureth not with so small danger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwayes held it the best (as much as may be) to shunne this way of curing, for as much as in some it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane persons, such as haue a hote and drie tem-

perament; also in those which haue streightnesse in the breast, either through obstruction of the vessels, or somewhat distilling from the head. Moreover, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue spitted blood: furthermore such persons as haue *Peripneumonia*, if they vse suffumigations, it costs them their liues. To be short, all such as are troubled with *Dysenteria*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbear these suffumigations. I my selfe neuer vsed them, but in one case or two at the most, and maruell you not thereat, for I utterly mislike of them. But I will speake a litle of suffumigations; they haue in them these faculties and strengths: First they open all the conduits of the body; for their nature is such, that immediatly they pierce the body, in piercing they alter it; they mundifie or scoure the inward parts, and first the heart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the nostrils vnto the braine, as by the vaines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience; for *Suffiment* alwayes loosen the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needs be that they pierce or penetrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming of the whole body.

First, there is none so ignorant or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body before the vse of these Suffumigations, by one, two or three purgations, with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sicknesse. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong; which rules of euacuation you may find before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body, both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the Sun riseth, they giue the patient a couple of rere eggs, & straight after he hath eaten them, a sop of bread infused in Malmesey; then they let him drinke a litle quantity. Lastly, after all these, they let him take ℥.j. of *Saccharum ros.* and lye still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a litle chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pavilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth; within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient himselfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a litle seate for the purpose. And they haue their things readie at hand, which by little and little they strew vpon the coales, and the smoake thereof being closely kept in, flieth about the tent, drying and drawing out of the body. And when that which they haue already cast vpon the coales faileth, and is gone, they strew on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue (if he can) the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre, as he can abide it. But let them alwayes take heed, so long as he is vnder the pavilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth; for sometime they swoond, and fall downe within the tent, which is very dangerous; and if he answereth very faintly, take him out in all the haste you can, then wrap him in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him in bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space.

And

And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three dayes together, and rest one day; and then other three dayes, and so to nine dayes. Sometime we vse this Suffumigation more daies, even as the disease requireth: for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exulcerated, or sore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leane off, or if a laxer cometh vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth day. If once in the day, we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweat, and let him eate his meate, and drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large, and at his pleasure, to his best liking.

*A good signe
to know the
time to leane
off.
Diet.*

CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of Symptomata which sometime happen in
this way of curing.*

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euil Symptomata, as sometime laxer of the belly, sometime corruption of the rooſe of the mouth, sometime loosenes and shaking of the teeth. All which are wont to follow the annoiſing with quicke ſiluer: and when we ſhall come to treat of that way of curing, we ſhall ſpeake our mind concerning theſe Symptomata.

CHAP. XXIX.

*Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne
and harmeleſſe.*

ITold you before that there are two ſorts of Suffumigations; one ſort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another ſort is made of things venomous and maligne. Firſt, let vs ſpeake of thoſe which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongſt which this is: (the firſt forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler ſort.) *R. Thuris maſculi, Aloes, Myrrha, ana. ʒj. Cinamomi, Storacis ſicca, Spica nardi, Moſchate, ana. ʒ. ʒ. Ambra vel Charaba, ʒj. Moſchi gra ij.* Theſe are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a little ſpoone it is ſtrewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is deſcribed thus. *R. Santal alborum, rubrum & citrinorum, ana. ʒj. Mucus moſcate, Maceris, Squinanthi, Cariochyllum, Camphora, Affari, ana. ʒ. ʒ. Corticum mali apioli, ſiccatorum ambra, ana. ʒ. ʒ.* They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with Terebintina made into a paſte, which paſte is afterward diuided into round bals, which by little and little are layed vpon the fierie coales. The third compoſitiō being yet more ſtrong in this. *R. Storacis ſicca, Belzoni, ligni Aloes, Galle moſchate, ana. ʒ. ʒ. Gummi Hedera, ʒj. Ladani ʒij. Squinanthi, Cinamomi, an. ʒ. ʒ. Albi anime Charabæ, ʒ. ʒ. miſce.* Theſe are beaten, and with Storax liquida, made into a paſte, which paſte is made into little round bals, vt ſuprà.

1.

2.

3.

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

MOrbus Gallicus is overcome by Suffumigations, which piercing through the whole bodie, do drie the braine, the heart, the liver, and the whole

habite: these be of two sorts; the one sort particular, the other common. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they be that consist of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former Chapter; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which do consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are now in vse, and the principall things in them be *Cinaberis artificialis*, *Sandaracha Gracorum*, and *Auripigmentum*; and these be those which (for as much as they be poisons) of their owne nature, do inspire a certaine venomous vapour into the body. But to be briefe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effect consisteth in *Hydragyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum*, *Sandaracha*, and *Cinaberis artificialis*, or *Precipitatum*. These things be mixed with Aromaticks to strengthen the inward parts, for otherwise they should be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of these Aromaticke things be *Resine* and diuerse kinds of gums. The first forme of this sort is this. *Rx. Cinaberis, ℥. iii. Myrrhe, Thuris, Mastiches, ana. ℥. i. Aloes hepatica, Sandaracha Arabum, Stiracis sicca, Belzoni, ana. ℥. iii.* These be beaten grossly, and thereof is made a powder, which is sprinkled vpon the fierie coales. The second forme is this. *Rx. Cinaberis, ℥. iii. Sandaracha Gracorum, ℥. i. ℞. Myrrhe, Thuris, ligni Aloes, Ladani, Ammoniacy, ana. ℥. i.* These be beaten in grosse wise, and mixed with *Terebinthina*, and thereof are made small bals to cast vpon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this. *Rx. Cinaberis, ℥. iii. Auripigmenti, Sandaracha Gracorum, ana. ℥. ℞. Precipitati, ℥. iii. Thuris, Aloes hepatica, Mastiches, Myrrhe electe, Belzoni, Stiracis sicca, Ladani, Ammoniacy, ana. ℥. ℞. Miscetur.* Of these make a grosse powder which is strewed vpon the burning coales. And these be the descriptions of those Suffumigations which haue a venomous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quicksilver.

THe first way that experience found out to heale this disease in Italy, was by *Argentum viuum*. For when this disease began to spread in that countrey, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, because they had read that Quicke siluer should be of great vertue against an old rebellious scab (for at the first coming in of this disease, it had alwaies vlcers ioyned therewith) they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good successe, for some thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Marasmus* by this annointing, many lost their teeth after it: some had the palate of their mouth rotted away, some had the bones of their head eaten, which so doth continue still; one hath his mouth in like sort, another his face set awry thereby. For if it healeth not, it driueth the whole channell of vicious humors into the head. I haue take in hand some, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeares before; and when they haue had sores (called *Gumata*) vpon their skinnies, whereby the bones haue bene discovered, I haue seene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cause I commend not this medicine. I haue vsed it sometime when I could not attaine my purpose, by the said waies of curing, called

Harmes following the vse of quicke siluer.

called Regie. I saw once a young stripling that had *Mordum Galicum*, upon whom all the aforeaid Regie curationes had bene practised, and he neuer the better therefore; yet he afterwards was cured by the wayes of annointing. Wherefore in such as haue rebellious affects, and are to be disparted of, I vse it, when I haue proued all wayes, and all sorts of medicines before. And when I vse it, I obserue this order. First, to purge the humour that doth abound, and if the humours be mixt, then all the body: I giue the *decoctum Guaiaci* by the space of ten or twelue dayes, to strengthen the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer; and then the venimous medisine butteth out so much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this sort. First three dayes if the Symptomata do not appeare; then to scoure, sine, sine, yea ten dayes, till I see the Symptomata do appeare: then I annoint no more. Of these Symptomata, some happen commonly very much, other some very litle: it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate swelled and raw, their tongue growne bigger, so that sometime they can neither speake nor swallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding sore by reason of great inflammation, and such abundance of corrupt and stinking spittle flowing vpon it; all their teeth are loose in their head, and do shake, sometime they lose some of them. Finally, such a quantity of corrupt matter is gathered and brought to the mouth, that sometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature stierth altogether to the mouth and there seeketh to breake forth. In this case you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things easie to be digested, as some collaze of delicate flesh. Let the drinke which he drinketh be pleasant, and if he hath bene used to drinke wine let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough, of broth, and good store of fine bread in it, and so nourish him largely and plentifully: for the euacuation which he sustayneth is great, so that I haue bene compelled to cut the *Cephatica* veine for the swelling of the tongue.

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the Symptomata which happen in the mouth in this day of curing.

AND amongst other things this also is to be obserued, as much as is possible to draw out the *Hydrargyrum* which lieth soaked in the palate and the teeth. The way to do it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twile or thrise; and if it change to looke white, lay it on the coales, and it will come to his colour as before: and then put it in and so keepe it at his pleasure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vse to wash his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vse Barley water and sirupe of Myrtle, or *Diamoron*, or *Nenuphar*, and sometime we vse *aqua Solani*, or *Plantoe*, Sometime we vse *orepercussive iuyce*, as *succus foliorum Rubri*, *foliorum Plantaginis*; sometime of the iuyce of Vine leaues. Sometime we vse Barley water, with *mel. ros.* sirupe *Myrti*, *Diamoron simplex*, to scoure withall the mouth. Another Symptoma yet followeth vpon this way

of curing, and that is, immoderate lax of the belly; for sometime the patient voideth by the siege pure blood, or strings of blood, as we see in *Dysenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe, but moderate it, and cause that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby increase. First by ministering clisters of milke, wherein hath bene quenched red hote gadders of Steele, or litle black flint stones; or by the injection of the iuyce of Prisan, or pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum Myrtinum*, or *oleum Omphacinum* in clistere, also the iuyce of Plantaine, or of the hip Briar. Sometime we put in our clisters also *Bolus Armenus*, or *Lapis Hematilis*. Moreover we vse astringent waters: sometime we open a veine, sometime we vse ligatures and other meanes or wayes of reuulsion: now if none of these *Symptomata* shall come vpon them, we nourish them with good meates (as it is said) and so end the cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be used in this way of curing.

1. **T**Here be diuerse kindes of vnguent: I will set forth but two of them, *Rx.*
Oleum Petroleum. \mathfrak{z} β *olei Lumbricorum*, *olei Spica nardi*, *olei Tartari albi*,
olei Turpentina, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. *vnguentum Dialthea*, *vngu. Marciaton*, *Axungia Tox-*
fion, *Storax liquida*, *Turpentina*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Axungia porcina*, \mathfrak{H} . β . *Armoniace*,
Opoponacis, *Bdellij*, *Elimij*, *Ladani*, *Syracis*, *Calamintha*, *Belzoni*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j.
2. *Tartari albi combusti*, *Aluminis combusti*. ana. \mathfrak{z} iiij. *Vitrioli Romani com-*
busi, \mathfrak{z} j. quicke siluer. \mathfrak{H} . j. *Minium*, \mathfrak{z} β . mixe all, and beate them in a mor-
tar two houres at the least (if it be three it is the better) without ceassing. *Rx.*
Penguedinis gallina, *Axungia porcina*, *Axungia vrsina*, an. \mathfrak{z} . iiij. *olei Lilio-*
tum albi, *olei Laurini*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. quicke siluer, \mathfrak{z} . viij. In this composition, the
fattes are not melted at the fire, but the filmes cleane taken out, they are bea-
ten in a mortar very diligently; then by litle and litle the quicke siluer is put
into the mortar, and the medicine is wrought in the mortar, by the space of
two or three houres at the least. Afterwards put in these powders: *Thuris Masti-*
ches, *Myrrha*, *Ammoniici*, *Syracis*, *pulueris Salviae*, *pulueris Stachados*, *Lythar-*
gij, *Cerusse*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . Of these is made a very fine powder, which by litle & li-
tle is put into the mortar, continually beating til all be well incorporated. Thus
these two ointments be made, the first is strongest and best. If there be
many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing commonly the *Symptomata*
will appeare, they vse no more annointing.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Precipitatum giuen by the mouth.

Disis.

Furthermore you shall vnderstand, that some practitioners vse to cure this
disease, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue spoken before) but by
giuing *Precipitatem* by the mouth. Some giue the common *Precipita-*
tum so prepared: It is giuen in weight, gra. leuen, or tenne at the uttermost:
they

they mixe this quantity with medicines to alter the colour, that it may not be knowne. Some mixe it with *Alloes*, *Myrrhe*, *Mastiche*, gr. iij. Some mixe it with conferues of *Roses*, some with *Mithridatum*, and such like. But there is a more safe curing then this, by *Turbith mineralis*, which the *Chymists* haue inuented in stead of *Precipitatum*, which I better allow of, and it is very dangerous for the better sort of men: of the which I mind to speake hereafter as followeth. Fit st, the vse of *Turbith mineralis* is betwixt graines xvij. and xx. grains, or xxv. graine at the most, after the strength of the patient: they vse it in this manner. First they take the dose as they themselues best like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum*, one part or two as they will: some mixe with it conferues of *Roses*, so that there be not in all past 3.j. or 3.j.ß. at the most. They make it into a ball: some make three or foure pills and gild the. other some rolle it in powder of *Diambre* or such like. The patients body must be prepared by some easie means, and eate a light supper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning: after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the least, and sleepe after it, if it be possible; then let him arise and apparell himselfe warme, and sit by the fire. Let his chamber be very warme, so that he may sweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the said Bole, cause him to eate some warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be thoroughly whole or cured. Let his diet be very good warme meates. Two mornings next following giue him a little *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cause him to sweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the *Turbith* as before, and let him keepe the order aforesaid: and if his mouth grow not sore in the meane time, giue it him the

*The dose of
Turbith mine-
ralis.*

third time in the third morning next following the second time:

do so till his mouth be sore, then seeke in the former chapter

to heale his mouth as is taught there. Thus haue

you all the waies and meanes to helpe
this pernicious grieve.

Libri sexti finis.

THE VII. BOOKE, TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND

Medicines, which our Phyfitions do commonly vse at this day, and to know after what fort their proportion and quantity is distributed and noted, with the names of each medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppositaries.



Suppositary is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which is put into the fundament, that it may auoid the pricking, and moue and prouoke the vertue expulsive to the auoiding of the excrements, compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries especially for three causes: the first is for bringing out ordure, which when it lieth in the right bowell, it requireth no clyster. The second is, when one or

two clysters haue bene put into the bodie, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chauce in passions of the cholicke, then it is very perilous to put in other clysters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clyster. A suppositarie is made of hony that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common salt is mixed with the hony: but if you will make it more sharpe and quicke, take of salt Gemme, the dung of a Mousse, Agaricke, or else *Hiera simplex*. R. a Suppositary made of hony, which if you thinke so weake that it will not moue the compost or ordure, adde too these following. R. to make a common Suppositary of sharpe hony, *sal Armoniacke*, ʒ. β. or of salt Gemme, ʒ. β. or of Mousse dung, ʒ. β. or ʒ. j. or of *Hiera simplex*, ʒ. β. Also make suppositaries of white sope, tallow of beasts, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of Beets, or Mercurie, or their roots annointed with oyle or hony, and strewed with powder of salt, specially for children and sucking babes, for whom one corne of salt put in is sufficient. R. Thime, or *Cyclaminum*, or Wormewood, or Sothernwood, stamped in a mortar ʒ j or β of boyled hony so much as sufficeth, and make a suppositary. Suppositaries are good against the Palsey, made of Pellitory & Pepper, Napy (that is, a kind of rapes called a Nauew) Cérotie, Bitumen, that is, a kinde of lime, the roote of *Panax*, Hylope, *Galbanum*, mixed with dry Rosin, or Pitch and Waxe. Let a Suppositary be round, and 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vse no Suppositaries to them which haue the hemorrhoids, or any other swelling in the fundament.

*A suppositarie
to bring forth
the ordure.*

*A suppositary
against the
wormes called
Lumbrici.*

CHAP.

Of making Nodulus.

NODULI be those which are called of *Actius* in Greeke *σποδίου*; they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoid and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steads. Their matter is the same that suppositaries be. *Rx.* Flocks mingled or beaten with hony, and put into the tuell: and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a Beane, and put into the tuell with a threed hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

Of making Pessaries.

A Pessarie is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the wombe. It is made of Waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in an ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward wind them in silke, and hang a threed thereunto, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuell and into the wombe to ceasse the inflammation and vlcers of them both. Priuaty it is put into the wombe to prouoke the menstruis; and the secundine, or to stop immoderate fluxe of menstruis, or to mollifie the hardnes of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the wombe. *Rx.* a pessarie dipped & wet in *Unguentum rosarum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *Opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astoned, therefore his quantity ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a little time, lest through his coldnesse the parts which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. *Rx.* a pessarie dipped and wet in *Unguentum Pompholygos*, put it into the tuell or into the matrice that is grieved. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashon be thicker, which may bring out with his powder, as thus *Rx.* *Hierapicra composita*, \mathfrak{z} j. of *Euphorbium*, and the apple of *Coloquimida*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with *oleum Nardinum*, or with the iuyce of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentimes of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis: as, *Rx.* Mercurie, Neppe, or Mugwort, or Sothernwood, M. ss. bray them, and rolle them in silke, and make a pessarie. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist: the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloaden, because the matrice is in the middest betwene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouermuch straightnesse may be retained and made slow in coming out. If immoderate menstruis do flow, do thus: *Rx.* a pessarie wet in *Unguentum comitissa*, and put it into the matrice: or thus: *Rx.* of Plantaine, or Knotgrasse, or Brier, of Mirtle, or other that can

To mollifie the
hardnesse of
the wombe.

Stop menstruis, M.ß. bray them, and roll them in filke, and make a'peffarie. Pessaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a Calfe, & a Hart, of Rosin, Terebinthine, fatnelle of a Goose, or porke, and of Gumme Armoniacke dissolved in water.

CHAP. IIIL.

Of Clusters or Enema.

A clister mol-
lificatiue.

A clister pro-
moking & ma-
king voide the
violence asfo-
nied.

A clister auoi-
ding humours.

A Clyster or Enema, is a kind of medicine the which is cast and put into the bowels by the fundament. liquide and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe restrained with hardnesse. 2. To pro- uoke the violence detestable and astonied. 3. To auoid any kind of humours. 4. To put away ventosities. 5. To ceasele dolours and paines. 6. To bind and re- straine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guts or bowels. 8. To make sound the same. There may be also added to alter and change, as here follow- eth. R^x. of Lettuce, Scarioll, *Rostum porcinum*, leaues of Sallow ana. M. j. flowers of Violets, and Nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the straining let one ounce of *Cassia fistula* be dissolved, oyle of Violets, and of Nenuphar, ana. ℥. j. ß. Camphire, ℥. j. and make a clister. R^x. the foure kinds of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, Pellitorie of the wall, ana. M. j. ß. the rootes of the Mallowes called *Althaa*, and white Lillies, ana. ℥. j. seede of Flaxe, Fenugreeke and Annise, ana. ℥. ß. of fat Figges, iiii. make a decoction of ℥. j. in weight. In the straining thereof dissolve therein of *Cassia fistula*, *mel Violarum*, and fresh butter, ana. ℥. j. oyle of Violets ℥. iij. and make a clister. If you will make a clister mollificatiue lacking the things aforesaid, do thus. R^x. oyle made warme ℥. j. and make thereof a clister, or thus. R^x. oyle and fresh butter, ana. ℥. ß. and make a clister. R^x. the foure remollitiues, ana. M. j. seede of *Carthamum*, ℥. j. of Annise, Fennell, and *Careum*, ana. ℥. iij. and make a deco- tion of ℥. j. and in the straining dissolve *Hiera simplex*, or *Benedicta*, or *Diaphanicon*, or *Electuarium de succo*, or *Electuarium Indi maiori*, ℥. ß. of clarified hony, or iuyce of Squil, ℥. j. or common Salt, ℥. ii. or salt Gemme, ℥. j. or ℥. ß. Many do adde to clisters, ℥. i. of the iuyce of Beetes, which do moue and grieue the bellie, or iuyce of Beets and Coleworts, ana. ℥. ß. of common Salt, ℥. ii. or ℥. i. which bite and gnaw the belly, or lesse, but the iust weight must be as you coniecture to be easie or hard for the sicke. Also such a clister expulsiue be astonied and dull through the hardnesse of the ordure, then make a clister partly of mollificatiues, and partly of expulsiues aforesaid. Clusters which auoid humours are made so, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is grosse and cold, euill disposing the bowels, let it be made thus. R^x. the foure remollitiues, ana. M. i. Cammomill, the tops of Dill, Origan, Calamint, Sothernwood, ana. M. ß. Annise, *Careum*, Comin, Amme- os, Selseleos, ana. ℥. ß. berries of Lawtell, seed of Rew, ana. ℥. ii. make a deco- tion. In the straining dissolve *Catholicon*, and *Diaphanicon*, ana. ℥. ß. or *Diaphanicon*, or *Benedicta*, ℥. vi. or of both, ℥. ß. of red Sugar, and *mel Anthos*, ana. ℥. iij. ℥. ß. oyle of Dill and Cammomill, ana. quart. ß. or oyle of Rew, ℥. i. oyle

oyle of Dill, \mathfrak{z} ij. or oyle of Lillies, \mathfrak{z} ij. make a clyster. If ventositie be present, adde Calmatiues, if paine be present, take a medicine releasing griefe by promoting sleepe. as hereafter shall appeare by examples. If a cholericke and gnawing humour must be brought out with a clyster, then let the clyster be made of such things as will auoid that humour, and mixe it partly with such helper as do cease inflammation, as thus. \mathcal{R} . Mallowes, Bismallowes, Violets, Pellitorie of the wall, Endiue, Succorie, Lettuce, Purslaine, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. and if there be so much need of coldnesse, take the foure great cold seeds bruised, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} β of whole Barley, p. j. make a decoction of one pound. In the straining dissolue *Cassia fistula* and common Sugar, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of Roses, or of Violets, or common oyle, quart j. make a clyster. If such a passion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. \mathcal{R} . the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of Buglosse and Borage, the tops of Dill, *Lupuli*, and Fumitorie, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. Melilot and Cammomill, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. seed of *Carthamus*, and Polypodie of the Oke, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Annise, and Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β make a decoction. In the straying dissolue *Hiera Ruffi*, which is not in vse or *confectio Hammech*, \mathfrak{z} β . or *Catholicon*, \mathfrak{z} j red Sugar, or *mel Rosarum*, or Violets, \mathfrak{z} . j. oyle of Dill, Lillies, and Violets, ana. \mathfrak{z} j make a clyster. \mathcal{R} . Mallowes, Bismallowes Pellitorie of the wall, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, the tops of Dill, ana. \mathfrak{M} . j. Annise, *Careum*, Coniun and Fennell, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . or \mathfrak{z} vj. of Lawrell Berries \mathfrak{z} iij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . seed of Rew, \mathfrak{z} . ii. or iii. and make a decoction. In the straying dissolue *Benedicta*, or *Diaphanicon*, or *Electuarium Indi maioru*, which we do not vse here, \mathfrak{z} β . confection of Lawrell berries, \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . red Sugar, \mathfrak{z} i. oyle of Dill, Cammomill and Rew, ana. \mathfrak{z} i. make a clyster. Into these clysters which put away ventosities, oyle of Nuts is wholesome to put in, and also (as Galen saith) *Vinum maluatium Cretense*, may well be mixed with a clyster as is aforesaid. The signes of ventosities and wind contained in the bowels, be often farting and noise in the guttes, because it chanceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as Galen teacheth *Particula 2. Aphorism. strangulati nondum mortui, &c*) be caused of aire shut and enclosed with the humour. Clysters to cease paines are made many ways, for if the cause be an hote gnawing humour, the example is shewed afore by cold things, where be intreateth of a clyster to auoide humours: if the paine be of a cold cause, take the same that is giuen against ventosity last before: if the paine do come of moe causes, make a clyster of many of those things which are meete for the causes: and when the cause of the paine is not knowne, make it thus. \mathcal{R} . flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, the toppes of Dill, ana. pug. ii. make a decoction in milke. In the straining dissolue therein white Sugar, because the red is biting and pricking, \mathfrak{z} . i. β . whites of egges ii. oyle of Dill and Cammomill, ana. quart, β and make a clyster. Or thus. \mathcal{R} . oyle of Cammomill, Dill and Violets, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. cast it in with a clyster, and when we want such oyle, we make it of quart. iij. or \mathfrak{lb} . i. of oyle Oliue. \mathcal{R} . milke loden, quart iij. or \mathfrak{lb} . i. *Amylum sine Amydum*, halfe a dramme, or a dram at the most, Gumme Arabique, or Tragacanth, or both, a little burnt, ana. halfe a dram, or a dramme, or two drammes, Bole armoniacke, and *Sanguis Draconis*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ii. oyle of Roses and Cammomill, ana. one ounce and an halfe: make

A clyster to put
& drive away
ventosities.

A clyster to
ceasse paine.

A clyster vsed
straining.

A Clyster profitable against an hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

A Clyster to scour and cleanse vlcers in the guttes

A clyster consolidating, that is, making sound of vlcers.

a clyster. *Rx.* the iuyces of Plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, that is, a kind of Plantaine, Knotgrasse, and Purslaine: let these iuyces be cleansed either by seething or residence; take of all these, or of one of these, as much as sufficeth for a clyster, adding of the powder aforesaid, and with those oyles make a clyster. Note that when there is need, then you may make clysters of those herbes sodden, or of the waters distilled out of them, adding Rose water, as: *Rx.* the water of *Arnoglossa*, of Plantaine, of Roses, of Purslaine, of Knotgrasse, as much as sufficeth, and dissolve some of the aforesaid things therein. It is to be noted, that sometime there are put into the aforesaid decoctions, seeds and fruits that be stipitike, to make hard, and to bind, so that they lacke sharpnesse, because else they would pricke, prouoke and expulse; therefore we can mixe together the seeds of Myrtle, Sorrell, of Purslaine, Plantaine, Cypressse, *Cauda equina*, Horstaille, and such like. Moreouer note, that oile must neuer be put into clysters, if the bowels be vicerate, as they be in *Dysenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the body) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oyle is an enemy to vlcers (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi*.) Truly wine is a speciall friend, the creamé or curde of a Hare or of a Goate, in weight \mathfrak{z} iij. *Sorbus*, Proynes, Medlars, Quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. more or lesse, do restraîne and bind *Rx.* of whole Barley, p. ij. of red Roses and Cammomill, and Plantaine if paine be present, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the straining dissolve therein *mel Rosarum*, \mathfrak{z} j. the white of one egge or two, make a clyster. Such a clyster is to be given alwaies before clysters restraining, binding and consolidating by meanes whereof the thing is made prompt and easie. A clyster consolidating is made when the filthinesse of the bowels is not purged and tried out, because that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no clyster, but that prognostication is sufficient. *Rx.* of the iuyce of Plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, and Purslaine, ana ounces three, of Bolearmoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum*, ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme, or one ounce & a halfe, and make a clyster. And because Goates tallow cannot well dissolve, but almost alwaies it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowels of the sicke, therefore it may be and ought to be dissolved with a little oile of Roses, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Also ointments consolidating (as is *Unguentum album*) sometime are made liquide and mixed, and specially when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the stead of iuyces may clysters be made of milke verie well for his whey portion, which doth restraîne and consolidate. Oftentimes both in these and in restraining clysters, the whites of egges hard sodden are dissolved. And thus finisheth the making and vse of clysters or *Enema*.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines a iuyce with Sugar or hony molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the measure of that Sugar. Practitioners do put a double vnderstanding in sirupes, that is, *simplex*, which is called visuall; and *compositum*, which is called magistrall. Simples or visualls be these, syrupes of Violets

Violets, of Roses, of Endive, of Nenuphar, of Maidendaire, of Wormewood, of Mints, *Oxymel squilliticum*, sirupe of Eupatorie, of *Epithymum*, and of *Zantijis*. They are called simples, as well because they consist in one simple medicine, as also because they are ordained for one sicknesse and for one vse. *Syrupus compositus* which is called magistrall, is compounded of diuerse medicines being good for sundry diseases, as in example: if any man compound together sirupe of Wormewood and Stachados, being taken in euen portions or quantity, there would come thereof a sirupe good for the stomacke, because of the Wormewood, and good for the head because of the Stachados. A Sirupe is good and profitable to digest humours before a purgation, that they may the easier and better obey the purgation. Therefore they are vsed of many Physitions to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practitioners did obserue it, but they did commix the digestion of humours wholly to nature. Looke the comment, *Aphorism. 9. Lib. 2.* When any man will purge the body, it behoueth to make it flowing. Truly Hippocrates would do thus, saying, that the concoct and digest matter ought to be healed and moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And Galen ad Glanconem libro primo, speaking of the cure of *Tertianæ Nothæ*, would not haue Wormewood to be giuen till the seventh day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth that sirupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digestion and coction. But many do obserue and vse, that humours being grosse and clammy, and viscous, may by sirupes that do attenuate, cut, and diuide, be prepared and made easie to auoiding and purging; they call this digesting of humours. Cold and cleauing humours are prepared with sirupes that be hote, cutting and scouring; as to digest rheumey matter, such as is a leauer quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging, *Rx.* the five rootes apertive, made cleane, and tempered in vineger foure houres, ana $\mathfrak{z} \text{ss}$ or $\mathfrak{z} \text{ij}$. or the rinds of the five roots, Origan, Calamint, Hysope, Betony, and Germander, ana *M.ß.* of Annise and Fennell, ana $\mathfrak{z} \text{ss}$. of Raisins the stones picked out. $\mathfrak{z} \text{ij}$. both the Stachados, ana *p. j.* make a decoction. In the straining, dissolve of good hony quarts ij . of white Sugar, $\mathfrak{z} \text{ij}$. make a sirupe perfectly sodden. Minister three spoonfull with double as much of water of Liquorice, or with Pissan, or with water of Raisins or Annise. Humours that be moucable and thin, must be prepared to the auoiding and purging by sirupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be carried to the wayes of expulsion, or be kept and contained in the wayes and conduits by which an apt and ready expulsion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if those humours be restrained and kept out of the places aforesaid, then they shall be rectified and remedied with cold sirupes, the making whereof doth follow.

A sirupe digesting of rheumey matter.

A sirupe against thicke and moucable humours.

Rx. sirupes of Purslaine, Sorrell, Endive, Nenuphar, of Ribes, of Barberies, of *Agresta*, of Quinces, of Roses, take of one of these or more $\mathfrak{z} \text{vj}$. minister it with double as much of well water sodden. There may also conveniently be made a Iulep in this wise. *Rx.* sirupes of Roses, Purslaine & Sorrell, ana $\mathfrak{z} \text{ss}$ or grosse and $\mathfrak{z} \text{ij}$. water of Roses, *Arneglossa*, Succory, or Endive, or Purslaine, or Sorrell, ana, $\mathfrak{z} \text{ij}$. water sodden or burnt, specially if fluxe of the bellie be presens,

A sirupe to make humours thicke.

Note.

℞.vj. make a Iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℞.ij. of Cinamon elect. Furthermore, if those humours do not make and cause fluxe of the belly, but being inflamed do begin a teauer, then neither sirupes stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold sirupes lacking stipticity, as be sirupes of Endiue, Purslaine, Violets, of *Nymphaea* called water Lallies, of Maidenhaire. But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driven out the more easily, we do vse cold sharpe sirupes, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold: alio *Oxysaccarum simplex* and *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, and of Limons, which if the fluxe *Diarrhea* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then sirupes that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rale, and slay: but sirupes of Ribes, Barberies, Quinces, and iuyce of Sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpnesse and acetosity. But against hote humours, make potions of sirupes magistral in this wise. R. Endiue that is yong, or new set, and not growne long, wash it not; *Adiantum*, Maidenhaire, Succory, Purslaine, Lettuce, Singreene, Scarioll, Plaintaine, of all, or of some of them, two or three, ana. M.ij. the foure great cold seeds, ana. ℞.iij. the roote of Succory, the roote of Sorrell, of Gramen, and Nightshade, that is. the lesse Sorrell, called *Solatrium*, ana. halfe an ounce, or ℞.iij. make a decoction, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbes afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the straying disolue Sugar Taberzer, ℞.vj. of wine of Pomegranates, ℞.j. β. of vinegar, ℞.β. make a sirupe clarified & aromatized with ℞.ij. of white Saunders, or red, or both, ana. ℞.j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde too Sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor, as water sodden, water of Liquorice, or the water of some of the herbes afore said distilled; yet I do not much praise and allow the vse of distilled water. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing else, neither shall the iuyces be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden. Like formes and vses may be made of sirupes, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Syrupe of *Epithymum*, sirupe of Fumitory, which is made two wayes: one way is of the onely decoction or iuyce of Fumitory, and then it is *Syrupus de Fumiterra simplex*; another way is according to the description of *Mesue*, and such a sirupe hath Myrobalanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound for that cause: sirupe of Buglosse. sirupe of Borage, sirupe of Harts tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of Violets, because it moisteneth very much.

A sirupe for
melancholic
humours.

The simple medicines wherewith these sirupes are compounded be these: Borage and Buglosse, Fumitory, *Lupulus*, *Epithymum*, and such like that do help and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the afore said things may be made sirupes, potions, & Iuleps, decocted and boiled to the satisfying of these intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made sirupes laxative for the purging and auoiding of the matter that is rheumic and filthy, and also melancholicke

cholicke matter, when long continuing diseases be bred of them, partly to the digestion of raw matter or humours, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humours which be rotten, as in long feauers.

R^x the roote of *Apium*, Fennell and Parcelly scraped and made cleane. ana. *A sirupe laxa-*
z. iii. of Hysope, Origan and Calamint, ana. M. ss. of seede of *Carthamum*, *z. iii.* *time against*
 greene Polypody of the Oke, *z. ii.* of Annise, Fennell and Dill ana. *z. i.* ss. of *rhume matter*
 Liquorice scraped, *z. iii.* of Raisins the stones pulled out, *z. ss.* of the three *and feauers.*
 cordiall floures, ana. p. i. make a decoction strained to ff. i. or ff. i. ss. in the *Natha.*
 which infuse new trochiskes of Agaricke, *z. i.* ss. leaues of Sene cleansed, *z. ii.*
 after ten houres make a straining, wringing it strongly, whereto adde sirupe
 of Violets, *si rupa de Bizantijs*, & white Sugar ana. *z. iii.* make a sirupe perfect-
 ly sodden and aromatizate with *z. i.* of Cinamon elect, and with one sirupe *D.*
i. Xyloaloes. The dose of this sirupe by meapes of the things that are put into
 it, may be *z. i.* ss. which also the fourth or fifth day, may be given with double
 as much of hydromel, that is, water and hony sodden together, or *aqua Mul-*
sa, or of some other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into
 this present sirupe be increased or diminished, by reason of the quantity ma-
 king of the sirupe; for this present sirupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or more doses,
 therefore the forme and fashion of the proportions being kept, it may be
 made for 1. 2. 3. or moe doses. Moreouer by like reason a sirupe laxatiue is
 made for matter cholericke and filthy (as one would say) vitelline, the which
 causeth feauers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

R^x the roots of *Apium*, and of Fennell cleansed, and scraped, and tempered *A sirupe laxa-*
 in vineger one nights space, ana. *z. ss.* of Hysope, Maidenhaire, *Adiantum*, *Poly- time against*
tricum, some call it wall-ferne, Harts tongue, Endiue, Succory, ana. M. ss. or M. i. *filthy cholerick*
 the 4. great cold seeds bruiled ana. *z. ii.* or *z. iii.* Raisins the stones pulled out, *matter.*
z. ss. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. i. make a decoction, in the which infuse A-
 garicke newly made in trochiskes, *z. vi.* the leaues of Sene made cleane, *z. i.*
 in the straying dissolue sirupe of Maidenhaire and Violets, ana. *z. iii.* of white
 Sugar, *z. iii.* make a sirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the stray-
 ning of it, *z. ss.* of Reubarbe elect infused as it ought to be, which thing after it
 be strayed, let it boile on a soft fire without flame or smoke, vnto the prefecti-
 on of the decoction, the dose of it is, *z. ii.* or *z. i.* ss. with double as much of the
 decoction of Endiue, and Succory, or Liquorice, or with double as much of
 whey made of Goates milke. This sirupe is for fise or sixe doses. And if the
 first dose will not satisfie your intent, then you must dissolue somewhat therein
 that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldest haue brought out: as
 for example, R^x of the sirupes aforesaid, *z. i.* ss. of whey made of Goates milke,
z. iii. make a dose. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for,
 adde thereto either of *Cassia fistula*, *z. ss.* or of *Diaprunis laxative*, *z. i.* or *z. ii.*
 or *Diaphenicon*, *z. i.* ss. or also some Reubarbe. You may also do the same in
 the example of the sirupe made to auoide rheume.

R^x of the iuyces of *Lupuli* (that is) Hops, and of Fumitory, but it is vnpleasent, *A sirupe a-*
 of Buglosse, of Borage, and of sweet Apples cleansed, ana. *z. ii.* or *iii.* let them *gainst melan-*
 betwixt cleansed, either by decoction & clarifying, or by residence of greene *cholice.*
 Polypody of the Oke, *z. ii.* or *iii.* of fat Tamarinds, *z. i.* *Epithymum Cretensis* put

in the end of the decoction, ℥. ij. of *Adiantum*. Harts tongue, and the three cordiall flowers ana. p. i. make a decoction strained to quarts iii. in the which infuse the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥. iii. make a straining, and mixe it with the aforesaid iuyces: afterward adde thereto sirupe of Violets, ℥. vi. sirupes of Buglosse, and Sugar, Taberzet, ana. ℥. iii. make a sirupe perfectly sodden, and Aromatize with ℥. i. of Cinamon, and ℥. i. of white Ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of Buglosse, or Hops, or Fumitory, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making sirupes.

CHAP. VI.

Of making Iuleps.

AIULEP doth not much differ from a sirupe, but that it is lesse boiled then a sirupe is, and because also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as sirupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuyce of some simple medicine, as thus. R \bar{x} . of the water of infusion of Roses, or the water of infusion of Violets, ℥. v. Sugar, ℥. iii. boile it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus. R \bar{x} . water of Roses, ℥. viii. of Sugar ℥. iii. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus. R \bar{x} . the iuyce of Roses, or the iuyce of Violets, ℥. vi. Sugar, ℥. iii. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and loose, or that do re- straine and bind. But yet Physitions commonly do call a sirupe, dissolved in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, R \bar{x} . sirupe of Roses, and the sirupe of Violets, or sirupe of Maidenhaire, or of any other sirupe, ℥. iii. of sodden water. ℥. ℥. mixe them together and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dolis, sine Potio.

DOLIS, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxative, dissolved in some kind of liquor, and given in drinke. There be of this many differences, because of the diuersitie of humours that they voide and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring forth rhume or fleame, as be these, *Agaricke*, *Turbith*, *Carthamus*, *Colocynthis*, and other often sought out by *Mesua*. The compounds be *Diaphanicon*, in forma opiata, *Diacarbami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*, and *Hiera simplex*, *Hiera composita*, and such like. But these be compounded not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humor, as choler mixt with fleame or melancholy. Medicines are ministered in diuerse formes and fashions: as first in the forme of a potion, for one onely dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, whereof shall be spoken hereafter; in the forme of an Electuarie liquide, as *Opiate*: whole in forme, as lozenges, in the forme of sirups of Iuleps, also in the forme of powder and pills. R \bar{x} . *Diaphanicon*, ℥. ℥. or ℥. vi. if the sicke be strong, dissolve it with the water of the decoction of Liquorice, Raisins and Annise, as much as sufficeth. Make a dose with sirupe of Violets, ℥. vi. or ℥. i. or dissolve it with common straying,

*The forme of a
potion.*

ning, and make a dose, or dissolve it with Hydromel, or dissolve it with certain distilled waters, as waters of Hops, Buglosse, Succory, or such like; or dissolve it with the decoction or broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus:

R^x. the three cordiall flowers, ana. one handfull, of Proines Damascene, *Zinbarrum* and *Sebesten*, ana. foure in number, Liquorice scraped, ℥. i. β. Annise ℥. i. make a decoction strained for one dose: in the which dissolve *Diaphanicon*, ℥. β. or ℥. vi. sirupe of Violets, ℥. i. and make a dose. If you will adde to it another Electuarie laxative, take of one a quantity away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is said, take of *Diaphanicon*, ℥. vi. you may say take of *Diaphanicon* and *Carthamum*, ana. three drams, and so likewise of other.

R^x. Raisins the stones pulled out, ℥. β. the seed of *Carthamum* and Polypody *The forme of a* of the Oke, ana. ℥. β. or ℥. vi. of Annise, Fennell, and Liquorice scraped, ana. ℥. i. β. leaues of Hylope, ℥. i. make a decoction, in the which infuse Agarick new- *whose decoction* ly trochiscate, ℥. i. or ℥. iii. or ℥. i. β. In the straining dissolve *Diacarthamum*, doth auoid cer- or *Diaphanicon* or *Benedicta*, ℥. iii. or ℥. β. sirupe of Violets, ℥. i. and make a *taine rheume* dose. These things auoid choler: iuyce of Roses, Violets, Tamarindes, Man- *and steame.* na, *Diagredion*, that is, Scammony prepared, *Psiliu*, Reubarbe and Myroba- *Simples to a-* lanes. *Cassia fistula* purgeth as well choler as rhume: iuyce of Roses and Ireos *uoid choler.* do bring forth thin choler and yellow water. Compounds to auoid choler are *Compounds.* these. *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, *Diaprunis laxatiuum*, *Diaprunis simplex*, trochiskes of Violets, which be seldomne in vse.

R^x. of fat Tamarinds, ℥. i. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. β. Liquorice scra- *The forme of a* ped, ℥. i. β. of Proines Damascene, number vi. make a decoction in a litle quan- *potion loosning* tity of water, in the which let the Tamarinds be strongly wrung out. In the *and resoluing* straying dissolve *Cassia fistula* that is new, ℥. i. or ℥. x. make a dose. In the like *choler.* decoction you may dissolve, ℥. β. or ℥. vi. of *Diaprunis simplex*, with ℥. j. β. or ℥. ii. of *Diaprunis laxatiue*. If it be feared that *Diagredion* will do hurt, and if the sicke be rich, in the stead of *Diaprunis laxatiue* may be dissolved, ℥. i. or ℥. iii. or ℥. i. β. of Reubarbe. Take heed and note, that such a potion is good in cholericke teauers, and in those teauers in which the Frensie is feared; and truly *The forme of a* it is excellent good, for by it is eschued the auersion, and also the refrigeration and the cooling. In stead of this present decoction and colature, medi- *common dose,* cines laxatiue may be dissolved in a common decoction, or with water of *in the begin-* fruits, or with Hydromel, or with waters distilled either with Endiue, Succory, *ning of cho-* Hops, or with the broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke R^x. Raisins *lericke teauers,* the stones picked out, ℥. iij. Liquorice scraped, and Annise seedes, ana. ℥. j. *especially in* Proynes Damascene, in number vi. Tamarinds ℥. β. the three cordiall floures, Succory, yong set Endiue, ana. M. j. make a decoction boyled for one dose, in the which dissolve new *Cassia fistula*, ℥. j. or ℥. vi. after the straining, infuse ℥. j. or ℥. iij. or ℥. j. β. of Reubarbe elect as it ought to be, of sirupe of Violets, ℥. β. or ℥. j. make a dose. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is least afflicted. If choler be mixed with steame, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do loose choler, and such things as dissolve rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwayes to be ioyned with Reubarbe, is vnpleasant to the belly, for it loosneth oppilations and stoppings vehemently. Also it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child

A dose vnder
the forme of a
sirupe for deli-
cate folke.

A dose against
bastardly fea-
uers, especially
Tertians.

it prouoketh menstruis strongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with Reubarbe in medicines that are giuen to women with child, or to those which be apt to vomite. For that cause if it be mixed, 3. or 4. graines are sufficient for ʒ. j. of Reubarbe. For delicate persons which do abhorre all medicines, make a dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for two or three times, or for one dose after this sort, specially for Tertians exquisite and dainty. R^x. Endiue yong set, and Succorie, ana. M. ʒ. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. ʒ. Liquorice scraped, ʒ. j. ʒ. Proynes Damascene vj. in number, fat Tamarinds, ʒ. vj. Annise, ʒ. ʒ. make a decoction boiled to ʒ. iij. or else you may make a decoction for one dose, in which dissolue sirupe of Violets, and Endiue, ana. ʒ. vj. or ʒ. ʒ. of white Sugar, ʒ. j. the wringing and straining of ʒ. ij. of Reubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be without Spikenard, make a long sirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *ApoZema* (which is a decoction so called of the Greekes, and vsed of them in stead of our sirupes. Let it be boiled vpon the coales without any smoake long time together, wringing the Reubarbe strongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromatizate it, and make a dose of ʒ. j. ʒ. it may be multiplyed for two or three doses (the proportion of all being kept and obserued.) But if you will make a sirupe to last long, seeth it to the perfection, and of that sirupe minister, ʒ. i. ʒ. or ʒ. ij. with whey of milke, or with the decoction that serueth for thy purpose. Also you may adde some Sene in the infusion, especially if you thinke choler adust doth reigne, or if you desire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine: R^x. of young set Endiue, of Succorie of *Adiantum*, and of Harts-tongue ana. M. j. the foure great cold seeds, ana. ʒ. iij. the seed of *Carthamus*, ʒ. j. ʒ. Poly-
podie of the Oke, ʒ. ij. fat Tamarinds, ʒ. j. ʒ. seede of Endiue, Scarioll and Li-
quorice scraped, ana. ʒ. ij. of Raisins the stones plucked out, ʒ. ij. Proynes Da-
mascene ʒ. i. in number, the three cordiall floures, ana. p. j. make a decoction of
ʒ. i. or ʒ. viii. in the which infuse the leaues of Sene cleansed, ʒ. i. ʒ. Agaricke
newly trochiscate, ʒ. i. In the straining of the decoction dissolue sirupe of Vi-
olets, and Maidenhaire sirupe, ana. ʒ. iij. white Sugar, ʒ. ii. make a sirupe boi-
led vpon a lent fire, without smoke, putting vnto it the straining of ʒ. vi. of Ru-
barbe elect, infuse as it ought to be, make a sirupe perfectly boiled and aro-
matizate with ʒ. ʒ. of Cinamon, & ʒ. ii. of Red Saunders, reserue it in an ear-
then or glasse vessell. The dose of the aforesaid sirupe shall be the fourth part
of it (that is to say, ʒ. ii.) the which may be dissolved with whey of Goats milke,
or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the
decoctions of distillations of Succory or Endiue. But *Igorreus* doth not allow
distilled waters. And if the aforesaid doses do not sufficiently moue the belly &
cause it to be soluble enough, an infusion may conveniently be added to the se-
cond dose, ʒ. ii. or ʒ. i. of Reubarbe elect, or some *Diaprunis laxative*, or *Ele-
ctuarium de Succo Rosarum*, as in example. R^x. of the aforesaid sirupe, ʒ. ii. the
straining of two scruples of Reubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxative*, ʒ. i. ʒ. or ʒ.
ii. of whey made of milke, ʒ. ii. or as much as is sufficient, and make a dose. It
is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministered
to those that haue *Tertiana Notha* (that is, bastardly Tertian feauers) rather
then to those that haue feauers exquisite, dainty, and lawfull; for these be of
fewer

fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the seauers *Nothæ* and bassardly do come of filthy and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge rheume, the leaues of *Sene* which do purge melancholy, and also *Rewbarbe*, which do purge choler, may be put together to the aforesaid sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth seauers *Nothæ* of long continuance, is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more dayes must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicenna de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. These do purge melancholy: Hops, Fumitory, *Epithymum Cretensis*, Polypodie of the Oke, the leaues of *Sene*, *lapis Lazuli*, *Myrobalani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis Armenus*, blacke Hellebore, and a thousand other are to be soft out of *Mesue*. The compounds that purge melancholy be *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *Diasena*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Ruffi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *Pilule de Fumitoria*, Pils of *lapis Lazuli*, pils of the five kinds of *Myrobalanes*, of *Epithymum*, of Hellebore pils; whereof the dose is $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitternesse that they haue in taste: All Electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting, and therefore they are confected, & made in forme of potions. *Rx.* Fumitory & the tops of Hops, ana. $\mathfrak{M}.j.$ the three cordial flouers, ana. $\mathfrak{p}.j.$ of Raisins the stones picked out, $\mathfrak{z}.iij.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ of greene Polypodie of the Oke, $\mathfrak{z}.iij.$ of *Cuscuta*, & *Epithymum*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.iij.$ of Annise and Liquorice scraped, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ make a decoction, in which infuse the leaues of *Sene* made cleane, $\mathfrak{z}.ij.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.iij.$ In the straining of the decoction dissolve *Diacatholicon*, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.x.$ sirupe made of Violets, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ make a dose. In this dose sirupe of Violets, and the cordiall flouers are put in, that they may temperate the driness of *Sene* and *Epithymum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie we do put in *Hierapicra Ruffi*, whose dose is, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ in which Hellebore is cured, which is not in vse at Paris. Or else take *confectio Hamech*, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ the which is exceeding bitter for the plenty of *Coloquensida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines loosing and purging choler, or rather melancholy, may conueniently be dissolved with the whey of Goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesaid, putting in the dose before written, as in example. *Rx.* of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesaid, afterward make a decoction in the whey of Goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of *Sene*, &c. And with some of the aforesaid Electuaries confect and make a dose according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. *Rx.* the leaues of *Sene* made cleane, $\mathfrak{z}.iij.$ infuse them in the whey of Goates milke all one night, and in straining of the decoction dissolve *Catholicon*, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.x.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ and make a potion. Note that *Epithymum* doth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus, *Rx.* *Epithymum Cretensis*, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ let it boile with whey of Goates milke, afterwad straine it, and wring it out strongly, and with $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ of sirupes of Violets make a dose, which if it seeme not to be sufficient, add to it some *Catholicon*. *Galen* doth counsell to take the potion,

Simples to
purge melan-
choly humour

The forme of
melancholie.

The decoction
of an old Cocke

13. *Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that Cankers, and all melancholy-like diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, and to be eschued: but he putteth in but ℥ iij. which drams do shew to be of no effect, because, (as I thinke) we haue not the good *Epibymum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantity, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All others do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is commonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Many do thinke and iudge that the decoction of an old cocke is verie good and wholesome for diseases growne and begun, as well of melancholy, as also of rheume and fleame. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholike, caused of rheume, and partly of winde, and also against diseases of the breast, as difficulty in breathing, and moreouer against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of rheume, and partly of ventosity and wind. It is thus as followeth. R^x. of Hylope, Calamint, ana. M. j. Raisins the stones picked out, ℥ j. β. of Annise, Fennell, and *Carniana*, ℥. vj. of the seed of *Carthamum*, ℥. ij. of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ℥. i. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. j. of the floures of Cammomill, p. β. and make a decoction, putting altogether into the belly of an old Cocke, prepared as it ought to be; infuse in the end of the decoction, the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥. ij. β. of Agaricke newly trochiscate, ℥. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserue it to your vse. R^x. of the aforelaid decoction, ℥. iij. sirupe of Violets, ℥ j. β. make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and stubburne, there may be put in the dissoluing some *Diaphanicon*, as ℥ j. β. or ℥. ij. or as much *Benedicta*. Take heed also, for Agocke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtfull to those that haue the cholicke; because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clister, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long at the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre parts of the body; and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witnesse) called it *Medicinam familiae*, the medicine of his familie or household. Therefore it may not well be giuen to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe that would not be vnlesse that caused, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away Agaricke. Furthermore note, that Cammomill may aptly and well be put into those decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldome seene amongst Physicians, yet it is manifest, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a Chicken or Capon, is excellent profitable against all inward griefes, and speciall for those which haue the Cholicke and the Frensie (as many haue proved it, to the great preservation of their health.) The water of the distillation of Cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more and better effect then the distillation of it. The bitternesse of the decoction may be mitigated with Sugar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a Cocke may conueniently be giuen for diseases in the breast and of *Dyspnea*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with; as, R^x of Hylope, of *Enula Campana*,
of

of each the third part of a handfull. of Savory the fourth part of a handfull, of horsehoofe, called *Vngula caballina*, which is an herbe called of some, little Clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; seed of *Carthamus*, and Greene Polypodie of the Oke, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. of Annice and Licorice scraped, ana. \mathfrak{z} .℞. roots of Ireos, and rootes of *Enula*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .iij. or \mathfrak{z} .℞. of fat Figs not putrified foure or sixe in number, of fat Dates, the skins and filmes taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and Sebesten, ana. twelue in number, of Raisins the stones picked out, \mathfrak{z} .j. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. j. make a decoction in the belly of an old Cocke that is hunted, prepared and dressed as it ought to be, putting into it at the end, of Agaricke and of the leaues of Sene, as much as you thinke will be sufficient for your purpose: but note, that here Agaricke may conveniently be vsed and ministred. There are other medicines also which be made against all superfluities in other formes, that is to say, in the forme of liquide electuaries, that is, *ad formam Opiata*: or in forme whole, that is, like an Electuarie made in lozenges or in tables.

CHAP. VIII. Of making Bolus.

BO L V S in English is called a morrell. It is a medicine laxative, in forme and fashion it is meanelly whole, and it is swallowed by little gobbets. It is made of diuerse things, by reason of auoiding and purging diuerse humours: but the plainest and simplest way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Cassia fistula*, new drawne out of a cane or reede, sixe drammes or an ounce, of Sugar so much as sufficeth, and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Cassia* will do hurt, as if great paine be in the bowels, whereby many times it prouoketh swoounding, as some do that haue but weake and tender bowels: to such *Cassia* is not to be ministred, neither by bole nor by clisters. And for that cause the sicke person must be asked how he feeleth himselfe before *Cassia* be ministred vnto him. Truly many authors do thinke, that this hurt which *Cassia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it some graines of Barberies, or Sugar roset: for they are of this mind, that through their stipicitie the belly and the bowels are strengthened, and the paine impedit and letted, which *Cassia* doth cause by his clamminesse and mollifying softnesse. There be others that do mixe some laxative with *Cassia*, that it may quicken the slownesse of his operation, & that it descending, may the sooner slide away & be auoided. Boles chiefly are thus ordained and made, being very profitable remedies against the diseases of the reynes \mathfrak{R} . *Medulla Cassia fistula* dewly drawne, \mathfrak{z} .j. or \mathfrak{z} .x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of Barberies, \mathfrak{z} .℞. and with Sugar roset, make a bole. Others do adde, \mathfrak{z} .ij. or \mathfrak{z} .j. or \mathfrak{z} .ij. of *Diaprunis laxativa*. or *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*: as in example following. \mathfrak{R} . *Medulla Cassia fistula* newly drawne, \mathfrak{z} .vj. of *Diaprunis laxativa*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. of Sugar roset tabulate as much as sufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, because of the ventosity which *Cassia* doth engender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of Anise, \mathfrak{z} .j. or \mathfrak{z} .℞. which auaieth much. \mathfrak{R} . *Cassia fistula* newly drawne out of a cane or reed, The forme of \mathfrak{z} .iij. or \mathfrak{z} .i. the soft matter of fat *Tamarindus*, \mathfrak{z} .i.℞. of chosen Rewbarbe, \mathfrak{z} .℞. a bole purging or \mathfrak{z} .ii. or \mathfrak{z} .i. Sugar as much as sufficeth, make a bole. If the sicke person be choleric.

The forme of
a dose against
melancholy.

poore, in stead of Rewbarbe, make a bole with $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{vj}.$ of *Cassia*, and $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}.$ of *Diaprunis laxativa*, and with Sugar. $\mathfrak{R}x$. *Catholicon*, $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{x}.$ and with white Sugar make a bole; or thus. $\mathfrak{R}x$. *Catholicon*, $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{vj}.$ of *Confectio Hammech*, $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}.\mathfrak{ss}.$ and with Sugar make a bole.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pils.

PILLS are ministred for the auoiding of euery humour: viz. against rheume or fleame reigning, and also against cholera notha, which is vile and filthy choler having dominion in man. *Pilula Aggregatiua* after the description of *Mesua. de Agarico, de Rhubarbaro; Stomachica. de Hiera simplici, de Hiera composita* which respecteth the head; *Coccie* or *Cochie*, which are so called of *Granis Cocci*, and not of the head, as some think; *Pilule aures Elephantine, Sine quibus, de Hermodactylis maior & minor, de Serapina, de Sarcolla*: Truly the foure kinds of pils last receited, are most appropriate and agreeing against corrupt and stinking humours: of the which vertue also be *Arthetica maiores & minores* when rheume reigneth, but these when choler reigneth in the diseases of the ioynts: then also the pils of *Hermodactylis maior* and *minor* are dedicated and ministred. Pils that do onely void pure choler, and purge it, there are a thousand to be found, but many of them haue more respect to the auoiding of filthie and bastardy choler, or that which is greatly mixed with rheume as *Pilula de Rhubarbaro, de Hiera simplici, Aggregatiua, de Agarico, Ante-cibum, Imperiales*. In a manner the chiefe dose of pils is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pils, and with some conuenient sirupe, as sirupe of Endiue, sirupe of Maidenhaire, sirupe of *Stachados*, or also with *Oxymel* or *Hydromel*, or with some other liquor.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines genly made for the concoction and digestion of humours, or for preparation of them, and sometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerse, and for diuerse intents and purposes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moist, and to make drie, to loosen and open, to restraine and bind, to attenuate and make thinne, to make grosse and thicke, to prouoke menstruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their rootes, fruites, & seedes (and other, as it shall seeme meete and expedient for your purpose.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a sirupe, but in boiling; for sirupes are wont to be boyled long, and to the perfection, but an *Apozema* is boyled easily and little. Therefore, sirupes may be long kept, and *Apozemes* may be kept but a few daies. $\mathfrak{R}x$. of *Succory, Endiue, Cuscuta* and *Adiantum*, ana. $\mathfrak{M}.$ $\mathfrak{R}x$. of the rootes of *Sorrell*, and of *Gramen*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}.$ the foure great cold seedes made cleane, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}.$ of the three cordiall flowers, ana. $\mathfrak{p}.\mathfrak{j}.$ make a decoction of $\mathfrak{ss}.\mathfrak{ss}.$ In the straining dissolue sirupes of *Violets*, of *Syrupus asetosus*, or sirupes of *Linions*, or also white Sugar. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{iiij}.$ and make an *Apozema*, and clarifie it, and aromatizate it with $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}.$ of *Cinamen* elect for two doses, likewise *Apozema* may be made against other

The forme of
an Apozeme
against chole-
ricke humours.

other humors, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the sirupes. Note that in the confection and making of *Apozema*, for $\mathfrak{z} . ii$ or at the most for $\mathfrak{z} . iii$. of the decoction it is sufficient to adde, $\mathfrak{z} . i$. of Sugar or sirupe. Also there be made *Apozemes laxative*, as there be sirupes laxative, adding to laxative things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Looke in the title of sirupes for the example, for they be like them (this onely excepted as we said before) that an *Apozema* after the dissolving of the Sugar or sirupe in it, ought not to be boiled any longer.

CHAP. XI.

Of making Mulsio.

M^VLSIO is made of seeds cleansed, or of fruites, or of both sometime, to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and lungs, and against discharges of the reins and the bladder, or against *Ischuria*, that is, retention and withholding of urine, and of the strangurie, that is, the voyding of humours by causing of urine to issue out by drops with burning in the yard. R^c. of the 4. great cold seeds new and cleare, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . iii$. or $\mathfrak{z} . \beta$ of sweete Almonds blanched in cold water. $\mathfrak{z} . i$. beate all together in a stone morter with wel-water first sodden, and make a decoction of $\mathfrak{lb} . i$. and reserve it and keepe it in a glasse vessel. The aforesaid *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the urine, or the strangurie, if $\mathfrak{z} . iii$. or \mathfrak{vi} be given in the morning 3. or 4. houres before dinner, and 2. or 3. houres before supper, the same quantity of the premises, or a little lesse, with one Lozenge of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesaid seeds, and Gums, and many other things. But if in the aforesaid cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling, mixe with your *Mulsio* the seeds of Purslaine, of Lettuce, and white Poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde too new Pine apples, sweet Almonds, & fresh Figges, that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diarise simplicis*, or *Diarrise Solomonis*, let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulsio*, there may conveniently be mixed some quantity of Sugar, or some sirupe apt and meete for the purpose (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt bloud in the urine of a man:) as thus. R^c. the seed of white Poppie and the foure great cold seedes of sweet Almonds, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . \beta$. stampe all thete in a morter with as much water of the decoction of Liquorice as sufficeth. In the straining dissolve the sirupe of Violets, of Maidenhaire, and of Myrtles, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i$. make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the griued person take it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

*The forme of
Mulsio.*

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

POWDER is made of seeds, roots, and minerals, powdered and beaten finely, and Sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stop and keepe downe vapors which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes, help digestion.

as it often changeth. *Rx.* the seedes of Annise, and Fennell, ana $\mathfrak{z} . j$. the seede of Citron, Cinamon, Liquorice, and Roses, ana. one scruple, of chosen Pearles and the scraping of Yuorie, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{s}$. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stop and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion, as is this that followeth. *Rx.* Coriander prepared, $\mathfrak{z} . j$. \mathfrak{s} . the scraping of Yuorie, red Corall, the horne of a Hart burned, ana $\mathfrak{z} . j$ of Cinamon $\mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{s}$. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder, which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the belly, and for strength, and against the plague coming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboracion and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feauers, and in great imbecillitie and weakenesse of strength. *Rx.* the scraping of an Vnicornes horne graines 4. 5. or 6. the scraping of Yuory, of chosen Pearles, and of Harts horne, ana. gr. 6. seed of Citron, and *Carduus Benedictus*, ana gran. 4. and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquor, as with white wine, distillation restorative, water of Scabious; of Buglosse, or of some other like. And such powders for the most part are ministred about midnight, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue, as is Diacene, and Diaturbith, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much Sugar; and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a Chicken, or of Liquorice, or of Ptisan. But yet these powders are seldome vted among practitioners.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of Electuaries, and Conserues: of Lozenges,
and Manus Christi.*

AN Electuary is ordained and made two wayes, that is, either liquide, as in *Forma Opiate*, or whole, as in tables of lozenges; or in fashion foure square and long, which they call *Manus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate and strengthen, and for that cause they be called *Ionica*, as affoording strength to the members, that is to say, they roborate and strengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to strengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they must be administred to a fasting stomacke. If the vertue digestiue be weake through coldnesse, minister them after meate. But if any matter arise through moistnesse, then minister one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnholeesome substance. But if the vertue vitall requireth strengthening, you may minister them very well in a manner at all houres; but if you intend to strengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently minister in the houre of sleepe or about midnight. The formes of Electuaries are in this order as followeth, and first, of a liquide Electuary which is profitable to strengthen the naturall vertue when the substance of the belly is made feeble by coldnesse and moistnes, *Rx.* of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which *Gabriel* describeth)

*An Electuary
strengthening
the naturall
vertue.*

scribeth) ʒ.ij. powder of *Electuariū aromaticū Diacalamintū*, ʒ. j. of Diatrio-
piperion, ʒ.ij. of *Conserua Anthos*, that is, of flowers of Rosemary, & of Roses,
ana. ʒ. ʒ. of Sugar taberzet, ʒ. j. ʒ. of sirupe of Mints as much as sufficeth, make
a liqued Electuary in forma *Opiata*, and minister it before dinner or breakfast
an houre or an houre an halfe, or two houres: the dose is, ʒ. ʒ. or rather ʒ. ij.
Electuarium aromaticum rosatum being ministred fasting, taketh away all cor-
rupt and rotten humidities, and being ministred after meate, it strengtheneth
the vertue digestiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie
made in Lozenges or fashioned like *Manus Christi*, against hote distemper of
the liuer, and against obstructions of the same, as thus, R̄. of the powder of
Tria Sandolorum, ʒ. ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ʒ. j. of conserues of
Succory and Roses, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. of Sugar taberzet or white Sugar dissolued in
water of Succory, or Endiue, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozē-
ges of the weight of ʒ. ij. or ʒ. ij. ʒ. or ʒ. iij. minister one before meate. Many
times conserues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont
for euery draghme of powder, to put to ʒ. j. of Sugar. But if you will make the
Electuarie more strong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder,
for ʒ. j. of Sugar. If the stomacke be troubled with the presence of melancholy
abounding and flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multi-
plyeth it, or by diseases of the spleene, as be stoppings which hinder the receipt
thereof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in forma *Opiata*, with things follow-
ing, as in example. R̄. of the powder of *Electuarium latificans Galeni*, ʒ. iij. *An Electuary*
the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*, ʒ. j. the powders of the E- *against me-*
lectuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Diamoschi dulcis*, or *Diambra* may *laucholy.*
be put in, seeing that they haue the same vertue: of conserues of Buglosse, and
Borage, and Violets, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. the barke of Citron seasoned, ʒ. j. of as much
white Sugar dissolued in water of Buglosse or Borage, as sufficeth; make an E-
lectuary in Lozenges, or in little gobbets, or like *Manus Christi*, in weight ʒ. iij.
or ʒ. ʒ. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuary, put to it
twife or thrife as much more of the conserues, and some powder of white Su-
gar, or Sugar rosate, that is to say, ʒ. ij. as is shewed in the example aforesaid, with
some sirupe hauing respect to the melancholicke humour; as is sirupe of Bug-
losse, or Borage, of Roses, of Harts-tong, of *Epithymum*, of Fumitory, of which
adde to as much as sufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquide forme.

An Electuary for the strong stopping of the liuer or the spleene, wherein
there is danger of the Dropsie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, that is, a spice of
consumption: such an Electuarie (I say) is made of the powders of the Electua-
ries, *Diagalange*, *Diacucumeris*, *Diacapparis*, *Dialacce*, and of conserues; which if
you will commize together, conserues of Succory may conueniently be mix-
ed with them. Note also that Electuaries be made of Trochiskes, or of powder
of Trochiskes, hauing respect to the disease, as in a hote cause take *Trochisci*
Diarrhodon, Trochiskes of *Carabus*, Trochiskes of *Bolearmoniascke*, of *Terra*
sigillata (specially if we would restraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabo*, if we
would stop the fluxe of bloud. But if we would open or loosen the obstructions
of the liuer or spleene, we must bring this to passe with Trochiskes of Rew-
barbe, or of *Capparis*. Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggriued

- with cold, may be made of *Electuarium Diambre*, *Diamusci dulcis*, *Electuarium de Gemma*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muscatum*, *Aromaticum Rosatum maioris Gabrieli*, *Latificans Galeni & Rasii*, *Electuarium Conciliatorum*, of *Alkermes* confection and making. Conserues for the same intent be these: Conserues of Roses, Buglosse, Borage, Anthos, barks of Citron, Ginger condite, Orenge condite, and other of that sort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and labourerth of heat, take the *Electuarie Rosata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vse them often. These be the conserues that be good, conserues of Roses, of Violets, of Buglosse, and of Borage, and also of *Nymphaea* or *Nemophar*, that is, water Lillies. If the cough be present, and if the hurt our contained in the breast be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will caule it to auoid and come forth, minister *Diatragacanthum frigidum*; if the humour be clammy and thicke, minister *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diarris simplex*, or *Diarris Salomonis*. And if there be suspicion of venomous substance, then with the powders of *Electuaries* cold or hote, which do resist poyson, we do commixe *Maces*, and *Muske*, *Zedoaria*, *Saffron*, *Cinamon*, and *Xyloaloes* in cold causes. But in hote causes there may conueniently be mixed *Pearles*, *Coral*, *Christal*, *Roses* and *Camphora*. In causes mingled one with another, either hote or cold, by a certaine properne, these do corroborate and strengthen and defend, *Pearles*, seede of Citron, roote of *Tormentill*, *Tunici* and *Dictamnus*, the bone of the Harts heart one in number, or if you will weigh it, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.ss.$ as in this example following against a pestilentiall feauer. $\mathfrak{R}.$ the powder of the *Electuarie* of *Diamargariton frigidum*, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ or white shining *Perales* elect and powdered in a marble mortar, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ of *Camphora* gran. $ij.$ or else Trochiskes of *Camphora*, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.ss.$ the rootes of *Dictamnus*, of *Tormentill*, and of *Tunici*, and the barks of Citron, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ of conserues of Buglosse, Borage, *Nymphaea*, and *Roses*, take of these either one, two, or three or all, to the quantity of two or three dragmes: of white Sugar dissolved in water of Roses, or of Buglosse, or of Borage, as much as sufficeth, make an *Electuarie* in Lozenges, or make a liquid *Electuarie* in the forme aforesaid. $\mathfrak{R}.$ the three kinds of *Saunders*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ the bone of the Harts heart one in number, Sugar Rosate tabulate, of white Sugar dissolved in Rose water as much as sufficeth, make an *Electuarie*, gild it with leaues of pure gold in weight, $\mathfrak{z}.ss.$ Also there be made *Electuaries* laxatiue against all superfluities and diseases, that together with the purging we may also strengthen, as in example, against long diseases coming of rhume, or some clammy humor breeding the cough. $\mathfrak{R}.$ *Cassia* that is new, $\mathfrak{z}.ij.$ *Diarrhodon*, $\mathfrak{z}.vj.$ new *Penidios*, and *Diarris simplex*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.ss.$ of conserues of Violets, $\mathfrak{z}.ij.$ of sweete *Anise* powdered, and powder of *Liquorice*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}.ss.$ sirupe of Violets as much as sufficeth: make a liquide *Electuarie*, in forma *Opiata*. The dose is, $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ or $\mathfrak{z}.x.$ or at the most $\mathfrak{z}.j.$ the which may be ministred an houre, or an houre and a halfe (swallowing it) or he may take it foure houres before dinner, because it may conueniently be given a little before meat, because of the *Diarrhodon* which hath *Diagridium* in it. Also you may dissolve it in the broth of a chicken, or in *Prisan*, or in a common pectoral decoction, and make a potion, and minister it foure or five houres

houres before meate. And this note, that you must appoint the wayes and meanes of the ministration of Physicke, according as you see the nature and condition of the sicke person. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxative medicines that be pleasant in taste, the forme and fashion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthamum*, and *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, after which fashion you may make other very meete and seruing for your purpose.

CHAP. XIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conserua.

CONDITIONA be made as Electuaries be made, to strengthen the might, and the primitiue and worthiest members. They rather haue respect to the substance and matter of breathing, then to the beauty and soundnesse of the flesh. But forasmuch as the weaknesse of strength, causeth sores and diseases to grow in their instruments, therefore it is ministred to the that begin to recouer and wax strong. *R. Conserua Anthos*, that is, of Rosemary, conserue of Borage, Buglosse, Maidenhaire, and Succory, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. the Barke of Citron condite, \mathfrak{z} j. β . the powder of *Electuarium plurisarcoticum*, the powder of *Electuarium Ducus*, *Diarrhodon Abbatu*, and *Triasandali*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . the leaues of gold in number vi. of white Sugar as much as sufficeth, & make a *Conditum*. Of the same powders of Electuaries is made a whole and an hard *Conditum*, as thus, *R.* the powder of *Electuarium Plurisarcoticum*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Ducus*, *Diarrhodon Abbatu*, and *Triasandali*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. conserues of Roses & Succory, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. white Sugar dissolued in Rose water, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges or morsels like unto *Manna Christi*, of the weight of \mathfrak{z} ij. In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to strengthen all kind of vertues, as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electuaries & conserues either hote or cold, hauing respect to the vertue, according as the owne distemper or the cause of it desireth. Now there followeth these hote Electuaries hauing respect to the vertue vitall: *Electuarium Diambra*, *Diamargariton calidum*, *Diamuscum amarum*, *Diamuscum dulce*, de *Geminis*, *letificans Galeni*. Cold Electuaries, *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatu*, which be temperate, *Triasandali*. Conserues respecting both the distempers, that is, hote & cold: as *Conserua rosarum*, *Boraginis*, *Buglossa*, *Violarum*. Cold conserues, *Conserua Nymphaeae*, *Violarum*. Hot *Conditum* respecting the vertue vitall, as, *Cortex Cstri conditum*, which may be ministred in both cases, *Confectio de Cinamomo*, *confectio de Xyloloe*, *confectio Alkermes*, which is common to the Physitions: of *Montispeffulari*, Ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, & so for other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue animal be these, *Plurisarcoticum*, *Dianthos*, *Diamuscum dulce & amarum*, *Mithridatum* and *Triacle*, which be opiate, that is liquid. Hote conserues respecting the vertue animal be these, *conserua Anthos*, *Acori*, *Rosarum*, which is temperate, almost all Opiate, that is, liquid things, as *Mithridatum*, *Triacle* & *Aurea Alexandrina*. Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be these, *Diacalamintum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Aromaticum rosatum maioris*, (which *Gabriel* describeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatu*, which is very temperate, and necessarie in both causes,

A conditum to strengthen all vertue and power.

Hote Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall.

Cold Electuaries.

Conditum respecting the vertue vitall.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue animal.

Hote conserues.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall.

Hotte conserues *Diairi Salomonis*, or *simplex Dialacca*, and *Diacneurma*, the which are good respecting the against oppilations in the liuer, and against the Dropſie. Hotte conserues re-
 vertue natu- specting mightily the vertue naturall be these: *Conserua Egingiorum*, *Conserua*
 rall. *Satiri*, *Zinziber conditum*, *cortex Citri conditus*, meate of Quinces condite,

Cold Electua- Peares condite, and such like. Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali*, *Dia-*
 ries. *tragacanthum frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*. Cold

Cold conserues. conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum*, *Cichora*, *Nimphaea* &c.

A conditum R² the powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum*, ʒ. ij. the powder of *Dia-*
 against the hot *margariton frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana ʒ. ij. conserues of Succory,
 distemper of al and Violets, ana ʒ. j ʒ. white Sugar dissolued in water of Endiue, or Succory,
 kindes of or Roses as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in Lozenges in weight ʒ. ij. or
 veines. ʒ. iij. or thus: R² conserues of Succory, of Violets, of *Nimphaea*, and of Bu-

Another for glasse, ana ʒ. ij ʒ. conserue of Roses, ʒ. j ʒ. powder of *Tria sandali*, & of *Dia-*
 the same di- *margariton frigidum*, ana ʒ. iij. the leaues of Gold viij. in number, white Su-
 stemper. gar as much as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one silver spoonefull. Many

in these condites, where there is suspition of some venomous matter, as in pestilent feauers, or in swoounding, they do adde to the seed of Citron, the seed *Cardus Benedictus*, the roote of *Dictamus*, and Tormentill: and for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it (but onely the opinion of the common people:) as for example, in the aforelaid Conditum take away some portion of the aforelaid Electuaries, that is to say, the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. R² of the seed of *Cardus Benedictus*, of the seed of Citron, of the roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill, ana ʒ. j or ʒ. ʒ. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and condites, as in example: to stop the fluxe, take Trochiskes of *Diacerallus*, *Diarrhodon*, of *Terra sigillata*, of *Bolcarmoniacke*, and of *Carabe*. And to keepe the temperature of the heart, take Trochiskes of *Camphora*, of the which take as much in quantity as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no Sugar put into them.

CHAP. XV.

Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.

PASTA Regia is a confection, so called by the Physitions of late time, which is especially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to drive away the causes of leanness: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being very effectually against both the causes, that is, the diseases of the breast and the lungs, and against leanness: as thus. R² sweete Almonds blanched, ʒ. ij. of new Pines cleansed, and tempered ten houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose, ʒ. ʒ. of *Pistacium*, that is, a kinde of nuttes; let them be new cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforelaid waters, ʒ. j. *Amylum*, *Diatragacanthum*, and of Gumme Arabicke, ana ʒ. ʒ. of the meate of Dates, Prunes Damascene, and Sebesten, & Raisins, one or else more of these, to the quantity of one ounce, white Sugar dissolued in Well water, or in Rose water, or in water of *Enula*, as much as sufficeth; make a *Pasia Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer

or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great seeds (the barks being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.

A LOHOCH or *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomacke by little and little. It is good against diseases of the breast and the lungs, (as is) *Dyspnea*, *Apnea*, short and hard breathings, sighings and coughes, whether it cometh by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarrhes, and rheume, which chance oftentimes, *Rx. Electuarium Diarris Salomonis & Diarris simplex*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. Lohoch de Pino, \mathfrak{z} .i. conserue of *Enula campana*, \mathfrak{z} . β . *Oxymel Scylliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch & let the sicke vse it with a Liquorice stick: licking or wallowing a little at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring, then there is of incision and cutting, you must augment and increase the quantity of the scouring receipts, & in stead of *Oxymel Scylliticum* put too Syrupe of Liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassum*, or of Iuiubes, or else of Hysope: many do thinke sirupe of Hysope to be absteriue, only for the saying of *Auicen*, which (as *Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *compositum*, Lohoch de Pino, Lohoch de *caulibus*, *sanum* and *exportum*, Lohoch de *Scylla*, these may conueniently be ministered by themselves. But when a feauer is present (as in the pleurisie) then to auoid and bring out from the breast the materiall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is already flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sort and fashion. *Rx. of Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi*, \mathfrak{z} .2. new Penidies, and white pils, ana. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. Syrupe of Violets, or of Iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch & vse it with a Liquorice stick, swallowing it by little and little. If the matter be partly flowe, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. *Rx. Electuarium Diarris simplex*, \mathfrak{z} .i. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, \mathfrak{z} .vi. new Penidies, \mathfrak{z} .iii. Syrupe of Iuiubes, or Hysope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowe or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against defluxion or flowing of humours that be hote and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtilty thereof may be made thicke and grosse, and the parts to the which the fluxe cometh being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any document or hurt (as in example) *Rx. Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi*, \mathfrak{z} .i. Bole armoniacke washed in Rose water, \mathfrak{z} .ii. Trochiskes of *Terra sigillata*, \mathfrak{z} .ii. Syrupe of Poppy as much as sufficeth, and make a Lohoch. In stead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantity. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in which is put some *Opium* may be added to them, if there be no cause that *Opium* be suspected to do hurt. These Lohochs be giuen against the Ptisicke in the houre of sleepe; *Electuarium Diapapaueris*, Lohoch of Poppy. All the pils of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Catarrhe and rheume, may be mixed and giuen the same houre, and for the same intent.

A Lohoch against rheume coagaled together, clammyish hard & thick.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

*Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.**The forme of
Semicupium.**Alind Semi-
cupium.*

BALNEVM is a baine, the vse whereof was common and often among bold practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall Goute, in the Palfey, and in consuming Feauers. But against the Goute and the Palfey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared, with boiling together in water, herbes, roots, seeds, floures, and also many mettals, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But *Semicupium*, which in Latine is called *Inseffum*, is a particular bath, which is applyed for paines of the Nefretie, for the Cholicke, and for the Iliacke, so that they come not by reason of an impostume. It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distemper of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of *Semicupium*, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the body enlarged, and made soft and plaine, and also to cease the paine as thus: *Rx.* the rootes of *Althea*, \mathfrak{z} . iij. the leaues of *Malua*, *Bismalua*, and *Parietarie*, the floures of *Cammomill* and *Melilore*, the tops of *Dill*, ana. *M. ij.* of *Origan*, *Calamint*, *Betony*, and *Sothernwood*, ana. *M. j.* seeds of *Flaxe* and *Fennell*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. of cleane *Branne*. p. iij. boile all these in a bag in sufficient water for a *Semicupium*. Note also that one who hath the Nefretie may enter a bath before he hath receiued a clister. If the paine of the Cholicke or the Nefretie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue need of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse, with incision and cutting; make a *Semicupium* thus. *Rx.* *Origan*, *Calamint*, tops of *Dill*, and of *Cammomill*, ana. *M. iij.* *Fenugreeke*, *Carawayes*, *Anise* and *Fennell*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Laurell berries*, \mathfrak{z} β . And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforesaid griefes, you may adde too such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as it there be any need of mollifying & making soft, the leaues of *Malua*, *Bismalua*, *Parietary*, and *Violets* will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessary to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the body, adde too of the roote of *Spinach*, *Brusum*, and *Apium*; knit them in a little bagge, and seeth them for a *Semicupium*. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Inseffum* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as *Mugwort*, *Sauin*, *Horeboud*, *Nux Cupressi*, and *Iuniper berries*; of all these there may be put in two handfuls.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Epithema or Fotus.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it, & *Fotus* is a medicine nourishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hote distemper of the liuer, the making whereof is this as ensueth. *Rx.* the waters of *Endiue*, *Succory*, *Roses*, & *Pentroyal*, & *Nightshade*, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. of vineger, \mathfrak{z} j. the powder of *Electuarium Triasandali*,

Triasandali, ℥.ij. or ℥.i. β. mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, *Epitheme*. or a peece of linnen or woollen cloth, or a sponge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and laid against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and a halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbes, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. R. Succory both the roote and the herbe, yong set Endiue, Agrimorie (which is) Eupatorie. ana. M. i. floures of Succory. p. j. the foure great cold seeds, and little cold seeds, ana. ℥. β. of Cypresse, ℥. ij. of Lupins, ℥. ij. all the Saunders, ana. ℥. j. of Squinant. ℥. β. the tops of Wormewood, M. ss. make a little bagge, and boile it in foure quarts of water, and one of wine, and a litle Vineger, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessell, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesaid: such an Epitheme is very good for diseases depending vpon oppilation or stopping, and misfortune coming by oppilation and stopping, as is a fluxe; and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseases for the most part which come and go by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempers and stoppings of the liuer: moreouer against the beginnings of knobbes and kernels, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applyed mollificatives, and things that do loosen and vbinde. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomacke: first to strengthen the stomacke that it receiue not the superfluities comming from other places, and then the Epitheme is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distemper of the stomacke. And thirdly they serue to cease the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that grieve: ministring duely to the contrary of the matter, as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomacke may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preferued safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. R. red Roses, p. ij. of Arnoglossa and Plantaine, ana. M. β. the tops of Wormewood, M. j. the third part, all the Saunders, ana. ℥. ij. red Corall, ℥. iij. put all these in a little bag, and make a decoction in sufficient quantity of water with a litle Vineger, to which may be added a litle Rhenish wine, and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Achymum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause; for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomacke, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intents and purposes, may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomacke made of oile, as oile of Roses, Cammell, Wormewood, Masticke, and Mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent (euer they be ministring), you must mixe something with them that may preferue and keepe the essence and strength of the member that the Epitheme is laied too, as *Galen* commandeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Forus* be all one, yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is onely that which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Forus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes and roptes.

Of making Sacculus.

SACCULVS *videlicet* a little bagge. It is ministred for the same causes that *Forus* be vled for. It is made of herbes, flowers, seedes, and other such like things; they be layed to either drie, or else wet in some liquor. The drie be chiefly made of seedes and herbes: the wet must be first pressed before it be laid to the place. *Rx.* *Milij vstulati*. p. iij. *Orobum* (which some thinke to be *tare*;) and of leane Branne, ana. p. ii. floures of Cammomill, and the tops of Dill, ana. p. i. of Comin and Caraway, ana. ʒ. ii. of Laurell berries, ʒ. iii. make thereof two litle bags, and sew them into two linnen clothes, of a competent bignesse, and baste them throughly. Let them be so bigge that they may couer the belly, and let one after another be laied hote to the belly againe and againe.

A drie bagge against the windie cholick or Tympanites

A moist bag. Now followeth the forme of a moist bagge for the digesting, mollifying, and dissolving of raw humours, as thus. *Rx.* the flowers of Cammomil, p. ii. the tops of Dill, Melilote and Origan, ana. p. i. Fenugreeke and flaxe seed, ana. ʒ. i. the leaues of *Malua*, *Bismalua*, & Violets, ana. M. ʒ. make a little bag, or make two bags, and boile them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a formentation with a sponge, or a felt, or woollen clothes, or two bags; let them be laid to the griued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make and apply bagges, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue and discusse, and lay them to knobs, kernels and hardnesse of the flesh. But if the person be strong, take other remollitiues, or discussiuues, euen as you shall finde the matter that causeth the hardnesse to require.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

SCVTVM in English is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are ministred to the stomacke, and made for the same causes that ointments and Epithemes be. They are often made of the dry powder of medicines, to correct some distemper of the stomacke, and to adde strength to it. Furthermore they serue in stead of ointments or Emplastres, when the patients do refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. *Rx.* Mints, Marioram, and Wormewood dried, ana. p. i. or ʒ. i. ʒ. of Cloues, Galingale, and *Xyloales*, ana. ʒ. iii. of Comin and redde Corall, ana. ʒ. i. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a litle cotton, sewed in betweene two litle clothes, with stitchings betweene, and bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomacke. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and halfe at the most, many times an ounce or sixe drammes is enough.

A Scutum against the cold distemper of the stomacke, with ventosity and other subflance.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, roots, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oile added to them as the matter requireth, *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to ceasse paines, sometime to resolue and bind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, sometime to consume, and sometime

to dry vp humors and vapours. In commixed affects and causes, diuers intents and purposes are mixed together in *Cataplasma*, as remollitines with discut-
 siues, and discutsiues with such things as cease paine, as the examples follow-
 ing shall declare. And first of the forme of a Cataplasme for the cure of *Oede-
 ma* (which is a botch of flegmaticke matter, or an impostume without griefe)
 in the which euill it is necessary to haue remollition with discussion, or (as
 they say) resoluing, loosening and ceasing of paine, as thus: R^x the leaues of
Malua, *Bismalua*, and Violets, ana. M. j. or M. ss. the roote of *Althea*, the roote of
 white Lillies, & the roote of Ireos, that is, Floure de luce, ana. ʒ ss. or ʒ i flowers
 of Cammomill, Melilot and tops of Dill, ana p. i. seed of flaxe, and of Fenu-
 grecke, or rather meale of Flaxe seed, meale of Fenugrecke, and meale of
 Barley, ana. ʒ ss. or ʒ j. or you may measure it by little handfuls; Comin, ʒ i.
 Laurell berries, ʒ. ii. Saffron, ʒ. i. or ʒ ss. of Duckes greale, Goose greale, the
 marrow of Calues shankes, fresh butter, oile of Lillies, and oile of Ireos, ana. as
 much as sufficeth; make a Cataplasma. In this plaister are contained three
 intents and purposes: that is, mollifying, dissoluing, and ceasing of paine, as
 may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantity of mollificatiues
 ought to be most, if there be greatest neede of mollifying, and the quantity of
 dissoluers ought to be most, if there need to be great dissoluing, and so like-
 wise of ceasing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as also in the
 beginning of euery abscession or course of ill humours, you must commixe to-
 gether with mollificatiues some repercussive remedie. wherewith the member
 may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take most remolli-
 tiues, & fewest discutsiues. In the beginning of the augmenting & state of the
 disease, take of both alike much. In the declination, take and apply onely dis-
 soluers and looseners. In the making of this present plaister, you must put into
 it no stipticke thing: but if you do put in any, put it in at the beginning of the
 flowing of the humour. But what medicines they be that haue stipticke vertue,
 and which do comfort the member, and also which do mollifie, and dissolue,
 you must seeke them in the tables of authors, as *Arnaldus* and *Sauanarola*, and
 such like. Also there be plaisters made without oyle or greace, as is that com-
 mon thing of crummes of bread steeped in coves milke, and a little sodden
 together with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a little Saffron, as ten
 or twelue chiues. And this Cataplasme we often vse for the cure of the Goute.

CHAP. XXII.

Of making Emplastrum.

EMplaisters are ordained and made for diuerse purposes, and the making
 of them is common as well to Physitions as Chyrurgians. They are made
 of gummies, oiles, greace, and dry medicines, commixed with some sufficient
 quantity of Waxe, or without Waxe, if that the materials can thicken, and
 gather together of themselves. Emplaisters are applied to all parts of the bo-
 dy, but chiefly to the stomacke, for the same cause that ointments, Cataplasmes
 and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaister for the
 stomacke when it is afflicted with a cold distemper, by reason of the flowing
 of some cold substance, as thus, R^x *Ceratium stomachi confortatiui Galeni*, ʒ. ii. of

Galingale, Cloues, and red Corall, ana. \mathfrak{z} β of waxe dissolued, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of Masticke, or of Wormwood as much as sufficeth. Comix them & make a plaister spread vpon leather like a buckler, with a double linnen cloth, well stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaid intents, in this manner. *R.* pure *Lapdanum*, \mathfrak{z} ν j. Masticke, \mathfrak{z} ij. Frankinsence. \mathfrak{z} j. Coriander prepared, red Corall, drie Mints, and Galingale, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Xylo Aloes*, and Maces, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. Turpentine, \mathfrak{z} ij. waxe dissolued with oile of Spikenard, or Wormewood, or Masticke, or Roses, or of two or three of these, as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lump together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bands, and lay it to the stomacke as is requisite. Warn the Apothecarie to dissolue the Gummes with wine & oile, afterward let him comix the rest without the vse of any fire, *Ceratum stomachi confortatiuū Galeni*, is made of Roses, Wormewood, Masticke, Spikenard, waxe and oile of Roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as of Mirtles, Coriander, Corall, Masticke which is temperate, *Psidia*, *Balaustia*; also oiles of Roses, Mirtles, Quinces, & of Masticke. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the allaying of euery distemper of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following. *R.* *Ceratum sandalinum*, \mathfrak{z} ii. meate of Quinces, \mathfrak{z} i. of Masticke, \mathfrak{z} β of Corall, \mathfrak{z} i. of wax dissolued with oile of Roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lūpe, and spread it vpon leather, like the Moone when she is beginning to increase, with a double linnen cloth, and with bands, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to cease paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resoluethem, as in example, *R.* *Muscilagini* of the seed of *Althea*, Fenugreeke, and seed of Flaxe, ana. \mathfrak{z} iii. Barley meale, \mathfrak{z} iii. oile of white Lilles and the fatnesse of a henne, ana. \mathfrak{z} ii. β . Butter, \mathfrak{z} i. Saffron, \mathfrak{z} i. the white of egges in number ii. boile the *Muscilagines* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and cold matter, and it ceaseth their paine in what part soeuer of the body they be resident. If you will appropriate this Emplaister to all kinde of cold Apostemes, then adde to it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, *Storax liquida*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. and it will worke a maruellous and profitable effect.

A plaister for
the hot distem-
per of the liuer

CHAP. XXIII. Of making Vnguenta.

VNGVENTA, is English oyntments: and those which appertaine vnto Physitions, are made to lenifie and assuage paine, to represent, shew, and assigne alteration and changing, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene, and in the stomacke. The vertue of oyntments for other purposes and for other members, belonging to surgery, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomacke caused of cold, or by the pretence of some such like substance, is in this manner. *R.* oiles of Masticke, Spike and Wormwood, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . Cloues, *Xylo Aloes*, Maces, & *Calamni*

An ointment
for the sto-
mach.

aromaticus, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ *galia muschata*, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . j .$. if he be rich, because of the dearenesse thereof, or new Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomacke, and a *Scutum* with cotton, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the stomack after the annointing. But to cease the paine in the stomacke coming of a hote cause; as of flowing of choler, which often chanceth in feauers, vte this ointment. *Rx.* oyle of Roses, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ oyle of Mirtles, or elle of Quinces, $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ white Sanders & red, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ new waxe washed in Eadie water, or in Rose water as much as sufficeth, and make an ointment for the stomacke. And make a *Scutum* of cotton, and apply it to the stomacke after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantity of $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbs in a hote cause, or in hote iuyces in a cold cause of disease. Moreover note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment nor cerate applied to the stomacke without Galingale, neither to the heart without Mace or Saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or Saunders, or Wormewood, or other such like things, thincking verily the nature of the member to be preserued with restrainers, but yet not alwayes in the forenamed medicines. For the law and method is to be kept in all causes of contrariety, which should be broken in medicines, if Galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because Galingale is hote. For truly the nature of the stomacke is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperate in heate, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knots of the liuer or spleene, wherewith those two members are most in danger, in this forme. *Rx.* the roots of *Althea*, and the rootes of white Lillies, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ leaues of *Malua*, *Bilmalua*, and Violets, ana. $\mathfrak{M} . j .$ of the flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, and the tops of Dill, ana. $\mathfrak{M} . \beta .$ meale of Fenugreece, of flaxe seed, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ gum. *Amomiaci*, called *Serapni*, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ *Bellium* that is lost and whitish, $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ Turpentine, $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ Gum of pine trees, $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ *Storax liquida*, $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ the marrow of Calues or Harts shankes, if you can get it, Hennes greale, and Duckes greale, oyle of sweete Almonds, and of Ircos, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ $\beta .$ or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolue the Gummes with wine and a little vinegar, and to the aforesaid oiles, adde to new waxe as much as sufficeth; then afterward take the said greales, and powders, or meales, or herbes, first sodden and braied, and mixe them all together, and make an ointment. In this said ointment there be more things that do mollifie then there be that dissolue, because the matter of scirrhus knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liuer, you may adde to it of the branches of Wormewood, of Roses, of Squinace, or of Spicknard to preserue the strength and nature of the member. If you will minister it to the Spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of Capess, or such like: if you minister to the hardnesse of the stomacke, adde to Wormewood, red Roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, Mints and Galingale.

Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquide, which hath in it little waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to cease paine (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. R^x. oyle of Commomill, and Capons grease, ana. ℥.β. fish new Butter without salt, ℥.ij. a little waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE, or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to cease paine in the forepart of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to cease paine in the head caused of a hote distemper, as it oftentimes chan- ceth in feauers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red Roses steeped and loked in vinegar, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion R^x. red Roses, p. j. β flowers of water Lillies and Violets, ana p. i Betony, and Melilote, ana. p. β. put all betweene two fine lin- nen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two course linnen clothes if he be poore: and make a *Fontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the fore- head and the temples: if you will prouoke sleepe, adde to the foresaid *Frontale* the leaues of Lettuce, or new white Poppy, or of *Mandragoras* in the places & times that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these cold things. At all times you may put in the seedes of white Poppy, or the barks of the heades of white Poppy, or Lettuce seedes, or Henbane seede, as in example. R^x flowers of water Lillies, Violets, & Melilot, ana. p. j. flowers of Lettuce, or white Poppy, ana the 3. part of M. j. or of each of them. M. j. β seed of white Poppy ℥. ij. Lettuce seed, Dil seed, and white Henbane seede, ana ℥. β. bray al together and make a *Frontale* betweene the course or fine linnen clothes well sewed and basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* Melilot and Dil seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hurt with cold things. In the disea'e called *Cephalalgia* coming of a cold cause make *Frontalia* of hote herbes & flowers, as Sage, Rosemary, Cammomil, Betony, Briony, Melilote & such like. *Fronta- lia*, before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some liquor powred vpon them, or to be aired with some vapour; as in example. R^x. the waters of Roses, Betony, and Balme, ana. ℥. j. of vinegar ℥. β. commixe them, and of the aforesaid waters, power a little portion vpon a burning tyle, or some such like thing, & hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the fleame & smoake of the said waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments seruing for the same vse and purpose that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *Vn- guentum Populeon*, *Rubea trochiscata* dissolued in water, is very meete for this purpose, & yet is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physitions in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mythyridatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, & such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12. libro *Therapenticu*) you may conuenient- ly annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of Roses and sixe times so much vinegar, as in example. R^x. oyle of Roses, ℥. j. vinegar, ℥. ij. commixe them,

them, stirring them in a plate: or else thus in hotter causes, when as without foresight the Frensie will breed, then we commixe cold things as thus. *R.* oyle of Roses, \mathfrak{z} .j. oyle of Nenuphar, \mathfrak{z} . β . oyle of Poppy, \mathfrak{z} .iij. iuyce of *Salatrum*, or Lettuce, or white Poppy, water of Roses and vineger, ana. halfe an ounce; commixe them together, stirring them very long in some peece of plate: and annoint the forepart of the head therewith, yea all the head if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CV C V F A is more for the cure of the euill called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine of the heade coming of cold; and many times also to stop rheume, as in example: *R.* *Sampfucus*, that is, Marioram, Rosemary, *Stachados* both of Araby, and yellow, ana. p. j. of red Roses, p. j. drie Citron barks, graines of Alkermes, ana. \mathfrak{z} .iij. Maces, long Pipper, Quibibes and Cloues, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Make a powder, & make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a little cotten basted betweene, or with flaxe, or scarlet scraped, and giue it according to the measure. And if the paine lyeth most in the forepart of the head, put most of the powders of spices in that place: likewise if it be in the binder part, do so also, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commixe them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we prouide but for one part of the head. If we will stoppe rheumes, then we mixe with it stipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of stipticke things, either cold or hote as the cause requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *miliū* burned, or not burned, Mirtils, Cypresse nuts & *Sandaracha* (commonly called vernice) viz. yellow Oker, the barke of Frankinsence, and such other like stipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of making Suffitus.

Suffitus (is English a perfuming) is made of drie things, to stop distillations which fall from the braine into the lower parts, and it is made of restraining medicines, as thus for example. *R.* red Roses, p. j. Masticke, \mathfrak{z} . β . vernice, that is, yellow Oker, \mathfrak{z} .j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head; or thus: *R.* *miliū*, p. j. red Roses, p. β of vernice and *Olibanum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the distillation falleth to the lungs, and thereof cometh spittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, because it shorteneth the breath, and letteth the spitting, and maketh the humours grosse and thicke: but you must perfume the couering of the head, or else perfume some wooll, and apply it to the head.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of making Collyrium.

Collyriū is a medicine that is ministred in a liquide forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore because there be diuerse euils in the eyes, the Collyries are made of diuerse fashions; for you must vse one kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*, and another in the state of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is also commonly vsed in the inflammations of other members. Therefore

*A Collyrium
in the begin-
ning of Oph-
thalmia.*

in the beginning you must make it of cold and stipticke repercutiues, as the whites of egges, the sappe of Quince seed, and *Psyllium*, and other things of like vertue: minister them alone, or else let them be first dissolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applied, as in this example following. *Rx.* the white of one egge, and stirre it with Rosewater, or Plantaine water, or with water of Balme, or with all these waters, make a Collyrie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus *Rx.* the sappe of Quince seed drawne out with Plantaine water, or Rosewater, $\mathfrak{z}j.$ and mixe them with the white of an egge, and stirre it a long time with a spatter, and make a *Collyrium*. But if there be no paine nor rednesse in the eyes, but a certaine vncleannesse which ought to be dried vp, then it is good to make Collyries of Tutty prepared, and of Aloes washed, and of *lapis Caliminaris*, and other such like things, which ought to be taken with some conueniēt liquor, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for so they drie vp and wipe away the filthinesse the cleaner.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of making Nasale or Errhinum.

*A Nasale to
stanch blee-
ding at the
nose.*

NASALE & Errhinum be medicines which be cast into the nose for many causes and intents, as to stop bleeding at the nose, to prouoke sneesings, to cause child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which must be snuffed or blowne vp into the nose; or it may be made liquide, and then you must annoint the nostrils within; or you may make it whole, and hard, and then it must be put vp into the nose. *Rx.* the haire that be in the Hares belly. $\mathfrak{p} \mathfrak{ss}$ the saw dust, or mosinesse of Willow, $\mathfrak{p} \mathfrak{ss}$ Bolearmoniack, & *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. $\mathfrak{z}j.$ cut the haire very small, and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the nose, or dissolue them all with some stipticke water, or with the iuyce of some hearbe, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them also (if you please) *Balaustia*, or with rinds of Pomegranates, or *Acacia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath make a *Nasale*, and dip it in the aforesaid medicines, and put it into the nose. Sneesings are prouoked by drie powders, snuffed or blowne into the nose, which be sharpe and biting, as be these, Pepper, Pellitory, Stauesacre, and roote of floure de luce powdred. You may commize the said things with some liquor: annoint the nostrils, or take cloath of silke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforesaid liquor, and put it into one nostrill, or into both.

*A Nasale to
prouoke snee-
sing.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of making Apophlegmatismus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVS is a medicine which causeth one to vomite vp sicame: it prouoketh rheume out of the braine into the mouth, and it is good to purge the braine. Masticke is commonly vsed in this case, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth rheume and sicame. Also Sage leaues holden in the mouth do likewise purge rheume by the mouth. Also make *Noduli* of Pellitory, Pepper, Stauesacre roote, of Ireos, and

and *Panax*, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore take gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roose of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heate and tartnesse, do draw scume and rheumes into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making distillations restorative.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kinde, that is to say, they are partly foode and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purposes: for some be made to reſtaine, as in the fluxe of the belly; some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for feauers to reſrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some do resist poyſon and malignant humours, as in pestilent feauers. And they are made after this manner. *R.* conserues of Succory, of Roses, of *Symphytū*, that is, *A distillation* Comſery, of *Cornelm*, of *Maua*, & of Quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. powder of Electuaries, *restorative* *Diarrhedon Abbatis*, & *Tria Sandali*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. Trochisks of *Carabe*, of Barberries, and *Terra ſigillata*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of red Corall, & *Lapis hematitis*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. water of the decoction of one Capon or of two, altered with Plaintaine, Knotgrasse Moleine, Lettuce, seed of Barberries, *Sumach*, & *Omphacium*. \mathfrak{lb} .viij. put all together in a Limbecke with the flesh of two Chickens, or two Patriches, or of two turtle Doves, or of one Capon, or of more of these, and with the crums of one white loafe, or of two wet in Rose water, and make a distillation in *Balneo Marie* with a soft fire. *R.* of the aforesaid distillation \mathfrak{lb} . β . iuyce of Pomgranats \mathfrak{z} .j. or \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Sugar rolet \mathfrak{z} .ij. Cinamon elect. \mathfrak{z} .j. straine them (as Hippocrates *Another.* teacheth) through a ſceue, and let the sicke vse it euery houre. But if you will make a distillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwayes obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as do coole, as conserues of water Lillies, of Violets, of Roses, Succory and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochisks of *Camphora*; also alter the decoction of the flesh with Lettuce, Sorrell, Purslaine, Scarioll, and such like. Moreouer you shall make a distillation restorative against malignant and pestilent feauers in this sort, *R.* conserues of Violets, water Lillies, Balme, Borage, & Buglosse, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. barke of citron condite. \mathfrak{z} .j. roote of *Dittamus* & Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of Gentian, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β powder of *Electuarium Diamargaritō frigidum*, all the Saunders, *A distillation* *restorative* *cooling, against malignant and pestilent feauers.* *Bolcarmoniacke*, Trochisks of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. scrapings of yuory, and Harts horne, Maces, Cinamon, Cloues, and seed of *Cardus Benedictus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. of old triacle, \mathfrak{z} .iiij. the water of the decoction of two Chickens, or of Capons altered with Sorrell, Scabious, Lettuce, Borage, Buglosse, *quar. iij.* put altogether in a glasse Limbecke, with the flesh of some things, and with the crummes of two white loaves infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lent & soft fire, in convenient order as is requisite. *Another: or thus.* *R.* of the aforesaid distillation \mathfrak{lb} . β *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. commize them together, and let the sicke vse it euery houre.

The end of the seventh Booke.

THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

THE PREFACE.



We have found by experience, that Noble men in times past which haue become famous in the practise and exercise of Physicke and Chirurgerie, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vp for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard maladie both to increase and preserue the worthinesse and renownednesse of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them provided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets; yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or intreaty, or for mony, or through change, or other manifold means, they haue bene made knowne and published. Whereupon others the rather minding the publicke vilitie of men, thought good to gather togethr the dispersed compositions of medicines then euerywhere knowne, and endeauoured themselves to transerre out of the most famous authors, the best and most receipts into their bookes of Physicke. And by these meanes truly did Scribonius Largus, Aetarius, Nicolaus Myrepsus, and Nicolaus Præpositus, make their workes. By this industrie it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse Authors many receipts not much vnlke, were taken tending to one end, as sirupes of like effect and many medicines of Aloe, nor fewer of Scammony or Colocynthide, or Turpetho, all which differ ouely in way of composition, or for the varietie of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries also there be many, whose chieftest force is of Ferugo, and which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out the best, the other vnprofitable and vnnecessary omitted. But euen in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases
remain

*remain void of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inu-
 ted: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery
 where medicines (after a sort an imitator and follower of prailicke)
 without chosse or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor
 medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible grieffe ioyned to the
 sicknesse, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kinds of re-
 remedies according to the diuersitie of diseases: neither at any time
 weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no vse,
 neither pleasant or vsuall; but receiveth and alloweth for the most
 part such receipts, as haue bene used of unlearned men, commonly
 without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse
 haue peruered and depraued, euery man according to his iudgement,
 so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of
 composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Physicke (as it is not
 ratified and establisht) which is most necessary for the cure of dis-
 eases: and whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that
 part, I haue done mine endeavour, that the composition of medicines
 might be set downe in writing according to Art, as the simples haue
 bene in the bookes before. And whatsoever of them were profitable
 and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoever
 were amisse, by upright iudgement might be brought to better per-
 fection, so that nothing were either redounding or wanting, necessary
 to take away the diseases affection, incident thereto, and cause there-
 of. Therefore I do not take out all the compositions vsuall in old wri-
 ters, but the best onely: and oftentimes I put too new, to fill my worke
 with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vn-
 der those, make a confused beape: I haue kept their common names,
 but yet not with the same simples and doses euery where: for as much
 as certaine in many things were to be changed, to make the receipts
 more fit and pleasant for the cure of the malady. And at length, to
 do the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place
 the sirupes, in another the Electuaries, in another the poti-
 tions, and whatsoever else in their proper place, out of
 which they may be easily taken againe, and ap-
 plied to the practise and vse of curing.*

OF SYRVPES.

Syrupus acidus simplex.

S*yrupus acidus simplex*: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hote as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withhold or restraine the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and asswage the burning of Agues and thirst, setteth at libertie, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all parts, and also after a purgation it moueth sweate and vrine. *Rx. Aqua purissima, ℥. iiii. Sacchari albi, ℥. v.* Boyle them so long as the cast vp a some or skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi, ℥. iiii.* Boile them then againe to the thicknes of a sirupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guiliel. Plantij.

THe barbarous titles and names do apparantly argue, that sirupes and Iuleps, and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Gracians had of the same matter, and for the same vse, their *Apozemata* (that is, decoctions, of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were fitly applyed, as well to prepare the body as humours to purging, were of them termed *Propotismata*, as if you would say, potions before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicines. So *Galen* in *Mulso*, that is, wine and hony lodden together, and *Oxymelite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, *Hylope*, *Peniroyall*, and *Calamint*, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an Author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius*, *Musa*, and many other ancient Physitions did make such like sweete potions for sicke folke, of the iuyce of *Cicory*, *Dill*, *Flowerdeluce*, and *Celidony*, and such like herbes, tempered together with wine and hony by decoction for diuerse diseases of the *Liu*er and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the roots, leaues, and tops of plants, and did straine the liquor boiled, and then ministred it either alone or else sweetned with *Mulso* or hony, or that they might be kept, did decoct it to the thicknesse of hony. So that these three, *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasant to the taste. For in *Apozema*, because that vpon occasion suddenly and out of hand, for the most part, it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweetnesse, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of Sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of Sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuyce. But the sirups, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction, and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very little lesse Sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuyce. But because the Iulep is more thinne, penetrating, and pleasant then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixt part of Sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then the two parts of the Sugar

Sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuyce of plants, and fruites, Sugar and hony be mingled, not onely for their preservation, or for their sweetnesse and pleasantoesse in taste and saour, but also for the proper force of hony and Sugar, which they impart vnto these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vied, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both wayes the potions to which these shall be mingled, do quicken and stirre vp the naturall strength astonied, or dulled, and languishing in sickness, and do comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diseases; and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimie, and making a riddance of obstruction, they cause easie purgations. And these faculties come to the decoctions or potions by reason of the Sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of themselves do much auaille to diuers vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing each of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doth require, and the method of curing doth prescribe. For seeing the simple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of ministering medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be compounded and vied before another, he beginneth first with those that are more simple medicines, & of such as by direct order of curing are vied before others; minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with *Sirupus acidus simplex*, the sharpe simple sirupe. For in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and luleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries: and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called Conserues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well seasoned iuyces, called of the Grecians *συνθεσματα*, be more simple then sirupes, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before; yet because for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the parts, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the method of curing so requiring. Now sirupes were inuented to haue in a readinesse so oft as occasion chancreth, because that herbes, and other rootes, and fruites be not alwayes ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessitie so vrgeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata* and luleps. In the first place the composition of sirupes is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging: then after, such as be meete to purge the remnants of the parts and to keepe or preserve their strength. And this generally of sirupes. Particularly the sharpe simple sirupe was not to be made onely of vinegar and Sugar, as other sharpe sirupes be, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpnesse of vinegar. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vinegar, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heede likewise must be taken that no more quantity of vinegar be put in: for this measure was thought meete and equall. But if any suspect the sharpnesse of the vinegar, lest through his piercing cold, bodies of tender constitution, as of children, and specially of women, their wombe should be harmed, (for according to *Hippocrates*, vinegar is noisome

to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweet or distilled water, or some meete decoction, make the sirupe more dilaid, or in stead of that vse *Oxysaccharum*, a sirupe of vineger and Sugar.

The sharpe compound sirupe is not here described, lest I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse; for by putting too a portion of sirupes to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was the purpose of the author, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kind of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedie. But to take together a vaine and triuolous heape of medicines from all places, after the fashion of those which do fill papers vnconsiderately, with vnkowne and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too great a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo Limonum.

THe sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, doth lesse extenuate & pierce then the sharpe sirupe, and yet the vehemency of choler and heate of the body and thirst it more aswageth, and doth more restrain the corruption of hote feauers, and the maladie of pestilent Agues; it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomacke, and heart, and principall parts, it expelleth loathsomnesse, vomiting, defection of the mind, and swoounding for feeblenesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. *Rx.* *succi Limonum* purified, and going through a woollen streiner without compulsion freely. *℥b. viij.* *Sacchari albi* *Libræ v.* Boile these with a soft fire into a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupe of Limons, *de Acetositate Citri* or of the sharpnesse of Citrons, of tart Pomgranates, *de Aurantijs*, or of Oranges, of vnripe grapes, of the iuyce of Sorrel, of the iuyce of Barberies, and of *Ribes*, and all other tart or sharpe sirupes, be made of iuyces, which either by setting or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuyces is added like quantity of Sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water: because the sharpe tartnesse of the sirupe is nothing noisome, but pleasant and comfortable to the heart: and it should be dilaid likewise with lesse Sugar (as in Iuleps) if the iuyces could be long preserued. There be some which purifie the iuyces by setting, or by setting them in the heate of the Sun, and fining them with the forming whites of egges, or else onely by wringing them out lightly, as in wine coming of the grapes, before they be pressed, called in Latine *vinum protopum*: and then with fined Sugar, that is boiled with the like quantitie of water, and after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by litle and litle the one with the other, they stirre them with a spatter vntill they come together, and become as one, or they boile it a litle with Sugar thoroughly and well sod, or else with the best Sugar, such as the *Maderanum* is, they boile it so long, vntill the Sugar be melted and dissolued altogether. And thereof the sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple sirupe, and the rolat Iulep become very white. As for the simple sirupe of Pomgranates, Barberies, of *Ribes*, of red vineger, to keepe the finenes of their naturall colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestle. And this order of composition in the iuyces, chiefly of tart fruits, taketh place: for other iuyces of herbes, of

of roots, &c. require more preparatiō to the making of a sirupe; for they must be boiled twise, once by themselves almost to the consumption of the 3. part: after, when they haue bene purified with straining and setting, they must be concocted with the best Sugar to a sirupe, otherwise they do soone corrupt, and become hoarie and mouldy.

The sirupes that follow made of sharpe iuyces are in force like to the former, as the sirupe of the tart iuyce of Citrons, the sirupe of sharpe Pomgranates, the sirupe de *Aurancijs*, the sirupe of *Omphacio*, that is, vniue grapes, the sirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell. But peculiarly the sirupe of sharpe Citrons doth quench the heate of an Ague, and restraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The sirupe of Pomgranates doth corroborate the stomacke, and the chiefe entrails of a man, as the spleene, the liuer, the lungs, &c. it restraineth vomiting, & mitigateth swounding. The sirupe de *Aurancijs* doth more comfort the heart, & is more pleasant. The sirupe de *Omphacio* doth more quench thirst. The sirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell doth allay choler, & open obstruction. The sirupe of *Ribes* is more sweet in tast, and more astringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for in the iuyce of every one of them purged, a little lesse Sugar must be dissolued, and these two put in a tinne vessel, must be set on the fire, and boyled by litle and litle to a sirupe.

Oxyfaccharum simplex.

O*Xyfaccharum simplex*, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good against a diuerse mixture of humours, and vnsable agues arising thereof. *R. Succi Mali punici acidi*, that is, foure Pomgranates, \mathfrak{z} viij. *Aceti*, \mathfrak{z} iij. *Sacchari albi & puri* \mathfrak{lb} j. Boyle them to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

O*Xyfaccharum* hath the same vertue that the soure sirupe hath, but not in like force, sauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vse thereof is more later in diseases chancing in Sommer, and tender bodies, then of the sharpe sirupe. Left so great varietie of sirupes should be retained in vaine, I omit *Oxyfaccharum compositum*, *Oximeli compositum*, and *Oximeli scylliticum*, that is, made of *Scylla*; for when they are thought good to be vsed, the Physitions may make and prescribe them speedily and fitly, *Oxyfacchari*, \mathfrak{z} j. *Sirupi maioris e radicibus*, \mathfrak{z} ij. vel *sirupi Adianti*, \mathfrak{z} j. \mathfrak{ss} .

Oximel simplex.

O*ximel simplex*, doth extenuate grosse humours, and doth scoure out stinky matter, doth open old obstructions, doth expell from the chest thicke matter, and is good against *Asthma*, that is, obstructions of the lungs with fleame. whereof ariseth shortnesse of wind, and rebellious agues. *R. aqua purissima*, *mellis optimi*, ana \mathfrak{lb} iij. Boyle them vntill with the exhaling halfe the water be consumed, and then poure in of *Aceti acerrimi*, that is, very sharp vinegar, \mathfrak{lb} ij. and let them be boyled againe by euaporation to a meete consistence. That which is made more liquid, hath *aqua purissima*, \mathfrak{lb} j. *mellu optimi*, \mathfrak{z} iij. *aceti*, \mathfrak{z} j. \mathfrak{ss} . Let these be boyled by some thing out easily their corruptiō.

Oxymel Scylliticum.

O*xymel Scylliticum*, doth more forcibly attenuate grosse matter, & is good for all things we haue spokē of; and it is made of Vineger of *Scyllia*, which is put to hony boyled and clarified by foming, and lodde as the other, both become cōpound by putting too double portiō of the *sirupe eradicihus Maiorū*.

PLANTIVS.

Acetū mulsum.

We haue lesse vse of *Oxymel*, that is, sweete vineger, then the ancient Physicians had, who then had not inuented the sharpe sirupe, which (the powder of cleansing onely excepted, wherein hony excelleth Sugar) hath other vertues not much inferiour to *Oxymel*, and besides other effects, is very good against agues. But sweet vineger which euery where is in vse in Apothecaries shops, is very vsuall, whether it be full of the too much grossenesse, coming of overseething thereof, or of the too much sharpnesse which is not so much qualified and dulled with the mixture of our hony as of Sugar. For although you delay and dissolue that thicke *Oxymel* with sweet water, or some set decoction, yet you shall neuer make it so pleatant to drinke as the soure sirupe. That which is made by many, more thinner for present occasion, and is called

Gales oxymel.

Oxymel Galeni, is more piercing into euery part, and more pleatant. For whereas for the little boyling it doth not thicken, but the thicknesse of the water is therein retained, which the thicknesse of the vineger doth further, and all the filthinesse of the hony partly by skimming, partly by clarifying is taken away: therefore it becometh most thinne and most cleare, especially if it haue bene made with white vineger, and white hony; and with the little sharpnesse of vineger, it becometh nothing vnpleatant to the taster: but it is found by experience, that by too much vse, and too great a draught thereof, the stomacke is annoyed, chiefly in those, whose mouth of the stomacke is by nature feeling and sensible. Wherefore there is no safe vse thereof in agues, whether you make it sower or sweeter. Choose good hony which is betwixt thicke and thin, most sweet and sharpe in taste, and therewith making a sweet taste, and biting the tongue, as it were, with pulling; in colour pale, or somewhat red and cleare, most fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his clammy humour, is not disseuered or pulled into parts: heauie in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the vessell is better then that which swimmeth aboue, and it doth cast vp litle skum in boyling. But in our daies there haue bene brought the white and sweetest hony, and aromaticke indeed, most liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard crust vpon it, out of *Lusitania*, or *Portugall*, and *Gedano* to *Antwerpe*, hony as good as either the *Atticke* or *Siculum*. But they counterfeite that hony (as many other things else) and forge another in stead thereof, by often washing and whitings; which deceit of theirs you may easily find out by the vnswearnesse of smelling and vnswarinnesse of tasting. Then next, this both in goodnesse, and in colour, is the *Narbonense* hony; and in those regions also our countrey hony, that which cometh out of the combes freely, and is commonly called *Virgine* hony, is best. The worst hony by boiling is made better, and the vse of the skummed is alwayes fitter, except by long abiding in the stomacke it swell it, and become vehement hoie, and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no

wormes,

*Note of the
best hony.*

wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, and stirreth vp and pre-
serueth naturall heate, it prolongeth old age, and is euill for cholericke and bony.
young men, because it is easily turned to choler.

Syrupus è Cichorio.

S*yrupus è Cichorio* doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the viscera, that
is, principall parts within, as the heart, liuer, and lungs, with an easie bin-
ding; and doth set at libertie the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by
scouring and opening; it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for pur-
gation: in the beginning of hote, pestilent, and vehement feuers, it is meet and
wholesome. *R. totius Intubi agrestis*, that is, of the whole Cichory, \mathfrak{z} . iiij. *ra-*
dicum Oxalidis graminis. & Asparagi, bruited ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Lichenis, Eupatorii, In-*
tubi satini, commonly called Endiue, *Seriola, Cicerbita, Lactuca satina, & a-*
grestis, Adianti albi, Adianti nigri, Adianti simplicis, Saxifragi, Lupulorum Cas-
siuæ, ana. M. j. Boyle them in x. ℔. of water, vntill it come to vj. In the strained
decoction disso'ue *Sacchari albiissimi*, ℔. vj. and boile all these together to a
clarified sirupe,

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of *Cichory*, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus*,
or *Gulielmus Placentinus* is oft in vse, & both their sirupes doth consist of a cō-
fused heap of simples, as wel cold as hote without order, & of *Reubarbe*, that it
is hard to tell to what vse they may be applyed: not without good reason, the
description is here changed & framed to those ends which be here exprest in
the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot roots. If it
be desired to be somewhat tart or sharp, there may be mixed to it the third part
of *Acetosus sirupus*, or *Oxyaccharū*; or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more
piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or halfe so much
of the sirupe of roots: if *reubarb* must be at any time put to it, it rather seemeth
meet to be put in thereto, at the time of vsing then making thereof, because
the vertue of *Reubarbe* to spurge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth
away; and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is
more strength of roborating in *Reubarbe*, then that well doth agree to a pre-
paratiue potion. But neither in the time of ministring can *Reubarbs* commo-
diously be intermixed, viz. the grosnes of the sirupe hindering the operatiō of
purging, either by making it very litle or else none at all: & for the same thick-
nesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectually for those purposes, for which it was
described, as if it were dissolued and made more sweete, with some conueni-
ent decoction: therefore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but
only of losse, which to euery pound of the sirupe do employ, \mathfrak{z} . j. of *Reubarbe*,
and do not onely double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe
times so much, contrary to the credite of all books, which for euery pound do
bid & will onely, \mathfrak{z} . iij. to be mingled. And they also be far wide which do af-
firme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuyce of *Cichory*, no otherwise
then the sirupe of the iuyce of *Citrin*: for although therein they haue the truth,
whē they accōut a heap of cōpound simples contrary one to another, to be re-
iected in the composition of medicines, & therefore do refuse the compositions
of *Gulielm. Placenti, & Nicola Floren. of Cichory*, as cōrary, & made rashly, and

without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuyce of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truly be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auailer for whether when choler must be prepared to purgation, or the stopping of the Liuer and other parts must be opened, or you haue occasion to coole, and moderatly roborate, as in the beginning of vehement & pestilent agues; which of these I pray you can this sirupe do or bring to passe, which first by much and long beating and hard straining is made thicker, and then after by it selfe boiled to the consumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with Sugar to the grossenelle of a sirupe, by euaporation hath almost lost all the vertue, as much almost becommen as meere Sugar? It is far otherwile in the decoction and iuyce of fruits, especially sharpe, as the iuyce of Oranges, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and such like; for they shed their whole force vpon sirupes, whereas, neither by pressing their tenuitie, neither by concoction, they leese their facultie, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctions because they haue the force of many simples, and for the water be more thin & fluxible, do not thicken, and leese their vertue in boyling: whereupon the sirupes consisting of these decoctions be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging; but they which be made of their iuyces after purgation (the body being now open and pliant) be better adiudged to thole vies, which he (I thinke) doth repeate in describing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domestici.

S*yrupus Intubi domestici*, doth allay choller, doth coole the Liuer, and purge and strengthen it, and cureth the laundies and diseases comming of the obstructions of the Liuer, very commodious after purgations; and when the matter of an Ague and other diseases is after a sort well and thoroughly digested. *Rx* Endiue recentis, Seriola, Lichenu, Lactuca, Agrimonij, Cicerbita, Hieracij, ana. M. j. β . quatuor seminum frigilorum maiorum, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Santali albi, & rubri, contusorum Rosarum rubrarum, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. Boile them in viij. pound of water to the halfe; to the strained liquor put of white Sugar iij. pounds. Seeth them together all againe, and skum and fine them as they boile, adde thereto of the iuyce of Endiue purged by seiling \mathfrak{h} . j. Afterward of the pure iuyce of Pomegranates without dregs. \mathfrak{z} iij. Boile them all together to the height of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought this sirupe of Endiue meet to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Author, because it seemed to be described vpon good ground of reason, & therefore will be more effectuell then if it were made of the sole iuyce of Endiue, as many would haue it. After the body is purged, it auaieth for all the diseases of the Liuer; and to purge the residents of cholericke maladies, & chiefly necessary for the scab and the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

S*yrupus Byzantinus* hath a mixed vertue both to adresse & purge the Liuer and spleene, and that after purgation; for the yellow and blacke laundies, and the remnants of Agues especially good. *Rx* Succu Intubi satiri & Apij, ana. \mathfrak{h} . ij. succi Lupi Salictarij & Buglossi, ana. \mathfrak{h} . j. In seething cleanse them till they waxe cleare, and make a sirupe with iij. pounds of Sugar.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

The interpreter of *Mesua* denieth the vie of sirupe *Bizantine* in Agues before the seventh day; for commonly immediately at the beginning of compoud Agues, the Physicians vie *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which the decoction of Fennell, and the third part of hony roset. But after purgation, because it mightly scoureth the reliques of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Spleneticke*, this sirupe *Bizantine* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued, and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke & yellow Jaundies, especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*. The compoud is omitted, because it doth deprave the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Syrupus Scolopendrij.

Syrupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent grosse and Searthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the spleene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is specially good for melancholy Quartanes, and continuall agues. *R.* Polypodij *è quercu. radicem utriusque Buglossi, corticis radicis Capparis, corticis Thamarisci singu. ʒ. ij. Scolopendrij veri, M. iij. Lupi salicarij, Cassuthæ, Capilli Veneris, Melissophylli, singulo M. ij. Coquantur in aqua ʒ. ix. vñ* till there remaine, v. Put to the strained decoction, of white Sugar, ʒ. iij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Scolopendrij, the Author heare to this place hath referred well, & for great vie made, because there was no sirupe of the old Physicians description meet to prepare earthy & massie melancholy. The true *Scolopendrium* or Harts tongue is, *Asplenium Dioscoridis* and officinarum *Ceterach*.

Syrupus è radicibus.

Syrupus è radicibus doth scoure and extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse fleame, it openeth the obstructions of the liver, & all the other entrals; it asswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of vrines, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued, and old diseases. *R.* radicem Apij, Fœniculi, Petroselinij, Rusci & Asparagi, ana. ʒ. iij. radicem Capparis & Rubie, ana. ʒ. ij. Coquantur in ʒ. x. hydromelytis diluti, (that is dissolued) vñ till they come to ʒ. vj. and cum sacchari, ʒ. v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of roots two sirupes, one of the two rootes of Parcelly and Fennell be omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuell, and easie to be come by, it need require, and thought meet to retaine the other five as of greater vertue; to which he hath vpon good consideration added the roots of Capparis & Rubie, that it might be more effectuell for diuerse vses. He omitted vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it; and if need require, a portion of the sharp sirupe may easily by prescript be mingled thereto & somewhat likewise it may be tempered with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Syrupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heat easily and gently diuide and scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body loeuer they be, agreeable

ble to euery disease beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with child. *R. Adianti albi, M. iij. Adianti nigri, Adianti simplicis, Saxifragi, Betonica, Pimpinella, Asplenij, ana, M. ij. Coquantur ex aqua lb. viij. vntill they consume to v. And in the pressed decoction, dissolue or melt sacchari albi. lb. iij. millis optimi expurgati. lb. ss.*

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall description extant of maidenhaire, this is commodiously entermingled amongst the other which is compound of chosen simples auailing altogether to diuers effects by their temperature. Wherefore this sirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerse vse, is of most operation, *polychrestus*. i. very good for the diseases of all parts, especially of the breast, the liuer, the spleene, the kidneyes, and all diseases of the wombe in all ages and natures. And the prerogative also thereof is such, that it doth make soluble whosoeuer vseth it any space; and it doth not only prepare humours, but also purge them when they be prepared, & especially grosse flume and cholour, as certaine new Physitions and we also haue obserued in practise oftentimes: the which effect likewise the decoction *omnium Adiantorum*, but especially the white bath, although contrariwise *Dioscor.* teacheth that it hindeth. But they which do mingle either Raisins or Liquorice with *Adiantum* into the sirupe, do restrain the large and ample nature thereof for diuerse vses, to some peculiar effect, and by mixture dull the force thereof in extenuating & scouring. They should therefore more fitly make this sirupe of the sole decoction of *Adiantinorum*, which might be reserued as a common matter for euery kinde of griefe; & the they might apply it as need required to the diseases of this or that part. As for example, to the breast affected, with Raisins and Liquorice decocted; for the liuer, with the decoction of *Agrymony* or *Cichory*; for the spleene, *Asplenij* aut *Tamarisci*; for the kidneyes, such things as prouoke vrine, and breake the stone. For so by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the sirupe may likewise be applyed to some one part, and his strength augmented which in the sole sirupe described is very much effectuell.

This composition of sirupes haue bene meete to prepare bodies to purgation: now we must teach what sirupes be good to purge the relickes of euery part.

Syrupus è Stæchade.

Syrupus è Stæchade is wonderfull good against cold diseases of the braine, & nerues or sinewes, as *Paralysis*, j. the Palley, *Epilepsia*, the falling euill, *Convulsio*, the Crampe, tremor, j. quaking, & distilling out of the head when it lieth. *R. florū Stæchados, ℥. iij. Thymi, Calaminthes, Origani, an. ℥. j. Salvia, Betonica, florum Roris marini, ana. ℥. ss. seminis Ruta, Pæonia, Feniculi, ana. ℥. iij.* boile the in x. lb. of water till the halfe be consumed: when the decoction is strained, boyle it againe to a sirupe with hony and Sugar, of each ij. pound, and condite it with Cinamon, Ginger, *Calamus aromaticus*, of each, ℥. ij. which being bound vp in a course cloth with open threds, must be hanged in the sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus è Stæchade, because it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cause put certaine other things, as Sage, Betony, Rosemary, the seed of Rew, Piony, and Fennell, very profitable for the sundry diseases of the
braine

braine and sinewes; otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *Stachys* which is the chiefe in this description, and is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for the spleene, then *cephalica*, that is, good for the head. For it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrails, the which with his thin and hot substance it doth easily open, and with the other somewhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweet in tast, in stead thereof may be vied *Nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus Rosarum siccarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doth mitigath the hote diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengtheneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe, and stayeth thin defluxions. *R. aquae simplicis* ℥. iij. in the which being made bloud warme soke xxij. houres red Roses dried ℥. j. & after this be strained dissolue therein white Sugar ℥. ij. this done, boile them to the substance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Physicians thinke good to renew the infusion of dry Roses twise or thrise, to the intent (as they suppose) the force of the sirupe might be augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectually: for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vied, as for a pound of Roses, viij. pounds of water; otherwise with manifold maceration the water wil either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining wil become too thicke; and as for the vertue and strength of Roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp by one infusion as by many, as it chanceth by salt when it is dissolued in water. This sirupe is auailable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthening the parts of the body; in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildly, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nymphae.

THis sirupe of *Nymphae* mitigateth the heate of the head, Frenies, and watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpnesse of distillations. *R. Florum Nymphae recentium*, ℥. β. *Florum Violarum*, ℥. ij. *foliorum Dactylae*, M. ij. *semi lactuca*, ℥. β. Adde to these before the boiling, *Portulaca*, ℥. β. & *Cucurbita*, ℥. β. Boile them in foure pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled Rose water ℥. β. white Sugar ℥. iij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nymphae* is omitted as nothing commodious; and as for the compound sirupes, according to the description of *Franciscus Pedemontanus*, by reason of sundrie seeds, vinegar, and the iuyce of Pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these things, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie and profitable to those vles which are propounded in the description. The flowers of that *Nymphae* which hath yellow flowers and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Sirupus de Papauere.

Sirupe of Poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimphaea* hath, but peculiarly it stayeth a grievous cough, and such distillations as do exasperate the iawes and throate, *R. capitum Papaueris albi* not thoroughly ryped and new, \mathfrak{z} viii. *capitum Papaueris nigri recentium*, \mathfrak{z} vi. *Aque celestis*, \mathfrak{lb} iiii. boyle them to the consumption of halfe, and put therein *Sacchari & Penidiorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} viii. Boile them to the consistence of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of Poppy, there be fewer heads of the blacke Poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of Poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessitie requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting too this sirupe, or the sirupe of Iuiubes, or of Violets.

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procureth sleepe, so it abandoneth the distillation of the braine whither soeuer it presseth, it staieth the *Dysenteria* and other fluxe of the belly. *R. capita Papaueris albi* meanelly great and meanelly ripe, numero xii. *Aque celestis*, \mathfrak{lb} ii. Boyle them to the third part, and when it is strained put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine boyled to the third part, \mathfrak{z} iiii. *Mellis optimi*, \mathfrak{z} ii. Boile all these together: put in the end of the decoction, *Rosarum rubrarum*, *Balaustiorum*, *Atatie*, *Rhois culinarij tritorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ii. *semin Portulacæ*, *Coralli albi & rubri*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better forme, seruing to stay distillations, by reiecting certaine vnecessary and vnpleasant things. *Dios* to the same purpose boileth the heads of Poppy alone in water to the consumption of halfe, and then putting thereto hony and the iuyce of *Hypocistis*, he reduceth it to the consistence of an *Ecligma*. As for the heads of the Poppy, they must neither be too Greene, nor through drinesse too much voide of iuyce, but when they begin through a Greene kind of ripenesse to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereupon they be termed of the Græcians *Koldanis & Kordia*, that is, the whiskling heads of the Poppy. For that this composition through too much thicknesse may be vnpleasant to some, when it is to be taken, it may be dilayed with the decoction of Barley, or some other thing of like conueniency: and also if sleepe must be procured, or danger be imminent of a sharpe and thin fluxion of exasperation, both to stay and assuage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *Diacodion* with a fresh decoction of the seeds of Poppy, or with the thicke iuyce strained out of the decoction of Barley. Neither is it to be dread lest harme should betide to the body by Poppy, notwithstanding it be recorded by Authours to be cold in the fourth degree, sith thatundry nations do vse with meats after the fashion of herbes, the tender springs of Poppy, and do feed of an oyle pressed out of the seeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they sprinkle the seeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to please the taste, without any annoyance or heauinesse through sleepe. And in such like order the Egyptians vse to make the taste pleasant, *Oleum Sesaminum*

Sesaminum & *Sesamum* and *Petronius*, grounding vpon that custome vsed in the Latine tongue for an eloquent and pleasant oration and composition of words, to say, all his sayings and doings are as it were sprinkled with Poppy and *Sesamum*. For both the liquor of Poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuyce wrung out of the leaues and heads, termed in Greeke *Meconium*, consist not of an vniforme, but of manifold substance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and sweet smelling. The first is more apparent in greene and tender Poppies, the two last in dry. As for the *Opium* or rather *Meconium* which is brought to vse, it is altogether counterfeited, and through a secret quality is noysome, & therefore in no case to be vsed, though it be neuer so artificially corrected. For whereas *Opium* is by great labour in litle quantity confected of the milke of the seeds of wild Poppy, and *Meconium* without any trouble is abundantly pressed out of the leaues, the factors which seeke after gaine and luere, may easily counterfeite *Opium*, or in stead thereof bring out of Naples and Spaine, *Meconium*.

Syrupus Violarum compositus.

THe compound sirupe of Violets doth mitigate a sharpe distillation, doth assuage hoarsnesse, grievous cough and roughnesse of the arteries, doth ease the Pleurisie, and doth quench thirst. *R.* *Florum Violarum recentium*, ℥. ij. *seminis Cydoniorum*, & *Malua*. ana ℥. j. *Zizypha*, *Myxaria*, ana. in number 20. *deoseli Cucurbita vel seminis eius*, ℔. v. Boile them to the halfe, and with ℔. ii. of Sugar, compound them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In this compound sirupe there is nothing changed, because he thought it compounded artificially seruing commodiously by smoothing, chooling, moistening, against all the heate and roughnesse of the arterie, as also it appeareth vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the reines: for the herbe and leaues of the Violet boyled, haue a ripening faculty in them, the seed is good to purge choler in such wise as Rewbarke doth: in the midst of the floure there is a thing somewhat yellowish, which is recorded to be helpfull for the *Angina* and the *Epilepsia* in children, if it be drunke with water. The flower of Violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twice, doth mitigate, assuage, and scoure scorching and shrape humours; and therefore is very necessary in a pleurisie, and bringeth vnder black burnt choler, and the noysome vapors arising thereof, & thereby doth set at quiet the *Symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauines of the heart, it temperateth hotter and dryer medicines, by mitigating them commodiously. Whereas then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confected of the infusion of fresh Violets, may be iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many vies. This infusion wrung out of pleasant or well smelling Violets, dried somewhat in the shawdow, as it beho- ueth, and soaked in luke warme water, if it be boyled with very good Sugar to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any Alth or corruption, to the vies before repeted and is to be taken both before and after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of

the Violets and Roses nine times in the decoction of the sirupe of Violets and Roses, they labour in vaine; for they cannot become lesse effectuell in working, though they vse (at the most) infusion but foure times, as we will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicines. As for the sirupe of Liquorice, it seemeth nothing commodious, because it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the sirupe of Hylope: and such great variety of sirupes bringeth rather confusion then commodity to students.

Syrupus Zizyphorum, vel Iuiubarum.

Syrupus Zizyphorum accomplished the same which the sirupe of Violets doth, but with more efficacy both of them are conuenient in the beginning of the disease. *R. Zizyphorum num. Lx. Myxaria num. xx. florum Violarum, Adianti albi, Hordei à cortice liberi, Glycyrrhizæ, ana. ʒ. vj. semi. Maluæ Cydoniorū, semi, Papaueris albi, Melonum & Lactuca, Tragacanthæ, ana. ʒ. iij.* The seeds of Cydoniorū, of Mallows, & Tragacanth bound in a course cloth, must be boiled with the rest in ℥.v. of water, to the consumption of halfe, and then with ℥. ij. of white Sugar to the substance of a sirupe.

Syrupus de Hyssopo.

Syrupus de Hyssopo by a gentle and light mitigation, doth purge and ridde the breast and lungs of all hote and cold maladies, doth concoct the spittle or fleame, and make it more easie to be auoyded, by attenuating and scouring it. And lastly it is good as well for the aggrievances, as approaching or inclination of *Peripneumonia & Pleuritis* *R. Hyssopi arefacti, ʒ. j. Radicum Polypodij quercini, Feniculi, Glycyrrhizæ, semi, Carthami, ana. ʒ. j. Hordei expurgati, Adianti albi, ana. ʒ. ss. Passularum purgatarum, ʒ. j. Ficus siccas, Palmulas pingues, ana. x. numer.* Boyle them in ℥.vj. of water to the consumption of halfe, and boile the strained iuyce thereof into a sirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony, and Sacchari, ℥.j. ʒ.

PLANTIVS.

The description of the sirupe of Hylope, remaineth vnvaried, save in stead of the roote of Smallage, there is substituted the roote of *Polypodij*, and for the roote of Parcely, the seed of garden Saffron, which be much more fit and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abstracted which be sufficient enough in the sirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, the rather to make the force of the sirupe more scouring.

Syrupus de Prassio.

Syrupe of Horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, scoureth, and purgeth the diseases of the breast and the Liuer; it is excellent good against inueterate diseases of grosse and slimy fleame, as for *Asthma, Tussis vetus, Empiema*, and also auailable for *Peripneumonia* and *Pleuritis* already enclined *R. Prassii albi recentis, ʒ. ij. Glycyrrhizæ, Polypodij quercini, radicum Apij & Feniculi, ana. ʒ. ss. Adianti albi, Hyssopi, Origani, Calaminthe Stæbes, Satureiæ, Tussilaginis, ana. ʒ. vi semi. Antisi, & Bombaci, ana. ʒ. iij. Vuarum passarum expurgatarum, ʒ. ii. Ficus passus pingues, x. numer.* Boile them in viii. pounds of Hydromel, dilayd to the consumption of the halfe; boile the strained iuyce into a sirupe with

with hony, ℥.ii. and white Sugar, ℥. ii. Season and sweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the roote of the Florentine flowerdeluce.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe of Horehound seemed confused of so great a mixture of lenitive, scouring, and cutting simples, that it was difficult to declare to what vse it served; which may be also affirmed of many other sirupes, which be gathered out of diuerse Authors without any methode or reason. Wherefore sith before hath bene propounded the sirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, for moistening and sufficient lenitive; and the sirupe of Hysope for scouring moderately, cutting and purging the diseases of the breast, the Authour thought it necessary vpon good ground, to annex this sirupe of Horehound, being of a very good deuiding and scouring faculcie, thereby the rather to cure extreme and rooted diseases, which notwithstanding who will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Sirupus Symphyti.

Syrupus Symphyti doth purge mildly and easily the quittance and filthinesse of consuming and vlceraed lungs, without feare of any issue out of blood, and doth corroborate the lungs. *R. radicum & cymarum Symphyti maioris & minoris, ana. M. iij. Rosarum rubrarum, Betonica, Plantaginis, Pimpinella, Polygoni, Scabiosæ, Tussilaginis, ana. M. ij.* All being bruised fresh or Greene, you must straine out the iuyce which must be boiled and skummed to ℥. iij. and make a sirupe thereof by putting thereto of white Sugar, ℥. ij. ℥.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no sirupe yet extant at any time, or set out in vse for the consumed & purulent lungs: in so great scarcity this profitable sirupe of Comfery was vpon good ground of art here to be placed.

Sirupus è succo Buglossi.

Syrupe of the iuyce of Buglosse, doth especially comfort & cheere the heart, and maketh a riddance of the quivering and swounding thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad persons. *R. succi Buglossi defecati, that is, purified, ℥. iii. Sacchari albi, ii.* Boyle them to the consistence of a sirupe.

The sirupe of the iuyce of garden Buglosse, of the iuyce of Violets, of the iuyce of Peaches, be all cordiall, and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the sirupe of wild or garden Buglosse, or in the sirupe of the iuyce of Violets, or in the iuyce of Peaches, or of the barke of Oranges: but there was great occasion to adde the sirups of Mint, because there was none in vse which did make a riddance of the diseases of the heart, and take away the annoyance of pestilent and venomous diseases.

Sirupus è cortice Mali Citrij.

The sirupe of the barke of the Orange, or Pome-citron doth renew and exhilarate the heart being heavy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cause, and drieth away sorrow. *R. corticum Citriorum Malorum recentium infused or prepared in ℥. j. of water, Boile them in vi. ℥. of water till iiii. be*

be consumed, and with iij. lb. of white Sugar make a sirupe, and condite it with gran. vj. of muske.

Syrupus Melissophylli.

Syrup of Balmemint is of all other the best for the trembling and overcasting of the heart, and of a peculiar power it abateth the malignitie of pestilent and venomous diseases, and maketh a riddance thereof. *R. radicem Di-Flammi, Pentaphylli, Betonice, Dronici, Romani, ana. ʒ. lb. foliorum Melissophylli, Stoebe, & Morfus, florum Buglossi utriusque, & R. rismarini, ana. M. j. Semi. Oxa- lidis, Cury mali, Feniculi, Atractylidis, that is, Cardui Benedicti, & Ocimi, ana. ʒ. iij. Boile them in lb. iij. of water, to the consumption of halfe, and being strained, put thereto lb. iij. of white Sugar, of the iuyce of Balmie and Rose wa- ter, ana. lb. lb. Boile all this into a sirupe, condited of Cinamon and yellow Saunders, ana. ʒ. lb.*

Syrupus à Menta.

Syrup of Mint doth heate the stomacke moderately, and doth corroborate it with an easie adstriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth loathsomnesse, vomite, chincough, and lientery, *R. Succu Cydoniorum dulcium, succu Cydonio- rum acidodulcium, that is, tarty-sweet succu Granatorum dulcium acidorum, (suc- ci Granatorum acidodulcium, ana. lb. j. lb. Mixe these together, and infuse lb. j. lb. of dry Mint in them xxiii. houres, of red Roses, ʒ. ij. Boile them to th halfe, and when they be strained, put to them lb. iiii. of white Sugar; and to condite the sirupe, boile ʒ. iiii. of Galliamusch ita bound in a cloth.*

PLANTIVS.

In the greater sirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied; neither was the o- ther lesse sirupe to be set downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the grea- ter: and in the sirupe of Wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Absynthij.

The sirupe of Wormewood either purgeth or consumeth the reliques in the stomacke, and doth recover a chearfull colour, and get a stomacke to those that be recovered of a disease; it riddeth the liuer of weakenesse, and ex- pelleth the Iaundies. Lastly it corroborateth all the instruments of concoction. *R. Absynthij Roma lb. lb. Rosarum rubrarum, ʒ. ii. Spice nardi. ʒ. iiii. Bruise them and infuse them xxiii. houres in old and well smelling white wine, & the iuyce of Quince peares, lb. ii lb. Boile them with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, then boile them againe with lb. ii. of white Sugar to the thicknesse of a sirupe.*

Cydoniorum Miua, that is, the iuyce decocted to thicknesse.

CYdoniorum Miua, doth corroborate the stomacke and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, stayeth vomite and lientery *R. succu Cydo- niorum defecati, lb. vj. Boile it with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, by foming little and little: then poure in of old and good red wine, lb. iiii. and white Sugar lb. iiii. and boile them againe to the thicknesse of hony; condite it with one dramme and a halfe of Cinamon, of Cloues, and Ginger, ana. ʒ. ij.*

PLANTIVS.

This *Misa Cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the simple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus Myrtinus, that is, of the Mirtle.

Syrupus Myrtinus corroborateth the stomack and the intrails, stayeth an old Sissue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery distillation of the braine. *Rx. baccarum Myrti*, ℥ ij. *℞. Santali albi, Rhosculinarij, Balaustiorum, baccarum Oxyacanthæ, R. arum rubrarum*, ana. ℥ j. *℞. Mespilorum*, ℥ ℞ Bruile them all, and boile them in viij. ℔. of water to the third part, and to the strained decoction put of the iuyce of Quince peares, and Pomegranates, ana. ℔ ij. Sugar, ℔ v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Myrtinus retaineth the old composition: and the sirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation it scoureth all the relicks of the hepaticke diseases, may commodiously be referred to this place.

Syrupus Fumarie.

Syrupus Fumarij scoureth from bloud, salt and exust humors; it taketh away Itch, Scab, Tetters, Leprosie, and all the diseases of the skinne, asswageth maligne and fistulous vlcers, the Canker and Elephantiasis. *Rx. Endiuia, Absinthij Roma, Lupuli, Cassutha, Scolopendrij veri*, ana. M. j. *Epithymi*, ℥ j. *℞.* Boile them in ℔. iij. of water to the consumption of halfe, and put to the strained decoction of the purified iuyce of Fumitory, ℔ j. *℞. succi vrinisq; Buglossi*, ana. ℔ ℞. *Sacchari albi*, ℔ iij. Boile this sirupe to a good consistence.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many descriptions of the sirupe of Fumitory, there seemeth none more fite or more easie to be practised then this, to purge impure bloud.

The sirupe of the iuyce of both the Buglosses, of the iuyce of Violets, and the sirupe of Balmemint do also appertaine vnto the spleene.

Syrupus è Malis odorifenis.

The sirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noysome vapors of melancholy, pacifieth and asswageth feare, sorrow and madnesse, and exhilarateth the patient. *Rx. succi Malorum acidodulcium fragrantium*, ℔. iij. *succorum Piorum, Buglossi domestici & syluestri, aquæ Rosarum stillatæ*, ana. ℔ j. Boile them together, skumme them and straine them, and adde thereto white Sugar ℔. vj. boile them vnto a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were ridiculous to haue the sirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuyces seruing for melancholy or blacke choler.

Syrupus Althææ.

The sirupe of the Water mallow, doth cleanse mildly and gently the grosse obstructing fleame of the kidneys, the slimie and purulent quinture, and their sandy grauell, without sensible heate: Furthermore it asswageth the heate of the vine. *Rx. radicem Althææ*, ℥ ij. *Cicerum rubro*. ℥ j. *Passarum Puarum*

expurgatarum, radicum Graminis & Asparagi, Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ana. ℥. ss. Cymarum, that is, the tender crops, Althea, Malua, Helxines, Pimpinella, Plantaginis, Adianti veriusque, ana. M. j. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum, ana. ℥. iij. Boile them in vj. lb. of water till lb. ij. be consumed, and with lb. iij. of Sugar make it a sirupe.

PLANTIUS.

Whereas the sirupe of water Mallowes or marsh Mallowes was tofore neuer described, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vse thereof, it could not more commodiously be made for the vtes for which it is propounded.

Sirupus Raphani.

THe sirupe of Radish doth more forcibly scoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the stone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine suppressed. R^z radicum Raphani domestici & syluestris, ana. ℥. j. radicum Saxifragi, Rusci, Leuistici, Eriogoni, Anoni, Petroselin, Feniculi, ana. ℥. ss. foliorum Betonica, Pimpinellæ, Pulegij, Cymarum vrticæ, Nasturtij, Crithmi, Callitrichi, ana. M. j. fructus Halicacabi, Zizypha, ana. numer. xx. sem. Ocimi, Bardane, Petroselinæ Macedonici, Seselii, Carui, Dauci, Lithospermi, corticum radicum Lauri, ana. ℥. ij. Vnorum passiarum expurgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, ana. ℥. vj. Boile them in decent order in x. lb. of water, to the consumption of foure, of the which with Sugar, lb. iij. purified hony, lb. ij. a cleare sirupe must be made: condite it with Cinamon, ℥. j. and Nux muschata, ℥. ss.

PLANTIUS.

Whereas no sirupe is found described to breake the stone, and expell grauell, this sirupe of Radish is substituted to great vse, which is aptly and conveniently compounded of these simples, which haue great facultie to breake the stone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and scouring things.

Sirupus Artemisia.

THe sirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightily the suppressed floures, or auoiding more sparingly, which also the sirupe of Adiantum and Hylope doth but more mildly: this sirupe asswageth the strangling and overcasting of the wombe. R^z Artemisia. M. ij. radicum Iridis, Helenij, Rutæ, Pæonia, Leuistici, Feniculi, ana. ℥. ss. Pulegij, Origani, Calaminthes, Nepitæ, Melissophylli, Sabina, Sampsuchi, Hyssopi, Prassij, Chamædrys, Chamæpyros, Hyperici, Parthenij, Betonica, ana. M. j. sem. Anisi, Petroselin, Feniculi, Ocimi, Dauis, Ruta, Nigella, ana. ℥. iij. Bruise them and infuse them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of Hydromel, till three be consumed, and then after boile it with Sugar lb. viij. to a sirupe, condite it with ℥. j. of Cinamon, and ℥. iij. of Spice,

PLANTIUS.

Whereas in the sirupe of Mugwort without consideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diseases of the wombe were contained, and sundry things which could not be got, or whose strength by boiling wasted, the Author cut off such simples as unnecessary and vnprofitable, leaving onely the chiefest and best.

Purging receipts.

Medicines prescribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerse formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place; orderly beginning at these which be most gentle.

Electuarium e Prunis.

THe Electuary of Proins is marvellous lenitive, mollifying the costive belly, purging mildly and gently sundry humours, very commodious in extreme heate of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirst. *R.* *radicum Altheae, Polypodij e quercu, Passarum expurgatarum, ana* ℥ ii. *Glycyrrhizae mundatae, sem. Cnici, ana* ℥ i. *Maluae, Viola, Helxines, Mercurialis, ana.* M. ii. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vi. In halfe of the strained decoction boile iweet Proines, Inubes, Sebesten, ana. numer. xx. *Ficus passae pingues numer.* x. Then let the pulpe passe through a sieue. In the other halfe of the strained decoction, boile *foliorum Sennae mundatorum.* ℥ i. ℥. and this being strained, mixe it with the pulpe with *Sacchari & mellis expumati, ana.* ℥ ℥. then boile them to the consistence of an Electuarie, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi tenuissime triti, ℥ i. Zinziberis, ℥ iii.* The dose is ℥ i. the whole composition is ℥ iii. The doses be about xxviii. or xx.

The solid Electuary of Proines hath the same vertue. *R.* *Pruna dulcis numer.* x. *Maluae, Viola, Mercurialis, Helxines, ana.* M. i. *Polypodij e quercu, sem. Carthami, radicis Altheae, Passarum purgatarum, Glycyrrhizae, ana.* ℥ ℥. *foliorum Sennae mundatorum, ℥ x.* Boile them in v. ℥. of water till it remaine, then presse it in a presse, put *Sacchari rubri, ℥ ℥.* Boile them againe with a lent fire to the consistence of a solid Electuarie, in the end sprinkling powder *Electuarij Aromatici Rosati maioris ad* ℥ iii. make *tabella* in weight ℥ ℥. The whole composition is about ℥ xx. the doses be about xxx. Compound both these Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furthest parts of the body all humours, especially both the cholers, in this order. *R.* *Electuarij e Prunis simplicis, & recentis & adhuc calentis, ℥ i.* in the which dissolve *Diaderydij* ℥ iii. The dose is from ℥ iii. to ℥ ℥. In one pound of the composition, the doses be about xxxii.

*Solide Electu-
ary e prunis.*

Plantij Scholia in purgantes compositiones.

As the sirupes, so the compositions of purging medicines be taken out euery where without all art, and put in bookes of Physicke, so that you may find two, three, or more of like effect, nothing aptly applyed to the cure of diseases: whereof it is that the Author vpon good consideration, hath very much altered the compositions of purging medicines, the rather thereby to afford a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much those receipts which he hath set downe, retaining the ancient names of antiquitie, do differ from the ancient receipts, or how much they be more available for the proposed diseases, euery man may vnderstand by estimation had of the faculty of the simples. For whereas *Diaprunis* both sirupe and compound described by *Nicolaus*, should greatly haue refrigerated and bene applyable

veto agues, it containeth many vehement hote Aromates, which also in the compound doth exasperate it into the sharpnesse of Scammony.

Catholicum simplex.

C*atholicum simplex* doth deduce and purge from euery part of the body mildly and gently all humours alike, nothing doyntome either to children, old folke, or women with child. whether with an ague or without an ague. *Rx.* radicū Helenij, Bugl ffr, Cichorij, Althea, Polypodij quercini, sem. Cnici contusorum, ana. ℥. ij. Sczchados, Hyssopi, Melissophylli, Eupatonij vers, Asplenij, Betonica, Artemisia, ana. M. ij. Vuarum passarum expurgatarum, ℥. iij. quatuor sem frigidorum maiorum, sem. Ains. Glycyrrhize, ana. ℥. iij. Boile all these according to art in x. ℔. of hydromel til vij. be remanent; in the strained decoction macerate xij. houres foliorum Sennae mundatorum ℔. j. Agarici albi, ℔. ℔. Zinziberis, ℥. j. Boile them a litle, and in the pressed liquor, dissolue of the pulpe of Sebestens, ℔. ℔. foliorum Sennae mundatorum tenuissimè tritorum, ℥. iij. Syrupi infusionis Rosarum pallidarum, ℔. j. mellis optimi expumati, ℔. ij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of hony, in persing in the end Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi electi, ana. ℥. j. Santali citrini, ℥. j. Nucis moschatae, ℥. ij. The dose is ℥. j. the whole composition is ℔. iij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

This may be truly termed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humours, and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts, purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very litle from the extreme parts. But the greater *Catholicum* doth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the composition whereof consisteth of all kinde of medicines which draw as well from the higher as further celles, aptly confused and repressed. In the ancient *Catholicum* the Rheubarbe is not fully boiled, neither the *Cassia*, which becometh sharpe with the Thamarinds, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

C*atholicum maius* doth also draw the humours vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbance of the body or losse of strength. *Rx.* quatuor sem. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, sem. Papaueris albi, ana. ℥. j. Tragacanthie, ℥. iij. Rosarum rubrarum, Santali citrini, Cinamomi, ana. ℥. ij. Zinziberis, ℥. j. Rheubarbari selecti, Diadacrydij, ana. ℥. ℔. Agarici, Turpetbi, ana. ℥. ij. Sacchari albi soluti in aqua Rosarum, in the which ℥. ij. of the leaues of Sene haue bene incocted, ℔. j. Let tables be compounded of weight, ℥. iij. The dose is one table, the whole composition is ℔. j. the doses be about 50.

Syrupus infusionis Rosarum pallidarum.

Syrup of infusion of white Roses, doth easily draw from the principallest intrahs thin choler & waterish humors, couenient in casie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. *Rx.* aqua infusionis Rosarum pallidarum, ℔. v. Sacchari expurgati, ℔. iij. boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe: take ℔. ii. Rosarum pallidarum recentium in ℔. vj. of tepide water twelue houres, and couer the vessel hand in stead of this likewise, substitute other

other fresh Roses; and these cast away, put in the water other new Roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the Roses, in which the Sugar must be dissolved. Neither truly the sirupe of bruised Roses, or of their iuice, will be effectuall as this. There is also made a sirupe (which draweth & purgeth likewise choler & water, & killeth wormes) of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTVS.

The sirupe *Rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of Roses & *Diacydonion*, keepe their old order of composition without any manifest mutation, but in the Electuary of *Diacarthamus*: for that the adiection *Manna granata*, *Mellu rosati*, & *Sacchari gemenati* peruerterd the perfect order of composition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good consideration omitted.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum doth draw forcibly from places farre distant, Echoler, thinne and aqueous humours, very commodious and easie to be vsed for those which be troubled with the gout, in case they haue not a vehement ague R. *Succi Rosarum siccarum recentium*, *Sacchari albi*, ana. ℥. j. ℞. Boile them into a solid Electuary with a lent fire, and in the end sprinkle *trium Santalorum*, *Mastiches*, *Cinamomi*, exquisitè tritorum, ana. ℥. ij. *Diadacrydij*, ℥. j. ℞. *Caphura*, ℥. ℞. make tables in weight. ℥. iij. ℞. The dose is one table, the whole composition is xxij. ℥. the doses be about 70.

Diacydonion.

Diacydonion worketh the same that the Electuary of the iuyce of Roses doth, but more moderately & easily. R. *pulpa Cydoniorum expurgata, cocta & cribro transmissa*, ℥. j. ℞. *Succi Cydoniorum*, ℥. ℞. *Sacchari albissimi*, ℥. ij. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi triti*, ℥. j. *Zinziberis*, *Maceris*, *Caryophyllorum*, ana. ℥. ii. *Diadacrydij*, ℥. ii. The dose is from ℥. iii. to ℥. ℞. the whole composition is ℥. iiii. the doses be about 90.

Electuarium Diacnicu.

Electuarium Diacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furthest places fleame, and wheyish or waterish humors, and also cholles, and is especially good for paine of the head, sinewes and ioynts. R. *pulueris Electuarij Diatrachanthæ frigidi*, *medulla semi. Cnici*, *Hermodactylorum*, ana. ℥. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum*, *succi Glycyrrhizæ*, *Cinamomi*, ana. ℥. ii. *Turpethi*, ℥. i. *Diadacrydij*, ℥. ℞. *Sacchari albi*, *aqua Rosarum soluti*, ℥. i. make tables thereof the weight of ℥. iij. ℞. the dose is one table.

Diapharnicon.

Diapharnicon doth mildly purge cholles, crude and flintie fleame, agreeable and convenient in compound and continuall agues, and discales arising of crudity, and also for the cholike and flatulent paine. R. *pulpa Palmularum mundatarum*, boiled in *Hydromel*, and fined in a fine, *Penidiorum recentium*, ana. ℥. ℞. *Amygdalarum expurgatarum*, ℥. iij. ℞. Whē they be bruised and mingled all together, put into the *mellu expumati*, ℥. ii. Boile them a litle, and the sprinkle *Zinziberis*, *Piperis*, *Maceris*, *Cinamomi*, *foliorum Roræ siccarum*, *semi. Feniculi*

& *Danci*, ana. ℥.ij. *Turpethi tenuissime triti*, ℥.iiij. *Diadacrydij*, ℥.j.℞. The dose is from ℥.ij. to ℥.℞. the whole composition is about ℔.iiij. the doses about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphænicon*, *Palmula* be rightly soaked and boiled in *Hydromel*; for that the ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vinegar, procureth a horrible sauer; many things also be subtracted, as the seed of *Louage*, *pinei Nuclei*, *Galanga*, *Xyloaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation: and the quantity of *Dates*, *Pemidies*, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

B*enedicta* draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humours, and also serous from any part, it recelleth the matter of the stone, & displaceth the stones themselves, abateth paine of the reins, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. *Rx.* *Turpethi*, ℥.x. *Diadacrydij*, *Hermodylorum*, *Rosarum rubra*, ana. ℥.v. *Charyophyllorum*, *Zinzibèri*, *Saxifragi semi*, *Apij*, *salis Gemmi*, *Galangæ*, *Maceris*, *Carui*, *Feniculi*, *Acimorum*, *Asparagi* & *Rusci*, *semi*. *Milij solu quatuor semi frigidorum maior*. *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.j. confect them according to art. The dose is from ℥.iiij. to ℥.℞. the whole composition is almost ℔.ij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The author hath vpon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hote, and could not be easly and safely vsed in an ague, *Spicam nardi*, *Macropiper*, *Cardamomum* & *Crocum*; and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seeds and *Liquorice*.

Confectio Hamech.

C*onfectio hamech* purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt steame; it is a peculiar remedie for the Leprosie, the Canker, the Tetter, the Elephantiasis and *Psora*. *Rx.* *corticis Myrobalanorum citrinarum*, ℥.ij. *Cepularum*, & *nigrarum Violarum*, *Colocynthidis*, *Polypodij quercini*, ana. ℥.j.℞. *Absynthij*, *Thymi*, ana. ℥.℞. *Anisi*, *Feniculi*, *Rosarum rubr.* ana. ℥.iiij. Bruise them all and soake them in whey ℔.ij. then boile them to a pound, rub the in your hand, & wring them. To the strained decoction adde the iuyce of *Fumitory*, the pulp of *Proines* & *Raisins*, ana. ℔.℞. *Sacchari albi*, *mellis expumati*, ana. ℔.j. Boile them to the thickness of honey, sprinkling in the end *Agarici*, *Sennæ*, *tritiorum*, ana. ℥.ii. *Rheubarbari triti*, ℥.i.℞. *Epithymi*, ℥.i. *Diadacrydij*, ℥.vi. *Cinamomi*, ℥.℞. *Zinzibèri*, ℥.ii. *semi*. *Fumariæ* & *Anisi*, *Spica nardi*, ana. ℥.i. The dose is from ℥.iii. to half an ounce, the whole composition is ℔.iii. & ℥.viii. The doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of *Hamech*, the *Myrobalans* be twise put in, to none effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised; *Rheubarbe* leeteth his strength and vertue, being boiled; *Cassia*, *Manna*, and *Thamarynd*, being boiled, do turne to putrefaction. The force of *Scammony* being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set downe a much more convenient

conuenient composition and easie to be vsed: this composition of all other is the best and most safest, for that in them the sharpnes and seruency of *Turbith* and *Scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of pulpe of *Proines* or *Raisins*, or by *Hermodactylis* and *Amygdalis*, or with *Roses* and their iuyce, or *Myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not so safe to be vsed as *Electuarium Indum utriusque*, *Electuarium Fleschof*, *Electuarium de Psillio*, *Diaturbith*. In the which the sharpnes of *Scammony*, and other stronger medicines is little abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing, which other receipts here described do not bring to passe with successe. Wherefore to take away the causes of all effects, these receipts be auailable enough.

Hiera simplex.

H*iera simplex* by purging choler and steame from the stomacke, intrails, *Hypochondrium*, and mesentery veines impacted, and arridding forcibly and mightily of redundance, doth mildly helpe all diseases proceeding of cruditie and obstruction of veines. *R.* *Cinamomi*, *Maceris*, *Asari*, *Spica nardi*, *Croci*, *Mastiches*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. *Aloes non lota*, \mathfrak{z} .100. or \mathfrak{h} .j. \mathfrak{ss} . *Mellis optimi expumati*, \mathfrak{lb} . iij. confect them according to Art: the powder alone is ministred from \mathfrak{z} ij. to \mathfrak{z} iij. but being receiued in hony from \mathfrak{z} .j. to \mathfrak{z} i. \mathfrak{ss} .

Hiera Diacolocynthidos.

H*iera Diacolocynthidos* which hath bene in stead of all other described of the ancient Physitions, by purging safely and gently all grosse and viscours humours, especially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is especiall good against the Palley, quivering Crampe, Goute, and inueterate diseases of the nerues, and also for the Dropsie. Secondly for melancholy, *Mania*, *Epilepsia*, *Scabbe*, *Leprosie*, maligne vices, *Cancere*, and *Elephantiasis*, which diseases do expugne gentle medicines. *R.* *Stacados*, *Marrubij*, *Camadrios*, *Hyperici*, *Scylla affata*, *Polis*, *Calaminthes montane*, *Cinamomi*, *Spica nardi*, *Epithymi*, *Polypodij quercini aridi*, *quatuor seminum frigido. maio. mundatorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .i. \mathfrak{ss} pulpe *Colocynthidis*, *Scammonij*, *Hellebori nigri*, *preparatorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ii. *Euphorbij preparati*, *Aloes*, *Myrrhe*, *Ammoniaki*, *Opoponacis*, *Sagapeni*, *Castorei*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .i. *mellis cocti in succo Cydoniorum*, & *expumati*, \mathfrak{lb} .i. \mathfrak{z} .iii. thereof are ministred; *Colocynthidis*, *Scammony*, blacke *Hellebore*, and *Euphorbe*, being bruised, must be rubbed with oyle of sweet Almonds, and then are two daies to be soaked in a muscilage of *Tragacanthum* and *gumme Arabicke* drawne out of Rose water, till they haue drunke vp the muscilage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient composition of *Hiera simplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, sauing *Xylobalsamum*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compositions do consist of stronger simples, some of *Scammony*, as *Electuarium 2 Prunis*, *Diacydonion*, & *Electuarium 2 succo Rosarum*. Others beside be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diapharnicon*: others be confected of *Hermodactylos*, besides the two former, that is, *Turbith* and *Scammony*, as *Diacnicu* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their composition *Colocynthidis*, as the confectiō of *Hamech*; others likewise do further take to their composition, *Helleborum nigrum*,

& *Euphorbium*: as *Hiera Diatsiocyntbidos*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diseases, but not vñall. Hereby then it may be gathered, that there is no simple purging medicine practised or put in vse, of which there is not some receipt extant, so that for such purpose more are not requisite.

Hydragogum minus.

H *Ydragogum minus*, drawing out the water of Drop sicke persons mildly without aggricuance, may be safely vñed both of children, old folke, infeeble persons, and women with child, whether they be aggrieued with an ague or without an ague. *Rx. succ. Rosarum pallidarum*, ℥. β. *Sacchari albi*, *Mellis optimi*, ana. ℥. xv. Boile them till they cast a forme and become thicke, and then put into them *succi radices Ebuli*, ℥. j. *Passii sicci*, sem. *Fœniculi tritorum*, ana. ℥. ij. *Acinorum Ebuli & Sambuci*, ana. ℥. ij. β. *Cinamomi*, ℥. vj. *Maceris*, *Galange*, ana. ℥. iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of honey, ℥. β. thereof is ministred whey of milke, or decoction of Bailey, or of Raisins. It will be more effectually by putting thereunto of the iuyce of wilde Cucumber, ℥. β. or of the roote of wild Cucumber, dried and bruised, ℥. vj. or of the iuyce of the roote of our Flowerdeluce. ℥. β.

Hydragogum maius.

H *Ydragogum maius* of *Laur.* mightily expelling water. *Rx. Seri lactis*, ℥. ij. *Sacchari albi*, *carnis Cydoniorum ex aceto coctorum*, ana. ℥. x. *Manna Calabrina*, ℥. v. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of honey; when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureoll prepared in vinegar, and oile of sweete Almonds, ℥. ij. It is ministred in the Dose of ℥. β.

The manner of preparing it, is in this wise, *Rx. Foliorum Laureola*, ℥. ij. macerate them foure & twenty houres in vinegar of Pomegranates or Purslaue, boile them softly, straine them, drie them, and bruisse them, and then put into them of Rose water, ℥. β. of the oile of sweete Almonds, ℥. j. β. Boile them againe vñtill the water be consumed, and the powder mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the consumption.

PLANTIVS.

That there should be nothing wanting in these receipts, in the last place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compositions to expell the Drop sicke water, notwithstanding more stronger simples, specially *Scammony* and *Euphorbium* do purge; yet the Author his meaning was to haue some peculiar receipts extant of such simples as haue proper and accustomed vertue against such redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues of Laureoll is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not bene applied to the composition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixture of the simples, how fully such kinde of compositions be applied to the expelling of such water.

Vnguentum è Lathyride.

V *Nguentum è Lathyride* loosneth & prouoketh the belly, draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall persons, asswageth the swelling or distension of the outward parts of the body betwixt the nauell and the priuities called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doth scoure downward from the wombe

wombe, if the nauell and the lower parts of the belly, and the parts aboue the priuities and the thighes, be therewith annointed; and it ariddeh all such matter vpward by vomite, if the stomacke therewith be madeified. *Rx. Succi Lathyridi*, ℥. ℥. *Succi Esulae*, ℥. iij. In the which dissolue *radici Cyclamini*, ℥. ij. *Scammony*, ℥. i. *granorum Recini & Lathyridis expurgatorum*, ana. ℥. j. *Sem. Funiculi, Rutae, Anethi, baccarum Lauri*, ana. ℥. j. Bruise them all, and macerate them a day in the iuice: after that take *Axungia*, ℥. viij. & *Cera*, ℥. iij. liquefie them, and dissolue all the rest in them by litle and litle, and boile them with a lent fire vntill the consumption of the whole moisture, and vntill they all be come to the temperature of an ointment. If the same matter be boiled in ℥. xv. of oyle, to the consumption of the liquor, the strained oyle will retaine the same vertue. If either Gum Ammoniack, or Waxe, be concorporated with the same ointment to the consistency of an Emplaister, that will cause issue of the water, being laid vpon the belly, but not so forcibly.

Electuarium Diasaru.

Electuarium Diasaru doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the stomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall insult, but hauing intermission, safely, and with facilitie to be vsed both of aged persons, and of women with child. *Rx. Syrupi Menthe & Violarum*, ana. ℥. viij. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, after they haue boiled, (draw away the fire) insperle in *radici Pepominis arefacta, semi. Raphani & Vrtica*, macerated in Rose water, dried and powned, ana. ℥. j. *radici Asari contrita, & Crota*, ℥. ij. *Cinamomi, semi. Funiculi*, ana. ℥. iij. confect them to a liquide Electuarie, and let ℥. iij. thereof be ministred either out of Barley, Muls, or whey of milke.

PLANTIVS.

The Author seemed much to haue furthered Physicke by these last receipts, especially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Authour there was any extant wherewith we might safely purge the humour vpward: whereas notwithstanding that kinde of euacuation is most necessary to the curing of any diseases.

Pilulae Hierae simplici.

VHereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide & consistent: so now let vs referre pills to all kind of causes and diseases. *Pilulae Hierae simplici* be confectioned with ℥. j. of powder tempered cum melle rosato.

Pilula Stomachica.

Pilula Stomachica, which taketh before meate, purge the stomacke, helpe concoction, carry the meate downe, and do mildly purge. *Rx. Aloes*, ℥. vi. *Mastiche, Rosarum rubrarum*, ana. ℥. ij. make them coherent with *syrupo Rosato*, or *Abfynthij*.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be vj. descriptions extant of the pills of the stomacke, all (this onely receipt excepted) do hurt the stomacke, and cannot conveniently be vsed before meate, because they retaine in their confection Scammony and Turbith, wherewith the whole body (but especially the stomack) is much aggriued

Pilule Ruffi, seu communes.

P*ilule Ruffi*, which be termed also *Pilule communes*, being often used, helps concoction, and do not suffer any putrefaction of the meate, do preserve the humours and body from corruption, whereupon they do much availe against the pestiferous ague. *Rx. Aloes optima*, ℥.ij. *Myrrha electa*, *Croci synceri*, ana. ℥.j. mixe them with aromaticke wine.

PLANTIVS.

Taking by little and little, and as it were conuincient compositions from pilles which consist of sole Aloe, after he addeth other vnto them which consist of Aloe and Rewbard, and immediately such as do consist of Aloe & Agaricke, then such as be confected of Agaricke, Aloe & Rewbarbe. And of those he compoundeth other of Agaricke, Rewbarbe, Aloe, and *Senna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pilule sine quibus*, in the which beside the foure precedent, the vertue and infusion of Scammomy rather then the substance is contained. In confection whereof he hath withholden a portion of Myrobalanes, so that the portion thereof being retained, there would be some redundance especially with other so many astringent simples.

Pilule Assaieret.

P*ilule Assaieret* for that they containe more Aloe then *Hiera*, be more effectuell in working. *Rx. Pulueris Hieræ simplicis*, ℥.j. Aloes, ℥.ij. (or according to *Valerius Cordus*, ℥.ij. to whom I rather encline) *Mastiches*, or *Myrobalan. citrinarum*, ana. ℥.β. reduce them to a masse with sirupe of *Stachados*.

Pilule de Eupatorio.

P*ilule de Eupatorio* do purge choler mildly, and do aride the liver of stuffing, and corroborate it, and are to be had in more price then the pills which be described to be made of Rewbarbe. *Rx. succi Eupatorii*, *succi Absinthij*, *Myrobalani citrine*, ana. ℥.ij. *Rheubarbari electi*, ℥.iiij. *Mastiches*, ℥.j. *Croci*, ℥.β. Aloes, ℥.v. *succi Endiuie*, in quantity sufficient to incorporate them.

Pilule Mastichine.

P*ilule Mastichine*, for that they containe Agaricke, do more forcibly purge choler and grosse steame, then they which consist of sole Aloes. *Rx. Mastiches*, ℥.ii. Aloes, ℥.iiij. *Agarici trochiscati*, *pulueris Hieræ simplicis*, ana. ℥.j.β. and incorporate them with Malmeley.

Pilule ex tribus, be confected of the simples by addition of *Rheubarbi selecti*, ℥.ij. *Cinamomi* ℥.β. and incorporate them with sirupe of Cichory.

Pilule Imperiales.

P*ilule Imperiales* do mildly and moderately purge out of the inrailes all humours, and therewithall comfort and strengthen them, ridde them of obstruction, and helpe the confection of all parts, seruiceable to nourishment. *Rx. Aloes optima*, ℥.ij. *Rheubarbari electi*, ℥.j.β. *Agarici trochiscati*, *foliorum Senne mundatorum*, ana. ℥.j. *Cinamomi* ℥.iiij. *Zinziberis* ℥.ij. *Nucis muschata*, *Caryophyllorum*, *Spica nardi*, *Mastiches*, ana. ℥.j. moisten it with the sirupe of Violets, and bring them into a masse

Pilula sine quibus esse nolo.

Pilula sine quibus esse nolo, do draw choler, fleame, and melancholy out of all parts of the body, but especially out of the head, eyes and senses; they assuage suffusion of the eyes, and preserve sight, they take away paine and noise of the eares. *Rx. Aloes optima, ℥. xiiii. Myrobalano. citri. Chebularum, Indarum, Rheubarbari, Mastiches, Absinthij, Rosarum, Violarum, Senna, Agarici, Cassuthe, ana. ℥. i. Scammony, ℥. vi. ℞.* dissolve the Scammony in the iuyce of Fennell as much as will suffice, and straine it through a cloth, and with the same iuyce incorporate the fine powders.

Pilula è Fumaria.

Pilula è Fumaria do extract bilious, salt and sharpe humours, and do correct what so is vicious or vnseemely in the skin. *Rx. Myrobalano. citri. Chebula. & Indar. ana. ℥. v. Diadacridij ℥. v. Aloes, ℥. ii.* When all these be bruised, imbrue them in the iuyce of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a masse.

Pilula Aurea.

Pilula Aurea be more effectuell in working then *Pilula è Fumaria*, for *Colocynthis* which they containe: they scour the head, and senses, but especially the eyes, and recover the quicknesse of sight, they expell bilious, and also flegmaticke humours. *Rx. Aloes, Diadacridij, ana. ℥. v. Rosarum rubra, sem. Apij, ana. ℥. ii. ℞. Sem. Anisi & Feniculi, Mastiches, ana. ℥. i. ℞. Croci, pulpa Colocynthis, ana. ℥. i. Muscilaginis gummi Tragacantha, q. ℞.* and confect thereof a masse.

Pilule de Agarico.

Pilule de Agarico do mightily draw choler and slimy humours from all the parts of the body, but especially from the head and breast, peculiarly standing in head against distillations and Asthma. *Rx. Agarici, Mastiches, ana. ℥. iii. radice Iridis, Prassij, ana. ℥. i. Turpethi, ℥. v. puluer. Hierapicre, ℥. ℞ pulpa Colocynthis, Sarcocolla ana. ℥. ii. Myrrha, ℥. i. sapa quant. suff.* the rather to reduce them to a consistent substance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pills of Agaricke, there be orderly disposed all such excellent simples as auail to draw out of the body grosse fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre distant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pilule Coccie.

Pilule Coccie do from all parts of the body purge choler, but grosse fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braine and nerves, whose diseases especially they do cure. *Rx. Puluer. Hierapicre ℥. x. pulpa Colocynthis, ℥. iii. ℞. i. Diadacridij, ℥. ii. ℞. Turpethi, Stachados, ana. ℥. v.* and confect a masse of thole with sirupe of Stachados.

PLANTIVS.

Pilule Coccie, notwithstanding they do forcibly purge choler and fleame, yet they do not purge all humours at once, as those pills which be termed

Polychresta, and commonly *Aggregatine maiores*. The composition whereof differeth nothing from the ancient receipt, saving for respect of the dose certaine simples be altered. The confectiō of those pills is much more convenient then *Pilularum docto robur*, or then the pills of five kinds of *Myrobalano* which notwithstanding containe the same simples. The description therefore of those pills in this place, seemeth vpon good occasion to be omitted, for that they seeme to be contained vnder these, as *Pilula de Euphorbia* be comprehended vnder *Pilula de Hermodactylis*.

Pilula ex Hermodactylis.

Pilula ex Hermodactylis, do draw out serous or watetish humours mightily from the furthest parts, especially from the ioynts, most agreeable in cold diseases of the braine, nerves and ioynts. R \bar{x} . *Hermodactylorum*, *Aloes*, *Myrobalano*, *citri*, *Turpethi*, *Colocynthis*, *Bdellij mollis*, *Sagapeni*, ana ℥.vj. *Castorei*, *Sarcocolla*, *Opoponaci*, *semi*. *Ruta agrestis*, & *A. ij*, ana ℥.iij. *Croci* ℥.i. β *succi Brassicae*, *quan suffi*. to the confectiō of a masse.

PLANTIVS.

Pilula ex Hermodactylis do retaine the ancient composition, and be of themselves more effectually against the inueterate diseases of the ioynts, then those which be termed, *Arthritica*, and more safely to be vsed then those which be called *Fartide*, or which be confected *de Opoponace*, *de Sagapeno*, or *de Sarcocolla*, so that it were needlesse to set downe their receipts.

Pilula Polychresta.

Pilula Polychresta be very auailable against all diseases of the head, the stomacke, the liuer, and other sundry compound diseases of the other intrals: for they draw out of these parts steame and both the cholers. R \bar{x} . *Myrobalano*, *citri*, *Rheubarbari*, ana ℥.℔. *succi Eupatorij*, *succi Absinthij*, *Myrobalano*, *Chopularum*, & *Indarum*, *Agarici*, *Colocynthis*, *Polypodij*, ana ℥.ii. *Diadacrydij*, *Turpethi*, *Aloes*, ana ℥.vi. *Mastiche*, *Rosarum rubrarum*, *salu Gemmei*, *Epithymi*, *Anisi*, *Zinziberni*, ana ℥.i. confect them with sirupe of Roses: they be ministred from ℥.ii. to ℥.i.

Pilula è Lapide Cyaneo.

Pilula è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and steame, especially good against *Melancholia*, sadnesse, and madnesse: against the Canker, *Elephantiasis* and blacke Morpew. R \bar{x} . *lapid. Cyanei abluti*, ℥.vi. *Epithymi*, *Polypodij*, ana ℥.viii. *Diadacrydij*, *Hellebari nigri*, *salu Indi*, ana ℥.iii. β *Agarici*, ℥.viii. *Caryophyllorum*, *Anisi*, ana ℥.iiii. *Pulueru Hiera picra simplicis*, ℥.xv. and confect a masse of them with the iuyce of Endiue or Sucoory.

PLANTIVS.

Pilula de lapide Cyaneo for the blacke Hellebore vsed, be more practised then *Pilula Inde* which containe also Hellebore: wherefore he hath described those, omitting others; and for that they be more effectually against melancholike diseases then *Pilula de lapide Armeno*, for that occasion he omitteth them.

Pilula

Pilulae Thymelae.

Pilulae Thymelae do mightily draw out of the body Serous humors & water of hydropical persons. R. foliorum Thymelae extiratorum & aceto maceratorum, ℥. v. Myrobalina. flauarum ℥. β. Myrobalanorum Cepularum, ℥. iiii. Manne & Thamarindorum dissolved in water of Succory, so much as sufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *Pilulis Thymelae*, and to them is added certaine aptly confectioned of *Esula*, and which are very effectually to draw out water. I suppose he omitted as well *Pilulas Lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confusedly made of a great and unnecessary heape of simples, and for that *Pilula sine quibus* be effectually enough for the eyes having any affect.

Pilula ex Esula.

Pilula ex *Esula* do purge the wombe from the drop-sicke water with great aggreuance, and therefore agree onely to strong bodies, and then onely when they be free from agues. R. corticis radicis *Esulae minoris* macerated in vineger xxiiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of Purslaine, ℥. i. grana *Recini* purged and parched. xl. Myrobalanorum cyrinarum, ℥. j. β. Chamedryos, Chamepityos Spice nardi, Cinamomi. ana. ℥. ii. bruite them all finely and incorporate them in ℥. j. of Tragacanth dissolved in Rosewater, & so reduce them to a masse. They be ministred in the dose of ℥. ii.

Pilulae Cynoglossi.

Pilulae Cynoglossi were not prouided to purge, but to stay distillations: whether they issue to the breast and lungs with a cough, or into the reeth or else where. R. Myrrhae, ℥. vi. Thurum masculi ℥. v. Opj, Hyosciami, sem. radice Cynoglossi aridi, ana. ℥. β. Croci, Castorei, ana. ℥. i. β. and confection a masse thereof with distilled Rosewater. They be ministred from ℥. i. to ℥. β.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Castoreum* added in *Pilulis Cynoglossi*, which with Saffron hath singular vertue to correct the malignitie of *Opium*, which before in this receipt haue bene inconsiderately omitted.

Pilula Aristolochiae.

Pilula *Aristolochiae* having great power to diuide & scoure. are very available against *Epilepsia*, *Paralysis*, *Asthma*, & veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liver & reins, *Nephritis*, suppressing of the flowers: it expelleth the child & Seconds: they be more meete in winter, & for moist natures when the bodies be purged R. radice *Aristolochiae rotunda*, ℥. i. radice *Gentiana*, Myrrhae electae, ana. ℥. iiii. Aloes, Cinamomi, ana. ℥. β. Zinziberu, ℥. i. when they be all exquisitely powred, put in new oyle of sweet Almonds. It is ministred in Dose, ℥. i. β. and the broth in which they be dilaid is all at once to be supped.

PLANTIVS.

Pilula Aristolochiae be last of all commodiously added to the rest, and be excellently described, because they haue a great opening vertue. They may be made in such forme that they may be drunke: but because they be very bitter, they be more easily deuoured in the forme of Cataplasma.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as be made in a solide forme, by taking where- of the principall parts of the body be com- forced and strengthened.

Dianthon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessive melancholy, and extreme sadnesse, it taketh away qualming and ouercasting of the heart. *R.* florum *Roris marini*, \mathfrak{z} β . *Rosarum*, *Violarum*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *Caryophyllorum*, *Spica nardi*, *Nucis muschate*, *Galangæ*, *Cinamomi*, *Zinziberis*, *Macern*, *ligni Aloes*, *Cardamomi*, *Anisi*, *sem.* *Anethi*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Sacchari albi*, *aqua Saluæ*, vel *Betonica soluti*, \mathfrak{lb} . j. β . make thereof an Electuarie in tables.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the senses, recouer the decayed memory, and is very commodious for such as haue the falling euill, & difficulty of breathing: it comforteth such as be sadde, or annoyed with *Melancholia*, or disturbed with idlenesse of the braine: it restoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sicknesse. *R.* *Cinamomi*, *Caryophyllorum*, *ligni Aloes*, *Galangæ*, *Spica nardi*, *Nucis muschate*, *Zinziberis*, *Spodij*, *Scanantii*, *Cyperis*, *Rosarum*, *Violarum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *folij aut Macern*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, *Mastiches*, *Styracis*, *Calaminthæ*, *Sampsuchi*, *Balsamitæ*, *Ocimi*, *Cardamomi*, *Macropiperis*, *Myrsinorum*, *corticis mali Cytri*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . and gr. vj. *Margaritarum splendidarum*, *Ben albi* & *rubri*, *Coralli*, *Serici combusti*, ana. gr. xvij. *Moschi*, gr. vj. *Caphura*, gr. iij. *Sacchari albi*, *aqua Melissæ soluti*, x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and strengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly institute their compositions according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at thole which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breast and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very commodious in all distempers of the Lungs, and breast, and it is good for the *Peripneumonia*, and *Pleurisie*, a consumption and hote cough with an ague. Lastly, for the roughnesse and sharpnesse of the iawes and arteries. *R.* *Gummi Tragacanthi albissimi*, \mathfrak{z} . j. *Gummi Arab.* \mathfrak{z} . v. *Amyli*, \mathfrak{z} . ii. *Glycyrrhizæ*, *sem.* *Papaueris albi*, *quatuor sem.* *frigida.* *maior corticis Liberiorum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . i. *Caphura*, gr. v. *Penidiorum*, \mathfrak{z} . β . *Sacchari albissimi*, *aqua violarum soluti*, \mathfrak{lb} . i. Make thereof an Electuarie in Tesseræ.

PLAN.

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diseases, and hath the vertue of another composition called *Diapapaner*, which therefore was here vpon good occasion omitted.

Diaireos simplex.

Diaireos simplex doth by a mild attenuation arid the breast and lungs of all distempers, and it maketh more easie uttering of spittle, meete for hote diseases increasing, and such cold diseases as be not extreme. *R. radices Iridis Florentini*, ℥. i. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthi frigidi*, *Sacchari Candi*, ana. ℥. β. *Sacchari albis*. *Hyssopi aqua soluti*, ℥. viij. compound thereof a solide Electuarie.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum, auaieth much in hote diseases beginning to breake, and inueterate cold diseases, as the cough, *Asthma*, and hoarsnesse. *R. Radicis Iridis*, ℥. β. *Pulegij*, *Hyssopi*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. iij. *Tragacanthæ*, *Amygdalarum amararum*, *Pinearum*, *Cinamomi*, *Zinziberis*, *Piperis*, ana. ℥. j. β. *seminis Lini*, *Altheæ* & *Fenugraci*, ana. ℥. ij. *Sacchari albissimi*, *aqua Tussilaginis soluti*, ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diaireos* is here placed in stead of *Diatragacanthum calidum* and *Diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *Cariæ Bassolis*, *Balmis* & *Styracis*, which were vnto mee for this composition, ordaine *seminis Lini*, *Altheæ* & *Fenugraci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempers of the breast.

Diacalaminthæ.

Diacalaminthæ doth attenuate rebellious and inueterate distempers of the breast and lungs, and the grosse and viscid humours in these parts, so doth soone and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and so fittly prouoketh the flowers, urine and sweate. *R. Calaminthæ montanæ*, *Pulegij*, *Petroselinij*, *Seselis*, *Origani*, ana. ℥. ij. *seminis Apij*, *cymarum Thymij*, ana. ℥. β. *Lemistici*, *Piperis*, *Smyrniij*, ana. ℥. j. *Sacchari albissimi*, *aqua Violarij aut Rosarum soluti*, ℔. i. ss. make an Electuarie.

PLANTVS.

In this composition of *Diacalaminthæ*, *Origani* seemeth very aptly added. In the other simples the Author hath imitated *Galen* composition, and the weights and doles, save onely in Louage and in Pepper: for the Author taketh of Louage halfe so much, and of Pepper the sixt part so much as *Galen* did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of *Galen* in his fourth booke *De tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnplesant, yet in

taste or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with fixe or eight times so much Sugar, in this composition truly which is very hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a dose of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalamminthes* may stand for those which be termed *Diahyssopus*, and *Diaprasus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessary, lest the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum allwageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth and comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, delucreth the affected from quaiming and swoounding, and lastly abandoneth sorrow. *R. quatuor semin. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, seminis Portulacæ, & Papaucri albi, seminis Endiuie, Oxalydis, & Cytrij, trium Sanctalorum, ligni, Aloes, Zinziberis, Rosarum rubrarum, florum Nymphaeæ, Buglossi, Violarum, baccarum Myrti, ossis de corde Cerui, Eboris, Doronici Romani, Cinamomi, ana. ʒ i. Corallij albi, & rubri, ana. ʒ ʒ Magaritarū splendorū. ʒ iiij. Ambaris, Caphure, ana. gr. vj. Moschi, gr. ij. Sacchari albi, aqua Buglossi vel Rosarum soluti, lb. ij.*

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargaritō* might become more excellent and effectually, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seeds of Endiue and Sorrell, *Cytrij Ebur, os de corde Cerui, Doronicum Rom.* and *Cinamomum*: all which be apparently good for the heart. There be diuerse Physitions which haue put into this Electuarie, certaine potions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de Gemmis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description thereof, this Electuary containeth, except a few hote Aromates, and many cold simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de Gemmis.

Electuarium de Gemmis doth excellently comfort and strengthen the heart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrifaction, doth releafe the affected of quaiming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadness. *R. Margaritarum splendorum, ʒ. i. ʒ. Saphiri, Hyacinthij, Sardæ, that is, Corniola, Granatorum, Smaragdi, ana. ʒ. ij. & gr. v. Zedoaria, Doronici, corticum Citrij mali, Maceris, sene. Ocymij Caryophyllati, ana. ʒ. i. Corallij rubri, Succini, Eboris, ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. Ben albi, Ben rubri, Caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, Piperis longi, Spica Indica, folij, Croci, Cardamomi maioris, ana. ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. trochiscorum Diarrhodon, ligni Aloes, ʒ. ij. ʒ. Cinamomi, Galangæ, ana. ʒ. ij. gr. v. foliorum Auri, foliorum Argenti, ana. ʒ. j. Ambra. ʒ. j. Moschi, gr. xv. Sacchari albi aqua Rosarum solui, ʒ. xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.*

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium de Gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they be not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stone. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuary some part of the Aromates, especially *Ben album & rubrum, Cardamomi maioris, Piper longum, & folium*, which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium

Electuarium Diambra.

Electuarium Diambra comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine & the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feeble persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of aliments, but also of cold humours, and driueth away all the coldnesse of the body and of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception, R. Cinamomi, Doronici Ro. Caryophyllorum, Maceris, Nucis, muschate, folij Galanga, ana. ℥. iij. Spica nardi, Cardamomi maiori & minori, ana. ℥. j. Zinziberis, ℥. j. Santali citrini, ligni Aloes, Piperis longi, ana. ℥. ii. Ambaris, ℥. i. Moschi, ℥. i. every ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with ℥b. i. of Sugar dissolved in Rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Diambra seemeth to consist of all kind of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *Diacuminum*, and *Dianison*, *Diacinamomum*, *Diazinziber*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Diakiloaloes*, *Diamargaritan calidum*, *Diamoscu seu dulce*, & *Diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hote, consisting of hote simples no whit repressed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambra*, which may supply the want of the rest, lest the student in Physicke should be overcharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hote, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *Cardamomum* and the long Pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *Rosarum rubra*. ℥. iii. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hote natures, when the weather is hote, and in hote seasons, in agues and other hote diseases; and the excessive heate also of these simples hath bene occasion that the vse thereof hath bene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, even as *Diatrion piperion Galeni* and *Diacalamintha*. The Author therefore perceiving this, hath vpon good occasion commanded, that the powders should be tempered in twelue times so much Sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Pulvis cordiacus.

Pulvis cordiacus doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague; and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. R. radicis Tormentille, Dictamni, Tussicu & Scabiose, sem. Acetose, Endiuie, Coriandri preparati, sem. Citrij, Rutæ, Cardui benedicti, ana. ℥. i. trium Santalorum, Ben albi, Ben rubri, Doronici Ro. ligni Aloes, Zedoarie, Cinamomi, Cardamomi, Maceris, Croci, Rosarum rubra. florum Buglossi vtriusque, florum Nymphae, ana. ℥. ii. rasura Eboris, Spodij, that is, Eboris vssi, ossis e corde Cerni, Corallij albi, Corallij rubri, Succini, Margaritarum splendorum, Smaragdi, Hyacinthi, Granati, ana. ℥. i. Serici crudi correfacti, boli Armeni, terra Lemnia, ana. ℥. ℥. Capure, Moschi, Ambaris, ana. gra. vi. reduce them to powder, and make thereof tables with eight times so much Sugar dissolved in Rose water.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius, comforteth the stomacke, with a moderate heate, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrailes, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth wind, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recovery of a sicknesse. *Rx. Rosarum rubra. ℥. xv. Glycyrrhizæ rusæ, ℥. viij. ligni Aloes, Santali citrini, ana. ℥. iij. Cinamomi electi, Maceris, Caryophyllorum, ana. ℥. ij. Gummi Arabi, Tragacanthæ, ana. ℥. ij. J. ij. Nucis muschatæ, Cardamomi, Galangæ, ana. ℥. j. Spicæ nardi, Ambre, ana. ℥. ij. Moschi, J. j.* and make tablets with eight times so much Sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *Aromaticum Rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis, mitigateth the heate of the stomacke and emidriste, and yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth wind. *Rx. Rosarum rubrarum, ℥. j. Santali albi & rubri, ana. ℥. ij. Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabici, Eboris vsti, ana. J. ij. Mastiches, Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Croci, Xyloales, Caryophyllorum, Gallie muschatæ, Anisi, Fœniculi, sem. Ocymi, Acinorum Berberis, sem. Scariole, Portulacæ & Papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido, maiorum, Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi, ana. J. j. Margaritarum, ossis e corde Cerui, ana. J. ss. Caphuræ, gra. viij. Moschi, gra. iij.* make thereof tablets with eight times so much Sugar dissolved in Rosewater.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuarie of *Diarrhodon*, the Author hath subtracted *Asarum*, for that it doth overcome the stomacke, notwithstanding it be powned lightly: and Sugar candie likewise, for that it hath no more efficacie or vertue then white Sugar. The Electuarie of *Diagalangæ*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the cruditie of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessive heate: in place whereof if need so require, may be substituted *Diambras* or *Diatalamintes*.

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon.

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon, correcteth the hote intemper of the liuer, and ariddeth it of the remnants of obstructing matter, cureth the laundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomacke. *Rx. trium Santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, Rosarum rubra, ana. ℥. iij. Rheubarbari electi, Eboris vsti, succi Glycyrrhizæ, sem. Portulacæ, ana. ℥. ij. Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ, quatuor sem. frigido, mai. mundatorum, sem. Intubi, ana. ℥. j. ss. Caphuræ, J. j.* and eight times so much white Sugar dissolved in Rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amylum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion Santalon*, as vnnecessary; neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold affects

fects and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this
Electuarie *Dialacca maior*.

DIACROC.

Diacroc, which is also commonly termed *Diacurcuma*, dissolueth inveterate affects of the liuer and spleene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and an hard tumour lately begun. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the Dropsie. R. *Croci*, *Asari*, *Petroselin*, *Macedon*, *Dauci*, *Anisi*, sem. *Apij*, ana. ℥. ℞. *Rheubarbari*, *Men*, *Spice nardi*, ana. ℥. vj. *Costi*, *Myrrhe*, *Cassia lignea*, *Scœnanthi*, *Carpobalsami*, *radicis Rubie*, *succi Absinthij*, *succi Eupatorij* arefacti, *olei Balsami*, ana. ℥. ij. *Calami aromatici*, *Cinamomi*, ana. ℥. j. ℞. *Scordij*, *Scolopendrij*, *succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. ij. and ten times so much white Sugar dissolved in Endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacroc containeth certaine rare simples and hard to be come by, as *Cassia lignea*, *Carpobalsamum*, and *Opobalsamum*; which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall be as effectuell to the purpose wherefore it is instituted.

DIALACCA maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuell then *Diacroc* against inveterate obstructions of the liuer and spleene, against an ill habite, and in the beginning of a Dropsie. R. *Lacce preparate*, *Rheubarbari*, ana. ℥. ij. *Spice Indice*, *Mastiches*, *stipitum Scœnanthi*, *Absinthij Roma*, *succi Eupatorij Mesue*, *Sabine*, *Amygdala*, *amararum*, *Costi*, *Myrrhe*, *Rubie*, sem. *Opij*, *Aniseos*, *Fœniculi*, *Anisi*, *Asari*, *Aristolochie longe*, *Aristolochie rotunde*, *Gentiane*, *Croci*, *Cinamomi*, *Hyssopi*, *Cassia lignea*, *summitatum Scœnanthi*, *Bdellij*, ana. ℥. j. ℞. *Piperis*, *Zinziberis*, ana. ℥. j. *Sacchari albi* twelve times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Dialacca maior, *Pleres Archonticon*, and the exhilarating *Electuarie*, do retain the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be more fit for such affects as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating *Electuarie*, is falsely ascribed unto *Galen*: it driueth away sadness, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirits, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preferueth the receiuer from hoarinesse of haire. R. *storum Orymi*, *caryophyllati*, *Croci*, *Zedoarie*, *Xylobalsami*, aut *ligni Aloes*, *Caryophyllorum corticum cytrij Mali*, *Galingæ*, *Maceris*, *Nuci moschate*, *Syracis*, *Calaminihe*, ana. ℥. ij. ℞. *Anisi*, *scobis Eboris*, *Thymi*, *Epithymi*, ana. ℥. j. *Caphura*, *Moschi*, *Ambra*, *Margaritarum splendorum*, *offis e corde Cerasi*, ana. ℥. j. *Resolutorum Auri* et *Argentis*, ana. ℥. ℞. of white Sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium Diaspermaton.

Electuarium *Diaspermaton* refrigerating and comforting the kidneys, & the conduites of the vrine and seed, doth mildly purge them from all corrup-

tion of humours. R. *quatuor semi. frigido. maio. & mino. sem.* Asparagi, Pimpinelle, Ocymi, & Petroselini, granorum, Halicacabi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Mili folii, Sacchi Glycyrrhizæ, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Cinamomi, Maceris, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Sacchari albi eight times so much dissolved in the water of marish Mallow.

Electuarium lithon thrupicon.

Electuarium lithon thrupicon, that is, Lithon thrupicon, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauell of the kidneys and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneys, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by litle and litle. R. Spice nardi, Zinziberis, Cinamomi, Melanopiperis, Cardamomi, Caryophyllorum, Maceris, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Costi, Glycyrrhizæ, Cyperi, Tragacanthæ, Chamedryos, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. sem. Apij, Ammeos, Asparagi, Ocymi, Vrtice, Cytrij mali, Saxifragi, Pimpinelle, Cardui, Dauci, Fœniculi, Resci, Petroselini, Macedoni Bardane & Sefelios, Asari, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. lapidis Spongie, lapidis Lyncis, lapidis Cancris, & lapidis Indici, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . sanguinis Hirini preparati, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white Sugar, dissolved in water of Betonie: but when extremity of paine forceth, and vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, ex passo Cretico from \mathfrak{z} . ij. to \mathfrak{z} . j.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Diaspermaton we haue read, described for many & sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auailo much against the heate of the kidneys, the scalding of the vrine, and other affects to which it is assigned. These simples be withdrawne and expuncted out of that Electuarie, which they terme *Lithon tribon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure: and other astringing be added in their stead, which do hinder the breaking of the stone, & the displaying of the sand: sundry seeds and many stones, and the prepared blood of the Goate is added, all which haue a singular power and force against the stone, and against all the Symptomata which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heate be feared, it may be tempered with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum, doth mightily prouoke the floures and all purgations of the wombe. R. pulueris Electuarij Diacalaminthes simplicis, \mathfrak{z} . β . foliorum Prassij, Sampsuci, Melissophylli, Artemisie, Sabina, aridorum, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Cyperi, sem. Ruta & Rubie, Maceris, Cinamomi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. and twelue times so much of white Sugar, dissolved in the water of Feuerfew or Pellitory of the wall.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

of

*Of moist Antidotaries.**Antidotus analeptica.*

Antidotus analeptica recouereth all the powers of the body enfeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the qualming and swooning, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusion of blood, or by an excessive euacuation; it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecteth, nourisheth, strengtheneth; & comforteth. *Rx.* Rosarum rubrarum, Glycyrrhizæ, ana ʒ.ij. gr.v. Gummi Arabici, & Tragacanthæ, ana ʒ.ij. & ʒ.ij. Santali albi & rubri, ana ʒ.ij. and ʒ.ij. succi Glycyrrhizæ, Amyli, semin. Papaueris albi, Portulacæ, Lactucæ, & Sericolæ, ana ʒ.ij. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, semen Cydoniorum, seminum Maluæ, seminum Bomberis, seminum Violarum, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum recentium, Amygdalarum dulcium, pulpe Sebesten, ana ʒ.ij. Cariophyllorum, Spodii, Cinamomi, ana ʒ.ij. Croci, gr.v. Penidiorum, ʒ.β. when they be all powned, temper them with sirupe of Violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the Antidotary analepticke, which they terme *Resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Barberies, *Pistacia* be put in the receipt.

Antidotus Diasaterion.

Antidotus Diasaterion, augmenteth the genitall seed, procureth a lust to Avenery, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular helpe and comfort against the imbecility of the kidneis and spermaticke vessels, whereby it auaieth much for procreation of children. *Rx.* radicis Saterij recentis & solide, radicis Pastinacæ satina, radicis Eringij, Nucis Indicæ, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum, ana ʒ.ij. β. Cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, Anisi, sem. Erucæ, lingue auis quæ semen est Fraxini, ana ʒ.ij. Cinamomi, caudarum Scimcorum, semin. Bulbi, ana ʒ.ij. β. Moschi, gr.v. mellis optimi despumati, lb. iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempered, and after *Nux Indica*. *Strobuli* and *Pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely powned.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *Diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuell of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è succo baphico seu grano infectorio.

Antidotus è Cocco baphico seu grano infectorio, which the Arabians terme *Kermes*, cheareth the heart, & drines away sorrow coming without occasiō: it restraineth and bridleth *Melancholia* & *Mania*, and recouereth the decayed spirits & powers of the body. *Rx.* succi Malorū fragrantū, aquæ Rosarum, ana. lb. ij. in quibus macera horis xxiiij. Serici staminis crudi, lb. j. Let it boile easily, and then straine it, and in the strained liquor, boile granorum infectiorum, ʒ.ij.

the decoction then will become red, in the which being strained, dissolve *Sacchari albi*, ℥. j. Boile them then againe to the thicknesse of hony: in the end put in *Ambra crude contusa*, ℥. ℥. and when it is liquefied or melted, sprinkle in these powders, *Ligni Aloes crudi*, *Cinamomi*, ana ℥. vj. *Lapis Cyanei loti & preparati*, ℥. i. *Margaritarum non perforatarum*, ℥. i. *foliorum auri purissimi*, ℥. j. *Moschi*, ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus à Cocco baphiso, termed *confectio Alkermes*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already died, and as they terme it, *Kermesino*; for that kind of silke vsually is not died without Galle, Alum, and Arsenicke, which is altogether venomous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus à baccis Lauri.

Antidotus à baccis Lauri, doth mightily dissipate wind through heat and tenuity, and is speciall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small. *R. foliorum Ruta*, ℥. x. *Ammeos*, *Cumini*, *Nigella*, *Leustici seminis*, *Origani*, *Carui*, *Amygdalarum amararum*, *Piperis longi*, *Mentastri*, *Dauci*, *Acori*, *baccarum Lauri*, *Castorei*, ana ℥. ii. *Sagapeni*, ℥. ℥. *Opoponacis*, ℥. iii. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. i. ℥.

Philonium.

Philonium ministred with *Opium* after fixe moneths, doth take away vehement and grievous paine, either in the great guts or in the kidneys, or in the Spleene, prouoketh sleepe, stayeth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of bloud. *R. Croci*, ℥. v. *Pyrethri*, *Euphorbij*, *Spica nardi*, *Myrrha*, *Castoreij*, ana ℥. j. *Piperis albi*, *Hyosciami*, ana ℥. xx. *Opj*, ℥. x. *Mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. ij. the dose hereof is from ℥. i. to ℥. i.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approved both by authoritie of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alum is sufficient to allay vehement torments, and yet notwithstanding the Author following *Mesue* hath put in Myrrhe and Castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct *Opium*. If the maner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of *Opium* is almost twise so much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they terme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may be ministred in a double Dose, namely from ℥. ij. to ℥. j.

Antidotus termed Requies.

Antidotus termed *Requies*, without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, asswageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. *R. Rosarum*, *Violarum*, ana ℥. iii. *certicum radicum Mandragorae*, *seminis Hyosciami albi*, & *Papaueris albi*, *seminis Seriole*, *Lactuca*, *Periulace* & *Psilly*, *Nucis muschatæ*, *Cinamomelecti*, ana ℥. i. ℥. *trium Santalorum*, *Spodij*, *Tragacanthæ*, ana ℥. ii. *mellis optimi expumati triplicem*.

PLAN-

PLANTIVE.

Antidotus termed *Requies*, hath lesse *Opium* then any kind of *Philonium* or *Opium*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold; notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *Opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proved without *Opium*, truly it doth not little auail to assuage the burning heate of agues, and dotage, thirst, and whatsoever *Symptomata* do proceed of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *Philonium* are to be abandoned as nothing necessary, as both the *Antidotary Diolibanum* and *Athanasia*, and *Musa aenea*, *Requies cum Opio*, *Trisera magna*, & *Esdia magna*, of what Author soeuer it was iouented. For such compositions as haue *Opium*, if they be ordained to assuage paine, *Philonium* described by this Author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall parts, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *Triphera magna*, *Esdia magna*, *Aurea Alexandrina*, and *Athanasia*, *Theriace* and *Mithridatum* may therefore stand in their stead. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is very dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace diateffaron.

Theriace diateffaron is excellent good against Epilepsie, Conuulsion, Palsey, Cruditie of the stomach, ill Habite, Drop sic, and other cold diseases. Further it auaileth much against venime receiued, against the biting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. *R. radices Gentiane, baccarum Lauri, Myrrha, Aristolochia rotunda, ana ℥. ij.* and when they be very seriously powdered, receiue and mixe with *mellis optimi expumati, ℥. ii.*

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

Theriace Andromachi senioris preuaileth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the Apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, Cephalalgia, Asthma, Hemoptoe, aggrievance in the stomacke, laundies, Drop sic, paines of the kidneies, colicke, goutte, melancholicke and lunaticke men, and lastly the Leprosie: it expelleth the floures and a dead child; it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomacke, and the whole body, and preserueth it from a pestilent contagion. *R. Trochiscorum scylliticorum, ℥. vj. Trochiscorum theriacorum, Magnatis hædicrai, Piperis longi, Opj, ana. ℥. iij. Rosarum rubrarum, seminis Napi syluestris, Scordij, Opobalsami, Cinamomi, Agarici, ana. ℥. j. B. Myrrha, Costi, Croci, Cassia lignea, Nardi Indice, Scenanthi, Thuris masculi, Piperis albi & nigri, Dielamni, Marrubij, Rhenbarbari, Stachadis, semi. Petroselini, Macedo, Calamites, Terebinthina, Zinziberis, radices Pentaphylli, ana. ℥. vj. Pollij montani, Chamapiteos, Styracis calamita, Mei, Amomi, Nardi Celtica, Sigilli Lemnij, Phu Pontici, Chamedryos, foliorum Malabatri aut Macis, Chalcidis rosta, (which may be commodiously pretermitted) radices Gentiana, Anisi, succi Hypocistidis, Car-*

Opobalsami, Gummi Arabici splendidi, sem. Farniculi, Cardamomi minoris, Seselios, Acatie, Thalasprios, sem. Hyperici, Ammeos, ana. ℥. ℞. Castoroi, Aristolochie longe: Sentenis, sem. Dauci, Bituminis Iudaici, Opoponacu, Centaurij minoris, Galbani, ana. ℥. ij. mellis optimi expumati triplum, id est, ℥. xiiij. ℥. iij. Vini optimi odorati, so much as shall suffice to dissolve the liquors and iuyces. The greatest dose is ℥. iij. or ℥. ℞. for ℥. j. of the powder, for ℥. iij. of the composition containe gra. i. of Opium.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the composition of Triacle set forth by *Andromachus* senior, in an Elegiacall verse, for that neither the number nor the weight of simples can in verse easily be changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of simples, and peradventure more convenient: to the which also the added Sothernwood and Gladine, and altered the doses of certaine simples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted so certaine. Wherefore without all controuersie we are to insist on this description onely. Whereas the Author doth admonish vs of *Chalcitide* id est, vitrioll not to be put into this composition, therein imitating *Valerius Cordus*, that seemeth very convenient; for whereas that medicine, especially being burnt, is marvellous causticke, *escaroticum* and hurtfull to the intrailles, and hath bene experienced nothing to auail for any externall disease, there is no cause why with so great inconuenience and vnpleasantnesse of taste, it should be admitted into this composition. For if it be (as some men thinke) therefore added to make the composition blacke, it ought not for colour sake, by taste and operation so much annoy the body. Finally by taking it away, the whole receipt will be more commodious, lesse sharpe and hote, and will become more pleasant to the receiuer.

Mithridatum.

Mithridatum doth nigheft resemble the power of triacle, and is vsed against the same diseases with a great deale more facility and lesse extremity of heate, according vnto the description of *Andromachus*, allowed of *Galen* and other ancient Physicians. ℞. Myrrhe, Nardi, ana. ℥. i. ℥. ℞. Croci, Cinamomi, Scordij, Zinziberis, ana. ℥. vii. ℞. Opj, ℥. iiii. grains. xv. Syracis, Seselios, Abrotani, Libanotidu, ana. ℥. x. Castorij, ℥. vii. ℥. ℞. Scamnanthi, Polij, Costi, Piperis longi, sem. Dauci, Scamnanthi, Galbani, Terebinthine, ana. ℥. vi. ℞. Piperis albi, ℥. v. ℥. vi. Petroselini, seminis Nardi Celtice, seminis Farniculi, folij Indi aut. Maceru, Gentiane, Rosarum fiscarum, Mei Athamantici, ana. ℥. iiii. Cassie lignae, ℥. v. ℞. Thurn, ℥. vi. ℥. i. succi Hypocischidu, ℥. vi. gra. xv. Acori aut Calami aromatici, Phis Pontici, Sagopeni, fructus Balsami, Hyperici, Iridis, Acatie, Gummi, Cardamomi, Policini, that is, ana. ℥. ij. terre Lemnia, lumborum Scinci, Cyphos, Opoponacu, ana. ℥. vi. Thlaspi, ℥. vi. ℥. ii. Anisi, Hyssopi, Camepyteos, ana. ℥. iij. Opobalsami, Aristolochie rotunde, Marrubij, ana. ℥. i. mellis optimi expumati, ℥. vii. ℞.

PLANTIVS.

There be foure sundry and very diuerse compositions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (& that the greatest) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, described by *Nicolaus Prepositus*, and vsed of all Apothecaries euery where; which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuall against maligne and pestilent agues

agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lienteries, and many other diseases and whatsoever first Author or inventor it had, it is now every where much practised. The second is of *Democritus* an ancient Greeke Author, practised of *Auicenna*, and set out in the Apothecaries booke of *Nicolaus Prapostus*; which as it is found to be both in composition and in vse more facile then the other, so in vertue it is no whit inferiour to the same, but rather more excellent & effectual against all maligne and contagious diseases. The third was described by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Aetius* and other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* ancient Physicians. The two later be not much vnlike, for they consist of the same simples, notwithstanding placed in diuerse order, whose doses do differ in a certaine few halfe scruples onely, so that they two may seeme fitly to be applyed to the same vse: yet notwithstanding, because this last is somewhat more copious, compounded of 52. simples, and corrected and approoued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen* it is to be esteemed the best of the rest, and most effectual against the disease tofore repeated. Whesfore the Author hath repeated this onely, because he would haue it vsed onely of all Physicians, and therefore he hath altered the order of the simples, reducing into one place all such as were of one Dose, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue lesse labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiscis, seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è vipera.



Trochisci è vipera, which are vsed in the composition of the great triacle; the flesh of cholen and prepared vipers is boyled in pure water with Greene Dill and salt, from the bones: then being taken out it is grinded on a marble stone, and it is sprinkled by little and little, with like weight of crummes of wheaten bread dried, powring in, in the meane time (if need so require) the owne broth of the vipers, and a little *Opobalsami* aut *Succidanei*, whereof Trochiskes be made the weight of ℥.j. and be diligently dried in the shadow.

Trochisci scyllitici.

Trochisci scyllitici be referred to the same composition of Triacle. R. *medulle Scyllæ assatæ*, ℥. i. *farine Erui*, ℥. viii. and being well bruised they be tempered into Trochiskes, and be dried in the shadow.

Trochischi hedrici.

Trochischi hedrici be likewise applyed to the composition of Triacle. R. *Mari* aut *Balsamita*, *Amaraci*, *Asari*, *Aspalathi*, *Calami odorati* aut *Galangæ*, *Plu Pontici*, *Xylobalsami*, *Opobalsami*, aut *Succidaneorum*, *Cinamomi*, *Coffi*, ana. ℥. iii. *Myrrha*, *folij Nardi Indicæ*, *Croci*, *Cassia*, ana. ℥. vi. *Mastiches*, ℥. i. so much wine of the best as sufficeth to the making of Trochiskes.

Trochisci Cypheos.

Trochisci Cypheos be requisite to the composition of Mythridate. R. *palpe*
Vuarum passarum, *Terebinthine coctæ*, *Myrrhe*, *Scamanti*, ana. ℥. j. *β. Calami aromatici*, ℥. ix. *Cinamomi*, ℥. β. *Bdellij*, *Anicis*, that is, *Blattæ Byzantiæ*, *Spice nardi*, *Cassie lignee*, *Cyperij*, *Arcenthidum*, that is, *baccarum Iuniperi*, ana. ℥. iij. *Assalathi*, ℥. ij. *β. Croci*, ℥. j. *mellis exhumati & vini optimi*, ana. so much as is sufficient to the tempering of Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS, in Trochiscos.

There is no alteration made of the Trochiskes which be commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auailable to the great composition lest that in the alteration of them there should be somewhat changed in the greater compositions which be by vse approued.

Trochisci è Capparibus.

Trochisci è Capparibus doth take away the hardnesse of the Spleene, grosse melancholy, and dispatcheth winde. R. *corticum radicum Capparib. sem. Agri*, ana. ℥. vj. *Ammoniaci* ℥. β. *sem. Nigelle calamitæ*, *succi Eupatoriij*, *Amygdalarum amararum foliorum Rutæ*, *Aristolochiæ Rotundæ*, *sem. Nasturij*, ana. ℥. ij. *Cyperij*, *Scolopendrij*, that is, *Ceterathi*, ana. ℥. j. receiue and temper the powders in *Ammoniacum* dissolued in vineger, and make thereof Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochisci è Capparibus be very wisely described, and yet notwithstanding if you adde vnto them *Gummi Lacce seu Caucami & Rubei tinctorum*, ana. ℥. j. they shall become more effectuell; neither be other Trochisks of *Lacca* to be admitted for this purpose, but that these of *Capers* be sufficient enough against obstructions, and inueterate diseases of the Spleene.

Trochisci de Eupatorio.

Trochisci de Eupatorio do dissolue the obstructions and tumours of the liuer especially, and doth cure daily agues arising thereof, the Iaundies, and beginning of Dropsie. R. *Manna electæ*, *succi Eupatoriij*, ana. ℥. j. *Rosarum*, ℥. β. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of Agrimonie and *Manna* are to be made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochisci ex Eupatorio, be substituted also in stead of Trochiskes of *Rubarbe* and *Wormewood*, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochisci Alkakengi seu Halycacabi.

Trochisci Alkakengi seu Halycacabi do mitigate the exulcerations of the kidneys and bladder, difficultie of vrine arising of those parts, and pissing of bloud. R. *baccarum Halycacabi*, ℥. iij. *sem. Cytrulli*, *Melonum*, & *Cucurbite mundatorum*, ana. ℥. ij. *β. boli Armeni*, *Gummi Arabi. thuris*, *sanguinis Draconis*, *Papaueris albi*, *Amygdalarum amararum*, *succi Glycyrrhiæ*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Amyli*, *Strobulorum*, ana. ℥. vj. *sem. Apij*, *Succini*, *terra Lemnie*. *sem. Hyosciami*, *Opij*, ana. ℥. ij. and with the iuyce of winter Cherries, make Trochiskes of these simples. There be other Trochiskes without *Opium* compounded like vnto these.

Trochisci,

Trochisci è Myrrha.

T*rochisci è Myrrha*, do mightily bring downe the floures, and do cure the diseale arising of their suppression, and lastly do expell the seconds, or a dead child. *Rx. Myrrha*, ℥.iiij. *Lupulorum*, ℥.v. *foliorum Rutæ*, *Mentastri*, *Pulegij*, *Cumini*, *Rubee*, *Assæfætide*, *Sagapeni* *Opoponacis*, ana. ℥.ij. and of these be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of Mugwort,

Trochisci è terra Lemnia.

T*rochisci è terra Lemnia*, do stay coursing and outrageous humours, especially being thin, do restrain the excessive fluxe of the belly inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they do suppress profusion of blood, issuing either out of the nose, or wombe, or Hemorrhoides, or any other part. *Rx. sanguinis Draconis*, *Gummi Arab. Assali*, *Spodij*, *Acatie*, *Hypochischidos*, *lapis Hematite*, *Balaustiorum*, *boli Armeni*, *terra Lemnia*, *Corallij rubri*, *Succini*, ana. ℥.ij. *Margaritarum*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Papaueris nigri*, ana. ℥.j. *seminis Portulacæ tostæ*, *cornu Cerui vsti*, *Thuris Nucum*, *Cupressi*, *Croci*, ana. ℥.ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of distilled water of Plantaine.

PLANTIUS.

Trochisci è Ramich be subtracted of the Trochiskes of *terra Lemnia*, for that they comprehend the greatest part of them. These Trochiskes of *terra Lemnia* comprehend great store of astringing and cooling simples, and therefore other astringing compositions be not requisite. And such this receipt is of all other most effectually and lesse dangerous, all the other be suppressed, as *Trochisci Ramich*, *Trochisci Diarrhodon*, *Trochisci Oxyacanthæ*, *Trochisci è Succinosæ Carabæ*, & *Trochisci è Spodio*, for that the composition of all those is nothing apt nor necessary. The Trochiskes of *Diarrhodon* which do consist of Roses, *Spodion*, red and white Saunders, of Saffron and Camphire, may supply the place of these, especially if they seeme to be vnpleasant in taste.

Trochisci è Caphura.

T*rochisci è Caphura* do allwage the heat of burning agues, the feruency of blood and choler, the inflammation and hote intemper of the intrails, and whatsoever thirst ariseth thereof. *Rx. Rosarum rubrarum*, ℥.β. *Spodij*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Gummi Arabi. Croci*, *Spicæ nardi Indicæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Santalæ citrini*, ℥.ij. *β ligni Aloes*, *Cardamomi*, *Amyli*, *Capbure*, ana. ℥.ij. *Saccari albiss. Manne electæ*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Muscilaginis*, *Psilij* depromed out of Rosewater, as much as sufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochisci Gallie Moschate.

T*rochisci Gallie Moscate* do maruelously corroborate the heart, the brain, and the other intrails, and do giue a good smell to the mouth and the rest of the body. *Rx. ligni Aloes crudi*, ℥.v. *Ambre*, ℥.iiij. *Moschi*, ℥.j. *Muscilaginis*, *Tragacanthæ*, made in Rosewater, so much as sufficeth for Trochiskes.

Trochisci alyptæ Muscate.

T*rochisci alyptæ Muscate* haue the same effect, either inwardly receined, or by suffumigation, and further, at ridde the body of difficulty of breathing. *Rx. Ladani purissimi*, ℥.iiij. *Syracis Calaminthæ*, ℥.j. *β. Syracis rubre*, ℥.j.

ligni Aloes, ℥.ij. *Ambra*, ℥.i. *Carbura*, ℥.β. *Moschi*, ℥.β. and distilled Rose water as much as need requireth.

Trochisci Bechici albi.

T*rochisci Bechici albi*, which also be termed *Pilule albe*, do mitigate a sharpe distillation, and do assuage hoarsnes & continuall cough. *Rx. Sacchari albiissimi*, ℥.j. *Sacchari candi*, *Penidiorum*, ℥.iiij. *radicis Iridis Florentini*, ℥.ij. *Amyli*, ℥.i. β. the muscilage of *Tragacanth* made in Rosewater, so much as sufficeth to the confirmation of Trochiskes.

Trochischi Narcotici.

T*rochischi Narcotici* being safely applyed, to assuage the paine of the head and teeth, do procure sleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguish *Erysipelas* and inflammations, and being dissoued in other medicines, do mitigate the paine of the externall parts. *Rx. Gummi Arabici & Tragacanthæ*, *Amyli*, ana. ℥.β. *Ceruse lota aqua Rosarum*, ℥.vj. *Syracis*, *Calaminthe*, *Myrrhe*, *Castorei*, *Opysapa soluti*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Croci*, ℥.β. and when they be all bruised they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of *Fleewort* taking out of Rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought into the order of Trochiskes in the last place, *Narcoticos Trochiscos* against extreame torments, the composition whereof is verie apt, and the vse verie necessary, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

De Ecligmatis & conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucleis.

E*cligma è pineis Nucleis*, do extenuate and deterge grosse humors of the breast and lungs, verie conuenient and commodious against *Asthma*, difficultie of breathing, and inueterate coughes. *Rx. Nucleorum pineorum recentium*, ℥.xxx. *pulpe Palmularum*, ℥.xxiv. *Amygdalarum dulcium & amararum*, *Auellanarum assatarum*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Gummi Arabici*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, *Amyli*, *Capilli Veneris*, *Iridis Florentini*, ana. ℥.iiij. *pulpe Passularum*, *butyri recentis*, *Saccari albiissimi*, ana. ℥.iiij. *mellis albi expumati*, ℥.iiij. *fiat Ecligma*. A wholesome and approued Ecligme more effectually then the former against the same diseases. *Rx. Cinamomi*, *Hyssopi*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.β. *Reripha*, & *Mixaria*, ana. ℥.xxx. numero: *Vuarum passerum purgatarum*, *Ficuum ardarum*, *Palmularum pinguium*, ana. ℥.ij. *Fenugraci*, ℥.v. *Capilli Veneris*, *M. j.* sem. *Anisi*, *Fœniculi* & *Lini*, *radicis Iridis*, *foliorum Calaminthe*, ana. ℥.β. boile them all in ℥.iiij. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the strained iuyce with ℥.ij. *Penidiorum* to the thicknes of honey, and then put in *Pinearum expurgatarum*, ℥.v. *Amygdalarum dulcium mundatarum*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Gummi Arab.* *Amyli*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Iridis*. ℥.ij.

Ecligma

Ecligma è Scylla.

E*cligma è Scylla* auaieth against the same diseases. R^e. *succi seu mucus Scille, & mellis optimi expumati*, ana. ℥. j. boile them to the consistence of an Ecligme.

Ecligma ad Asthma.

E*cligma ad Asthma* is an Ecligma which of all other before propounded is most effectuell against *Asthma*. R^e. *Scylla assata*. ℥. ℔. *radicu Iridis, Hyssopi, Prassij, Marrubij*, ana. ℥. j. *Myrrha, Croci*, ana. ℥. ℔. with sufficient quantity of hony, let the compound Ecligma of *Scylla* be confectioned.

Many simples be condited with Sugar, that they may the longer continue with their full vertue, whereof some be whole, some be bruiled: such as be whole be boiled in thrise so much Sugar vntill the whole moisture consumed, there remaineth the perfect consistency of a sirupe, as for example: *Acorns* is condited against the cold diseases of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their strength.

Zinziber is condited against the cruelty of the stomacke and slimy steame in the lungs.

The roote of Buglosse is condited against the palpitation of the heart and qualming.

Peaches, fragrant Apples, the rind of the Citrine, be condited against *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince pearces, and *Diacydonion*, and Peares, be condited to strengthen and corroborate the stomacke.

Walnuts, *Myrobalani*, *Emblici & Cepuli*, and Nutmegs, being condited, do further the concoction of the stomacke, do get an appetite, and increase strength.

Cherries and the slips of Endiue, Purslaine and Lettuce condited, do refrigerate, assuage thirst, and procure appetite.

Barberies and Ceruises being condited, do allay thirst and the feruency of choler, and restraine fluxe of the wombe.

Satyriion and *Eringium* condited, do increase the seed, and stirre vp a desire to carnality, and further conception.

Conserua.

B*Ut* such as cannot well be boiled, let them be bruiled & mixed with twise so much Sugar, & so be set in the Sun, & conserued, and retaine the name of compound Sugar, as *Iosacchar*, *Rhodacchar*. But of all other kinds of compound Sugar, these ought especially to be in a readines: Sugar of Rosemary, of the floures of Sage, of the floures of Betony, and of *Stachades*, of the floures of Piony: for that they be especiall good against the cold diseases of the braine & nerues, to comfort and strengthen them against the Epilepsie and Apoplexie.

The Sugar of the flowers of Floure de luce, of Maidenhaire and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breast, and ease the lungs.

The Sugar of Comfery doth stay spitting of blood.

The Sugar of Violets, and the flowers of Buglosse doth refrigerate and cheare the heart.

Sugar of Roses strengtheneth the stomach, stayeth distillations, and restraineth eruption of blood.

Sugar of the flowers of Cichory cooleth the liver, and openeth the obstructions thereof.

Further there be sundry medicinable iuyces referred to vs, whereof some be simple & pure, others mixed with Sugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thicknes, of *Sapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *Robuo*, that is, *sapales*. These iuyces being strained, be permitted to settle vntill they wax cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thicknesse of hony, and then is set in the Sunne, and so is kept. If Sugar be therewith to be mingled, it must be in weight halfe so much as the iuyce is.

Succus e Nucibu, termed *Diacarion*, auaieth against sharpe distillations and *Angina*, and hath of the iuyce of yong Walnuts, ℥. iiij. *mellus optimi*, ℥. ij. and be boyled to the thicknesse of hony.

Succus e Moris, termed *Diamoron*, is good against the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and sharpe distillations. *R. succi Maiorum domesticorum*, ℥. ℥. *succi Maiorum rubri*, *mellus optimi expumati*, ana ℥. j. *Sapa*, ℥. iiij. boile them to the consistency of hony.

The iuyce of wild Plumbe be boiled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vied in stead of *Acacia*.

Of Medicines applied outwardly, and first of Oyles.

Oleum Rosarum.



Oleum Rosarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the stomacke, it doth strengthen, thicken and stay fluxes. *R. Gemmarum Rosarum rubrarum recentium*, bereft of the prickles and bruised, *succi Rosarum*, ana ℥. j. macerate them in ℥. v. of *oleum limphacinum* which is without Salt, in vessell of glasse close shut; then set them seuen daies in the Sunne, after boile them three houres in a double vessell, and the leaues being strained and cast away, put in new, and change them twife or thrife: in fine, the leaues being againe strained and cast away, set it in the Sunne and boile it in a double vessell vntill the iuyces be consumed. If you want *oleum Omphacinum* without salt, the common oyle must be oftentimes stirred and washed in the iuyce of soure grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum Violarum quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, easeth the pleuriticke, and asswageth the diseases of the lungs and breast: it is made of

of common oyle being cold, or of oile Almonds being new and vnsanorie, or which at the least is washed with cold water; then fresh purple Violets be put into the oyle in a vessell well couered, and be set to Sunne vntill tenne dayes, and eury third day the Violets be changed, and in the end dry Violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphae.

Oleum Nymphae doth more refrigerate, and doth especially assuage the heart of the kidneis, bladder and head; mitigateth madnesse, procureth sleepe: it is made as oyle of Violets, of the white flowers of water Lillies macerated in laued oyle, but it is set in the Sunne twenty dayes, in the which space the flowers be changed thrise.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the same effect that *Oleum Nymphae* doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaseth paine of the head, madnesse, and procureth sleepe. The flowers, leaues, and heades of white Poppie being bruised, be macerated in laued oyle; and it is made as *oleum Nymphae*, yet it may be mingled in a double vessell: there be which do presse out the oyle of the seeds of Poppy, as out of Almonds.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi is prepared in like order as oyle of Poppy, both by maceration and expression, and is as effectually as oyle of Poppie for all the repeated purposes.

Oleum Mandragora simplex.

Oleum Mandragora simplex doth more apparently refrigerate, assuageth paine proceeding of inflammation, and procureth sleepe; it is collected of the apples of Mandrake bruised and macerated in oyle, and easily boiled as *oleum Nymphae*.

Oleum Mandragora compositum.

Oleum Mandragora compositum, doth of all other most effectually refrigerate, & doth assuage the paines coming of inflammation, and other agriuanances whatsoever: being annointed it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and frensie; and put to the nostrils, forthwith it procureth sleepe. *R. Olei lb. ii. ℥. succi pomorum Mandragora, ℥. iiii. succi Hyoscyami albi, ℥. ii. succi capitis Papaueris albi, ℥. iii. succi Violarum. succi Cicuta tenerrima, ana. ℥. i. Opij, Syracis, Calamintha, ana. ℥. ℥.* all which must be mixed together, and stand in the Sun ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double vessel vntill the iuyce be consumed; in the end the oyle must be strained and set vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum, refrigerateth, astringeth, is very good for the stomacke, intrails and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it restraineth vomite, laske, and sweate. *R. Cydoniorum cum cortice & semine rusorum, succi Cydoniorum, ana. lb. ℥.* mingle them in a vessell of glasse, & poure in of *Oleum omphasinum, lb. i. ℥.* set them in the Sun fiftene daies, then boile

them foure houres in a double vessell, and the Quince peare being strained, other fresh are likewise to be incosted the second time, and also the third time, vntill the humour be wholly consumed. In fine, presse out the oyle, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Myrtinum.

Oleum Myrtinum refrigerateth, astringeth, & comforteth, but properly the heart stomack, braine and nerues: it is made as *Milium* of the berries and leaues of Myrtle, by adding the iuyce also when they cannot be come by.

Oleum Mastichinum.

Oleum Mastichinum, doth by abstriction corroborate the braine, sinewes, stomacke and liuer, verie commodious against lientery, vomit, and cruditie. *Rx. Mastiches, ℥.iiij. aqua Rosarum. ℥.iiij. Olei omphacini vel rosacei. ℥.j.* Boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the water. Wine in stead of Rose water is put in, when as the wearinesse of the volustinesse of the sinewes is to be allwaged.

Oleum Mentha.

Oleum Mentha doth by annointing corroborate the stomacke and other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is concocted in this wise. The leaues of sowne Mints bruised with the iuyce be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, set in the Sunne, boiled and oftentimes changed, as hath bene shewed in the oyle of Roses.

Oleum Absinthij.

Oleum Absinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doth further concoction, procure appetite, open obstructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of Wormewood be bruised and macerated in oleo *Omphacino*, and it is absolued as oyle of Mint.

Oleum Chamemelinum.

Oleum Chamemelinum, doth with an easie obstruction corroborate the sinewes, and membranes, and doth excellently allwage paine, *Rx. foliorum Chamemelirecentium & tusorum, ℥.j.* infuse and macerate them in sweete mature oyle, and let them stand in the Sunne twentie of the Canicular dayes, and straining and casting away the leaues, reserue the oyle.

Oleum Liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum allwageth the paine of the breast, stomacke, wombe, kidneys, bladder, and sinewes, & doth ease and concoct them. *Rx. florum, Liliorum alborum, integrorum,* casting onely away the yellow filaments, *℥.j.* macerate them in sweete and mature oyle, and set them in the Sun twenty dayes. There is also another compound oyle made thereof, more effectuell to all the purposes which I haue tofore repeated, which receineth *Mastiches, Calamiaromatici, Costi, olei Pyrethri, Carpibalsami, ana. ℥.j. Caryophyllorum & Cinnamon, ana. ℥.ss. Croci. ℥.iiij.* Bruise them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let them boile a litle, and being taken from the fire, poure in of sweete oyle, *℥.iiij.* of the leaues of Lillies, *℥.viij.* set them forty dayes in the Sunne, then straine out the oyle, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum

Oleum Leucoj lentes.

Oleum Leucoj lentes, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneys, sinewes, and ioynts. R. *florum Leucoj*, ℥. j. macerated in ℥. j. of sweete oyle, set in the Sunne ten dayes changing the flowers thrice: and the oyle expressed is kept, by putting thereto, if you thinke good, ℥. ij. of the drie flowers.

Oleum Iasminum.

Oleum Iasminum worketh the same effect which Leucoj did, but more forcibly. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitive oyle, it is made as the oyle of Lillies was of the flowers of Iasmine.

Oleum Anethinum.

Oleum Anethinum doth moderately calefie and digest, asswageth paine of the head, and ach of the sinewes, procureth sleepe: it is made of the leaues of Dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oyle, and set in the Sunne one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oyle being strained from the leaues is reserved.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated parts, especially the lungs and kidneys: it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feauer, and be consumed. It is made in this wise: Sweete Almonds being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is poured vpon them a litle Rose water: after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a litle bag, they are pressed in a presse, vntill the oyle issue out.

Oleum Lumbricorum.

Oleum Lumbricorum doth mollifie with a moderate heate, and assuage paine, very conuenient for such as be bruised, & haue paine in the ioynts. R. *Lumbricorum terrestrium latorum & preparatorum*, ℥. ℥. *vini albi*, ℥. ij. *olei dulcis*, ℥. ij. Boile them to the consumption of the wine and the washing of the Wormes, then straine the oyle, and reserve it to your vse.

Oleum Iridium.

Oleum Iridium doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it asswageth paine of the liuer, wombe, and ioynts: it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. R. *Radicum Iridis ungarum*, ℥. ℥. *florum integrorum* ℥. j. decocti; or if you wish to haue it worke more effectually, take of the iuyce of another Flower deluce, ℥. j. *olei dulcis*, ℥. ij. Boile them in a double vessell till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues, preserve the oyle.

Oleum Rutaceum.

Oleum Rutaceum calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth wind more forcibly then Dill. it auaileth against the Cholicke, Palsey, Crampe and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. R. *foliorum Ruta medicis succarum, succi eiusdem*, ana. ℥. ℥. macerate them three daies in ℥. ij. of sweete

oile: boile them in a double vessell vntill the iayce be consumed, and then straining the Rew, change it three or foure times: in fine, reserue the oile expressed.

Oleum Amygdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amygdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and diuide, doth dissipate wind, especially the noise of the eares, and openeth the obstructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifieth hardnesse, but especially of the sinewes; it is confected of bitter Almonds dried and purged, bruised and calcified in hote boyling water, and pressed in a presse vntill the oile come out.

Oleum e Capparibus.

Oleum e Capparibus by extenuation & deterfion doth dissolue euery hardnesse and obstruction, but especially of the spleene; it asswageth the aggrauances, and easeth euery disease of the same. R. corticis radicis Tamarisci, foliorum Tamarisci, sem. Agni, Scolopendrij seu Asplenij, Cyperi, ana. ℥.ii. Aceti, vini optimi, ana. ℥.ii. olei maturi, lb. i. boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine and vineger, then straine the oile, and store it.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doth calcifie, attenuate, digest and strengthen, and as well the simple as the compound doth redresse the cold and flatulent diseases of the braine, stomacke, liuer, spleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. R. Spica nardi, ℥.iiii. vini optimi, aqua rosacea, ana. ℥.ii. β. olei dulcis, lb. i. β. boile them three houres in a double vessell with no very quicke fire, vntill the wine and water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compositum.

Oleum Nardinum compositum. R. Spica Nardi ℥.iii. Sampsuchi, ℥.ii. Xilaloos, Enula, folij Maceris aut Calami aromatici aut Galanga, foliorum Lauri, Cyperi, Scœnanthi, Cardamomi, ana. ℥. i. β. these being bruited poure into them vini, aqua rosacea, ana. lb. i. olei dulcis, lb. v. macerate them foure and twenty houres, and then boile them in a double vessell sixe houres, stirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be consumed.

Oleum Laurinum.

Oleum Laurinum is hote and extenuating, doth dissipate the wind of the stomacke, the Cholicke, and dissolueh cold diseases of the head, intrailes, wombe, kidneis and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be bruised and boiled a good space in water, and the salt that swimmeth aboue the strained decoction when it is cooled, must be gathered together and stored vp for oile.

Oleum Vulpinum.

Oleum Vulpinum attenuateth and somewhat digesteth, it auaileth against the gout and all paines of the ioynts, at all times of the sicknesse. Boile a foxe vncafed, and vnboiled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and sea or salt water; and when it is boiled to the halfe, put in Sali, ℥.iii. olei veteris puri, lb. iiii. Thymi, Anethi, Origani, ana. lb. β. Boile them till one ioynt

ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water, and then presse out the oile.

Oleum è Scorpionibus.

Oleum è Scorpionibus doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loines, it is thought to breake & disturbe the stone in the kidneys, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the peritonæum, or injected into the bladder. *R. radices Aristolochia rotunda, Gentiana, Cyperi, corticum radicum Capparis, ana ℥i.* Bruise them all and macerate them in ℥b. i. of oile of bitter Almonds, and set them to Sun twentie dayes: then boile them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and let them in the Sun againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthine.

Oleum Terebinthine is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then Turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerves and ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. *R. Terebinthina lactida, ℥b. iiii.* put it in a cucurbite of glasse and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oile, and lastly a yellow oyle.

Oleum Recinium.

Oleum Recinium, which they call *oleum de Kerrā*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therefore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and riddeth the body of *Psora*, *Lepora*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clister, it bringeth out wormes and water: it is made thus. *R. the seeds of the greater Spurge; being bruised, oyle is pressed out of them in such force and manner as out of Almonds.*

Oleum Balaninum.

Oleum Balaninum doth dissolve paine and noise of the eares, doth wash away the speckles, pimples, spots, and blacke scarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite; it is made of *Balanum Mirepsica* which the Arabians call *Been*, and it is burned, calcified, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almonds.

Oleum è Castoreo.

Oleum è Castoreo anaileth much against the cold diseases of the nerves and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. *R. Castorei in aqua vite soluti, ℥i. oles ℥b. i.* boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum Euphorbiæ simplex.

Oleum Euphorbiæ simplex worketh the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nostrils, it bringeth downe steame. *R. Euphorbiæ, ℥. ℞. Lencṽj lentei, vini odoriferi, ana. ℥. v.* boile them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de Lateribus.

Oleum de Lateribus which is also termed the Philosophers oyle, doth calcifie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolue and dissipate cold humors, and easeth the Crampe, Epilepsie, Palsey, the Gout, and all cold affects of the ioynts and nerves; the making therof is in this wise. Breake an old red tile stone in litle peeces, burne those in hote coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguish them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntill they be replenished with oile; after take them out of the oile, and bruite them into powder, and put the powder in a cucurbit of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oyle of stones, is extreme hote and extenuating, penetrating, drying and digesting; it consumeth cold water whatseuer in any part of the body, it dissolueth the Epilepsie, Palsey, Crampe, paine of the sinewes and ioynts, of the spleene, kidneys, bladder, and all cold affects of the wombe. This oile cometh not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rocks.

PLANTIVS IN OLEA.

The Author imitating the vsuall and ancient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they be outwardly applyed. he made choice and hath set downe the most effectuall oiles against all kinde of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which were of litle vertue or seemed vnecessary: for he accounteth *oleum Nymphae Citrinae* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other: & *oleum Populeon*, for that *unguentum Populeum* is of greater vertue: & he omitteth likewise the oile of the other mandrake, *oleum Costinum*, *oleum de Piperibus*, and *oleum Maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facility, and yet haue a greater power to calcifie, attenuate and digest.

Unguentum Galeni refrigerans.

Unguentum Galeni refrigerans is effectuall against *Phlegmonaes*, *Erysipelata* and Tettors, & against euery hote intemper. *R. Cera alba. ℥.iii. Olei rosati ℥.i.* and when they be molten in a double vessell, poure them into another, and by pouring cold water by litle and litle, and now and then changing, are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuyce of Housleek or of Sorrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applyed to affects not vlceraed; or else vinegar affused, if the skinne continue hote and not exulcerated.

PLANTIVS in Vnguenta.

Notwithstanding Galen his refrigerating ointment according to the vsuall description hath neither the iuyce of Nightshade, nor Houslecke, yet by adiection of them it becometh effectuall against the affects which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum

Unguentum Rosarum.

U*nguentum Rosarum* is applyed vnto the same affects, but truly it is not of such efficacie. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines grease purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and so oft in cold water; then like weight of red Roses bruised must be mingled therewith, and so must stand seven dayes to putrifie; then melt the grease with a lent fire, and straine it: and againe macerating so much of bruised Roses, seven daies infusing together halfe of the iuyce of Roses, and oyle of Almonds fixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire, vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vp.

Unguentum Populeum.

U*nguentum Populeum* asswageth Phlegmones, burning of agues, seruent heate of the head and kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe. *R. gemmarum Populi recentium.* ℥ j. macerated in ℥ iij. of fresh swines grease prepared, vntill all the simples which in order do follow may in Sommer be come by. *R. foliorum Papaneris rubri, foliorum Mandragora, foliorum Hyosciami, cymarum Rubi tenerrimarum, Solani, Lactuca, Sempervini maioris & minoris, Bardana, Viola, Umbilici Veneris, ana* ℥. iij. bruiſe them and mixe them with the grease and the buds of the Poplar, and after ten dayes infuse ℥ j. of Rose water. Boile them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it. and if need so require, boyle it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Unguentum album.

U*nguentum album* refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth asswage inflammations and exuſions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out breakings of choler. *R. Cerusa, ℥. iij. Lythargiri, ℥. ij.* lay them in Rose water a good space, then cast away the Rose water, and put them in a mortar, and then by little and little poure into them so much Rose oyle as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them, vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde therunto a little white vinegar, and ℥. j. ℔. of Camphire.

PLANTIVS.

This kind of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in stead of those which be termed *unguentum de Lythargiro*, *Unguentum nutritum*, *unguentum de Cerusa crudum*, & *unguentum de Cerusa coctum*, which is termed also *Emplastrum de Cerusa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Unguentum astringens.

U*nguentum astringens*, the astringing ointment, bringeth together the open parts of the body, doth compact the conduites and pores, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the anus, and of the gut, and being applyed doth stay issue of bloud. *R. Galle immatura, nucum Cupressi, baccarū Myrti, Balauſtiorum, Malicorū corticum Glandium, Acacie, Rhois, Mastiches, ana* ℥. j. Bruise them all exquisitely, and macerate them about foure dayes in the iuyce of vniſe Medlars & Sorborum

immaturorum. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with ℥.j. of oyle of Roses often laued in Alum water, & ℥.iiij. of white Waxe

PLANTIVS.

This astringent ointment for that it is very forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vsed *pro vnguento Comitisse* or any other astringent ointment.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos.

V*nguentum Diachalciteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begun, and doth resoluē such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers & *dyssepulotica*. *R.* *adipis Suille recentis sine sale & febris*, ℥.ij. *olei veteris, Lythargiri triti & creti, ana* ℥.iiij. *Chalcitidos lanigata*. ℥.iiij. The grease and the oile be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitrioll must be then cast vpon them, stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palma aut saltem Myrti, Sorbi* or *Mespili*: & when it is come to the thicknesse of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) must be put in by litle and litle, as it is in boyling. Then boile it againe vtill it staine not the fingers, and be come to the consistency of an Emplaster.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos (according to this description of Galen) is to be vsed in stead of those foure which Mesues hath described, two vnder the title of *Vnguentum Diaphænicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *Vnguentum palmeum*.

Vnguentum Diapompholygos.

V*nguentum Diapompholygos* refrigerateth, astringeth, and restraineth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a scarre. *R.* *olei rosacei*, ℥.x. *succi Solatri*, ℥.iiij. *bulliant ad succi consumptionem: adde Cera alba*, ℥.v. *Ceruse lota*, ℥.ij. *Plumbi vsti & loti, Pompholygis, Thuris, ana*. ℥.j. *coquantur in Vnguenti formam.*

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans.

V*nguentum rubrum exsiccans*, the red drying ointment worketh the same effect. *R.* *olei Rosarum*, ℥.j. *Cera alba*, ℥.v. *liquatis insperge Lapidis Calaminaris, terra Lemniæ, exquisite tritorum, ana* ℥.iiij. *Lythargiri, Ceruse, ana*. ℥.iiij. *Calphure*, ℥.j. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum Dialtheos.

V*nguentum Dialtheos* is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. *R.* *Althæe radicum recentium & contusarum*, ℥.ij. *seminis Lini & Fenugreci contusorum, ana* ℥.j. *macerentur in aqua* ℥.viiij. *deinde leniter coquantur, & exprimatur mucilago de hac*, ℥.ij. & *olei*, ℥.iiij. *bulliant dum mucilago sit absorpta: tum adde Cera*, ℥.℥. *Resine*, ℥.℥. *Terebinthina*. ℥.ij. *percoquantur in vnguenti crassitiem.*

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Dialtheos simplex is here described, for that the compound through *Colophoniam, Galbanum*, and *Gummi Hederae*, was too filthy, and there were other receipts extant of a more dissoluing vertue.

Vnguentum

Unguentum Resumptiuum.

Unguentum Resumptiuum dictū, hath great power mildly to mollifie without any manifest heate and therefore may be safely applyed to such as haue *Asthma* or *Hecticam febrem*, or *Consumption*, *Pleuresie*, or an *Ague*. *R. seminis Lini, Althææ & Fenugreci, Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ, ana. ℥.ij. macerentur & bulliant in ℔.℔. aqua Rosarum.* Straine out the muscilage, and therein dissolve *adipis Suillæ, Gallinæ, Anseris & Anatis, ana. ℥.ij. Asipi, ℥.℔. olei Violarum, Chamamelis & Amygdalarum dulcium, ana. ℥.ii. medullæ vituli, Butyri recentis, Cera alba, ana. ℔.℔. coquantur in Unguentum.*

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *Resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, assuage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *Diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, and *unguentum Philagry*, neither any other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, and to the fore repeated purposes.

Unguentum Agrippæ.

Unguentum Agrippæ doth not onely mollifie, but also mightily attenuate, diuide, and dissipate *Oedemata corporis*, cureth ioueterate affects of the sinewes, ease the paine of the kidneis, and by annointing prouoketh the bellie, and thereby helpeth the Dropsie sicke. *R. radicis Brionie, ℔.ij. radicis Cucumeris agrestis, ℔.j. Scyllæ, ℔.℔. radicis Ireos recentis, ℥.iiij. radicis Filicis & Ebuli, Tribuli marini, ana. ℥.ij. tinsa omnia recentia macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non randici. .iiij. parum deinde feruescant, & in expresso olei Cera citrine, ℥.xv. liquefiant in vnguenti consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the ointment of *Agrippæ* all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boiled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boiling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherefore the Author did in another place very wisely command that no especiall effectuall cataplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhus & hard matters, of these rootes bruised, and crude, with grease and waxe.

Unguentum Aregon.

Unguentum Aregon, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and is very commodious against cold affects of the body, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the lungs, ioynts and great guts. *R. Roris marini. Maiorane, radicis Iari, Serpilli, Rutæ, radicis Cucumeris agrestis, ana. ℥.iiij. ℔. foliorum Lauri, Saluie, Sabinæ, Pulicariæ maioris & minoris, radicis Brionie, ana. ℥.iiij. Laureoli, ℥.ix. foliorum Cucumeris agrestis, & Nepitæ, ana. ℔.℔. omnia Maio mense collecta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi, ℔.vj. affusa aqua vitæ, ℔.j. Deinde coquantur dum contabescant & absumpta sit aqua, oleum percolatur, in quo Cera, ℥.xvi. liquantur, & adipis vrsini,*

olei Laurini, ana. ℥. iij. olei Moschelini, ℥. ℞. Petrolei, ℥. j. Butyri ℥. iij. Agitando in pulueres insperguntur, Mastiches, Olibani, ana. ℥. vi. Pyrethri, Euphorbij, Zinziberu, Piperu, ana. ℥. j. omnia vnguenti forma coeant.

Vnguentum Martiatum magnum.

Vnguentum Martiatum magnum is especially good against cold affects of the braine, sinewes and ioynts, against quivering conuulsion, Palley, and the gout, and is effectually to mollifie hard tumours especially of the spleene, *R. Cera alba. lb. j. olei. lb. iij. Rorismarini, foliorum Lauri, ana. ℥. iij. Tamarisci, ℥. iij. Ruta, ℥. iij. ℞. Ebuli, Sausne, Balsamita, (that is, Mantha aquatica) Qcimi, Salvia, Polij, Calaminthes, Artemisia, Hellenij, Betonica, Acanthi (que est vrsa Branchina) Aspargula, (que est Aparine) Anemones, (que herba venti dicitur) Pimpinella, Agfimoni, Absinthij, Flomis minoru, (qu. & herba Paraysis) Costi herbe hortensis, (que herba dicitur sancte Mari) cimarum Sampsuchi, Sempernini minoru (quod Crassula appellatur) Millefolij, Sempernini maiori, Chamearyos, Plantaginis seu quinque nerui, Centauri minoru, Fragaria, Quinqueseu. Tetrabit. (id est, herba Iudaica) ana. ℥. i. ℥. i. radici Althea (Cumini, Myrrha, ana. ℥. j. ℞. Fenugraci, ℥. v. Butyri, ℥. v. sem. Vrtice, Violarum & Papaueru rubri, Mentastri, (seu Mente agrestis), Mente satina, Oxylapati, Polytichij, Cardibotani, (id est, Cardui benedicti) Periclemeni (id est, Caprifolij, seu matri Sylua) Maratri, herba Moschata (que est prima Geranij species) Irisfolij acetosi (quod Aleluya dicitur) Scolopendrij (quod est Ceterach) Crispule (id est, Buplalmi) Caphorata herba (id est, Abrotani) Syracu, Medulla cernine, ana. ℥. j. adipu vsini, adipu gallinacei, Mastiches, ana. ℥. ℞. Thur, ℥. ij. olei Nardini, ℥. j. The herbes must be gathered in the month of May, and being fresh and Greene, must be bruised and macerated seven dayes in the best fragrant wine, and the eighth day they must be boyied together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oyle must be powred in; then they must be againe boiled vntill the herbs be wasted and the wine wholly consumed: after straine and presse out the oile, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, Syracu, Butyrum, Adipes, Mastiches, Thur, oleum Nardinum & Cera; and when they are dissolved with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.*

PLANTIVS.

Of *Vnguentum Martiatum* there be three descriptions described in other Authors, truly not very necessary against the cold affects of the sinewes and other parts, sith that *vnguentum Aragon* tofore prescribed is effectually enough against them: but whosoeuer desireth to haue this *vnguentum Martiatum*, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, and corrected.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus, which the ancient Physicians termed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth utter, and is very commodious against increasing Phlegmons. *R. Resina, Picu, Cera, ana. lb. ℞. and oile as much as sufficeth.*

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Basilicum magnum.

V*nguentum Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth pouise and fill vlcers, *R.* Cera alba, Resina, Seni vaccini, Picu, Terebinthina, Olibani, Murrha, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. quod satis est.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought good to alter nothing in these oynments, namely *vnguento Basilio*, *Aureo*, *Apostolorum*, *Egyptiaco* & *Aemulato*, but he corrected the vncertaine and depraved doses of the simples in *vnguento Citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicu Dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of *Cerule*, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine manner of putting in the Orenge or Citrines, whose pulpe and iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much better then the rinde.

Vnguentum Aureum.

V*nguentum Aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, aglutarate and safely cure them. *R.* Cera citrina, \mathfrak{lb} . \mathfrak{ss} . *Thuris Mastiches*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *olei non rancidi*, \mathfrak{lb} ij. \mathfrak{ss} . *Terebinthina*, \mathfrak{z} ij. *Resina*, *Colophonia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . *Croci*, \mathfrak{z} i the Waxe is melted in oile, and the other simples being exquisitely bruiled be put in to the.

Vnguentum Apostolorum

V*nguentum Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, and in stead thereof restore new. *R.* *Terebinthina*, *Cera alba*, *Ammoniacy*, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. *Opoponacy*, *floris Aeris* ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Aristolochia rotunda*, *Thuris masculis*, *Bdellij*, ana. \mathfrak{z} vi. *Myrrha*, *Galbani*, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. *Lithargyri*, \mathfrak{z} ix *olei si affus fuerit*. \mathfrak{lb} ij *si hyems*, \mathfrak{lb} iij. *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, *Opoponax*, and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruiled simples to liquefied oyle and Waxe, and boyled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum Egyptiacum.

V*nguentum AEgyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum*, inueterate and fistuloos vlcers; doth exiccate and ease out (not without feeling of paine) excrecent and dead flesh *R.* *Aeruginis*, \mathfrak{z} v. *melis optimi*, \mathfrak{z} xiiij. *Aceti fortis*, \mathfrak{z} vij all these be boyled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

V*nguentum ex Enula*, which is called *Enulatum*, is marvellous effectual against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist; and also against other filthinesse of the skinne, *R.* *radicis Enula ex Acetococke*, *tusa & creta*, \mathfrak{lb} j. *Aurungie proci*, *olei*, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. *Cera noua*, \mathfrak{z} j. *Argenti vivi extincti*, *Terebinthina laua*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Salis vulgaris benetrati*, \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . the Waxe and the grease be liquefied in oile, and to them is added *Enula*, and after Quicke siluer and Salt, and last Turpentine. It shall be with more safety vsed, if in stead of Quicke siluer, of thy iuyce of Fumitory and Limons, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. be put in, and both of them must be had seuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

Vnguentum Citrinum, or more truly Citreum, doth repress pimple shooting out of the skinn, especially in the face, either by meane of choler or of salt steame, and doth exterge speckles, tetters, blewnesse, filthy scarres, and rednes of the eyes. *R.* Boracis, \mathfrak{z} ij. Caphura, \mathfrak{z} j. Coralij albi, \mathfrak{z} ss. Amiantij, id est Aluminis plumosi, Umbilici marini seu Bellirici, Tragaganthæ, Amyli, Cristalli, Enthali, Dentali, Thuris albi, Nitri, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. Cerusæ ex radice Dracontij factæ, \mathfrak{z} j. Cerusæ vulgaris, \mathfrak{z} vj. adipis Suille recentis, salis expertis & puri. \mathfrak{lb} ss. semi Laprini, \mathfrak{z} j. ss. adipis Gallinacei, \mathfrak{z} i. Liquifie the fattes in a double vessel, then macerate in them and with a lint fire boyle two Oringes cut in small peeces; straine the fat, and then iniekt thereto all the other simples finely bruised, and temper them with a splatter. Last of all let the Borax and Camphire finely bruised be strewed in, and after it hath boyled and become thicke, store it to your vse.

*Of Emplaisters.**Emplastrum Diachylon simplex.*

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex doth mollifie the hard tumours of the Liuer, spleene and externall parts, and likewise dissolueth, and by litle and litle dissipareth any scirrhus matter, if it be applied in the begining. *R.* mucilaginum seminis Fenugraci, seminis Leni, radicum Althææ, \mathfrak{lb} j. olei veteris puri. \mathfrak{lb} ij. Lithargiri purgati atque triti, \mathfrak{lb} j. ss. The Litharge must be dissolved in a mortar with oyle by litle and litle, untill they be exquisitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them still with a splatter untill they become thicke. After put into them leasurely the muscilages depromed, and boyle them to the substance of an Emplaster, and if need so require, that it should be more forcible in working, for euery pound of simples put in \mathfrak{z} j. of the roote of Floure deluce powned.

Emplastrum Diachylon magnum.

Emplastrum Diachylon magnum is more effectually for all and euery the affects tofore repeated, for that it consisteth of more mollifying and digesting simples. *R.* Lithargiri puri, triti, & creti, \mathfrak{lb} j. olei Irini, Chamamelini & Anethini, ana. \mathfrak{z} viij. mucilaginum seminis Leni, Fenugraci, Ficuum pinguium & Vuarum passarum, succi Iridis & Scyllæ, Aesypi, Ichthyocollæ, ana \mathfrak{z} xij. ss. Terbinthina, \mathfrak{z} iij. Resina Pini, Cera citrine, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. reduce them all to an Emplaster in like order as hath bene described in the simples.

Emplastrum è mucilaginibus.

Emplastrum è mucilaginibus doth also mightily mollifie and digest hard tumours, it doth ripen an abcesse of humours, and when it is burst, it scoureteth the quitture and atture. *R.* mucilaginum seminis Leni, Althææ, Fenugraci, & mediani corticis Vini, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. ss. oleorum Camameli, Liliorum, & Anethi, ana.

ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Ammoniacy*, *Galbani*, *Opoponacy*, *Sagapeni*, ana \mathfrak{z} . β . *Croci*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Terebinthine*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Cera noua*, \mathfrak{z} .xx. make an Emplaister in order before prescribed.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRA.

The ancient Physicians haue described many mollifying Emplaisters, and foure of these they intituled vnder the name of *Dyachylon*, whereof these two be the best. And as for this Emplaister of the muscilages, it worketh more forcibly against all the aforesaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*; whereof the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Meliloto.

Emplastrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is very conuenient in hard tumors of the stomacke, breast, and spleene, and the outretching *hypochondria*. *R.* *Meliloti*, \mathfrak{z} .vj. *foliorum Chamemeli seminis Fœnugraci*, *radicis Althææ*, *baccarū Lauri*, *Absinthij*, *Sampsuchi*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Cardamomi*, *Cyperij*, *Ireos*, *Spica nardi*, *Anmeos*, *Cassia lignea*, *seminis Obij*, *Anisi*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. β . *Ammoniacy*, \mathfrak{z} .x. *Styracis*, *Bdellij*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .v. *Terebinthine*, \mathfrak{z} .j. β . *Ficus pingues*, xij. seu *hircini*, *Resine*, an \mathfrak{z} .ij. β . *Cera*, \mathfrak{z} .vj. *olei Maiorane & nardini*, so much as sufficeth; make thereof an Emplaister: liquifie the Goates suet, the Rosin and the Waxe in oile, and put into them *Ficus pingues tritas & cretas*, then *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium* dissolved in vinegar, & lastly the powders of the other simples scraped.

PLANTIVS.

Emplastrum è Meliloto, è *baccis Lauri*, *Ceroneum*, & *Oxycroceum* seeme to be sufficient against all affects and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessary, namely, neither *Emplastrum è Sinapi*, nor *varia Emplastra è fermento*, nor *Emplastrum ex Alijs*, nor the Emplaister which is imputed to *Aristarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis Lauri.

Emplastrum è baccis Lauri doth maruellously assuage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder, and other parts, especially taking their originall of any cold cause or wind. *R.* *Thuris*, *Mastiches*, *Myrrhe*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *baccarum Lauri*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Cyperij*, *Costi*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . *mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a marvellous Emplaister for the Dropsie, if the dose of *Cyperus* be \mathfrak{z} .j. β . & $\mathfrak{t}\mathfrak{b}$. β . of dried Goates dung be put thereto.

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

Emplastrum Ceroneum doth mollifie the hardnesse of the spleene, doth releafe the cold affects of the wombe, and easeth the paines of the breast and shoulders proceeding of cold. *R.* *Piciis naualis colate*, *Cera*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Sagapeni*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Ammoniacy*, *Terebinthine*, *Colophoniam*, *Croci*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Aloes*, *Thuris*, *Myrrha*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Opoponacy*, *Styracis*, *Galbani*, *Mastiches*, *Aluminis*, *Fœnugraci*, *Styracis rubri*, *Bdellij*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Lythargiri*, \mathfrak{z} .j. β . And the Emplaister must be made in this wise: *Sagapenum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Opoponax*, *Galbanum* & *Pix* must be liquified in wine and strained, then put too the *Colophoniam colatam*, deinde *Styracem*, *Mastichen*, *Thuris*, *Myrrham*, *Bdellium*, *trita cretaque*, Forthwith mixt

Turpentine, Alumne, Lytharge and Fennegreek. The Emplaister which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands by addition of the powder of Aloes and Saffron, alwayes annointing your hands with oyle of Laurell, and thereof concinnate *Magdalen*.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum doth mollifie and dissipate also every kind of hard-ness, doth assuage and drive away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. *R.* Cera, Picis navalis, Croci, Colophonia, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Terebinthine, Ammoniati, Galbani, Myrrha, Thuris, Mastiches, ana. \mathfrak{z} . i. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Galbanum & Ammoniacum must be liquified and stirred in vinegar: the the Patch must be strained and put thereto: after that the Waxe, forthwith Colophonia and the Turpentine, a little while after the Masticke and the Myrrhe. The Emplaister being decocted must be put in cold water, and being strained out, must be wrought with powder of Saffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

Emplastrum de Ianna is marvellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and also cicatrizeth. *R.* succorum *Aq.* Plantaginis & Betonica, ana. \mathfrak{lb} . j. Cera, Picis, Resina, Terebinthine, ana \mathfrak{lb} . ss. Let three of the simples be concocted in the iuyces, stirring them easly to the consumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto Terebinthina.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei consisteth almost of the same simples, & serueth to the same vse. *R.* Terebinthina, \mathfrak{lb} . ss. Resina. \mathfrak{lb} . j. Cera alba, \mathfrak{z} . iij. Mastiches, \mathfrak{z} . j. Betonica, Verbena, Pimpinella, recentium, ana. M. j. Bruise the herbes, & boile them in white wine vtill they consume. Then straine out the liquor, in which concoct the Waxe, Rosin and Masticke, to an apt consistence of an Emplaister, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the Turpentine.

Emplastrum Diuinum.

Emplastrum Diuinum is farre better against malignant vlcers, for it detergeth and consumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new flesh, and bringeth them to a scarre. *R.* Galbani, Myrrha, ana. \mathfrak{z} . i. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Ammoniati. \mathfrak{z} . iij. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Opoponacu, Mastiches, Aristolochia longa, *Æruginu*, ana \mathfrak{z} . j. Lythargiri, olei communis, ana. \mathfrak{lb} . ss. Cera noua, \mathfrak{z} . viij. Thuris, \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{z} . j. Bdely, \mathfrak{z} . ij. Magnetu, \mathfrak{z} . iij. The Lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vtill it become thicke. Then the Waxe cut in small peeces is added, which being liquified is taken off the fire, and forthwith be iniected Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Opoponax and Bdellium dissolued in vinegar and wine, boiled and strained: after the powder, Myrrhe, Mastiches, Thuris, Aristolochia rotunda, & Magnetu, is sprinkled in: in fine, puluis *Æruginis*, lest that if it should be boyled any long space, the Emplaister become red.

PLANTIUS IN EMPLASTRUM DIVINUM.

These Emplaisters *de Ianna Gratia Dei, & divinum*, which be described against wounds and vlcers be also sufficient enough, so that it were unnecessary in this place to repeate any other. For *Emplastrum Oribasij duplex* & *Emplastrum Apostolorum* be all comprehended vnder this diuine Emplaster, all which serue to the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacie.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

Emplastrum ad Herniam. R. Gallarum, nucum Cupressi, Psillie, Balanstiorum, Acatia, seminis Plantaginis, seminis Psillij, seminis Nasturtij, Cepularum glandium, Fabarum torrefactarum, Aristolochia longa & rotunda, Myrsillorum, ana ℥.ss. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of Roses, then torrefie and drie them. Then R. Consolida maiora & minora, Cauda equina, Glasti, Scolopendrij, radicu Osmunde regali, & Filicis, ana ℥.j. Thuris, Myrrhe, Aloes, Mastiches, Mummie, ana ℥.ij. Boli Armena lota in a etc, lapidis Calaminaris preparati, Lythargiri Auri, sanguinis Draconis, ana ℥.iii. Picis naturalis, lb. ii. Terebinthina, ℥.vi. or as much as sufficeth to make an Emplaster.

PLANTIUS.

There be omitted here also other Emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomach, kidneis and wombe, which be not in vse, and in stead whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessity, so that this number of Emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough, both to store the Apothecaries shop, & to cure the chiefe kinds of diseases, causes and symptoms; neither was it necessary to stuffe this Medicamentary booke with vsuall and unnecessary compositions, which cannot but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auile to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) are described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and parts in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eighth Booke.

Turpentine, Alume, Lytharge and Fenugreek. The Emplaister which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands by addition of the powder of Aloes and Saffron, alwayes annointing your hands with oyle of Laurell, and thereof concinnate *Magdalea*.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum.

E *Emplastrum Oxycroceum* doth mollifie and dissipate also euery kind of hardness, doth allwage and drine away the paine of the ioynts. and the paine about the membranes of the bones. *R.* *Cera*, *Picu naualu*, *Croci*, *Colophonia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .iij. *Terebinthina*, *Ammoniacy*, *Galbani*, *Myrrha*, *Thuri*, *Mastiche*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. \mathfrak{z} .iij. *Galbanum* & *Ammoniacum* must be liquified and stirred in vinegar: the Pitch must be strained and put thereto: after that the Wax, forthwith *Colophonia* and the Turpentine, a little while after the Masticke and the Myrrhe. The Emplaister being decocted must be put in cold water, and being strained out, must be wrought with powder of Saffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

E *Emplastrum de Ianna* is maruellous effectuell in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and also cicatrizeth. *R.* *succorum Asy*, *Plantaginis* & *Betonica*, ana. \mathfrak{lb} .j. *Cera*, *Picu*, *Resina*, *Terebinthina*, ana. \mathfrak{lb} .ss. Let three of the simples be concocted in the iuyces, stirring them easily to the consumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto *Terebinthina*.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei.

E *Emplastrum Gratia Dei* consisteth almost of the same simples, & serueth to the same vse. *R.* *Terebinthina*, \mathfrak{lb} .ss. *Resina*, \mathfrak{lb} .j. *Cera alba*, \mathfrak{z} .iij. *Mastiche*, \mathfrak{z} .j. *Betonica*, *Verbena*, *Pimpinella*, *recentium*, ana. \mathfrak{M} .j. Bruise the herbes, & boile them in white wine vtill they consume. Then straine out the liquor, in which concoct the Wax, Rosin and Masticke, to an apt consistence of an Emplaister, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the Turpentine.

Emplastrum Diuinum.

E *Emplastrum Diuinum* is farre better against maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and consumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new flesh, and bringeth them to a scarre. *R.* *Galbani*, *Myrrha*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Ammoniacy*, \mathfrak{z} .iij. \mathfrak{z} .iij. *Opoponacu*, *Mastiche*, *Aristolochia longa*, *Æruginis*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Lythargiri*, *olei communis*, ana. \mathfrak{lb} .ss. *Cera noua*, \mathfrak{z} .viij. *Thuri*, \mathfrak{z} .j. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Bdely*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Magnetu*, \mathfrak{z} .iij. The Lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vtill it become thicke. Then the Wax cut in small peeces is added, which being liquified is taken off the fire, and forthwith be injected *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Opoponax* and *Bdellium* dissolued in vinegar and wine, boyled and strained: after the powder, *Myrrhe*, *Mastiche*, *Thuri*, *Aristolochia rotunda*, & *Magnetu*, is sprinkled in: in fine, *puluis Æruginis*, lest that if it should be boyled any long space, the Emplaister become red.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRYM DIVINVM.

These Emplaisters *de Ianna Gratia Dei, & diuinum*, which be described against wounds and vlcers be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnnecessary in this place to repeat any other. For *Emplastrum Oribasij duplex* & *Emplastrum Apostolorum* be all comprehended vnder this diuine Emplaister, all which serue to the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacie.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

Emplastrum ad Herniam. R. Gallarum, nucum Cupressi, Psilia, Balanstiorum, Acacia, seminis Plantaginis, seminis Psiliij, seminis Nasturtij, Cepularum glandium, Fabarum torrefactarum, Aristolochia longa & rotunda, Myrsillorum, ana. ℥.ss. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of Roses, then torrefie and drie them. Then R. Consolida maiorum & minorum, Cauda equine, Glasse, Scelopendrij, radice Osmunde regale, & Filice, ana ℥j. Thuris, Myrrhe, Aloes, Mastiches, Mummie, ana ℥.ij. Boli Armena lota in a etc, lapidis Calaminaris preparati, Lythargiri Auri, sanguinis Draconis, ana ℥.iii. Picis naturalis, lb. ii. Terebinthine, ℥.vi. or as much as sufficeth to make an Emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

There be omitted here also other Emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomack, kidneys and wombe, which be not in vse, and in stead whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessity, so that this number of Emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough, both to store the Apothecaries shop, & to cure the chiefe kinds of diseases, causes and symptoms; neither was it necessary to stuffe this Medicamentary booke with vnsuall and vnnecessary compositions, which cannot but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auile to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) are described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and parts in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERALL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPALL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLVME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 O f paine in the head.	1	30 Of the eyes in generall.	49
2 Of headach caused of heate.	2	31 Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	50
3 Of headach caused of cold.	5	32 Of the three kindes of Cataracts vn- curable.	52
4 Of headach caused of drinesse or moistnesse.	6	33 Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame and melan- cholie, and their cures.	ead.
5 Of headach caused of bloud.	7	Idem. The making of an excellent water called a Collyrium.	53
6 Of headach caused of choler.	8	34 Of Pannicles.	54
7 Of headach caused of fleame.	10	35 Of the maladies in the eye procee- ding of choler.	56
8 Of headach caused of windinesse.	11	36 Of the infirmities of the eyes caused of melancholy.	57
9 Of headach caused of the stomacke.	12	37 Of diseases hapning to the eyes by outward causes, as by blowes with stickes, staves or stones.	59
10 Of headach caused of drunkenes.	13	38 Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chips by chance into the eyes.	60
11 Of headach caused of feauers.	14	39 Of paine in the eares.	61
12 Of headach caused of old paine in- ueterate in the head.	15	40 Of sound or noise in the eares.	63
13 Of headach called the Migraine.	17	41 Of deafnesse and slow hearing.	ead.
14 Of giddinesse in the head called Ver- tigo.	18	42 Of Imposumes breeding in the eares. 64.	
15 Of the Frensie.	21	43 Of vlcers in the nose.	65
16 Of the Lethargie.	24	44 Of bleeding at the nose.	66
17 Of the losse of memorie.	26	45 Of distillation, rheume and hoarce- nesse.	67
18 Of Carus or Subeth.	29	46 Of paine in the teeth.	69
19 Of congelation or taking.	ead	47 Of teeth that be blacke and loose.	70
20 Of profound sleepe called Soper or Coma.	30	48 Of vlcers in the mouth.	ead.
21 Of the losse both of mouing and sense, called Apoplexie.	31	49 Of a stinking mouth.	71
22 Of the Palsey in halfe the body.	33		The
23 Of the Palsey in one member only.	38		
24 Of the falling sicknesse.	40		
25 Of the Crampe.	42		
26 Of the Mare.	43		
27 Of Madnesse.	44		
28 Of Melan holy.	45		
29 Against trembling and shaking.	48		

THE TABLE.

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 A gainst inflammation of the Colu- mella.	73	10 Of spitting of blood.	85
2 Of a loose Columella.	74	11 Of spitting of matter.	88
3 Of inflammation the tonsils.	75	12 Of the Pissicke.	90
4 Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils.	76	13 Of panting of the heart.	92
5 Of the Squinancy.	77	14 Of swooning.	93
6 Of the Cough.	79	15 Of lacke of milke.	97
7 Of the Asthma.	81	16 Of abundance of milke.	98.
8 Of the Pleurisie.	82	17 Of milke that is curded in the breasts of women.	ead.
9 Of the inflammation of the lungs.	84	18 Of inflammation of the paps in wo- men.	99

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 O f weaknes of the stomacke.	100	29 Of obstruction of the spleene.	149
2 Of yelking and vomiting.	102	30 Of the laundies.	ead.
3 Of immoderate thirst.	104	31 Of the euill state of the body.	152
4 Of paine in the stomacke.	105	32 Of the Dropsie.	153
5 Of inflammation of the stomacke.	ead.	33 Of the Dropsie Anasara.	155
6 Of abhorring of meate.	107	34 Of the Dropsie Ascites.	156
7 Of a doglike appetite.	108	35 Of the Dropsie Tympanites.	157
8 Of great famine.	110	36 Of the reines that send forth bloody vrine.	158
9 Of euill digestion.	111	37 Of inflammation of the reines.	159
10 Of windinesse of the stomacke.	114	38 Of the stone in the reines.	161
11 Of yelking or hicket.	115	39 Of vnumeasurable pissing.	165
12 Of choler.	117	40 Against vlcers of the reines.	166
13 Of the fluxe Diarrhea.	119	41 Of the stone in the bladder.	167
14 Of the fluxe Lienteria.	121	42 Of blood broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.	168
15 Of the fluxe Dysenteria.	123	43 Of inflammation of the bladder.	169
16 Of Tenasmus.	126	44 Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.	171
17 Of the Cholicke.	127	45 Of the Strangury.	173
18 Of Iliaca passio.	130	46 Of difficulty of pissing.	174
19 Of wormes.	132	47 Of stopping of the vrine.	175
20 Of the Hemorrhoids.	135	48 Of exulceration of the priuie mem- bers.	177
21 Of the falling out of the tuell.	137	49 Of the continuall standing of the yard.	ead.
22 Of clefts of the fundament.	138	50 Of shedding of sperme or seed.	178
23 Of the weaknesse of the liuer.	ead.	51 Of losse of carnall copulation.	180
24 Of the obstructions of the liuer.	141		
25 Of inflammation of the liuer.	142		
26 Of distemper of the spleene.	145		
27 Of the inflamatio of the spleene.	147		
28 Of hardnesse of the spleene.	148		

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
52 Against bursting or ruptures.	181	60 Of windinesse of the womb.	196
53 Of stopping of Menstruis.	183	61 Of exulceration of the womb.	197
54 Of flowing of Menstruis.	187	62 Of straightnesse of the matrice.	198
55 Of Womans fluxe.	188	63 To take away barrennesse.	199
56 Of strangling of the womb.	189	64 Of sore travell in child birth.	202
57 Of falling out of the womb.	192	65 Of the Sciatica.	208
58 Of the mole in the matrice.	193	66 Of the goule in the feete and ioyns.	208.
59 Of inflammation of the womb.	195		

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 A N exposition of feauers.	213	7 Of a pure intermitting Tertian.	230
2 A table of feauers.	217	8 Against a bastardly Tertian.	234
3 Of one day feauer.	218	9 Of a Quartaine feauer.	236
4 Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.	220	10 Of a Quotidian feauer.	239
5 Of a rotten fenex called Synochus.	224	11 Of a feauer Heclike.	240
6 Against continuall feauers.	226	12 Of an Hemetrice feauer.	243
7 Of a burning feauer.	228	13 Of the Pestilence.	245

The Table of the fift Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 W Hat swellings happen besides nature, commonly called Apostemata.	253	kindes or times of tumors besides nature. 270. Signes of putrefaction.	278
2 Of the differēces of those tumors which happē besides nature. 255. Fro whence the difference of tumours aboue nature doth come. 256. Of hote humours. ead. of cold humours. ead. Tumores complicati, one enill seemeth to haue affinitye with the other. ead. of the chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing of humours. 257. What tumors do associate Phlegmon. ead. of Erysipelatosi tumors. ead. of Testudo & Talpa. ead. of Scirrhusi tumors and Cancer. 258. of Eepra. 259. Foure kindes of Impetigo. ead. of white Puslules.	263.	What abscessions may easily be digested.	270.
3 Of the causes of tumors aboue nature appearing vniuersally on the outside of the body.	263.	5 The common order of curing of tumors. 271. Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members. 272. the finding out of the causes, the beginning of the cure of tumors aboue nature 273. The common ingendring of euery Phlegmone, ead. Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.	274
4 Of the signes of tumors besides nature generally appearing, together with the indgement thereof, 267. Foure		6 Of Abscessions generally. 276. The best order of curing is declared three wayes.	277
		7 Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumors engendred of blond.	279
		Foure differences of tumors caused of blond.	280
		8 Of the causes, signes, & indgements of Phlegmons.	281
		9 The	

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
9 The order of curing Phlegmons caused of the defluxion of humors affecting the outward parts of the bodie.	282	20 Of Oedema and other cold, flegmaticke and flatuosi tumours.	315
Four intentions in the cure of Phlegmons.	283	22 Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member.	317
10 Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre.	290	22 Of Tumours above nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are commonly called windie Apostems.	321
11 Of the cure of a Carbuncle.	292	23 Of a tumor caused of a thin substance, which they call Aquosum Apostema, that is, a waterish Aposteme.	323
12 Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.	295	24 Of the diseases called Glandule, Nodi, and Strume, together with other Abscessions which they call Phlegmatica excresecencia.	328
13 Of the cure of Gangrena.	297	25 Of hard and scirrhus tumours engendred of Melancholy.	344
14 Of Erysipelas and other tumors caused of choler.	300	26 Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.	352
15 Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.	302		
16 Of the cure of Erysipelas.	303		
17 Of tumors which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes, both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians, cholericke pushes.	307		
18 Of the evils called Formica, and of other differences of Verruca.	312		
19 The iudgement and cure of Verruca	313.		

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 O F the diuerse names of Morbus Gallicus, and where it had beginning.	359	to be giuen.	ead.
2 Of the signes thereof.	360	14 What quantitie of the decoction is to be taken at once.	ead.
3 Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules.	362	15 How many dayes this decoction is to be receined.	371
4 Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.	364	16 Of the time of giuing this decoction, and things to be obserued therein.	ead.
5 Of Fumigations.	ead.	17 Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction.	372
6 Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.	365	18 Of things to be corrected, or symptomes to be oppugned in this cure.	ead.
7 Of the preparation of humours.	ead.	19 Of Excrements.	373
8 Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.	366	20 Of Diet to be obserued in this cure.	374.
9 What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose.	ead.	21. Of the roote of China.	eadem.
10 Of the decoction of Guaicum.	367	22 Of the way of making the decoction of the roote of China.	375
11 Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood.	368	23 Of the election of China.	ead.
12 Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.	370	24 Of another manner of making the decoction with Salsa and the wood, and	
13 Of the place where this decoction is			

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
without the wood, and sometime with the bark.	376	benigne and harmelesse.	ead.
25 Of other faculties or vertues which the Salsa hath.	377	30 Of making Suffumigations.	ead.
26 Of suffumigations which some practitioners vse.	ead.	31 Of the cure by annotating with quickesilver.	380
27 Of the manner of perfuming the whole bodie.	378	32 To correct the symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.	281
28 Of the symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.	379	33 Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.	382
29 Of Suffumigations made of a matter		34 Of Precipitatum giuen by the mouth.	ead.

The Table of the seventh Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1 O f Suppositaries.	384	16 Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.	405
2 O f making Nodulus.	385	17 Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.	406
3 Of making Pessaries.	ead.	18 Of Epithema or Fetus.	ead.
4 C lusters or Enema.	386	19 Of making Sacculus.	408
5 Of making Syrupes.	388	20 Of making Scutum.	ead.
6 Of making Laleps.	392	21 Of making a Cataplasme.	ead.
7 Of Dosis sine Potio.	ead.	22 Of making Emplastrum.	409
8 Of making Bolus.	397	23 Of making Unguenta.	410
9 Of making Pils.	398	24 Of making a Liniment.	412
10 Of making Apozema.	ead.	25 Of making Frontale.	ead.
11 Of making Mulso.	399	26 Of making Cucufa & Simicucufa.	413.
12 Of making Powders.	ead.	27 Of making Suffitus.	ead.
13 Of Eleetuaries and Conserues, of Loxenges and Manus Christi.	400	28 Of making Collyrium.	ead.
14 Of making Conditum & Conserua.	403.	29 Of making Nasale, or Erithinum.	414
15. Of making Pasta Regia or Maxapane.	404	30 Of making Apophlegmatismus.	ead.
		31 Of making Distillations restorative.	415.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Of Syrupes.		Syrupus è radicibus.	ead.
S yrupus Acidus simplex.	418	Syrupus Adiantinus.	ead.
Syrupus è succo Limonum.	420	Syrupus è Stæchade.	426
Oxysaccharum simplex.	421	Syrupus Rosarum siccatum.	427
Oximel simplex.	ead.	Syrupus Nymphae.	ead.
Oximel scylliticum.	422	Syrupus de Papanere.	428
Syrupus è Cichorio.	423	Diacodion.	ead.
Syrupus Intubi domestici.	424	Syrupus Violarum compositus.	429
Syrupus Byzantinus.	ead.	Syrupus Zxyphorum.	430
Syrupus Scolopendrij.	425	Syrupus de Hyssopo.	ead.
		Syrupus	

THE TABLE

Syrupus de Prassia.	ead.	Pilula Polychrestæ.	ead.
Syrupus Symphyti.	431	Pilula de Lapide Cyaneæ.	ead.
Syrupus è succo Buglossi.	ead.	Pilula de Erythra.	445
Syrupus è Cortice Cistij.	ead.	Pilula ex Esula.	ead.
Syrupus Melissophylli.	432	Pilula è Cynoglossi.	ead.
Syrupus è Menta.	ead.	Pilula Aristolochiæ.	ead.
Syrupus Absinthij.	ead.		
Cidoniorum Miba, that is, the wyce de- cocted to thicknesse.	ead.		
Syrupus Myrtinus.	433		
Syrupus Fumariæ.	ead.		
Syrupus è Malu odoriferis.	ead.		
Syrupus Althææ.	ead.		
Syrupus Raphani.	434		
Syrupus Artemisiæ.	ead.		

Of purging receipts.

E lectuarium è Prunis.	435	D ianthon.	446
Catholicum simplex.	436	Electuarium Peres archonticon.	ead.
Catholicum maius.	ead.	Diatragacanthum frigidum.	ead.
Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.	ead.	Deaiebs simplex.	447
Electuarium è succo Rosarum.	437	Electuarium Diaiebs compositum.	ead.
Diacydonion.	ead.	Diacalamimthes.	ead.
Electuarium Diacnicu.	ead.	Diamargariton frigidum.	448
Diaphænicon.	ead.	Electuarium de Gemmis.	ead.
Benedicta.	438	Electuarium Diambra.	449
Confectio Hamæcis.	ead.	Pulvis Cordiacus.	ead.
Hiera simplex.	439	Aromaticum Rosarum maius.	405
Hiera Diacolocynthidos.	ead.	Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis.	ead.
Hydragogum minus.	440	Electuarium Diatrion Santalon.	ead.
Hydragogum maius.	ead.	Diacrocu.	451
Unguentum è Lathyride.	ead.	Dialacca maior.	ead.
Electuarium Diasaru.	441	Electuarium exhilarans.	ead.
Pilula è Hiera simplici.	ead.	Electuarium Diaspermatorum.	ead.
Pilula Stomachica.	ead.	Electuarium Adonis Spumicos.	452
Pilula Ruffi.	442	Electuarium Diacalamimthes compositum.	ead.
Pilula Assaieret.	ead.		
Pilula de Eupatorio.	ead.		
Pilula Mastichina.	ead.		
Pilula Imperiales.	ead.		
Pilula sine quibuse esse nolo.	443		
Pilula è Fumaria.	ead.		
Pilula Aurea.	ead.		
Pilula de Agarico.	ead.		
Pilula Cocciæ.	ead.		
Pilula ex Hermodactylis.	444		

Of drie Antidotaries.

Of moist Antidotaries.

A ntidotus Analeptica.	453
Antidotus Diasaterion.	ead.
Antidotus è Cocco baphico, seu grano in- fectorio.	ead.
Antidotus è bacis Lauri.	454
Philonium.	ead.
Antidotus termed Requies.	ead.
Theriace Diatesseron.	455
Theriace Andromachi senioris.	ead.
Mithridatum.	456

De Trochiscis seu Pastillis.

T rochisci è Vipera.	457
Trochisci Scyllitici.	ead.
Trochisci Hedrici.	ead.

THE TABLE

Trochisci Cyphæi.	458	Oleum Nardinum compositum.	ead.
Trochisci è Capparibus.	ead.	Oleum Laurinum.	ead.
Trochisci de Eupatoria.	ead.	Oleum Fupinum.	ead.
Trochisci Alkakenge seu Halicacabi.	ead.	Oleum è Scorpionibus.	ead.
Trochisci è Myrrha.	459	Oleum Terebinthina.	ead.
Trochisci è terra Lemnia.	ead.	Oleum Resinum.	ead.
Trochisci è Caphura.	ead.	Oleum Balaninum.	ead.
Trochisci Gallie moschatæ.	ead.	Oleum è Castoreo.	ead.
Trochisci Alyste muschiæ.	ead.	Oleum Euphorbiæ simplex.	ead.
Trochisci Bechici albi.	560	Oleum de lateribus.	463
Trochisci Narcotici.	ead.	Petroleum.	ead.
De Ecligmatis & Conditis.		Unguentum Galeni refrigerans.	ead.
Ecligma è pineis Nucibus.		Unguentum Rosarum.	ead.
Ecligma è Scylla.	460	Unguentum Populeum.	ead.
Ecligma ad Asthma.	ead.	Unguentum album.	ead.
Certaine Conditæ.	ead.	Unguentum astringens.	ead.
Of Conserues.	ead.	Unguentum Diacalcitæ.	470
Of Oyles.		Unguentum Diapompholygos.	ead.
Oleum Rosarum.		Unguentum rubrum exsiccat.	ead.
Oleum Violarum.	ead.	Unguentum Dialtheos.	ead.
Oleum Nymphaeæ.	463	Unguentum Resumptum.	471
Oleum Papaneri.	ead.	Unguentum Agrippæ.	ead.
Oleum Hyosciami albi.	ead.	Unguentum Aregon.	ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ simplex.	ead.	Unguentum Martiatum magnum.	472
Oleum Mandragoræ compositum.	ead.	Unguentum Basilicum minus.	ead.
Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydonisrum.	ead.	Unguentum Basilicum magnum.	473
Oleum Myrsinum.	464	Unguentum Aureum.	ead.
Oleum Mastichinum.	ead.	Unguentum Apostolorum.	ead.
Oleum Absinthij.	ead.	Unguentum Egyptiacum.	ead.
Oleum Chamemelinum.	ead.	Unguentum ex Enula.	ead.
Oleum Liliorum.	ead.	Unguentum Citrinum.	474
Oleum Leucoj Lentei.	465	Of Emplaisters.	
Oleum Iasminum.	ead.	Emplastrum Diachylon simplex.	
Oleum Anethinum.	ead.	Emplastrum Diachylon magnum.	
Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium.	ead.	ead.	
Oleum Lumbricorum.	ead.	Emplastrum Muscilaginis.	
Oleum Irium.	ead.	Emplastrum è Meliloto.	
Oleum Rydaceum.	ead.	Emplastrum è baccis Lauri.	
Oleum Amygdalarum amararum.	466	Emplastrum Ceroneum.	
Oleum è Capparibus.	ead.	Emplastrum Oxycroceum.	
Oleum Nardinum.	ead.	Emplastrum de Ianna.	
		Emplastrum Gratia Dei.	
		Emplastrum Diuinum.	
		Emplastrum ad Herniam.	
		Aliud ad Herniam.	

FINIS.



